Konai Reference Grammar

Konai (Kal<u>ai</u>) language
Western Province
Papua New Guinea
ISO code: kxw

Britten Årsjö
MA in Linguistics
Summer Institute of Linguistics
April 5, 2016

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

[...]	phonetic writing
/.../	phonemic writing
<...>	orthographic writing
{}	allomorphs
---	non-existent form
#/.	word boundary
∅	zero
*	ungrammatical/ not in natural speech/text
-	affixation
+	compound word boundary
+/-	feature specification, e.g. $V^{[+high]}$
=	cliticisation
1	first person
2	second person
3	third person
A.LOCR	approximate localiviser
ADJ	adjective
ADV	adverb
BB	Big Book(s) (short stories)
BLTV	bleed-through vowel
C	consonant
CLAUSE$_C$	clause as comment
CLAUSE$_T$	clause as topic
CLT	clitic
CNTR	contrastive
COMPL	completive
CONJ	conjunction
cont.	continued
DEM	demonstrative
DEMR	demonstrativiser
DEMR.D	distant demonstrativiser
DEMR.N	near demonstrativiser
DSQ	delayed sequence
DU/du.	dual
E.LOCR	exact localiviser
EMP	emphatic
Ex.	example
EX/excl.	exclusive
f.	following
F.CNTR	contrastive focus marker
FUT	future tense
FV	final verb
GEN	genitive (possession & control)
HAB	habitual
HORT	hortative
H-T	head-tail linkage
HYP	hypothetic
IMP	imperative
IN/incl.	inclusive/including
INC	incorporated
INDC	indicative
INDF	indefinite
INDP.POSS	independent possessive
INDV	individuated (plural)
INS	instrumental
INT	intensifier
IQV	indicative quote verb
IRR	irrealis
irreg.r(oot)	irregular root
ISQ	immediate sequence
LIM	limiter
LOC	locative
LSV	last stem vowel
MP	modifier phrase
MPc	modifier phrase as comment
ms	milliseconds
MV	medial verb

^{n}	any number
N	noun
NEG	negative
NFUT	non-future (past & present tense)
NG	noun group
NP	nominal phrase
NP$_C$	NP comment
NPo	NP object
NP$_{REC}$	NP recipient
NPs	NP subject
NPST (V6)	non-past (present & future tense)
NP$_T$	NP topic
NUM	numeral
NUMR	numeraliser
NV	non-verbal
O	object
OF	object focus
OPD	Organized phonology data
OPT	optative
OQV	optative quote verb
PAST.Q	past tense in content questions
PFV	perfective
PL/pl.	plural
P.LOCR	pointing localiviser
POSS	possessive
PRES	present tense
PROG	progressive
PROH	prohibitive
PRON	pronoun
PROS	prospective aspect
PROV	pro-verb
QNT	quantifier
QW	question word
RC	relative clause
REAL	realis
RED.PL	reduplication
RED.PL: -e	plural suffix f. reduplication
REFL	reflexive
rel.	relationship
S/sg.	singular
sent.	sentence
SER	serial
SF	suffix
SIMP	simple
smth.	something
SOV	subject-object-verb
sp.	species
SQV	subjunctive quote verb
STAT	existential state
SUBJ	subjunctive
syll.	syllable
TAM	tense, aspect, mood
TEMP/temp.	temporal
TOP	topic marker
TRANS	transitive
TRSV	transitional semi-vowel
txt	text
V	verb; or vowel in Phonology
V1-7	verb types, incl. sub-types a-d
VBR	verbaliser
VH	vowel harmony
VOC	vocative pronoun
VP	verb phrase
VS	verb stem
Vs	verbs
w.	with

1. INTRODUCTION

Konai (or *Kalai*[1]) is a Papuan language, which, according to Malcolm Ross, belongs to the East Strickland Subgroup of the Trans- New Guinea Family (Ross 2005:35). This classification is the same as Wurm, ed. (1975:136) and Wurm (1982), though using different terms. However, Shaw (1986) places Konai in the (to use Ross' terminology) Strickland Plain Microgroup of the Bosavi Subgroup of the Trans-New Guinea Family. According to him (still using Ross' terminology), the Bosavi Subgroup comprises three microgroups: the Strickland Plain Microgroup, the Papuan Plateau Microgroup and the Bosavi Watershed Microgroup. Without presenting any further data here, this seems to be the more accurate grouping.

THE BOSAVI SUBGROUP OF LANGUAGES[2]
The Strickland Plain Microgroup:
Konai, Fembe[3], Kubo, Samo, Gobasi[4], Odoodee[5]
The Papuan Plateau Microgroup:
Bedamini, Etoro, Onobasulu
The Bosavi Watershed Microgroup: Kaluli, Sunia, Kasua, Aimele, Kamula and Bainapi

The Konais live in the Murray River area, west of the Strickland River in the northeast corner of the Western Province of Papua New Guinea (PNG). The people number 500-600. They live in six major villages from west to east: Debele, Fokona, Edolo, Dahamo, Sesenabi and Tinahai. Gayabi, close to Tinahai, is for the most time an empty village site, as its people lives more or less permanently at Dahamo. There are three dialects: the Lowland (Dahamo), Foothill (Edolo) and Mountain (Tinahai) dialects. In addition, there are two villages, Oguotibi (or O͞umemi) and Tougohai, south of Tinahai and still on the west side of the Strickland, where they speak a dialect more related to the Fembe language, spoken on the east side of the river and belonging to the same microgroup as Konai. Socially though, the people in at least Oguotibi relate very much to the Konais. Another village is Kamagato, further down the Strickland, still on the west side, where there are both Kubo and Konai people living.

The three dialects of the Konai language are mutually intelligible. The main linguistic differences are found in the vocabulary. Phonological differences occur, but there are no regular sound correspondences or rule variations. Grammatical differences occur, too. (See Årsjö & Årsjö 2004a). This grammar describes the Konai language as it is spoken in the Lowlands, unless specified otherwise.

---
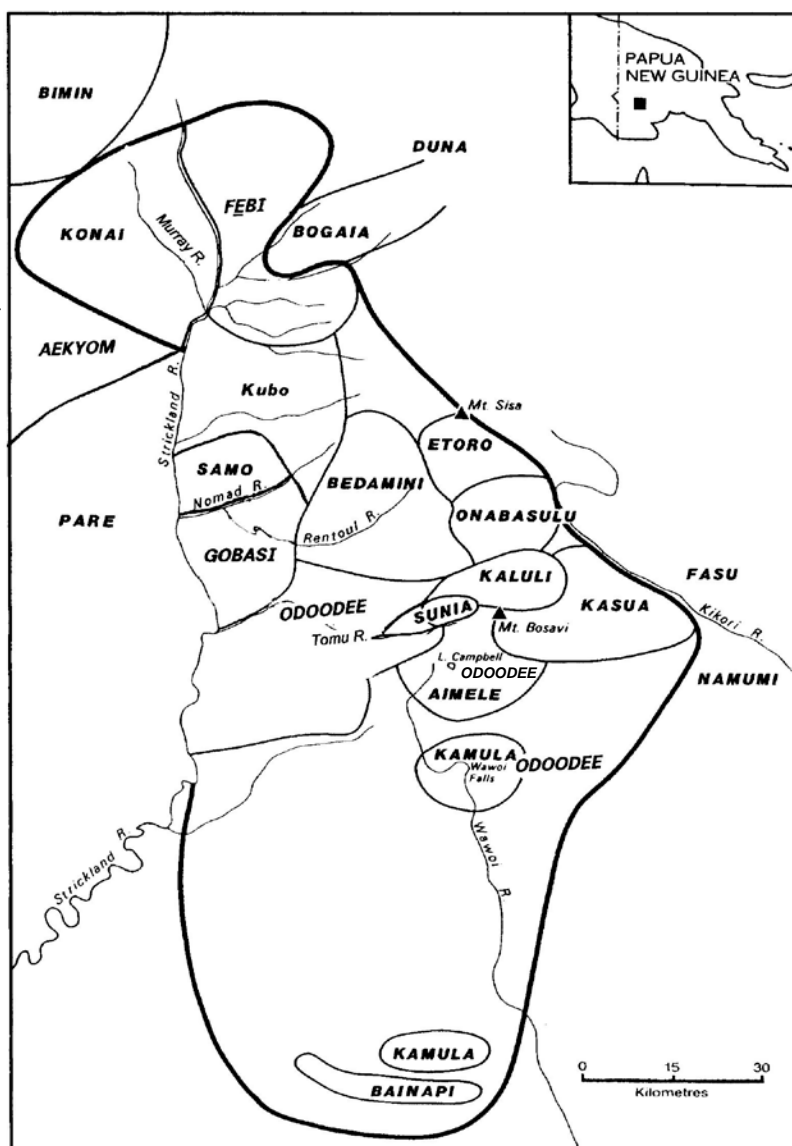
[1] The local spelling is *Kalai*. Underlining means nasalisation (see 2.6.1 NASALISATION). 'Konai' is the spelling used by people outside of the area.

[2] Shaw 1986, modified.

[3] The Fembe (Febi on the map) and Konai people groups are called Agala or Sinali by many Highlanders. Sinali may also refer to people in general living in the area where Bosavi languages are spoken (Dwyer, Minnegal & Woodyard 1993:9). However, Shaw (1986) contrasts Konai with Agala, where Agala refers to the Fembe people. Reggie Howard, a CBC missionary, who lived in the area 1984-1990, calls a people group living mainly west of Strickland Agala (corresponding roughly with the people speaking the Konai Mountain dialect) and another people group, living mainly on the opposite side of the river, he calls Sinali (Årsjö 1991:81). The word *febe* [fɛ̃mbɛ] means 'side' or 'beside' in the Mountain dialect of Konai.

[4] Gobasi, Honibo and Oibae are dialects of the same language (Årsjö 1991:34), so only Gobasi appears on this map; confirmed by Clyde Smith (SIL translator for Samo; personal communication).

[5] According to Darrel Hays (SIL translator for Odoodee; personal communication), the correct name for the people earlier referred to as Kalamo is Odoodee. Hesif (no longer on the map) used to be an Odoodee village but is now moved to Lake Campbell.

Vance & Patty Woodyard, Pioneers/ECPNG, worked among the Konais in the 80's and early 90's and wrote the first grammar paper together with Murray & Joan Rule, APCM/ECP(NG)[6] in 1990. I am indebted to them for all their hard work.

This grammar is based on the *Konai Grammar Essentials* (Årsjö 1998), which has been revised and expanded. The areas where most new insights have been gained are deixis, sentence and discourse. All villages except Tougohai have been involved in supplying the data in stories and conversations, during translation sessions, workshops and informal interaction with people.

The data was collected under the auspices of Summer Institute of Linguistics during the period of 1994-2015. It comprises about 8000 notes, 113 oral and written stories, 25 letters, 31 songs, one prayer and a dictionary of about 2500 entries. In addition, all of the New Testament is published. No grammatical analysis is based on translated material alone, though some examples are taken from it.

My aim, when I started to write this grammar in May 2007, was to cover the structure of the Konai language from phoneme to discourse. I realized somewhere along the line that to make a complete description, covering every possible structure on all levels of the language would be impossible, both from a time and an ability perspective. Still, there is a description on each relevant level of the language. It may be less than perfect, but it does describe the Konai language in a way that it has never been described before. I am grateful to God for giving me the opportunity to do language research and enabling me to do it. I am grateful to my husband Sören, who has given me the time in our very busy schedule to write this grammar. And I am grateful to the whole Konai language community, whose speech and written records are the data on which it is based. More people than I can mention have been involved in teaching my husband and I their language. We are deeply grateful to all of them. To mention a few, the following men and women have had a big part in teaching us their language and/or told or written the stories, songs and/or letters on which much of the sentence and discourse analysis is based:

Andrew B. Biya	Halesi Folosie	Mavis Kai	Soti Domo
Asele Hagai	HebeyoWomogolou	Michael Soti	Tamati Lekai
Atila Douwota	Henry Daso	Motousi Si	Thomas Dodo
Basio Uliti	Hobert Gisabo	Muba Welema	Tiabou Dolou
David Bulukai	Huwa Agama	Omei Kuloti	Tobo Sebe
Dickson D. Diodegei	Sata Gabai	Oxen Welema	Tom Tomono
Domo Soti	James Welema	Pepson Uliti	Tulusou Yahuen
Esther Gidiumai	Jekop Wonta	Robert Dume	Wilson Igiso
Fegulu Gula	Jeremaia Kakala	Ronny Gulo	Winta Diomono
Freddy Tomono	John Hando	Sabe Domo	
Gesokou Tigoma	Kenneth Dima	Sadugu Sagisiei	... and also thanks to the teachers and students of the Dahamo school 1994-2015
Gilbert Dabaga	Kevin Gibi	Sambu Sodipae	
Gina Folosie	Kilisou Gulo	Sande Behelia	
Gube Kopogou	Kugou Kuloti	Siolo Kugou	
Gulusu Gigi	Mark Kulotiale	Sodipae Dabaga	

Also, many thanks to Dr. Liisa Berghäll for valuable consultant help and to Dr. René van den Berg for much good advice. However, any mistakes, omissions, unorthodox terms and/or analyses are my own responsibility.

Before starting to work together with the Konai people, my husband and I lived and worked among the Ama people in East Sepik Province (PNG) for 19 years. The Ama New Testament was published in 1990 and later revised and published in 2010 together with four Old Testament books. The grammar of the Ama language was the topic of my MA thesis. I gained my MA degree in linguistics in 2000 at the University of Uppsala, Sweden.

1.1 Previous research

The Konai language is mentioned in some published material on language classification and anthropology. There are also published papers, as well as unpublished manuscripts, specifically on the Konai language.

Language classification:	McElhanon & Voorhoeve (1970), Wurm (ed. 1975), (1982), Shaw (1986), Ross (2005)
Survey reports:	Pappenhagen (1981), Årsjö (1991)
Phonology:	Rule & Woodyard (1985), (1990a), Årsjö (2005), (2008)
Grammar:	Rule & Woodyard (1990b), Årsjö (1998)
Sociolinguistics	Årsjö (2000), (2004a)
Anthropology	Barth (1971), Handasyde (1990), Prince (1991), Woodyard (1992), Dwyer, Minnegal, Woodyard (1993), Årsjö (2003)

---

[6] APCM Asia Pacific Christian Mission; ECP(NG) Evangelical Church of Papua (New Guinea); CBC Christian Brotherhood Church (from footnote 3).

1.2 Overview

Konai is a SOV language with a moderately fixed word order. It has postpositions. The possessor precedes the possessed item and nominal modifiers usually follow, but sometimes precede the noun. All that is consistent with the SOV word order.

However, there are several interesting features in this language. I will give a brief overview of three of them here: the realis-irrealis distinction in the verb, the genitive case, and the object focus. Sentence structure also makes an interesting study, as the Konai language exhibits a variation of the typical Papuan switch-reference system. In addition to the switch-reference, there is a switch of scene system, which monitors more than the subject. See 7.3.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE AND SWITCH OF SCENE. John Roberts (1988:106-109) has described a similar situation in Amele in the Madang province.

1.2.1 The realis-irrealis distinction in brief

The main TAM distinction in Konai is one of mood rather than tense. Realis is unmarked and irrealis is signalled by the suffix *-l*. There is also a binary distinction in tense, which for most verb types work out as non-future versus future, where non-future is marked by a high vowel (*i* or *u*) and future by a low vowel (*e* or *o*).

1) *I   o   hague-i.*
   yesterday man   come-NFUT
   'The man came yesterday.'

2) *O   kôu-le   hagu-l-u.*
   Man this-A.LOCR   come-IRR-NFUT
   'The man is coming.'

3) *Idiba   o   hagua-l-e.*
   tomorrow   man come-IRR-FUT
   'The man will come tomorrow.'

4) *Di   Godi=ha̱ ta̱   du-l-u.*
   1PL.INGod=GEN   talk hear-IRR-NFUT
   'We are hearing the Word of God.'

5) *Di   Godi=ha̱ ta̱   du-l-o.*
   1PL.INGod=GEN   talk hear-IRR-FUT
   'We will hear the Word of God.'

6) *Dihi   tie-i.*
   child   sleep-NFUT
   'The child has fallen asleep/**is** sleeping.'

7) *Dihi   tio-l-u.*
   child   sleep-IRR-NFUT
   'The child is falling asleep.'

8) *Dihi   tia-l-e.*
   child   sleep-IRR-FUT
   'The child will sleep.'

9) *Sasa̱i   sugua-i.*
   woman   fever.get-NFUT
   'The woman **has** a fever.'

10) *Sasa̱i   suguo-l-u.*
    woman   fever.get-IRR-NFUT
    'The woman is getting a fever (just now).'

Looking at examples (1)-(5) it would be possible to interpret the verbal affixes *-i, -lu, -le/-lo*[7] as past, present, and future tense, respectively. Comparing (1), (6) and (9), however, shows that the affix *-i* cannot mean past tense as (6) and (9) describe **present** states. The suffixes *-lu* and *-le/-lo*, then, would be best described as marking events that are in a state of flux or have not occurred yet. The *-l-* common to these two suffixes may then be assumed to signal irrealis. Further examples confirm this.

---

[7] The variant forms are due to vowel harmony (see 2.7.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN VERBS).

11) *O   hagu-**l**-i   mei.*
     man come-IRR-NFUT NEG
     'The man did not come.'

12) *Edolo i-**l**-e   hagua-si-**l**-i.*
     Edolo go-IRR-FUT come-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT
     'They went to Edolo and are coming back (just now).'

Negative past events take the suffix *-l-* 'irrealis'. Also, in a medial clause construction, even though the first verb describes a past event, that verb may take the suffix *-l-* 'irrealis', and does so in the last example above.

For further discussion on realis/irrealis, as well as tense distinctions see 4.1.5 TENSE, ASPECT AND MOOD (TAM).

1.2.2 The genitive case in brief

The genitive case is marked by the enclitic *=ha.* It is obligatory in a possessive construction.

13) *tisa=**ha**   moso*
     teacher=GEN house
     'the teacher's house'

Its most interesting function is that it may also be used on a subject.

14) *Ma   so=**ha** wa-l-adi.*
     1s.POSS dog=GEN attack-IRR-PROS
     'My dog is just about to bite.'

15) *Sepik sasai   ta=**ha**   ma   ye   tege-i.*
     Sepik woman   INDF=GEN 1s   stringbag make-NFUT
     'A Sepik woman made my stringbag.'

16) *Kuolôu ta   du-di   o   ta=**ha** hague-i.*
     law   talk hear-HAB man INDF=GEN come-NFUT
     'A man who habitually obeyed the law came.'

17) *E   mogo=**ha**   i-l-i   ko=kôu   baha dala.*
     3s friend=GEN   go-IRR-NFUT   that=LOC   look be/have
     '(She) is waiting for her friend to go by there.'

In the four examples above, the genitive construction is not obligatory, but if the subject is God or somebody else in authority, the subject is almost always marked with =*ha* 'genitive', indicating that there is a component of control involved.

18) *Godi=**ha** mala   hebeni=kôu   i.*
     God=GEN get.IRR.FUT heaven=LOC   go
     'God took (him) to heaven.'

For further discussion see 5.2.3.2.1 THE GENITIVE CASE.

1.2.3 The object focus in brief

There is no formal difference between transitive and intransitive verbs. Instead it is possible to **focus** on an object in a clause. This focus is expressed by the verbal suffix *-gV*. If there, it follows immediately on the verb root and focuses on a specific object and/or makes the verb more object oriented. It may also make certain intransitive verbs transitive as in the last example presented here.

19) *O   e dio   ka-l-e.*
     man 3s grass cut-IRR-FUT
     'The man will cut the grass.'

20) *O   e widio towe ka-**gi**-l-e.*
     man 3s head hair cut-OF-IRR-FUT
     'The man will cut (his) hair.'

21) *bi   sa*
     things put.inside
     'put things inside something'

22) *N̪a kuguo Bimin=kôu sa-**gi**-l-e.*
    2S paper Bimin=LOC put.inside-OF-IRR-FUT
    'You will send a letter to Bimin.' (implied: put inside (a mailbag to go on an airplane))

23) *hagu̪a   hagu̪a-**gi***
    rise   rise-OF
    'rise'   'raise'

For further discussion see 4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS

2. PHONOLOGY AND ORTHOGRAPHY

This is a brief description of the phonology and orthography of the Konai language. It is for the most part based on the latest OPD (Årsjö 2008).

2.1 Phonemic and orthographic inventory

Consonant Phoneme Chart[8]

	Bilabial	LDent.	Dental	Alveol.	PostAl.	Retrofl.	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Phary.	Glottal
Plosive	p[9] b		t̪ d̪					k g			
Nasal	m										
Trill											
Flap											
Fricative	ɸ			s							h
Approx.	w[10]						j				
LApprox.						ɭ					

Vowel phoneme chart

	Front	Central	Back
Close	i		u
Close-mid			o
Open-mid	ɛ		ɔ
Open		ɑ	

Orthography

/ ɑ	b	d̪	ɛ	ɸ	g	h	i	k	ɭ	m	ɔ	o	p	s	t̪	u	w	j /
⟨a	b	d	e	f	g	h	i	k	l,n	m	o	ôu	p	s	t	u	w	y⟩
⟨A	B	D	E	F	G	H	I	K	N	M	O	Ôu	P	S	T	U	W	Y⟩

In addition the following graphemes are used in spelling of Tok Pisin proper names: ⟨**jJ**⟩, ⟨**rR**⟩, ⟨**vV**⟩. (Tok Pisin is one of the national languages in PNG.)

---

[8] Abbreviated terms from left to right: Labio-Dental; Alveolar; Post-Alveolar; Retroflex; Pharyngeal – top down: Approximant; Lateral Approximant

[9] The phoneme /p/ occurs only in loanwords.

[10] Labio-velar.

2.2 Consonants

There are 13 consonant phonemes, including two semi-vowels.

Phonetic work chart

	Bilabial	Dental	Alveolar	Retroflex	Velar	Glottal
Plosive	p b	t̪ d̪			k k˺ g	
Nasal	m	n̪		ɳ	ħ
Flap			ɾ		
Fricative	ɸ β		s		ɣ	h
Lateral Approximant				ɭ	

/**w**/ [ʊ]	non-syllabic voiced, near-close, back, half-rounded vowel	/**j**/ [ɪ] non-syllabic voiced, near-close, front, unrounded vowel

All consonants are made with egressive lung air.

/p/   [p]   voiceless unaspirated bilabial plosive, occurs word medially in loan words only.

       ⟨kope⟩   /kɔpɛ/   [kɔˈ**p**æ]   'cup'

/b/   [β]   voiced bilabial fricative, occurs word-medially in free variation with [b], though rather more often than [b] in this position, but never if the next consonant is /ɭ/.

       ⟨hebe⟩   /hɛbɛ/   [hɛˈ**β**æ]   'tree'

       [b]   voiced bilabial plosive, occurs elsewhere – word initially and medially.

            ⟨babôu⟩   /babo/   [**b**ɑˈβo]   'maternal uncle'

            ⟨hobolôu⟩   /hoboɭo/   [hʌˈ**b**ɭo]   'sing-sing.IRR.NPST'

/t̪/   [t̪]   voiceless unaspirated dental plosive, occurs word initially and medially.

            ⟨tibo⟩   /t̪ibɔ/   [**t̪**iˈβɔ]   'flying fox'

            ⟨tiei⟩   /t̪iɛɪ/   [**t̪**ʲeɪ]   'sleep.NFUT'

            ⟨tolôu⟩   /t̪oɭo/   [**t̪**ɾo]   'hold.IRR.NPST'

            ⟨mata⟩   /mɑt̪ɑ/   [mɑˈ**t̪**ɑ]   'cockroach'

/d̪/   [d̪]   voiced dental plosive, occurs word initially and medially.

            ⟨du⟩   /d̪u/   [**d̪**u]   'hear'

            ⟨dia⟩   /d̪iɑ/   [**d̪**ʲɑ]   'prawn'

            ⟨dala⟩   /d̪ɑɭɑ/   [**d̪**ɾɑ]   'be/have'

            ⟨ôudaba⟩   /od̪abɑ/   [od̪əˈβɑ]   'day after tomorrow'

/k/	[k˺]	voiceless unreleased velar plosive, occurs word finally in names ending in /k/ borrowed from English.			
		⟨Dik⟩	/d̪ik/	[dik˺]	'Dick'
	[k]	voiceless unaspirated velar plosive, occurs elsewhere – word initially and medially.			
		⟨kiyou⟩	/kijoʊ/	[ˈki.oʊ]	'fig'
		⟨kolo⟩	/kɔɭɔ/	[kɭɒ]	'skin/bark'
		⟨makai⟩	/mɑkɑɪ/	[mʌˈkɑi]	'mark.NFUT'
		⟨mukuo⟩	/mũkɔ̃/[11]	[mũˈkʷɒ̃]	'nose'
		⟨makolo⟩	/mɑkɔɭɔ/	[ˈmɑkɭɔ]	'destroy.IRR.FUT'

/g/	[ɣ]	voiced velar fricative, occurs word medially in free variation with [g], but not if the next consonant is /ɭ/.			
		⟨maga⟩	/mɑgɑ/	[mʌˈɣɑ]	'jaw'
	[g]	voiced velar plosive, occurs elsewhere – word initially and medially.			
		⟨gali⟩	/gɑɭi/	[ˈgɑˈɭi]	'wild animal'
		⟨fogou⟩	/ɸɔgo/	[ɸɔˈgo]	'leave for'
		⟨kuguo⟩	/kugɔ/	[kuˈgʷɔ]	'paper/book'
		⟨degele⟩	/d̪ɛgɛɭɛ/	[d̪əˈgɭæ]	'do.IRR.FUT'

/m/	[m]	voiced bilabial nasal, occurs word initially and medially.			
		⟨mabi⟩	/mɑbi/	[mɑˈβi]	'cloud'
		⟨dumu⟩	/d̪ũmũ/	[d̪ɔ̃ˈmũ]	'be finished'[12]

/ɸ/	[ɸ]	voiceless bilabial fricative, occurs word initially and medially.			
		⟨fofou⟩	/ɸõɸõ/	[ɸõˈɸõ]	'be muddy'
		⟨folo⟩	/ɸɔɭɔ/	[ɸɭɒ]	'go up'
		⟨hafei⟩	/hɑ̃ɸɛ̃ɪ̃/	[hɑ̃ˈɸɛ̃ɪ̃]	'close to'

/s/	[s]	voiceless alveolar fricative, occurs word initially and medially.			
		⟨so⟩	/sɔ/	[sɔ]	'dog'
		⟨sio⟩	/siɔ/	[sʲɔ]	'bird'
		⟨moso⟩	/mõsõ/	[mə̃ˈsõ]	'house'

/h/	[ɦ̃]	voiceless nasalised glottal fricative, occurs word initially preceding [ũV] and [ĩV].			
		⟨huei⟩	/hũɛ̃ɪ̃/	[ɦ̃ʷɛ̃ɪ̃]	'water'
		⟨hiye⟩	/hĩɛ̃/	[ɦ̃ĩ.ˈæ̃]	'vegetable sp.'[13]
	[h]	voiceless glottal fricative, occurs elsewhere – word initially and medially.			
		⟨hei⟩	/hɛɪ/	[heɪ]	'axe'
		⟨dihi⟩	/d̪ihi/	[d̪iˈhi]	'child'
		⟨hoho⟩	/hõhõ/	[hɔ̃ˈhɔ̃]	'light'

---

[11] See 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH and 2.8.4 BLEED-THROUGH – HOW TO SPELL.

[12] Foothill dialect

[13] Tok Pisin: 'pitpit' (*Saccharum edule*).

/w/ [ʊ]   voiced, near-close, back, half-rounded vowel, interpreted as a consonant when occurring preceding V (≠/u/) word initially and between Vs (the last one ≠/u/).

⟨wo⟩	/wɔ/	[ʊɔ]	'attack'
⟨dóûwa⟩	/ḍowɑ/	[ḍoˈʊɑ]	'hornbill'

/j/ [ɪ]   voiced, near-close, front, unrounded vowel, interpreted as a consonant when occurring preceding V (≠/i/) word initially and between Vs (the last one ≠/i/).

⟨yo⟩	/jɔ/	[ɪɔ]	'banana'
⟨beye⟩	/bɛjɛ/	[bɛɪˈæ]	'possum/rat'

/l̪/ [n̪]   voiced dental nasal, occurs word and clitic initially.

⟨na⟩	/l̪ã/[14]	[n̪ã]	'2s'
⟨anóûsi⟩	/ãl̪osi/	[ãn̪oˈsi]	'but I …' (a=nóu=si '1s=only=CNTR')

[ɾ]   voiced flapped alveolar vibrant, occurs following /t̪V/, /ḍV/ and in free variation with [l̪] following /sV/.

⟨tolóû⟩	/t̪ol̪o/	[t̪ro]	'hold.IRR.NPST'
⟨dala⟩	/ḍal̪ɑ/	[ḍrɑ]	'be/have'
⟨sele⟩	/sɛl̪ɛ/	[sɛˈræ]	'money'

[ɳ]   voiced retroflex alveolar nasal, occurs word medially in nasal words.

⟨hulia⟩	/hũl̪ã/[15]	[hũˈɳĩã]	'dark'
⟨mala⟩	/mãl̪ã/	[mʌˈɳã]	'younger sibling'

[ɭ]   voiced retroflex alveolar lateral, occurs elsewhere.

⟨nele⟩	/l̪ɛl̪ɛ/	[n̪ɛˈɭæ]	'2DU'
⟨tobolóû⟩	/t̪obol̪o/	[t̪ʌˈbɭo]	'speak.IRR.NPST'

2.2.1 Consonant harmony

Consonant harmony is limited to the phoneme /l̪/. When a <u>root</u> starts with this phoneme, manifested as [n̪], it takes no other consonant than itself in the rest of the root.

nal<u>a</u>	/l̪ãl̪ã/	[n̪ɔ̃ˈn̪ã]	'write'
nel<u>e</u>	/l̪ɛ̃l̪ɛ̃/	[n̪ɛ̃ˈn̪æ̃]	'strength'

A few words starting with [n̪] have a /g/ in them. They are, or probably are, affixed with the object focus suffix *-gV*, a kind of transitiviser. In *nogo* 'your friend' the *n-* 'second singular' is a prefix.

nogolóû	/l̪ogol̪o/	[n̪oˈgɭo]	'hug.NPST'	(nóu-góu-l-óu	'hug-OF-IRR-NPST')
nogo	/l̪ɔgɔ/	[n̪ɔˈgɔ]	'your friend'	(n-ogo	'2S.EMP-friend')

This rule does not apply to loan words.

neke	/l̪ɛkɛ/	[n̪ɛˈkæ]	'net'

---

[14] See 2.8.1 Consonants – SPELLING OF /l̪/ AND /j/.

[15] See 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH and 2.8.4 BLEED-THROUGH – HOW TO SPELL.

2.3 Vowels

There are 6 monophthongs and 4 diphthongs.

2.3.1 Monophthongs

There are 6 vowel phonemes.

Phonetic work chart

	Front		Central		Back
Close	**i**				**u**
	(ɪ)[16]				(ʊ)[16]
Close-mid			↑		**o**
			←ə→	↑	
Open-mid	ɛ		↓	· ←ʌ→	ɔ
	æ			↓	
Open			ɑ		ɒ

Due to vowel harmony rules, [ə] and [ʌ] are allophones of all phonemes, (see further on in this section).

All vowels are voiced and made with egressive lung air.

/i/   [ɛ]   open-mid, front, unrounded vowel, occurs word initially before syllables with /i/.

	⟨ili⟩	/iḷi/	[ɛˈḷi]	'go.IRR.NFUT'
	⟨igi⟩	/igi/	[ɛˈgi]	'stone'

     [i]   close, front, unrounded vowel, occurs elsewhere – word initially, medially and finally.

	⟨ikoke⟩	/ikɔkɛ/	[iˈkɔkæ]	'nail'
	⟨tigi⟩	/tigi/	[ˈt̩igi]	'vine'
	⟨wowi⟩	/wɔwi/	[ˈʊɒʊi]	'butterfly'

/ɛ/   [æ]   near-open, front, unrounded vowel, occurs word finally.[17]

	⟨habage⟩	/haβagɛ/	[hʌβaˈgæ]	'later'

     [ɛ]   open-mid, front, unrounded vowel, occurs elsewhere – word initially and medially

	⟨esofei⟩	/ɛ̃sɔɸɛ̃ɪ̃/	[ɛ̃ˈsɒ̃ɸɛ̃ɪ̃]	'by him/herself'
	⟨hele⟩	/hɛḷɛ/	[hɛˈḷæ]	'yes'

/ɑ/   [ɑ]   open, <u>central</u>, half-rounded vowel, occurs word initially, medially and finally.

	⟨asa⟩	/asɑ/	[ɑˈsɑ]	'ringworm'
	⟨bago⟩	/bagɔ/	[bɑˈgɔ]	'hornbill'
	⟨siya⟩	/sijɑ/	[si.ˈɑ]	'sugarcane'

/u/   [u]   close, back, rounded vowel, occurs word initially, medially and finally.

	⟨ulie⟩	/ũṇɛ̃/	[ũˈṇĩæ̃]	'cicada'
	⟨gule⟩	/guḷɛ/	[guˈḷæ]	'fish spear'
	⟨subulu⟩	/subuḷu/	[ˈsəβəḷu]	'sweet potato'

---

[16] [ɪ] near-close, front, unrounded vowel and [ʊ] near-close, back, half-rounded vowel occur in consonant position word initially and medially (see 2.2 CONSONANTS: /w/ and /j/). These two sounds also occur as off-glides of the diphthongs (see 2.3.2 DIPHTHONGS). I do realize there are other ways to analyse [u]/[ʊ]//w/ and [i]/[ɪ]//j/.

[17] In nasal verbs taking the suffix ⟨-e⟩ 'FUT', which usually would be pronounced [æ̃], the pronunciation may vary between [æ̃], [ɛ̃] and even [ɛ̃ɪ̃].

/o/   [o]   close-mid, back, rounded vowel, occurs word initially, medially, and finally.

    ⟨ôubobo͜u⟩   /õbɔ̃bõ/   [ˈȭβɔ̃ˈβõ]   'bee'

    ⟨môusi⟩   /mosi/   [ˈmoˈsi]   'bird of prey sp.'

    ⟨sôu⟩   /so/   [so]   'edible leaf sp.'

/ɔ/   [ɒ]   open, back, rounded vowel, occurs word initially, medially and finally, generally
        following or preceding /w/, /u/ and following /ĺ/.

    ⟨owôu⟩   /ɔwo/   [ɒʊˈo]   'older sister'

    ⟨guokôu⟩   /guɔko/   [gʷɒˈko]   'stomach'

    ⟨bolo⟩   /bɔ̃ĺɔ̃/   [bĺɒ̃]   'good'

    [ɔ]   open-mid, back, rounded vowel, occurs elsewhere, word initially, medially and
        finally.

    ⟨olôufei⟩   /ɔĺoɸɛ̃ĩ/   [ɔĺoˈɸɛ̃ĩ]   'all'

    ⟨mogo⟩   /mɔgɔ/   [mɔˈgɔ]   'friend'

    ⟨o⟩   /ɔ/   [ɔ]   'man'

In addition to the allophones listed under each vowel phoneme, the following applies:

/V/   [ə], [ʌ], [Ø]

    occur word medially, preceding a syllable with a vowel of the same kind; i.e. in a word with the same vowel
    in two consecutive syllables, the vowel in the first of these syllables often becomes centralised or disappears
    altogether.

    ⟨difi⟩   /diɸi/   [ˈd̪əɸi]   'hot'

    ⟨fele⟩   /ɸɛ̃ĺɛ̃/   [ɸə̃ˈŋæ̃]   'come up'

    ⟨gaba⟩   /gɑbɑ/   [gʌˈβɑ]   'step over'

    ⟨komôu⟩   /komo/   [kʌˈmo]   'kingfisher sp.'

    ⟨dulu⟩   /d̪uĺu/   [d̪ɾu]   'hear.IRR.NFUT'

    ⟨folo⟩   /ɸɔĺɔ/   [ɸĺɒ]   'go up'

2.3.2 Diphthongs

There are four diphthongs, in Konai defined as low-high vowel sequences, occurring in the same positions as do monophthongs. However, the most correct statement about distribution is to say that the diphthongs only occur word finally. As will be seen below in the examples, a diphthong in initial position does only occur in one-syllable words of the shape VV. Very few words have been found which has a phonemic diphthong in medial position. However, there are non-phonemic diphthongs word medially due to bleed-through (see 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH).

Diphthongs

	Front	Central	Back
Close.mid-Close			oʊ
Open.mid-Close	ɛɪ		ɔʊ
Open-Close		ɑɪ	

_____

There is contrast between the phoneme /o/ ⟨ôu⟩ and the diphthong /ou/ ⟨ou⟩, e.g. *tobôu* 'say' and *tobou* 'said'.

    There is also a non-frequent contrast between the phoneme /ɔ/ ⟨o⟩ and the diphthong /ɔʊ/ ⟨ou⟩, e.g. *mogo* 'friend' and *mogou* 'mouth'[18].

_____

[18] Literally: *maga* + *u* 'jaw+hole'; also, the distinction /oʊ/ and /ɔʊ/ is under-differentiated (see 2.8.3 DIPHTHONGS – SPELLING ...).

Among the front vowels, there is contrast between /ɛ/ ⟨e⟩ and /ɛɪ/ ⟨ei⟩, e.g. *dege* 'do' and *degei* 'did'. Since there is no */e/ phoneme, the diphthong /ɛɪ / could be interpreted as the missing */e/ phoneme.

```
        /i/           /u/

          *\/e/       /o/   ≠   /ou/
        ↗
/ɛɪ/    ≠    /ɛ/       /ɔ/   ≠   /ɔu/
```

_____

/ɛɪ/   [ɛɪ]   open-mid to near-close, front, unrounded diphthong, occurs in a few one-syllable words.

⟨ei⟩	/ɛɪ/	[ɛɪ]	'1PL.EX'
⟨tei⟩	/t̪ɛɪ/	[t̪ɛɪ]	'dead'

[eɪ]   close-mid to near-close, front, unrounded diphthong, occurs word finally and rarely word medially.

⟨degei⟩	/d̪ɛgɛɪ/	[d̪əˈgeɪ]	'do.NFUT'
⟨kafei⟩	/kaɸɛɪ/	[kɑˈɸeɪ]	'blood'

Very few words have been found with a medial /ɛɪ/.

⟨Deima⟩	/d̪ɛɪma/	[ˈd̪eɪmɑ]	'a clan name'
⟨die feile⟩	/d̪iɛ̃ fɛɪlɛ/	[d̪iˈɛ̃ ɸɛ[iˈæ]	'will sing' (die#**fei**-l-e 'song#**sing**-IRR-FUT')

In the last example, the verb stem, in this form of the verb, ends in /ɛɪ/, which starts the bleed-through process when conjugated in an irrealis mood.[19]

/aɪ/   [aɪ]   open to near-close, central to front, unrounded diphthong, occurs word finally.

⟨dabai⟩	/d̪aβaɪ/	[d̪əˈβaɪ]	'work'
⟨ai⟩	/ãɪ̃/	[ãɪ̃]	'deep'

/ou/   [ou]   close-mid to near-close, back, rounded diphthong, occurs word finally.

⟨tou⟩	/t̪ou/	[t̪ou]	'hold.NFUT'
⟨you⟩	/jou/	[ɪou]	'not yet'
⟨ou⟩	/ou/	[ou]	'watch over.NFUT'[20]

/ɔu/   [ɒu]   open-mid to near-close, back, rounded diphthong, occurs word finally.

⟨sosou⟩	/sɔsɔu/	[səˈsɒu]	'unripe'
⟨diou⟩	/d̪ʲɔ̃ũ/	[d̪ʲ ɒ̃ũ]	'mosquito'
⟨ou⟩	/ɔ̃ũ/	[ɒ̃ũ]	'louse'

The diphthongs follow rules of vowel harmony, in that the high front vowel is the off-glide of the front and central vowels, and the high back vowel is the off-glide of back vowels.

_____

[19] See 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH and 2.8.4 BLEED-THROUGH – HOW TO SPELL.

[20] Mountain dialect.

2.3.3 Vowel harmony in word roots

Vowel harmony is a strong feature of this language. This section relates to vowel harmony in roots. See other kinds of vowel under 2.7 MORPHO-PHONEMIC PROCESSES.

A large number of roots have only one kind of vowel

Though any combination of vowels may occur in a root, a large number of roots have only one kind of vowel.

hebe	/hɛβɛ/	[hɛˈβæ]	'tree'
dogoû	/d̪ogo/	[d̪oˈɡo]	'sharpen'
dihi	/d̪ihi/	[diˈhi]	'child'
fel̠e	/ɸɛ̃ɛ̃/	[ɸɛ̃ˈŋæ]	'come up'
gala	/gɑɭɑ/	[gɑˈɭɑ]	'bite'

However, as could be seen in the list towards the end of 2.3.1 MONOPHTHONGS, in a word with the same vowel in two consecutive syllables, the vowel in the first of these syllables is often centralised or even deleted (see also the short descriptions under the two following headings). The reason why sometimes the first vowel is not centralised or deleted, as it is not in the above list, is unclear.

Interpretation of [ə] and [ʌ], word medially

The phonetic manifestations [ə] and [ʌ], word medially, are interpreted by mother-tongue speakers as the same vowel as in the following syllable. For word initial [ʌ] see 2.8.2 SPELLING OF ... INITIAL [ʌ].

dafa	/d̪ɑɸɑ/	[d̪əˈɸɑ]	'be tired of'
tem̠e	/t̪ɛ̃mɛ̃/	[t̪ʌ̃ˈmæ̃]	'sago thatch'

Phonetic consonant clusters

In addition, the phonetic consonant clusters [bɭ], [t̪ɾ], [d̪ɾ], [kɭ], [ɡɭ] and [ɸɭ] are not interpreted phonemically as consonant clusters, but as the first three segments in /C₁V₁C₂V₁/, where the first vowel is the same as the one in the following syllable.

hebele	/hɛbɛɭɛ/	[hʌˈbɭæ]	'carry.IRR.FUT'
dulu	/duɭu/	[d̪ɾu]	'hear.IRR.NFUT'
tofoloû	/t̪oɸoɭo/	[t̪əˈɸlo]	'step.IRR.NPST'

Diphthongs

The diphthongs follow rules of vowel harmony, in that the high front vowel is the off-glide of the front and central vowels, and the high back vowel is the off-glide of back vowels.

/ɛɪ/	⟨bei⟩	/bɛɪ/	'snake'	/oʊ/	⟨tobou⟩	/toboʊ/	'say.NFUT'
/ɑɪ/	⟨kai⟩	/kɑɪ/	'cut.NFUT'	/ɔʊ/	⟨bolou⟩	/bɔ̃ɭɔ̃ʊ̃/	'two'[21]

2.3.4 Bleed-through

Another feature of this language is what we have called bleed-through. It means that either of the two high vowels /i/ and /u/ may "bleed" through into the next syllable on either side. It occurs within a root as well as over a morpheme boundary. Bleeding through a preceding consonant, <u>left bleed-through</u>, gives rise to a non-phonemic diphthong that a mother-tongue speaker is normally unaware of. In the following examples, the first column gives the morphemes, written with orthographic symbols. See also 2.8.4 BLEED-THROUGH – HOW TO SPELL.

MORPHEMIC FORM	GLOSS	ORTHOGRAPHY	PHONEMIC	PHONETIC
gabagi	neck, front	⟨gabagi⟩	/gɑβɑgi/	[gəβɑɪˈgi]
na-l-u	eat-IRR-NFUT	⟨nolu⟩	/ɭɔ̃ɭũ/	[n̪õ̃ʊ̃ˈn̪ũ]

In the first example above, the final /i/ has bled through to the left into the previous syllable forming a phonetic diphthong with the preceding /ɑ/. The final /u/ in the next example bleeds through in the same way, forming a phonetic diphthong with the preceding vowel.[22]

---

[21] Under-differentiating of /oʊ/ and /ɔʊ/.

[22] Vowel harmony also affects this word (see 2.7.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN VERBS).

Bleeding through a following consonant, <u>right bleed-through</u>, sometimes makes the vowel causing the bleed-through to be deleted from its original position as in the second example. This is especially common in verb conjugation, where the consonant involved is /l̪/.

MORPHEMIC FORM	GLOSS	ORTHOGRAPHY	PHONEMIC	PHONETIC
kugo	'paper/book'	⟨kugu**o**⟩	/kugɔ/	[kuˈgʷɔ]
bigi-l-e	'wash-IRR-FUT'	⟨bigile⟩	/bigil̪ɛ/	[biˈgl̪iæ]
ul**e**	'cicada'	⟨uli**e**⟩	/ũl̪ɛ̃/	/ ũˈŋ̊iæ̃/

In the last example /u/ bleeds through /l̪/ and comes out as [i]. This only happens with /l̪/.

A mother-tongue speaker is more aware of right bleed-through than of left bleed-through.

2.4 Interpretation of non-syllabic high vowels

In this section I will look at where [ɪ] and [ʊ] are interpreted as semi-vowels. I will also look into palatalisation and labialisation.

2.4.1 Semi-vowels

<u>Inter-vocalic</u> [ɪ] and [ʊ] as well as <u>word initial</u> [ɪ] and [ʊ] <u>preceding a vowel</u> are interpreted as /j/ and /w/ to fit the most common CV pattern.

koyo	/kɔ**j**ɔ/	[kʌɪˈɒ]	'who?'
tewe	/tɛ**w**ɛ/	[t̪ʌʊˈæ]	'know'
wai	/**w**ɑi/	[ʊɑɪ]	'pig'
ya	/**j**ɑ/	[ɪɑ]	'go.DU/PL'

There is no contrast between e.g. [ʊɑɪ], [wɑɪ] and [uwɑɪ]. All three pronunciations give the same meaning 'pig'.

A transitional semi-vowel may be inserted between the parts of a compound word, if the last part starts with a vowel.

*o damal**e**=(y)ode-i*   /o d̪ãmã[ɛ̃**j**ɔdɛɪ/   '(a) believer/ (a) man (who has) said true'   (man true=(**TRSV**)IQV-NFUT)

Words with seemingly one of the four <u>diphthongs</u> /ɛɪ/, /ɑɪ/, /oʊ/, and /ɔʊ/, and which are followed by a vowel, are interpreted as shown in the second column, rather than as shown in the third column, i.e. the off-glide is interpreted as a semi-vowel.

[ɛ̃ɪˈæ]	/ɛ̃**j**ɛ̃/	*/ɛ̃ɪjɛ̃/	*ey**e***	'older brother'
[ɑɪˈæ]	/ɑ**j**ɛ/	*/ɑɪjɛ/	*aye*	'father'
[d̪oˈʊɑ]	/d̪o**w**ɑ/	*/d̪ouwɑ/	*dôuwa*	'hornbill'
[ɒʊˈo]	/ɔ**w**o/	*/ɔuwo/	*owôu*	'older sister'

The reason for this interpretation is that there are no non-suspect diphthongs word initially or medially. The interpretation is supported by how people tend to write words of this kind.

See also the next section for other occurrences of the semi-vowels.

2.4.2 Palatalisation and labialisation

Phonetic palatalisation and labialisation is [i] and [u], respectively, in the following position: **Ci/uV**. Analysis on *CECIL* and *Speech Analyzer*, as well as testing how people write, indicate that the degree of palatalisation and labialisation may vary and that this variation is contrastive.

<u>Palatalisation</u>

The sequence **CiV** may become phonetically palatalised, i.e. the /i/ in the syllable **Ci** is weakened, and the sequence is phonetically [CʲV] but interpreted as /CiV/. Note that the preceding consonant in this group is dental or alveolar.

dia	/d̪iɑ/	[d̪ʲɑ]	'prawn'
tia	/t̪iɑ/	[t̪ʲɑ]	'sleep'
sio	/siɔ/	[sʲɔ]	'bird'

However, contrasting with the above examples, the /i/ in the sequence **CiV**, may also have its full value. In that case, it does not become phonetically palatalised, i.e. the /i/ in the syllable **Ci** is **not** weakened, and the sequence is phonetically [Ci.V], interpreted as /CijV/.[23] Note that the preceding consonant in this group is bilabial or velar.

biya	/bijɑ/	[**bi**.ˈɑ]	'stick'
miye	/mĩjɛ̃/	[**mĩ**.ˈæ̃]	'fish'
fiya	/fijɑ/	[**fi**.ˈɑ]	'fall'
kiyei	/kijɛɪ/	[**ki**.ˈeɪ]	'pandanus'
giyôu	/gijo/	[**gi**.ˈo]	'eel'
hiye	/h̃ĩjɛ̃/	[**h̃ĩ**.ˈæ̃]	'vegetable sp.'

Between these two patterns there are contrasts, where the interpretation of the vowel sequence does not depend on the place of articulation of the preceding consonant.

sio	/siɔ/	[**sʲ**ɔ]	'bird'
siya	/sijɑ/	[**si**.ˈɑ]	'sugarcane'
dio	/d̪iɔ/	[**d̪ʲ**ɔ]	'bone'
diyo	/d̪ijɔ/	[**d̪i**.ˈɔ]	'breadfruit'
dio̱	/d̪ĩɔ̃/	[**d̪ʲ**ɔ̃]	'grass'
diyo̱	/d̪ĩjɔ̃/	[**d̪ĩ**.ˈɔ̃]	'parrot sp.'
fiya	/fijɑ/	[**fi**.ˈɑ]	'fall'
fia	/fiɑ/	[**fʲ**ɑ]	'wild'

This shows up both on *CECIL/Speech Analyzer* and in the way mother-tongue speakers write. The segment **i** is measurably longer in a word they tend to write as ⟨-iyV⟩ than in a word they tend to write as ⟨iV⟩. For some words, the difference can also be seen in that a word with a longer **i** segment has two stress tops (see Årsjö & Årsjö 2005). In Odoodee a similar contrast is analysed as length.

Labialisation

The sequence **CuV** may become phonetically labialised, i.e. the /u/ in the syllable **Cu** is weakened, and the sequence is phonetically /CʷV/ but interpreted as /CuV/.

fua	/fuɑ/	[**fʷ**ɑ]	'break open'
kueya	/kuɛjɑ/	[**kʷ**ɛɪˈɑ]	'cassowary'
guo	/guɔ/	[**gʷ**ɒ]	'cough'
huei	/h̃ũɛ̃ĩ/	[**h̃ʷ**ɛ̃ɪ]	'water'

But the /u/ in the sequence **CuV** is not always weakened. When it is not, the sequence is phonetically [Cu.V], interpreted as /CuwV/.[24]

muwôu	/muwo/	[**mu**.ˈo]	'reward'
duwo	/d̪uwɔ/	[**d̪u**.ˈɒ]	'sit'
suwa	/suwɑ/	[**su**.ˈɑ]	'tail'

Also in this group there are a few contrasts.

duo	/d̪uɔ/	[**d̪ʷ**ɒ]	'spirit/inside'
duwo	/d̪uwɔ/	[**d̪u**.ˈɒ]	'sit'
kueya	/kuɛjɑ/	[**kʷ**ɛɪˈɑ]	'cassowary'
tokuwe	/tɔkuwæ/	[**t̪ɔku**ˈwæ]	'wall'

---

[23] The phonetic sequence [ḭV] only occurs with bleed-through, e.g. ⟨ile⟩ /ilɛ̃/ [ɛ**ḭ**ˈæ] 'go.IRR.FUT' (see 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH).

[24] The phonetic sequence [ṵV] only occurs with bleed-through, e.g. ⟨dulo⟩ /d̪ulɔ/ [d̪ɾṵˈɔ] 'hear.IRR.FUT'. The phonetic sequences *[buV] has not been found.

2.5 Syllable patterns

There are five syllable types in Konai: V, VV, CV, CVV and CVVV. The vowel sequence in the syllable type CVV may be either low-high (the diphthongs) or high-low (palatalisation/labialisation). The vowel sequence in CVVV is high-low-high (palatalisation/labialisation + a diphthong).

	one-syll. word		word initially		word medially		word finally	
V	*o*	'man'	*a*.ta	'aunt'	---		---	
VV	*ei*	'1PL.EX'	---		---		---	
CV	*ta*	'bow'	*da*.fa	'bored'	a.*bo*.go͜u	'foot'	gu.su.*gu*	'morning'
CVV	*dou*	'fire'	---[25]		---		da.*bai*	'work'
	sio	'bird'	*tio*.lu	'falling asleep'	---		a*dio͡u*	'mother'
CVVV	*dio͜u*	'mosquito'	---		---		---	

2.6 Suprasegmentals

Nasalisation, tone, stress and length were investigated, the last three by using the *CECIL Speech Analysis System* (1995) and the *Speech Analyzer* (1998, 2004). Stress and length are predictable; nasalisation and tone are not. Nasalisation is written but tone is not. Last under this heading there are a few comments about intonation.

2.6.1 Nasalisation

There is phonemic word nasalisation. This means that nasalisation is a feature of a word root or of an enclitic, not a feature of a single vowel phoneme. In the examples below, =*fei* 'total', =*ha* 'genitive', =*sie* (meaning unknown) and =*ko͡u* 'locative' are enclitics. The nasalisation of nasalised clitics does not spread to the rest of the word, nor does the nasalisation of a stem spread to a non-nasalised clitic.

e	[æ̃]	'3s'
fele	[ɸɔ̃ˈŋæ̃]	'come up'
sese	[sɛ̃ˈsæ̃]	'grass snake'
olo͡u=fei	[ɔlo'ɸẽĩ]	'all=total'
aye=ha	['ɑɪɛhã]	'father=GEN'
bobo͡u=sie	[boβo'ʃĩæ̃]	'nephew/niece' (meanings of parts unknown)
moso=ko͡u	[mə̃sɒ̃ˈko]	'house=LOC'

Suffixes vary. The indicative tense suffixes take their nasalisation from the preceding morpheme.

mo͜u		[mõ]	'get'	
molo͜u	(mo͜u-l-o͜u)	[mɔ̃ˈŋõ]	'gets/will get'	(get-IRR-NPST)

Compare:

tobo͡u		[tʌˈβo]	'speak'	
tobolo͡u	(tobo͡u-l-o͡u)	[tʌˈblo]	'speaks/will speak'	(speak-IRR-NPST)

One derivational suffix, *-le* 'approximate locativiser' takes the nasalisation from a preceding noun.

hueile	(huei-le)	['h̃ʷẽɪŋæ̃]	'in the water'	(water-A.LOCR)

Compare:

agudile	(agudio-le)[26]	[ʌˈguḍriæ]	'in the sky'	(sky-A.LOCR)

All other suffixes, as well as the few prefixes present in the language, are in themselves non-nasal and remain so even in nasal words. Compare, for example, the following three forms:

a so͜u		[a sõ]	'open a door'	
a solo͡u	(a so͜u-l-o͡u)	[a snõ]	'opens/will open a/the door'	(door#open-IRR-NPST)
a so͜ugolo͡u	(a so͜u-go͡u-l-o͡u)	[a sõˈglo]	'opens/will open the door'	(door#open-**OF**-IRR-NPST)

---

[25] But see 2.3.2 DIPHTHONGS: /ɛɪ/

[26] For the change in the root see 2.7.3 VOWEL FRONTING IN LOCATIVE ADVERBS.

In a loan word, the nasalisation may stop in the middle of a word.

hal<u>ŏu</u>wai	[hãŋ̃õʊˈɑɪ]	'village'	(from Aekyom)[27]
<u>e</u>sol	[ɛ̃ˈsɔl̪]	'angel'	(from English)

2.6.2 Tone

There is phonemic word tone. On one, two and three syllable words, the contrastive patterns are a <u>fall-rise</u>, a <u>rising</u>, a <u>rise-fall</u>, a <u>falling</u> and a <u>fall-fall</u> tone pattern over the word. The fall-rise is by far the most common.

dô̭u	[d̪o ↘ ↗]	'draw (water)'
dosô̭u	[ˈd̪ɒ ↘ so ↗]	'index finger'
sibigi	[si ↘ βi ↘ ˈgi ↗]	'dirt'
mal<u>a</u>	[mʌ̃ˈŋã ↗]	'younger sibling'
meleki	[mɛˈl̪ɛki ↗]	'dish'
da	[d̪ɑ ↗ ↘]	'dig'
awa	[ɑ ↗ ʊˈɑ ↘]	'black-palm'
bala	[bɑˈl̪ɑ ↘]	'paddle'
habiya	[hɑβi.ˈɑ ↘]	'tail'
sabi	[ˈsɑ ↘ βi ↘]	'lizard'
sisig<u>o</u>	[sĩ ↘ sĩ ↘ ˈgõ ↘]	'children'

Unlike stress, tone does not change when the word is pronounced in isolation. It is, however, possible that the significant contrastiveness is in the rising or falling of the last syllable, in which case there are only two contrastive patterns instead of five.

Looking at the stress and tone graphs together, we find that the graphs usually follow each other. However, in a few words they do not do so at all. And in quite a few more words the graphs follow each other for only a small part of the word. When the graphs diverge, the tone goes up while the stress (amplitude; see next section) goes down. We have found no significance in this; nor is it necessarily constant as stress is not a constant feature.

2.6.3 Stress

Stress, in this grammar, is defined as <u>loudness</u>. The default stress falls on the last syllable.

ili	[ɛˈl̪i]	'go.IRR.NFUT'
tobô̭u	[t̪ʌˈβo]	'speak'
tem<u>e</u>	[t̪ʌˈmæ̃]	'sago thatch'
s<u>e</u>s<u>e</u>	[sɛ̃ˈsæ̃]	'grass snake'
giyô̭u	[gi.ˈo]	'eel'
miy<u>e</u>	[mĩ.ˈæ̃]	'fish'
kueya	[kʷɛɪˈɑ]	'cassowary'
sibigi	[siβiˈgi]	'dirt'
sisig<u>o</u>	[sĩsĩˈgõ]	'children'
mos<u>o</u>=kô̭u	[mə̃sõˈko]	'house=LOC'

However, even though stress is mostly predictable, and therefore non-phonemic, it may vary on the same word in isolation. I say this, even though I know that testing stress in isolation is unreliable.

kafei	[ˈkɑɸɛɪ]	or	[kɑˈɸɛɪ]	'blood'
sosi	[ˈsɔsi]	or	[sɔˈsi]	'ant'

In fact, the data we have is inconsistent. Working with one man using the *Speech Analyzer*, the default stress in his speech is indeed on the final syllable. Still, in about 9% of the words we have analysed, we can only partly explain why the stress is not on the final syllable.

---

[27] Aekyom is an unrelated language group to the west. The Konais did not use to live in villages, but in longhouses.

Some reasons may be:

- non-stressed enclitics

Some enclitics do not take stress, e.g. =*ha* 'genitive/control' and =*me* 'topic marker'.

Godi=ha	[gɔˈdihã]	'God=GEN'
eye=ha	[ɛ̃ˈʔɛ̃hã]	'big brother=GEN'
hulia.me	[hũˈŋ̃ɑ̃mæ]	'night.TOP'

- loan words

ikoke	[iˈkɔkæ]	'nail (for building)'
subulu	[ˈsəβəɭu]	'sweet potato'
meleki	[mɛˈɭɛki]	'dish'

- words of the form *CaCi* are often of equal stress, or the first syllable may be stressed

gali	[ˈgɑˈɭi]	'wild animal'
habi	[ˈhɑˈβi]	'afternoon'
sabi	[ˈsɑβi]	'lizard'

- bleed-through[28]

In the two following words it looks as if the stress is on the penultimate syllable, when in fact it is on the last.

mulo	[mũˈŋuɔ]	'go.down.IRR.FUT'
bigile	[biˈgɭiæ]	'wash.IRR.FUT'

2.6.4 Length

Length is non-phonemic. Stressed syllables have longer vowels. An utterance final syllable has a very long vowel, independently of stress.

sosi	[ˈsɔːsiːː]	'ant'	[ˈɔ] is 179 ms long; [i] is 417 ms long
sogo	[sɔˈgɔːː]	'breadfruit'	[ɔ] is 74 ms long; [ˈɔ] is 483 ms long

However, length is a feature that can be used for special effects, which makes it partly phonemic. Some adjectives may be said with a lengthened vowel to signal enhanced degree.

sudo	[ˈsud̯ɔ]	'many'
suudo	[ˈsuːd̯ɔ]	'very many'

2.6.5 Intonation

There are several intonation contours in Konai. One of the differences between a final and a medial clause (see 6 CLAUSES) is intonation. These are the contours I have found:

Statement

Medial clause	level or slightly rising intonation
Final clause	falling intonation
Final clause in mid-sentence	level intonation (marked by a semicolon in the free translation of examples)

Command	level intonation
Question (yes-no)	sharply rising intonation on the last syllable
Question (content)	falling intonation

---

[28] See 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH.

2.7 Morpho-phonemic processes

There are two major morpho-phonemic processes in Konai: **vowel harmony** and **bleed-through**. Bleed-through occurs both within word roots and across morpheme boundaries. It is an inherent quality of high vowels and is therefore described under Vowels: 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH. In contrast, vowel harmony is not necessarily a feature of a word root or stem, but it is a very important morpho-phonemic process (but see also 2.3.3 VOWEL HARMONY IN WORD ROOTS.)

There are two kinds of vowel harmony across morpheme boundaries. The first one is manifested in the conjugation of verbs. It is of three kinds. The second one is minor and involves also other word classes.

- Vowel harmony in verbs
  - Vowel harmony in final verbs; also used in past negative statements and in one optative mood
  - Vowel harmony in medial verbs; also used in present negative statements and in questions in present tense
  - Vowel harmony involving prospective aspect and purpose
- Minor vowel harmony

Three other morpho-phonemic processes have been observed.

- Vowel fronting in locative phrases
- Vowel epenthesis & vowel deletion in connection with quote verbs
- Nasalisation of topic marker
- De-nasalisation before /g/ /l/ and /k/

2.7.1 Vowel harmony in verbs

Vowel harmony is very prominent in verb conjugation. There are seven types of verbs, based on the last vowel of the stem[29]. In conjugated verbs of these different types, the main rule is that front vowels co-occur with front vowels and back vowels co-occur with back vowels. More specifically, tense suffixes vary in backness in accordance with the last vowel of the verb stem. In addition, the vowel in these suffixes also affects the vowel(s) in the stem in certain ways. A few other verbal suffixes also trigger the same kind of vowel harmony in the stem.

The vowel harmony triggered by the prospective aspect suffix and the purpose suffix is related to the phoneme /ɑ/.

2.7.1.1 Vowel harmony in final verbs

The suffixes triggering vowel harmony in final verbs are tense suffixes and a negative construction in past tense. In addition, the forms of the verbal roots/stems in one optative mood are the same as those used with the past tense suffixes.

Vowel harmony involving tense suffixation
These are the tense suffixes:

VERB TYPE	TENSE SUFFIXES	MEANING	USAGE	TENSE
1-5, 7	/-i/, /-u/	'non-future'	used on its own (realis)	past tense
			used together with the irrealis suffix /-l̬/	present tense
	/-ɛ/, /-ɔ/	'future'	used together with the irrealis suffix /-l̬/	future tense
6	/-u/	'past'[30]	used on its own (realis)	past tense
	/-o/	'non-past'	used together with the irrealis suffix /-l̬/	present and/or future tense

As can be seen, for six of the seven verb types, (1-5, 7), there are two phonological shapes for each suffix indicating tense. In a verb type, where the stem ends in a front vowel, a front vowel suffix will be used, while a verb stem ending in a back vowel, will trigger a back vowel suffix. (See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULE 1.)

If the stem ends in /ɑ/, the most common conjugation triggers a back vowel for present tense, but a front vowel for future tense. (See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULES 2 AND 3.)

For verb type 6, where the last stem vowel is /o/, i.e. a neither high nor low vowel, the distinction between present and future tense is neutralised, while a past versus a non-past tense parallels the marking of realis versus irrealis mood (see table on next page).

The vowel in the tense suffixes also affects the vowel(s) in the stem in certain ways. (See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULE 4, VOWEL HARMONY RULE 5 and VOWEL HARMONY RULE 7a & 7b.)

Type 4 verbs have a penultimate high vowel in the verb **root**, which affects the last vowel of the root in past tense in this verb type. (See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULE 6.)

---

[29] See 4.1.2 TYPES OF VERBS.

[30] In the examples, it is usually glossed NFUT 'non-future'.

The following table gives the general picture. For a full chart see 4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS.[31] The basic forms are written in orthographic characters.

BASIC FORM	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM	
	-i/-u	(-ɭ-)-i/-u/-o	(-ɭ-)-ɛ/-ɔ/-o[32]			
⟨migi⟩	/migi/[33]	/migi-ɭ-i/	/migi-ɭ-ɛ/	'come down'	type 1	ends in /i/
⟨sese⟩	/sɛsɛ-i/	/sisi-ɭ-i/	/sɛsɛ-ɭ-ɛ/	'follow'	type 2	ends in /ɛ/
⟨baha⟩	/bɑhɑ-i/	/bɔhɔ-ɭ-u/	/bɑhɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'look'	type 3a	ends in /ɑ/
⟨migi-ga⟩	/migi-gɑ-i/	/migi-gɔ-ɭ-u/	/migi-gɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'come.down-DU/PL'		
⟨ya⟩	/jã-ĩ/	/jã-ɭ-ĩ/	/jã-ɭ-ɛ̃/	'play'	type 3c	ends in /ɑ/
⟨biya⟩	/bijɛ-i/	/bijɔ-ɭ-u/	/bijɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'fight'	type 4	root: /i/uCɑ/
⟨dugu⟩	/dugu/	/dugu-ɭ-u/	/dugu-ɭ-ɔ/	'see'	type 5	ends in /u/
⟨sese-gu⟩	/sese-gu/	/sese-gu-ɭ-u/	/sese-gu-ɭ-ɔ/	'follow-OF'		
⟨sôu⟩	/sõ-ũ/	/sõ-ɭ-õ/	/sõ-ɭ-õ/	'open'	type 6	ends in /o/
⟨wo⟩	/wɛ-i/	/wɔ-ɭ-u/	/wɔ-ɭ-ɔ/	'attack'	type 7	ends in /ɔ/

In the following shorter table, four of the above verbs have been singled out to show how a verb may go from one conjugation type to another, when augmented for number or transitivity. These are examples only. The verb type, and so its conjugation pattern, is totally based on the final vowel of the verb **stem** (in type 4 on the penultimate and final vowel of the verb **root** (see above)).

BASIC FORM	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM
	-i/-u	(-ɭ-)-i/-u/-o	(-ɭ-)-ɛ/-ɔ/-o		
⟨migi⟩	/migi/	/migi-ɭ-i/	/migi-ɭ-ɛ/	'come down'	type 1
⟨migi-ga⟩	/migi-**ga**-i/	/migi-gɔ-ɭ-u/	/migi-gɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'come.down-**DU/PL**'	type 3a
⟨sese⟩	/sɛsɛ-i/	/sisi-ɭ-i/	/sɛsɛ-ɭ-ɛ/	'follow'	type 2
⟨sese-gu⟩	/sese-**gu**/	/sese-gu-ɭ-u/	/sese-gu-ɭ-ɔ/	'follow-**OF**/hand over'	type 5

As said before, vowel harmony, when triggered by affixation, affects the whole word, as shown by the bold characters in the roots/stems in the above tables. This is not always reflected in the spelling, however. The present forms of type 2 & 3 verbs above are repeated here including phonemic, phonetic and orthographic transcriptions. Note that the spelling is not phonemic but can be deduced from the basic form of the verb root. See also 2.8.5 VOWEL HARMONY – SPELLING OF A FEW EXCEPTIONS.

BASIC FORM	PHONEMIC	PHONETIC	ORTHOGRAPHY	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM
⟨sese⟩	/sisi-ɭ-i/	[sə'səɭi]	⟨**s**es**e**li⟩[34]	'follow'	type 2
⟨baha⟩	/bɔhɔ-ɭ-u/	[bʌhɒʊ'ɭu][35]	⟨**b**ah**o**lu⟩	'look'	type 3a

---

[31] Some of the verb types have sub-types. For the purpose of showing how vowel harmony works, only type 3 needs to be shown with a sub-type, where 3a is the common conjugation and 3c is rare. Type 4, in this section, refers to type 4a.

[32]   /-ɭ-/ 'IRR', /-i/, /-u/ 'NFUT', /-ɛ/, /-ɔ/ 'FUT', /-o/ 'NPST'

[33] Verb types 1 and 5 are interpreted as inherently past tense, if the context so allows, as they end in a high vowel. An alternative interpretation is that when the suffix is identical with the last stem vowel, assimilation occurs.

[34] **Not** *⟨**si**si**li**⟩ and in the next example: **not** *⟨**bo**holu⟩.

[35] Rules of bleed-through also apply; see 2.3.4 BLEED-THROUGH.

Negation with *-l-i me*i 'irrealis non-future negative'

Using the same verbs as above, the negative past forms are presented below. Part of the negative construction in past tense is realised with *-l-i* 'irrealis-non-future', where the non-future -V[+high] is always /i/, i.e. the suffix vowel **does not** follow any rules of vowel harmony. However, verb types 2, 4 and 7 show changes in the stem, due to vowel harmony effects from the suffix, which are the same as the changes that show up in positive, final verbs in realis mood/past tense, triggered by the suffix *-i* 'non-future'. See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULE 4, VOWEL HARMONY RULE 6 and VOWEL HARMONY RULES 7a & 7b. In type 2 verbs the vowel harmony effect is not reflected in the spelling.

BASIC FORM	PHONEMIC	GLOSS	ORTHOGRAPHY	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM	
⟨migi⟩	/migi-l̪-i mɛi/	come-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨migili mei⟩	'did not come down'	type 1	
⟨sese⟩	/sisi-l̪-i mɛi /	follow-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨seseli mei⟩	'did not follow'	type 2	(see V.H. Rule 4)
⟨baha⟩	/bɑhɑ-l-i mɛi /	look-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨bahali mei⟩	'did not look'	type 3a	
⟨ya⟩	/jã-l̪-i mɛi /	play-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨yali mei⟩	'did not play'	type 3c	
⟨biya⟩	/bijɛ-l̪-i mɛi /	fight-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨biyeli mei⟩	'did not fight'	type 4	(see V.H. Rule 6)
⟨dugu⟩	/dugu-l̪-i mɛi /	see-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨duguli mei⟩	'did not see'	type 5	
⟨sôu⟩	/sõ-l̪-i mei/	open-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨sôuli mei⟩	'did not open'	type 6	
⟨wo⟩	/wɛ-l-i mɛi/	attack-IRR-NFUT#NEG	⟨weli mei⟩	'did not attack'	type 7	(see V.H. Rules 7a&b)

Optative clitic =ye

Also, verbs in one conjugation of the optative mood (see 7.1.2.1 MORE ABOUT THE OPTATIVE) conjugate in the same way as do final verbs in realis mood/past tense. This verb form is then followed by =*ye* 'optative', and the meaning of the verb becomes "might verb" (see examples below).

BASIC FORM	OPTATIVE	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM
	(-){*i/u*}=*ye*		
⟨migi⟩	mig**i**=**ye**	'come.down.NFUT=OPT'	type 1
⟨sese⟩	sese-**i**=**ye**	'follow-NFUT=OPT'	type 2
⟨baha⟩	baha-**i**=**ye**	'look-NFUT=OPT'	type 3a
⟨ya⟩	ya-**i**=**ye**	'play-NFUT=OPT'	type 3c
⟨biya⟩	biye-**i**=**ye**	'fight-NFUT=OPT'	type 4
⟨dugu⟩	dug**u**=**ye**	'see.NFUT=OPT'	type 5
⟨sôu⟩	so-**u**=**ye**	'open-NFUT=OPT'	type 6
⟨wo⟩	we-**i**=**ye**	'attack-NFUT=OPT'	type 7

24) *ni̱   fiya-sige-i=ye.*   basic form: *fiyasige* 'fall.dl/pl' (type 2)
      2PL fall-DU/PL-NFUT=OPT
      ' ... you might fall.'

      di   ke̱   dohôugo-u=ye.   basic form: *dohogôu* 'pass by' (type 6)
      1PL.IN that pass.by-NFUT=OPT
      '... we (incl.) might pass it by.'

2.7.1.2 Vowel harmony in medial verbs

The suffixes triggering vowel harmony in medial verbs are of the same shape, but do not necessarily have the same meaning as those that trigger vowel harmony in final verbs (see 4.1.3 FINAL AND MEDIAL VERBS, AN INTRODUCTION). Also, only two morphophonemic rules apply. These two rules are the same as two of the seven rules, which apply in the conjugation of final verbs. (See APPENDIX 1). As a result, in certain verbs, the nucleus[36] of a medial form is different from the nucleus of the final form.

Also, a negative construction in present tense and the verb forms used in questions in present tense are also most easily described as using the vowel harmony that occurs in medial verbs.

---

[36] The nucleus of a verb form includes the stem, the irrealis marker *-l-*, the (portmanteau) tense suffixes; also the subjunctive suffix *-a*.

These are the suffixes that in final verbs signal tense, but in medial verbs signal relative tense[37], but also same versus different subject as the following clause.

VERB TYPE	SUFFIXES	MEANING IN MEDIAL VERBS	MEANING IN FINAL VERBS
1-5, 7	/-i/, /-u/	different subject, same time	'non-future'
	/-ɛ/, /-ɔ/, /ɑ/	same subject, sequence	'future'
6	/o/	different subject, same time	'non-future'
	/-ɭ[38]-o/	same subject, sequence	'present/future'

Even though the tense distinction in Konai is a binary one, non-future versus future for most verb types, a three way distinction, past, present and future, is made in final verbs with the help of the realis/irrealis marking. In medial verbs, this is not the case. Only a distinction between simultaneous, corresponding to non-future in a final verb, and sequence, corresponding to future, is made. In addition, these suffixes in medial verbs also signal same or different subject as stated above.

The important part, as far as vowel harmony goes, is that **the non-future medial forms are the same as the present tense forms for final verbs** (but without the irrealis suffix /-ɭ/). **The future forms are the same as the future final forms** (but usually without the irrealis suffix), **except for the verb types, where the last stem vowel is /ɑ/** (type 3 & 4). Verb type 3c is irregular. Verb type 6, as its last vowel is /o/, a vowel neither high nor low, again shows up with its own conjugation pattern. (See APPENDIX 1: Medial verbs; VOWEL HARMONY RULES 1 and 5 apply.)

The following table gives the general picture. The basic forms are written in orthographic characters.

BASIC FORM	MEDIAL HIGH VOWEL /-i/, /-u/, /o/; (/-ɭ-/ 'IRR') 'relative present' simultaneous different subject	FINAL 'present tense'	MEDIAL LOW VOWEL /-ɛ/, /-ɔ/, /ɑ/ 'relative future' sequence same subject	FINAL 'future tense'	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM
⟨kesigi⟩	/kɛsigi/	/kɛsigi-ɭ-i /	/kɛsigi-ɛ/	/kɛsigi-ɭ-ɛ /	'rouse.OF'	type 1
⟨sa-gi⟩	/sɑ-gi/	/sɑ-gi-ɭ-i /	/sɑ-gi-ɛ/	/sɑ-gi-ɭ-ɛ/	'put inside-OF'	
⟨igi-se⟩	/igi-sɛ-i/	/igi-sɛ-ɭ-i/	/igi-sɛ/	/igi-sɛ-ɭ-ɛ/	'remove-DU/PL'	type 2
⟨sa⟩	/sɔ-u/	/sɔ-ɭ-u/	/sɑ/	/sɑ-ɭ-ɛ/)	'put inside'	type 3a
⟨folo-ga⟩	/fɔlɔ-gɔ-u/	/fɔlɔ-gɔ-ɭ-u/	/fɔlɔ-gɑ/	/fɔlɔ-gɑ-ɭ-ɛ/)	'go up-DU/PL'	
⟨taga⟩	/tɑgɑ-i/	/tɑgɑ-ɭ-i/	/tɑgɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	**/tɑgɑ-ɭ-ɛ/**	'like'	type 3c
⟨tia⟩	/tiɔ-u/	/tiɔ-ɭ-u/)	/tiɑ/	/tiɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'sleep'	type 4
⟨dugu⟩	/dugu/	/dugu-ɭ-u/	/dugu-ɔ/	/dugu-ɭ-ɔ/	'see'	type 5
⟨sese-gu⟩	/sɛsɛ-gu/	/sɛsɛ-gu-ɭ-u/	/sɛsɛ-gu-ɔ/	/sɛsɛ-gu-ɭ-ɔ/	'follow-OF'[39]	
⟨tobóu⟩	/tobo/	/tobo-ɭ-o/	/tobo-ɭ-o/	/tobo-ɭ-o/	'say'	type 6
⟨folo⟩	/fɔlɔ-u/	/fɔlɔ-ɭ-u/	/fɔlɔ/	/fɔlɔ/	'go up'	type 7
⟨togo⟩	/tɔgɔ-u/	/tɔgɔ-ɭ-u/	/tɔgɔ-ɭ-ɔ/	/tɔgɔ-ɭ-ɔ/	'make'	

See 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERB for a complete chart.

In medial verbs of type 6, the final /o/ is inherently non-future. To express sequence, the irrealis -ɭ- is used together with the repetition of the vowel /o/. See 4.1.5.1.2 for a discussion.

---

[37] Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a contextually determined temporal reference point, regardless of the latter's temporal relation to the moment of utterance (Comrie 1985).
The *contextually determined temporal reference point* here is the event expressed by the verb, which is marked by this particular medial suffixation. So in this paper, *relative present tense* is defined as 'a relative tense that predicts that the next event will be simultaneous-like with the event expressed by the verb with this medial tense marking. Similarly *relative future tense*, in this paper, is defined as 'a relative tense that predicts that the next event will be sequential-like. The absolute tense of the two events may be past, present or future and is marked on the final verb. See also the following section: 7.3.2 TEMPORAL LINKING.

[38] Irrealis.

[39] 'hand over'

Medial verbs

25) *sas<u>ai</u>   <u>e</u>   do   hiye=do dege-**i**-môu, o   ke+d<u>ia</u>   hebe+m<u>a</u> Dahamo i*
     woman   3s sickness big=INT do-NFUT-PFV man that+3PL carry+put Dahamo go

     '… because **when** (my) wife was very sick, ... the men carried (her) and went (to) Dahamo …'

26) *D<u>ia</u>   i-**ga**,   Ôumemi=kôu folo-ga-i.*
     3PL go-DU/PL.FUT Oumemi=LOC   go.up-DU/PL-NFUT

     *Folo-**ga**-môu   ya-l-<u>**e**</u>   dele-gue-i.*
     go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV   play-IRR-FUT   be/have-DU/PL-NFUT

     'They went **and** arrived at Oumemi. **Having** arrived they kept playing/played **and** were.'

27) *Ke-ge   tia   kesi-gi-**e**-môu,   sasama=ye=ge   i-l-i-gi,*
     that-VBR sleep.FUT   rouse-OF-FUT-PFV   ring.finger=INS=F.CNTR   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

     a-li   tia-di,   abahai.
     road-E.LOCR sleep-HAB cave

     '**Having** fallen asleep **and** woken up like that, on Tuesday/on the second day, (we) go on until (we) usually sleep right along the road (in a) cave.'

28) *bateli   bokisi bol<u>ou</u> ke-ge   mal<u>a</u>   hagua,   n<u>a</u> dogogu-**o** dala-ba,*[40]
     battery box   two   that-VBR get.IRR.FUT come.FUT 2s put-FUT   be/have-PFV.IRR

     *<u>a</u>   mu-l-<u>**o**</u>   dugu-**o**   mal<u>a</u>   kuhe hagua-l-e.*
     1s go.down-IRR-FUT look.FUT get.IRR.FUT so   come-IRR-FUT

     '…((**you**) and the order) will bring/get **and** come) two boxes of batteries **and** you will put (them) **and** having (them there), I will go down **and** see **and** get (them) **and** so come (back here).'

For other medial verb conjugations see 4.1.4.3 STRUCTURE OF MEDIAL VERBS.

The raised vowel form for medial verbs also occurs in one type of negative construction with present tense, and in the present tense interrogative sentence type.

Present negative

29) *D<u>ia</u>   sibig<u>e</u>   mo-<u>**u**</u>=**yo**   **mei.**   (basic form: *m<u>a</u>* 'put' (type 3a))
     3PL essence   put-NFUT=INDC NEG

     'They **are not** bearing fruit.'

30) *tobôu=**yo**   mei*   (basic form: *tobôu* 'say' (type 6))
     say.NFUT=INDC   NEG

     '**does not** say'

Present question

31) *nele dokta=kôu yodu-l-o   bolo=<u>fei</u>,*
     2DU doctor=LOC ask-IRR-FUT good=total

     *Kevin=h<u>a</u> dihi   do   mal<u>a</u>   i   ka-ge-**i**=**ya**?* (basic form: *kage* 'be how' (type 2))
     Kevin=GEN child sickness get.IRR.FUT go how-VBR-NFUT=SUBJ

     '… it would be good if you two would ask the doctor how Kevin's sick child, who was taken away, **is** (doing).'

---

[40] The form *dala-ba* has as its nucleus the existential state verb *dala* 'be/have'. In this kind of verbs, the root final low vowel signals a simultaneous state with the following verb, as well as a change of subject.

2.7.1.3 Vowel harmony triggered by suffixes beginning with /a/

The suffix -adi 'prospective aspect'

A rule of vowel harmony (VH Rule 8) is triggered by the suffix *-adi* 'prospective aspect'. (See APPENDIX I: VOWEL HARMONY RULE 8.) It applies to all verb types ending in a [-high] vowel and affects all [-high] vowels in those verbs. Note that these vowel changes are written only in type 7 verbs. This suffix occurs in final verbs only.

BASIC FORM	PHONEMIC	GLOSS	ORTHOGRAPHY	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB STEM
⟨dege⟩	/d̪agɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	do-IRR-PROS	⟨degeladi⟩	'just about to do (it)'	type 2
⟨taga⟩	/tagɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	like-IRR-PROS	⟨tagaladi⟩	'just about to like'	type 2
⟨ta sa⟩	/tã salɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	talk#put.inside-IRR-PROS	⟨ta saladi⟩	'just about to judge'	type 3
⟨tobôu⟩	/t̪abɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	say-IRR-PROS	⟨tobôuladi⟩	'just about to speak'	type 6
⟨togo⟩	/t̪agɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	make-IRR-PROS	**⟨tagaladi⟩**	'just about to make smth.'	type 7
⟨wo⟩	/wɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	attack-IRR-PROS	**⟨waladi⟩**	'just about to attack'	type 7

Compare the following examples, where the high vowels are not affected:

⟨tia⟩	/t̪iɑ-l̪-ɑd̪i/	sleep-IRR-PROS	⟨tialadi⟩	'just about to fall asleep'	type 4
⟨sa nugu⟩	/sa nugu-l̪-ɑd̪i/	land get.dark-IRR-PROS	⟨sa nuguladi⟩	'just about to get dark'	type 5
⟨i⟩	/i-l̪-ɑd̪i/	go-IRR-PROS	⟨iladi⟩	'just about to go'	type 1

32) *na̱ ne̱   Godi=ko̱u gulu   gulu   tobôu-ba,   ei   hue̱i̱=ye*
    2S 2S.POSS God=LOC   close.eyes close.eyes say-PFV.IRR 1PL.EX water=INS

    wa-l-adi   *ko̱u   fogo-l-ôu=yode*   *tobo-l-ôu   i.*
    attack-IRR-PROS   this   leave.for-IRR-NPST=IQV say-IRR-NPST go

    basic: ***wo*** (type 7)

    '… "When you close your eyes speaking to your God, this imminent drowning of us (excl.) won't happen," they stated and said.'

The clitic =a/suffix -a 'subjunctive' expressing purpose

The same vowel harmony rule (VH Rule 8), which comes into play with the prospective aspect *-adi* , also applies to a purpose construction triggered by *=a/-a* 'subjunctive'. Probably the two morphemes are related. However, whereas the aspect suffix, as described above, functions in the final verb, this purpose construction is part of the medial verb system. This morpheme functions in all other contexts as an enclitic, but here it seems more natural to analyse it as a suffix, and it will be so marked.

33) *A̱=me moso̱ taga-l-a-mo̱u   hebe mo-l-o̱u,   a̱=me moso̱ togo-l-o*
    1S=TOP house make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV tree get-IRR-NPST 1S=TOP house make-IRR-FUT

    ikoke mei.
    nail   NEG

    '**Planning to** build a house, I get the timber and I have no house building nails.'

2.7.2 Minor vowel harmony

Though vowel harmony across morpheme boundaries is mainly seen in the conjugation of verbs, it does occur in a few other places, following similar rules. The triggering morpheme then is often a case clitic or a perfective suffix. The suffix *-gV* 'object focus' may also trigger vowel harmony. Vowel harmony may be found in compounded words, too.

e → a in ke 'that', =me 'topic marker'

ke 'that'

The demonstrative pronoun /kɛ̃/ 'that', followed by the clitic /=hã/ 'GEN' will change to /kã/.

    ka=ha̱   'controlling agent/because of/temporal marking'
    that=GEN

    The pronominal topic marker /=mɛ/, when followed by the clitic /=hã/ 'GEN' will change to /=mã/. This combination is always preceded by a demonstrative pronoun. If this pronoun is /kɛ̃/ the vowel will change to /a/.

    ka=ma=ha̱   'that controlling agent' (*kemeha̱*)
    that=TOP=GEN

e → o in ***de*** **'pro-verb',** ***ke*** **'that'**

de **'pro-verb'**

The pro-verb /dɛ/ when followed by the suffix /-mo/ 'perfective' will change to /dɔ/. This is, however, only reflected in writing, if preceded by the enclitic =*a* 'subjunctive' [41] in a purpose construction or by =*e* 'optative' in a warning construction.

    = *a* + ***do-moû***   'in order to'
    =SUBJ+PROV-PFV

    = *e* #***do-moû***   'lest/it would not be good'
    =OPT#PROV-PFV

ke **'that'**

The demonstrative pronoun /kɛ̃/ 'that', followed by the clitic /-ko/ 'LOC' will change to /kɔ/.[42]

    ko = ***koû***   'there'
    that=LOC

The suffix -*gi* 'object focus'

The object focus suffix, a kind of transitiviser, is -*gV*, where *V* is *i*, *u* or *oû*. The vowel <u>does not</u> vary in harmony with the verb root vowel(s), but seems to be arbitrary. However, for a few verb roots, mostly stative ending in ***a*** or ***o***, the object suffix is -*gi*. Following rules of vowel harmony the non-front vowels in the roots change to ***e***.

    ŧafala 'stand'   *ŧefe-gi*   'put someone in a standing position'
    biyo   'sit up/down'   *biye-gi*   'place someone in a sitting position'

Word compounding

Word compounding may also trigger vowel harmony.

    maga + *u* → *mogou* 'mouth'   ***koma*** + ***dia***   →   *kamadia* 'three'[43]
    jaw+hole   middle.finger+3PL

2.7.3 Vowel fronting in locative adverbs

In some locative adverbs, derived from nouns and followed by the derivational suffix -*le* 'approximate locativiser', the last vowel of the derived noun is fronted in one way or another. See 3.1.2.1 DEICTIC SUFFIXES: Set III -*le*. Possibly the same thing happens preceding the exact locativiser -*li*. Unfortunately I have no clear data to support this hypothesis.

34)   *ŧa-le*[44] = *koû*   *ŧo*   'river'
       river-A.LOCR=LOC
       'into the river'

35)   *Godi* = *ha dihi-le* = *koû*   *diho*   'eye'
       God=GEN eye-A.LOCR=LOC
       'before the face of God'

36)   *agudi-le* + *ŧoû*   *agudio* 'sky'
       sky-A.LOCR+up
       'up in the sky'

---

[41] In the data there are also a few instances of the purpose suffix -*a* 'subjunctive' at the end of a verb form, followed by the pro-verb *domoû*: -*a*#*domoû* -SUBJ-PROV-PFV

[42] Nasalisation is lost in this particular form of this word. See 2.7.6 DE-NASALISATION BEFORE /g/, /l/ AND /k/.

[43] For whatever reason, this word looses the nasalisation of its parts.

[44]Nasalisation spreads from the noun but is unmarked in the orthography, as it is totally predictable.

On locative adverbs, derived from locative roots, fronting affects the whole word and has a special meaning, namely that the person addressed is in the general area referred to. The locative adverbial root governs the height of the vowel.[45] (see 4.8.3 LOCATIVE ADVERBS (towards the end).

37) *Ma̲   bolo   t̲o   ilo   be-ke-le*   *fogo-u.*   *||bôu-ku-le*
     1s.POSS ball river part other.side-DEMR.N-A.LOCR leave.for.NFUT ||o.s.-DEMR.N-A.LOCR
     'I lost my ball on the other side of the river.' || (basic form)
     (speaking to someone in that general area)

38) *Kuguo di-ki-le*   *ka.*   *||du-ku-le*
     paper inside-DEMR.N-A.LOCR   look.for ||ins.-DEMR.N-A.LOCR
     'Look for the book inside.' || (basic form)
     (speaking to someone inside the house)

2.7.4 Vowel epenthesis & vowel deletion in connection with the quote verbs

There is one kind of vowel epenthesis and two of vowel deletion.

All quote verbs

The semivowel /j/ is inserted before the cliticising quote verbs =*ode* 'state/say', =*ede* 'direct/instruct' and =*ade* 'assert'.

39) *a̲   dabai dege-l-e   dafa=**y**ode-i.*
                            dafa=ode-i   (basic morphemes)
     1s work do-IRR-FUT tired.of=IQV-NFUT
     '... I said (I) was tired of working.'

40) *Dihi   kôu̲=me e̲ adiôu=ha̲   hue̲i   dôu   i=**y**ede-môu*
                                                 i=ede-môu   (basic morphemes)
     child this=TOP 3s mother=GEN water draw go=OQV-PFV
     'Concerning this child, his mother having told him to get water, ...'

41) *duo   kasaga̲i=ye hagu-l-u=**y**ade   t̲awa-l-e-môu.*
                          hagu-l-u=ade   (basic morphemes)
     spirit bad=INS   come-IRR-NFUT=SQV know-IRR-FUT-PFV
     '... they having thought an evil spirit must be coming ...'

Vowel deletion in =*be* 'topic marker' & =*do* 'intensifier' preceding =*ade* 'assert'

The vowel in =*be* 'topic marker' and =*do* 'intensifier' are deleted preceding =*ade* 'assert'.

42) *n̲i=me ... bologu̲a   duwo-ma=b=ado-môu.*
                          *duwo-ma=**be**=ado-môu*   (basic morphemes)
     2PL=TOP ... good.do sit-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV
     '... in order for you to have a good life/sit well.'

43) *Godi=be a̲=bôu+de   dala=d=ade   t̲awa-i.*
                          *dala=**do**=ade*   (basic morphemes)
     God=TOP 1s=and+PROV be/have=INT=SQV know-NFUT
     '... (I) knew for sure that God must be with me.'

---

[45] However, as there is no front vowel corresponding to the close-mid vowel /o/, written ⟨ôu⟩, the fronted vowel comes out as /ɛ/, written as ⟨e⟩.

2.7.5 Nasalisation of topic marker

When the topic marker follows a nasalised pronoun the initial /*b*/ of this enclitic changes to /*m*/. Following a nasalised noun, this does not occur.

<u>a</u>	=*me*	'1SG'		*ko͡u*	=*me*	'this'
n<u>a</u>	=*me*	'2SG'		*ke*	=*me*	'that'
e	=*me*	'3SG'				
ele	=*be*	'1DU.EX'		*o*	=*be*	'(the) man'
da	=*be*	'1DU.IN'		*sas<u>ai</u>*	=*be*	'(the) woman'
nele	=*be*	'2DU'				
dilie	=*be*	'3DU'				
ei	=*be*	'1PL.EX'				
di	=*be*	'1PL.IN'				
n<u>i</u>	=*me*	'2PL'				
di<u>a</u>	=*me*	'3PL'				

2.7.6 De-nasalisation before /g/, /l/ and /k/

When the demonstrative pronouns *ko͡u* 'this' and *ke* 'that' are followed by the suffixes -*le*/-*li* 'approximate/exact locativiser' and -*ge* 'verbaliser' the nasalisation is lost. The same happens when the clitic =*ko͡u* 'locativiser' follows.

ko͡u-*le*	'here'		**ke**-*le*	'there'
this-A.LOCR			that-A.LOCR	
ko͡u-*le*-*ge*	'be/do like this here'		**ke**-*le*-*ge*	'be/do like that there'
this-A.LOCR-VBR			that-A.LOCR-VBR	
ko͡u-*g(u)e*	'be/do like this'		**ke**-*ge*	'be/do like that'
this-VBR(BLTV)			that-VBR	
kuo=*ko͡u*	'here'		**ko**=*ko͡u*	'there'
this=LOC			that=LOC	

For the forms *kuoko͡u* 'here' and *koko͡u* 'there' see 4.8.2.1 THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *ko͡u* 'this' AND *ke* 'that' and 2.7.2 MINOR VOWEL HARMONY respectively.

This de-nasalisation also happens for at least some nasal verbs, when the root is followed by a suffix starting with /g/.

```
44)   mu        mu-gu         mu-gua
      go.down   go.down-OF    go.down-DU/PL
      'go down' 'let down/let go' 'go down du/pl.'
```

Also, when the genitive clitic =*h<u>a</u>* is followed by the independent possessive enclitic =*le*, the nasalisation is lost. See 3.6.1.5 THE INDEPENDENT POSSESSIVE ENCLITIC.

2.8 Spelling rules

The spelling of Konai words is usually phonemic. However, there are a few exceptions.[46] The following spelling rules state rules of over- and under-differentiating, rules of convention and rules where a phonetic form is preferred over a phonemic form as a base for writing. I also give reasons for certain orthographic choices here.

---

[46] Over the years we have studied how mother-tongue speakers of Konai write their own language. This has sometimes been done rather informally, e.g. by just looking how people write stories, letters or songs. Sometimes, especially in the beginning, we set up formal test situation. The spelling of Konai words in this grammar and the *Konai New Testament* (2014) has been harmonized.

2.8.1 Consonants – spelling of /l̪/ and /j/

/l̪/	[n̪]	<u>word initially</u>, incl. clitics	⟨**n**⟩	<u>over-differentiating</u>, based on testing[47]
		⟨**n**al<u>ai</u>⟩	/l̪ãl̪ãĩ/	[n̪ə̃ˈŋãĩ]	'wrote'
		⟨**n**ogo⟩	/l̪ɔgɔ/	[n̪ɔˈgɔ]	'your friend'
		⟨bol<u>o</u> = **n**ôu⟩	/bɔ̃l̪ɔ̃l̪o/	[bl̪p̃ˈn̪o]	'good=only'

	[ɾ], [ŋ], [l̪]		⟨**l**⟩	elsewhere
		⟨to**l**ôu⟩	/t̪ol̪o/	[t̪ɾo]	'hold.NPST'
		⟨mu**l**o⟩	/mũl̪ɔ̃/	[mũˈŋũɔ̃]	'go down.FUT'
		⟨i**l**e⟩	/il̪ɛ/	[ɛl̪iˈæ]	'go.FUT'
		⟨se**l**e⟩	/sɛl̪ɛ/	[sɛˈɾæ]	'money'

/j/	[ɪ]	inter-vocalically and word initially before V	⟨**y**⟩	<u>conforming to PNG languages</u>
		⟨hu**y**a⟩	/hujɑ/	[huˈɪɑ]	'palm tree sp.'
		⟨**y**e⟩	/jɛ/	[ɪæ]	'stringbag'

2.8.2 Vowels – spelling of /o/ and of initial [ʌ]

/o/	[o]		⟨**ôu**⟩	

Mother-tongue speakers perceive this phoneme as a glide, which they want to write ⟨ou⟩, but as it contrasts with a real /oʊ/, it needs to be distinguished, and this is the symbol we came up with.

		⟨t̪ob**ôu**⟩	/t̪obo/	[t̪ʌˈβo]	'say'	
		⟨t̪ob**ou**⟩	/t̪oboʊ/	[t̪ʌˈβoʊ]	'say.NFUT/said'	

	[ə], [ʌ], [-]	preceding syllable with /o/	⟨**o**⟩	<u>common consent</u>	
		⟨t**o**bôu⟩	/t̪obo/	[t̪ʌˈβo]	'say'	*t**ôu**bôu
		⟨d**o**lôu⟩	/d̪ol̪o/	[d̪ɾo]	'draw.NPST (water)'	*d**ôu**lôu

/V/	[ʌ]	word initially	⟨**a**⟩	usually; based on <u>testing</u>

Due to vowel harmony mother-tongue speakers interpret a word medial [ʌ] as the same vowel as in the following syllable. There is no reason to think that a word initial [ʌ] would be anything else. However, a majority when tested write this vowel as ⟨a⟩.

⟨**a**bogôu⟩	/õbõgõ/	[ãβə̃ˈgõ]	'foot'	
⟨**a**gu⟩	/ugu/	[ʌˈgu]	'bamboo'	
⟨**a**ma⟩	/ãmã/	[ʌ̃ˈmã]	'fill'	
⟨**o**guo⟩	/ɔguɔ/	[ʌˈgʷɒ]	'moon'	(an exception)

2.8.3 Diphthongs – spelling of /oʊ/ and /ɔʊ/

/oʊ/	[oʊ]	word finally	⟨**ou**⟩	<u>under-differentiating</u>, based on testing
/ɔʊ/	[ɒʊ]	word finally	⟨**ou**⟩	

We have found <u>few minimal</u> pairs.

⟨h**ou**⟩	/hoʊ/	[hoʊ]	'taro'
⟨h**ou**⟩	/hɔʊ/	[hɒʊ]	'seedling'
⟨d**ou**⟩	/d̪oʊ/	[d̪oʊ]	'fire'
⟨di**ou**⟩	/d̪iɔ̃ʊ̃/	[d̪ʲɒ̃ʊ̃]	'mosquito'

---

[47] Rule and Woodyard 1985.

2.8.4 Bleed-through – how to spell

Bleed-through is a high vowel bleeding through into the next syllable on either side.

Left bleed-through: basic rule: not written; mother-tongue speakers mostly unaware of it

⟨bagagi⟩	/bãgãgi/	[bə̃gɑ̃ɪˈgi]	'tie it'
⟨taholu⟩	/t̪ɔ̃hɔ̃l̪ũ/	[ˈt̪ʌ̃ˈhɔ̃ʊ̃ˈn̪ũ]	'shoot.NFUT'[48]

Verb type 7 in present tense is an exception, e.g. *togo-**u**-l-u* 'make-BLTV-IRR-NFUT'.

⟨togoulu⟩	/t̪ɔgɔl̪u/	[t̪ɔgɔʊˈl̪u]	'make.NFUT (something)'

Right bleed-through: basic rule: **nouns**/non-verbs – written, mother-tongue speakers aware
                                    verbs – not written, mother-tongue speakers mostly unaware

⟨kuisiai⟩	/kuisɑɪ/	[kʷiˈsiɑɪ]	'iron wood'
⟨sile⟩	/sil̪ɛ/	[siˈl̪iæ]	'cook.FUT'

2.8.5 Vowel harmony – spelling of a few exceptions

Vowel harmony is actually a feature of the word and the spelling is phonemic. However, in spelling of verbs that have been affixed, the spelling is sometimes morphologically based, reflecting the spelling of the un-affixed stem. Only type 2, 3 and 6 verbs expressing present tense, prospective aspect and purpose are affected by this spelling rule.

Present tense

⟨**h**e**b**e⟩	'carry'	hebe-l-i	'carry-IRR-NFUT'	⟨**h**e**b**eli⟩	/**h**i**b**il̪i/	[hʌˈβəl̪i]	type 2
⟨**g**a**s**a⟩	'stalk'	gasa-l-u	'stalk-IRR-NFUT'	⟨**g**a**s**olu⟩	/**g**ɔ**s**ɔl̪u/	[gəsʊˈl̪u]	type 3

However, the proverb *de* and the quote verbs =*ode* 'state/say', =*ede* 'direct/instruct', =*ade* 'assert' (type 2 verbs) are spelled phonemically, e.g. ⟨=od**i**li⟩ 'is saying'.

Prospective aspect

⟨**d**e**g**e⟩	'do'	dege-l-adi	'do-IRR-PROS'[49]	⟨**d**e**g**eladi⟩	/**d̪**a**g**al̪ad̪i/	[d̪əˈgl̪ad̪i]	type 2
⟨**t**o**b**ôu⟩	'speak'	tobôu-l-adi	'speak-IRR-PROS'	⟨**t**o**b**ôuladi⟩	/**t̪**a**b**al̪ad̪i/	[t̪ʌˈbl̪ad̪i]	type 6

Purpose

⟨**d**e**g**e⟩	'do'	dege-l-a	'do-IRR-SUBJ'	⟨**d**e**g**ela⟩	/**d̪**a**g**al̪a/	[d̪əˈgl̪a]	type 2
⟨**t**o**b**ôu⟩	'speak'	tobôu-l-a	'speak-IRR-SUBJ'	⟨**t**o**b**ôula⟩	/**t̪**a**b**al̪a/	[t̪ʌˈbl̪a]	type 6

---

[48] Rules of vowel harmony also apply (see 2.7.1.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN FINAL VERBS).

[49] That is: 'just about to ...'.

2.8.6 Nasalisation – how to write

Nasalisation contrasts on grammatical word level, not on syllable level.

A word is either nasal or non-nasal (1-10)

A clitic is either nasal or non-nasal (7-10)

Tense suffixes take their nasalisation, if any, from the stems they are attached to (5, 6)

In loan words, nasalisation may stop in the middle of a word (11)

A nasalised word is marked on the last vowel or diphthong. The symbol used is an <u>underline</u>. This is a remnant from the days of APCM/ECP(NG), which the speakers of the language have chosen to keep in preference to a word final ⟨n⟩.

NO.	BASIC FORM[50]	GLOSS	**ORTHOGRAPHY**	PHONEMIC	PHONETIC
1	dih**o**	'eye'	⟨dih**o**⟩	/ɗihɔ̃/	[ɗĩˈhɔ̃]
2	miy**e**	'fish'	⟨miy**e**⟩	/mĩjɛ̃/	[mĩˈæ̃]
3	bol**o**	'good'	⟨bol**o**⟩	/bɔ̃lɔ̃/	[blɔ̃]
4	s**ôu**	'open'	⟨s**ôu**⟩	/sõ/	[sõ]
5	s**ôu**-l-ôu	'open-IRR.NPST'	⟨sol**ôu**⟩	/sõlõ/	[sõˈŋõ]
6	am**a**-i	'fill-NFUT'	⟨am**ai**⟩	/ãmãĩ/	[ʌ̃ˈmãĩ]
7	Godi=h**a**	'God=GEN'	⟨Godi**ha**⟩	/gɔɗihã/	[gɔˈɗihã]
8	ey**e**=h**a**	'older brother=GEN'	⟨ey**eha**⟩	/ɛ̃jɛ̃hã/	[ɛ̃ˈɪ̃æhã]
9	ta=nôu=f**ei**	'INDF=only=total'	⟨tanôu**fei**⟩	/taloɸɛ̃ĩ/	[ʈanoˈɸɛ̃ĩ]
10	mos**o**=kôu	'house=LOC'	⟨mos**o**kôu⟩	/mɔ̃sɔ̃ko/	[mɔ̃sɔ̃ˈko]
11	wai d**o**ki	'(pig) donkey'	⟨wai d**o**ki⟩	/waɪ ɗɔ̃ki/	[ʋaɪ ɗɔ̃ˈki]

2.8.7 Tone - not written

Phonemic tone is not written. There are a few minimal pairs where tone is the only difference, but context usually solves this potential problem.

⟨awa⟩	/awà/	[ʌ↗ˈʊɑ↘]	'black palm'
⟨awa⟩	/awá/	[ʌˈʊɑ↗]	'fish sp.'
⟨dôuwa⟩	/ɗowà/	[ɗoˈʊɑ↘]	'hornbill'
⟨dôuwa⟩	/ɗowá/	[ɗo↘ˈʊɑ↗]	'cooking fork'

2.8.8 Spelling of Tok Pisin proper names

The following letters are also used in spelling Tok Pisin proper names: <**j**>, <**J**>, <**r**>, <**R**>, <**v**>, <**V**>.

⟨**J**on⟩　　　⟨Geb**r**iel⟩　　　⟨De**v**it⟩

---

[50] Written in orthography.

3. MORPHOLOGICAL PROCESSES

The term 'morphological process' is used in accordance with Payne (1997:376). For Payne a '**morphological process**' is a structural process regardless of function, e.g. suffixation. He contrasts this with the '**morphological operation**', which is a language specific function signalled by one structure or another, e.g. plural formation in English. This terminology has been adopted in this chapter.

Konai is an agglutinative language. Suffixation is by far the most common morphological process. Prefixation is rare, as is suppletion. Compounding is not very common. Zero formation is the use of certain verb forms for other things than verbs, and it is not very common, either. Reduplication functioning on word level is not unusual, nor is the syntactic process of repetition, functioning on phrase and clause level. Cliticisation, which functions on phrase, sentence and discourse level, is a very common process.

PROCESS	TYPE & FREQUENCY	PART OF SPEECH INVOLVED	OPERATION
● **affixation**	suffixes, common	verbs	number, transitivity, TAM (inflectional)
		deictic words, nouns	deictic (derivational)
		minimal clauses, a few nouns	locative nominalisation (derivational)
		two demonstrative pronouns, two question words	verbalising (derivational)
		body part nouns	numeralising (derivational)
		pronouns	additional meaning (derivational)
	prefixes, rare	a few kinship nouns	inalienable possession (derivational)
		a few verbs	directional (inflectional)
● **suppletion**	rare	an occasional noun, a few verbs	non-singular
● **compounding**		various words	various meanings
● **zero formation**	∅	some verbs	nominalisation
● **reduplication**	partial mostly	verbs	plural, incl. iterative aspect
	partial/whole	a few nouns	plural
● **repetition**	whole	verbal phrases	reciprocity
	whole/partial	clauses	emphasis or explanation
● **cliticisation**	enclitics, common	phrase	case, limiters, intensifier, joining, independent possessive
		sentence	illocutionary force
		discourse	topic, contrastive focus, contrast

3.1 Affixation

Affixation is the most common morphological process used in the Konai language. Suffixes are much more common than prefixes. Infixes do not occur.

3.1.1 Verbal suffixation

All **inflectional** suffixes function in the verb. In this part of the paper the emphasis is on final verbs, **if** nothing else is said.

First order	Second order	Third order	Fourth order	Fifth order
number	mood	tense	medial verb aspects	medial verb aspects
transitivity		aspect	sequential	perfective
		purpose		
		number (deontic)		

3.1.1.1 First order verbal suffixes

First order verbal suffixes in the verb are used to express number and transitivity.[51]

Number	*-ga*	'dual/plural'	absolutive marking: refers to the subject of intransitive verbs refers to the object of transitive verbs	4.1.6 NUMBER
	-gua	'dual/plural'	existential state verbs	
	-se	'dual/plural'	refers to the object of some transitive verbs	
	-sie[52]	'dual/plural'	a few intransitive, mostly motion verbs	
Transitivity	*-gV*$^{[+high]53}$	'object focus'	refers to singular entities only	4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS

Number

45)
*folo-**ga***	*dege-**ga***	*duwo-**gua***	*hagua-**sie***	*hebe-**se***
go.up-DU/PL	do-DU/PL	sit-DU/PL	come-DU/PL	carry-DU/PL
'go up (du./pl.)	do **many things**	sit (du./pl.)	come (du./pl.)	carry **many things**'

Transitivity

46)
ŧafala		*ŧefe-**gi***
stand		stand-OF
'stand'		'**make someone** stand'

47)
bi	*sa*	*kuguo*	*sa-**gi***
thing	put.inside	paper	put.inside-OF
'put things into (e.g. stringbag)' – **general**		'put a letter into (e.g. a mailbag)' – **specific**	

3.1.1.2 Second order verbal suffixes

Second order verbal suffixes are used to express mood.

Mood	(epistemic)	∅	'realis'	4.1.5.1 EPISTEMIC MOOD
		-l-	'irrealis'	
	(deontic)	∅	'imperative'	4.1.5.5 DEONTIC MOOD
		-me	'hortative'	
		-da	'prohibitive'	

The hortative and prohibitive suffixes may co-occur, in which case the prohibitive suffix precedes the hortative (52).

Epistemic mood

48)
dege-∅-i	*dege-**l**-i*	*dege-**l**-e*	*dege-**l**-i*	*mei*
do-REAL-NFUT	do-IRR-NFUT	do-IRR-FUT	go-IRR-NFUT	NEG
'did'	'is doing'	'will do'	'did not do'	

Deontic mood

49)
hagua-∅-∅	*hagua-∅-ma*
come-IMP-S	come-IMP-DU/PL
'come (sg.)'	'come (du./pl.)'

50)
*l-**me**.*
go-HORT
'**Let's** go.'

51)
*l-**da**.*
go-PROH
'**Don't** go.'

---

[51] The first order verbal suffixes could also have been analysed as derivational suffixes.

[52] Foothill and Mountain dialects have *-sige*.

[53] The vowel in this suffix is *-i*, *-u* or *-ôu*. The choice seems arbitrary and does not follow rules of vowel harmony.

52) *I-**da**-**me**.*
   go-PROH-HORT
   '**Let's no**t go.'

53) *N̠i   hagua-sie-**da**-ma.*
   2PL come-DU/PL-PROH-DU/PL
   '**Don't** come (du./pl.).'

The hortative suffix *-me*, the prohibitive suffix *-da* and the third order verbal suffix *-ma* 'dual/plural' (in imperative) may co-occur with the quote verbs =*e*+*de* (=OPT+PROV) 'direct/instruct' and =*a*+*de* (=SUBJ+PROV) 'assert' (see 4.1.1.3 QUOTE VERBS).

3.1.1.3 Third order verbal suffixes

Third order verbal suffixes are used to express tense[54], aspect and one kind of purpose. Non-singular in imperative and prohibitive mood is also expressed by a third order verbal suffix.

Tense	(statement)	*-i*/*-u*	'non-future'	4.1.5.2 EPISTEMIC MOOD AND TENSE
		-e/*-o*	'future'	
		-ôu	'non-past'[55]	
	(content question)	*-ou*	'past' (rare form)	7.1.3.1.1 CONTENT QUESTIONS
		-e/*-o*/*-ôu*	'future'	(same forms as for statements)
Aspect[56]		*-di*	'habitual'	4.1.5.3 EPISTEMIC MOOD AND ASPECT
		-adi	'prospective'	
Purpose		*-a*	'subjunctive'[57]	7.3.3.2.2 ... "PURPOSING"
Number	(deontic)	$\varnothing$	'singular'	4.1.5.5 DEONTIC MOOD
		-ma	'dual/plural 2/3 person'[58]	

Tense in statements

In statements, in all verb types, non-future tense is marked by the suffix (-){*i*/*u*} (Verb types 1 and 5 are interpreted as inherently non-future forms, if, as here, the context so allows, as they end in a high vowel.)[59] In all verb types, except type 6, future tense is marked by the suffix -{*e*/*o*}.[60] Type 6 verbs have a non-past suffix *-ôu*, which contrast with its past tense suffix *-u*; this neutralizes the difference between present and future tense in that verb type.

The tense suffixes function together with the irrealis second order verbal suffix *-l*. The following examples show the most common conjugations of the seven verb types. The sub-types are not included but will be presented in 4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS.

As can be seen in the examples, not only does vowel harmony affect the choice of suffix chosen. The suffixes also have certain effects on the stem (root in these examples), according to rules of vowel harmony (see APPENDIX I and 2.7.1.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN FINAL VERBS).

54) *i*   *i-l-**i***   *i-l-**e***   type 1: *i* 'go'
   go.NFUT go-IRR-NFUT go-IRR-FUT
   'went, is going, will go'

---

[54] In medial forms, the morphemes, which in final verbs express tense only, are portmanteau morphemes, expressing simultaneous versus sequential time, as well as same or different subject. See 7.3.1.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE.

[55] Type 6 verbs: this *ôu* contrast with *-u* 'past', which is, however, glossed 'non-future' as *-u* has that meaning for other verb types.

[56] Aspects marked by other constructions than suffixation are not included here but see 4.1.5.4 OTHER ASPECTS.

[57] Only in this context is *-a* 'subjunctive' interpreted as a suffix. In all other contexts it functions as a clitic. See 7.1.3. The subjunctive "suffix" *-a* and the prospective suffix *-adi* are related: *-adi* occurs only in final verbs and *-a* only in medial verbs.

[58] This suffix is only used for third person in combination with the quote verbs =*ede* 'direct/instruct' (1318) (1476) and =*ade* 'assert' (293).

[59] An alternative interpretation is that when the suffix is identical with the last stem vowel, assimilation occurs.

[60] But see 4.1.5.2.2 for medial verbs in relative future, where in verb types 3 & 4, an inherent stem final *a* is what signals relative future.

55) *bese-i   bese-l-i   bese-l-e*   type 2: *bese* 'fish' (verb)
    fish-NFUT fish-IRR-NFUT fish-IRR-FUT
    'fished, is fishing, will fish'

56) *ka-i   ko-l-u   ka-l-e*   type 3: *ka* 'cut'
    cut-NFUT   cut-IRR-NFUT   cut-IRR-FUT
    'cut, is cutting, will cut'

57) *die-i   dio-l-u   dia-l-e*   type 4: *dia* 'break off'
    break.off-NFUT break.off-IRR-NFUT break.off-IRR-FUT
    'broke off, is breaking off, will break off'

58) *dugu   dugu-l-u   dugu-l-o*   type 5: *dugu* 'see'
    see-NFUT see-IRR-NFUT see-IRR-FUT
    'saw, is seeing, will see'

59) *tobo-u   tobo-l-ôu*   type 6: *tobôu* 'say
    say-(PAST)/NFUT say-IRR-NPST
    'said, is saying/will say'

60) *sege-i   sogo-u-l-u   sogo-l-o*   type 7: *sogo* 'plant
    plant-NFUT plant-BLTV-IRR-NFUT plant-IRR-FUT
    'planted, is planting, will plant'

Tense in content questions

The past tense marker in content questions occurs with the irrealis mood. Future is the same as for statements. In these questions, the verb always occurs last, and there are no suffixes or enclitics following on the tense suffixes. In present tense, the subjuctive clitic =*ya* is used. One example is presented below (63), but see 7.1.3.

61) *E̱ midiho̱ kasaga̱i **kage-i** **ke̱** milôu-l-ou?***
    3s face bad   how-NFUT that work-IRR-PAST.Q
    '**How** has he done/**did** he do something bad?'

62) *Midiho̱ **ka-ge** tama̱ dege-l-e?***
    face   how-VBR appear do-IRR-FUT
    '**How will** it happen?'

63) *Na̱ **ke̱i** dege-i=**ya?***
    2s what do-NFUT=SUBJ
    '**What are** you doing?'

Aspect

The aspect markers -*di* 'habitual' and -*adi* 'prospective' function only in final verbs. Habitual occurs with realis mood and prospective occurs with irrealis mood. These aspect markers do not co-occur with any tense markers.

64) *Hue̱i   to-∅-**di.***
    water wash-REAL-HAB
    'It is **always** raining.'

65) *Hue̱i   to-l-**adi.***
    water wash-IRR-PROS
    'It is **just about to** rain.'

Purpose

The subjunctive marker -*a*, meaning 'purpose'occurs only in medial verbs. It occurs with irrealis mood.

66) *A̱ sogo   ga-l-**a**-môu   **dege-l-i.***
    1s breadfruit gather-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT
    'I am **trying to** pick (a) breadfruit.'

67) *A̱ nele=mokôu ta̱ to̱u tobôu-l-**a**-môu, a̱ bi mei.*
    1s 2DU=LOC   talk short say-IRR-SUBJ-PFV 1s things NEG
    'I **want to** tell you a little (something); I don't have any (school) supplies.'

68) *diạ   Jona   malạ   tạ-le=kôu   hebe-l-e   fila-l-ạ   dege-i-môu,*
    3PL   Jonah   get.IRR.FUT river-A.LOCR=LOC carry-IRR-FUT   throw-IRR-SUBJ do-NFUT-PFV

    Godi=hạ miyẹ hiyẹ=do kẹ   tobôu-môu hagua
    God=GEN fish big=INT that say-PFV   come.FUT

    '... at the moment they **wanted to** take Jonah and carry him and throw him in the river, God sent a very big fish …'

Number

The suffix marking number is the non-singular suffix *-ma* 'dual/plural', used in deontic mood.

69) *nạ dege*   *nele/nị   dege-ma*
    2S do   2DU/2PL   do-DU/PL

    'you (**sg.**) do (it)'   'you (**du./pl.**) do (it)'

3.1.1.4 Fourth order verbal suffixes

Fourth order verbal suffixes comprise two medial verb suffixes, each expressing an aspect.

- *-ma*   'immediate sequence'
- *-gi*   'delayed sequence'

Medial verb suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence'

The suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' is a medial verb suffix with telic meaning that indicates immediate sequence with the event described by the next verb. The two verbs have the same subject. This medial suffix is used for intransitive and weakly transitive verbs. An existential state verb needs a proverb to take this suffixation (74).

70) *ạ huẹi dôu-ma,   nẹ   mosọ=kôu i-l-e*
    1S water draw-ISQ   2S.POSS   house=LOC go-IRR-FUT

    '**After** getting water, I will go to your house.'

71) *ele   tọ   to-l-o=yode-ma   i.*
    1DU.EX river   wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ   go.NFUT

    '... **after** the two of us said (we) were going swimming, we went.'

72) *Ẹ moso togo-ma-môu=be, ẹ kili   dala=di.*
    3S house build-ISQ-PFV=TOP 3S inside be/have-HAB

    '**After** he had built (a) house, he lived inside (it).'

73) *De=hạ   tahạ-ma-môu*
    maternal.uncle=GEN shoot-ISQ-PFV

    '**After** uncle had shot at (the pig) ...'

_____

74) *ise   sa+mạ   hagua, Selbang=kôu duwo **de-ma**,*
    finally put.inside+put come.FUT Selbang=LOC sit   PROV-ISQ

    *ise   hagụạ-ma hagua,   Biangabip=kôu duwo **de-ma**,*
    finally rise-ISQ come.FUT Biangabip=LOC sit   PROV-ISQ

    Kalại o   sụ=do   sa+mạ,   ise   Dahamo=kôu kuhe hague-i.
    Konai man many=INT put.inside+put finally Dahamo=LOC so   come-NFUT

    '... finally, (I and my cargo were) put inside (a plane), and (I) came and **after** being (down) in Selbang, finally **after** taking off (I) came and **after** being (down) in Biangabip, a lot of Konai people (were) put inside, and so finally (I) came to Dahamo.'

_____

    What has just been said is the simple picture. In addition, there is a verb *mạ* 'put' that is used in two serial verb constructions, making the main verb more transitive (see ENHANCED TRANSITIVITY: ... (5.1.3.8 and 5.1.3.9). It is also possible to read into at least one of these constructions with *mạ* 'put' the more common Papuan interpretation of completiveness. The suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence', described here, may also easily be said to mean 'completive', as it is telic.

In summary then, the medial suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' and the verb *ma̱* 'put' are probably related. Intransitive and weakly transitive verbs, when followed by *-ma/ +ma̱*, [61] are interpreted as verbs with the immediate sequence suffix *-ma* attached. Highly transitive verbs are interpreted as main verbs followed by the verb *ma̱* 'put'. As the suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' signals that the following clause has the same subject, so does the auxiliary verb *-ma̱* 'put', as the last vowel is *-a*, a low vowel (see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS).

Also, the suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' has a homophone, a third order verbal suffix with the meaning of 'dual/plural', used in imperative and prohibitive mood (see 3.7.1 HOMOPHONES *-ma* 'DU/PL' & *-ma* 'ISQ' ...).

Medial verb suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence'

The suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence' is used on the verb when it describes an event that goes on until the next event commences, at which time the prior event stops, i.e. this suffix is also telic. If this suffix occurs, it is always the last suffix of the verb and it is preceded by the irrealis mood suffix *-l-* and the non-future suffix *-{i/u}* or non-past suffix *-o̱û*. A clause with a verb with this suffix always has a clause with the same subject following, but another clause with another subject may come between.

75) *Pasta   Motousi=bo̱û a̱=bo̱û+de sa   Dahamo to̱ûfogo̱û yo-l-u-**gi**,*
    pastor   Motousi=and   1S=and+PROV land   Dahamo leave   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

   *Mende=ko̱û duwo de-**ma**,   haba   hagu̱a-**ma** yo-l-u-**gi**,*
   Mende=LOC sit   PROV-ISQ but.PFV.IRR   rise-ISQ   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

   sa   e   hu̱=be   Ukarumpa=ko̱û   mu-gua-i.
   land 3S   name=TOP   Ukarumpa=LOC   go.down-DU/PL-NFUT

   'Pastor Motousi and I left Dahamo, going on **until** Mende, after sitting down (there and) after going up again, we went on **until** we went down at a place called Ukarumpa.'

76) *Afu   di̱a gamani   ke+di̱a=moko̱û biyo-l-u-**gi**,   o   ilo   ke-le*
    earlier 3PL government   that+3PL=LOC   fight-IRR-NFUT-DSQ man   part   that-A.LOCR

   tofige-i.
   die.DU/PL-NFUT

   'Earlier, they had been fighting with the government people **until** some men had died.'

77) *Isaac=ha̱ ...   mowi i.   I-l-i-**gi**,   (so ka=ha̱   wai tigo-u-mo̱û)*
    Isaac=GEN ...   hunt   go.NFUT go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   dog that=GEN pig bark-NFUT-PFV

   i-l-e   dugu=be
   go-IRR-FUT   see.NFUT=TOP

   'Isaac went hunting. He went on until (his dog barked at which time) he went on and saw that ...'

In the dialect described in this grammar, the Lowland dialect, this suffix is not used with existential state verbs, which use only *-l-i* (IRR-NFUT). It also has a dialectally variant form *-di*. (All variants are described in 3.7.2 VARIANTS ...)

78) *sosi   moso̱ tege-i.   Togo-ma dala-**l-i**,*
    church   house make-NFUT   make-ISQ be/have-IRR-NFUT

   e   sabe=ko̱û   kuhe boho-l-o̱û+ma̱   i.
   3S   home.ground=LOC   so   turn-IRR-NPST+put   go.NFUT

   '... he built the church. After building the church he stayed on **until** he went back to his (own) land.'

---

[61] It is often hard to hear whether this small part of speech is nasalised or not.

3.1.1.5 Fifth order verbal suffixes

Fifth order verbal suffixes comprise two medial verb suffixes, both of them expressing a perfective aspect.

Medial verb suffixes   *-moû*   'perfective realis'   see 7.3.1.2 SWITCH OF SCENE

                               -ba   'perfective **ir**realis'

    Both these medial suffixes indicate that a new scene will develop. This new scene may involve a new activity only (79) or a different subject (80). The suffix *-moû* 'perfective (realis)' occurs when the event/state spoken about is present or past. The suffix *-ba* 'perfective **ir**realis' occurs when the event/state is future or hypothetic.

    The fourth order verbal suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' may precede either.

    The enclitics *=be* 'topic marker' and *=si* 'contrast marker'[62] interact with these two suffixes to give different shades of meaning.

79) *Hagua-sige, moso̱=kôu fele̱-ga-**moû**,*   *miye̱   sa   si-l-e*
       come-DU/PL house=LOC come.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV fish put.inside.FUT cook-IRR-FUT
       'We came and **having arrived** at the house, (we) **put** the fish in (a pan) and cooked it
       and ...'

80) *E̱   hebe ha-i   wai=ye   no̱-u̱-**moû**   dugu.*
       3S   tree cut-NFUT pig=INS   eat-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
       '**He** saw **a pig** eating (in) the garden.'

81) *Ma̱   mogo=ha̱ dugu   tobo-l-ôu,[63] da   dôuwa*
       1S.POSS friend=GEN look.NFUT say-IRR-NPST 1DU.IN hornbill

       *wa-l-a-**ba**   i-me=be=ede-i.*
       attack-IRR-SUBJ-PFV.IRR go-HORT=TOP=OQV-NFUT
       'My friend saw (it); (he) said, "Let us two **go** for the purpose of **kill**ing the hornbill,"
       (he) suggested.'

    The suffix *-ba* 'perfective irrealis', indicating future or hypothetic events and states, may sometimes be translated 'when' or 'if'. It is used in conditionals (see 7.3.3.3 CONDITION). It is also part of certain temporal adverbs indicating future, where *-ba* cannot be separated from the word (see 4.5.3 TEMPORAL ADVERBS).

82) *Do   dala-**ba**,   i-l-e   mei.*
       sickness be/have-PFV.IRR go-IRR-FUT NEG
       '**If/While** (I) am sick/there is sickness, (I) won't go.'

83) *Ne̱   so hiye dege-**ba**   wai wo-l-o.*
       2S.POSS dog big do-PFV.IRR pig attack-IRR-FUT
       'Your dog having become big will kill pigs.'

84) ***Ke-ge-ba***   *ni̱ a̱=mokôu tobo-l-ôu*
       that-VBR-PFV.IRR 2PL 1S=LOC   say-IRR-NPST
       '**When having** become like that, you will say to me ...'

85) *idi**ba***
       tomorrow
       'tomorrow'

    Some clauses, expressed as perfective, take *-ba* 'perfective **irrealis**, not *-moû* 'perfective realis', even when leading up to a final clause, where the verb is in the past tense. In the following example, the *-ba* on the verb in the first clause, is leading up to a hypothetic and medial purpose clause. The sentence is then finished off with a final verb in past tense.

---

[62] No examples here, but see 3.6.3 DISCOURSE ENCLITICS.

[63] The verb *tobo-l-ôu* (say-IRR-NPST) is a medial verb in this context with the meaning 'say and …'.

86) *Yo=be dilie Kalai̯ ta̱ boho-l-ô̱u-ba,*   *Godi=ha̱ ta̱ sibige ke̱*
base=TOP 3DU Konai talk   turn-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR God=GEN talk   essence that

ei ta̱=ye dogogu-l-a-mô̱u.
1PL.EX talk=INS put-IRR-SUBJ-PFV

'... Because the two of them translate Konai words, "**purposing**" to put (down) the meaning of God's Word by using our words.'

3.1.2 Non-verbal suffixation

Non-verbal suffixation is all **derivational**, as these suffixes make the suffixed words change word class. There are several derivational deictic suffixes but only one each of a locative nominalising suffix, a verbalising suffix and a numeralising suffix.

3.1.2.1 Deictic suffixes

There are several deictic suffixes. They can be divided into three classes based on distribution:

Deictic suffixes attaching to demonstratives

First order (Set I)	**Second order (Set II)**
demonstrativisers	locativisers

Locative suffixes attaching to nominals (Set III)
locativisers

The locativisers listed in Set II and III are mostly the same but not quite.

Set I

Demonstrative suffixes	*-ku*	'near demonstrativiser'
	-gu	'distant demonstrativiser'

These two suffixes function with demonstrative adverbial roots, meaning 'upriver', 'downriver', 'up', 'down' etc.

*mô̱u-**ku***	'this down below'	*mô̱u-**gu***	'that down below'
*tô̱u-**ku***	'this up here'	*tô̱u-**gu***	'that up there'
*bu-**ku***	'this upriver'	*bu-**gu***	'that upriver'
*u-**ku***	'this downriver'	*u-**gu***	'that downriver'
*bô̱u-**ku***	'this across here'	*bô̱u-**gu***	'that across there'
*du-**ku***	'this inside here'	*du-**gu***	'that inside there'

These forms do not occur much in isolation. The only two examples we have are the following, occuring with the topic marker.[64] In the first example the bird is further up than in the second example.

87) *tô̱u-**gu**=me*
up-DEMR.D=TOP

'that up there, (I mean)'

88) *Tô̱u-**ku**=me sio.*
up-DEMR.N=TOP bird

'This up here is a bird.'

These demonstrative stems are usually further suffixed with one of the suffixes from Set II.

---

[64] The allomorph of the topic marker implies that these two suffixes are nasalised, but they are not.

Set II

Locativising suffixes	*-he*	'pointing locativiser'
on demonstratives	*-le*	'approximate locativiser'
	-li	'exact locativiser'

Pointing locativiser *-he*

The suffix *-he* makes a demonstrative root or stem into a locative adverb, indicating pointing.

> 89) *A̲   ku-he̲.*
> 1s this-P.LOCR
> 'I am here (e.g. **pointing** to a photo).'

> 90) *môu-gu-he̲*
> down-DEMR.D-P.LOCR
> 'down there (**pointing**)'

Approximate locativiser *-le*

The suffix *-le* makes a demonstrative root or stem into an approximate locative adverb.

> 91) *kôu-le*
> this-A.LOCR
> 'here (**somewhere**)'

> 92) *bu-gu-le*
> upriver-DEMR.D-A.LOCR
> '(**somewhere**) upriver'

The difference between the approximate locativiser *-le* and the exact locativiser *-li* will be commented on below under *-li* 'exact locativiser'.

Exact locativiser *-li*

The suffix *-li* makes a demonstrative root or stem into an exact locative adverb. Whereas *-le* indicates the general area, *-li* indicates exactly where something is or happens.

A few examples follow; for full paradigms see 4.8.3 LOCATIVE ADVERBS.

kôu-li	'**right** (in) here'	*kôu-le*	'here (**somewhere**)'
this-E.LOCR		this-A.LOCR	
---		*ke-le*	'there (**somewhere**)'
		that-A.LOCR	
ki-li	'**right** inside'	*ki-le*	'(**somewhere**) inside'
inside-E.LOCR		inside-A.LOCR	
kôu-gu-li	'somewhere **right** over there'	*kôu-gu-le*	'**somewhere** over there'
somewhere-DEMR.D-E.LOCR		somewhere-DEMR.D-A.LOCR	
môu-gu-li	'**right** down there'	*môu-gu-le*	'(**somewhere**) down there'
down-DEMR.D-E.LOCR		down-DEMR.D-A.LOCR	
tôu-gu-li	'**right** up there'	*tôu-gu-le*	'(**somewhere**) up there'
up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR		up-DEMR.D-A.LOCR	

> 93) *Kala̲i   sa   kôu-li=be   tewe dihi   ta   mei.*
> Konai land   this-E.LOCR=TOP know child INDF   NEG
> '**Right** here in Konai land, there is no other child (with that kind of) knowledge.'

> 94) *E̲   moso̲   togo-ma-môu=be, e̲   ki-li   dala-di.*
> 3s house make-ISQ-PFV=TOP 3s inside-E.LOCR be/have-HAB
> 'When he had finished building the house, he stayed **right** inside there.'

> 95) *moso   ke̲   dumu̲-môu=be, o   su̲=do   moso   ki-le   tia-sie-di*
> house that finish-PFV=TOP man many=INT house inside-A.LOCR sleep-DU/PL-HAB
> '… when a house is finished, a lot of people sleep in there (i.e. they occupy **any empty floor space** they can find).'

96) *dugu,   haba   bei   ta   hebe sugu̱ tôu-gu-**li**=do   duwo-môu dege-i*
    see.NFUT but.PFV.IRR snake INDF tree top   up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR=INT sit-PFV   do-NFUT

    '… (we) also saw another snake being far up, **right** up there in (a) tree top, …'

97) *Yomogo-u=be   o   ka=ha̱   asôu   môu-gu-**li**=do   dege   da+ma̱-môu*
    begin-NFUT=TOP man that=GEN ground down-DEMR.D-E.LOCR=INT do   dig+put-PFV

    'To start with, that man having dug **right** down into the ground there …'

There is a similarity in shape between the locativising suffixes *-le* 'approximate locativiser' & *-li* 'exact locativiser' and the verbal suffixes *-l-e* irrealis-future/'**future tense**' & *-l-i* irrealis-non-future/'**present tense**'. There may be a connection between a 'general/approximate locative area' and an uncertain 'future' on the one hand, and between an 'exact point in location' and a point in 'present' time on the other, but this has not been further studied.

Set III

Locativising suffixes	*-le*	'approximate locativiser'	(same suffix as the second one in Set II but with slightly different traits)
on nominals	*-li*	'exact locativiser'	(same suffix as the third one in Set II but with slightly different traits)
	-ba	'along'	

These three suffixes make derived locative adverbs from nouns or nominal phrases.

Approximate locativiser *-le*

When *-le* functions as a locativiser of a nasalised noun, it too becomes nasalised. This is not written, however, as it is totally predictable.

98) *hue̱i-**le**=kôu*
    water-A.LOCR=LOC

    'in the water'

99) *aso̱-**le**=kôu*
    sun-A.LOCR=LOC

    'in(to) the sun'

The above nouns take the locative case marker in addition to the locativiser *-le.* Some nouns do not, however, or take other locative morphemes. In some nouns, the last vowel is fronted before *-le*.[65]

100) *kansol   dihi̱-**le**   diho̱*   'eye'
     council eye-A.LOCR

     'in front of the council'

101) *hebe   ye-**le**   yo*   'base'
     tree base-A.LOCR

     'at the base of (a) tree'

102) *widi-**le**+tôu   widio*   'head'
     head-A.LOCR+up

     'on the head'

Exact locativiser *-li*

When *-li* functions as a locativiser of a nasalised noun, it too becomes nasalised. As with *-le* 'approximate locativiser' above, it is not written.

103) *hue̱i-**li**-kôu*
     water-E.LOCR=LOC

     '**right** in the water'

104) *we-**li**=kôu*
     sand-E.LOCR=LOC

     '**right** in the sand'

---

[65] In some cases a back vowel is deleted (102).

Locativiser -ba 'along'

This suffix has only been found referring to rivers and trails/ roads.

105) *Ke-ge   to̲-ba   miye̲ susug̲-môu   fe-l-i̲-gi*
      that-VBR river-along fish dive.for-PFV come.up-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

      '(He) did like that, diving for fish **along** the river and coming on until ...'

106) *Yesu=bôu dig̲ sa   Jerusalem=kôu ya-di   a-ba   ke*
      Jesus=and 3PL land Jerusalem=LOC go.DU/PL-HAB road-along that

      yo-l-u-gi
      go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

      'Jesus and his followers went **along** the road that goes to Jerusalem until ...'

3.1.2.2 A locative nominaliser

Locative nominaliser -mi 'place'

The suffix -*mi* 'place' makes a minimal clause or a nominal phrase into a locative noun.

107) *hebe ha-i-mi=kôu*
      tree cut-NFUT-place=LOC

      'in (the) garden/(an) **area** of cut (down) trees'

108) *mihi̲   da-i-mi=kôu   tila-l-e*
      earth dig-NFUT-place=LOC lie.down-IRR-FUT

      '... (he) will sleep in (a) dug-out **hole**.'

109) *tie-i-mi*
      sleep-NFUT-place

      'dream/**place** of sleep'

110) *diou-mi+du*
      canoe-place+inside

      '(the) **space** inside the canoe'

3.1.2.3 A verbalising suffix

The suffix -*ge* 'verbaliser', when suffixed to the demonstrative pronouns *kôu-* 'this' or *ke* 'that', makes a verb. It is also part of the question words *koboge* 'when' and *kage* 'how', which are formally verbs in Konai.

Verbaliser -ge

111) *E̲ kôu-g(u)e   tobo-u,*
      3s this-VBR(BLTV)   say-NFUT

      'He said like this,...'

112) *Ke-ge=yodi-l-i.*
      that-VBR=IQV-IRR-NFUT

      '... He says like that.'

113) *Ke-ge-i   dege-môu ...*
      that-VBR-NFUT   do-PFV

      'Because of having become like that ...'

114) *Ke-ge-môu   a̲ i-l-e ...*
      that-VBR-PFV   1s go-IRR-FUT

      'Having become like that/So/Then I went ...'

The question words that are verbs follow below. The word for 'why' is a medial verb form.

115) *koboge*
      when.VBR

      'when'

116) *ka-ge*
      how-VBR

      'how'

117) *ka-**ge**-môu*
      how-VBR-PFV
      'why'

The verbalising suffix *-ge* may also be attached to the derived locative forms: *kôule* 'here' and *kele* 'there'

118) *kôu-le-**ge***
      this-A.LOCR-VBR
      'be/do like this here' (showing size with hands)'

119) *ke-le-**ge***
      that-A.LOCR-VBR
      'be/do like that there'

120) *a̲ ţewe môu-l-i̲   mei fogo-u.   Ke-le-**ge**-môu,   a̲   fi+ma̲-i̲*
      1S know get-IRR-NFUTNEG leave.for-NFUT that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV 1S   soul+put-NFUT

      hiye=do dege-i.
      big=INT   do-NFUT
      '... not learning anything I left. Having become like that there, I thought a lot about it'. (Mountain dialect; this form is not very common in the Lowland dialect)

This suffix *-ge* has a homophone *=ge*, an enclitic that functions as a contrastive focus marker (see 8.4). In (118) and (119) above, the function could be either to verbalise or to contrast, but in (120), where the verb is in its medial form, it shows clearly that here *-ge* is functioning as a verbaliser.

3.1.2.4 A numeralising suffix

There is a suffix that derives cardinal numbers from nouns referring to body parts. For a complete list of bodyparts used as numbers. See 4.4.2.1 TRADITIONAL ORDINAL NUMBERS. According to one Konai speaker, the word *yosi* means 'end'.

Numeraliser *-yosi*

121) *fusaka dihi   hou-**yosi**   ke-ge*
      cat   child   thumb-NUMR   that-VBR
      'five kittens'

122) *o   dio-**yosi**   ke-ge*
      man bone/lower.arm-NUMR   that-VBR
      'seven men'

3.1.2.5 Suffixes giving additional meanings to pronouns

The following suffixes give additional meaning to emphatic and possessive pronouns. They are analysed as derivational.

-sie   '-reflexive'   suffixed to emphatic pronouns (4.3.3)

-sofe̲i   '- self alone' suffixed to possessive pronouns (4.3.2)

-bukôu   '-first'   suffixed mostly to possessive pronouns,[66] but also to the demonstrative pronoun *ke̲* 'that'

123) *Dia̲ diô̲u-**sie**   solôu=do dege-i.*
      3PL 3PL.EMP-REFL   heart=INT do-NFUT
      'They were sorry for them**selves**.'

124) *Ni̲   ... ni̲ô̲u-**sie**   mogo dege-i-ba   mogo dege-i-ba   de-ma.*
      2PL   ... 2PL.EMP-REFL friend do-NFUT-PFV.IRR friend do-NFUT-PFV.IRR PROV-DU/PL
      'Be friends with each other.'

125) *a̲ mayô̲u-**sie** hoho̲ dege-i=ye   do-môu*
      1S 1S.EMP-REFL light do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV
      'Lest I be conceited .../Lest I rejoice over my**self** ...'

126) *e̲-**sofe̲i**   i-l-e*
      3S-self.alone go-IRR-FUT
      'he will go **alone**'

---

[66] The second person singular form has been given as *na̲-bukôu* (2s-first) 'you (being) first', i.e. a personal pronoun and not a possessive one.

127)   *Yo=be   a̲=me   ma̲-**sofe̲i***
       base=TOP 1S=TOP 1S.POSS-self.alone be/have NEG
       'Because I am not **by myself** ...'

                     dala   mei

128)   *sasa̲i   die-**sofe̲i**   dala   mei,*
       woman 3PL.POSS-self.alone be/have NEG

       *haba   o=ne   die-**sofe̲i**   dala   mei. ... di̲a*
       but.PFV.IRR man=also 3PL.POSS-self.alone be/have NEG ... 3PL

       *di̲o̲û-**sie**   y-ogo   dogôugu-môu dogôugu-môu dele   i-di*
       3PL.POSS-self.alone 3S.EMP-friend help.NFUT-PFV help.NFUT-PFV PROV-IRR-FUT go-HAB
       '... women are not **alone**, neither are men **alone**. ... they keep helping each other/living together.'

129)   *ele   ... Kolo̲u=kôu   mu-gua-môu,   e̲-**bukôu**   miye̲ susu̲a,   ...*
       1DU.EX ... Konoun=LOC go.down-DU/PL-PFV 3S-first fish dive.for ...

       haba   a̲ susu̲a-i̲.
       but.PFV.IRR 1S dive.for-NFUT
       '... the two of us ... having gone down to the (river) Konoun, he was the **first** who dived for fish and ... instead I dived.'

130)   *sasa̲i e̲-**bukôu**   mo̲-u   sasa̲i*
       woman 3S-first get-NFUT woman
       '**first** wife'

131)   *a̲ bôu   t̲a   e̲-**bukôu**   hu+so-l-ôu̲*
       1S white.man talk 3S-first name+call-IRR-NPST
       'I'll read the English **first**.'

132)   *Godi=h̲a tobôu-môu ma̲-**bukôu**   hagua dala*
       God=GEN say-PFV 1S.POSS-first   come be/have
       '... God sending me, I was the **first** (to) come and be (here) ...'

133)   *kogou ke̲-**bukôu**   mo̲û+ma̲ dogogu-o ... dou ko=kôu   hebe-l-e*
       weed that-first   get+put put-FUT   ... fire that=LOC carry-IRR-FUT

       mu-gu-ma
       go.down-OF-ISQ
       '... after getting the weeds **first** and collecting them and ... carrying them to the fire and putting them down ...'

3.1.3 Prefixation

Prefixes are rare in Konai. They have a limited function in two areas: marking of inalienable possession for a few kinship nouns (derivational) and adding a directional component to some verbs (inflectional).

3.1.3.1 Relational prefixes

At one time derivational kinship prefixes may have been prevalent in the language. Today there is only a trace left. It seems unlikely that these prefixes have been borrowed from other languages, as they can all be related to Konai pronouns. Possibly the **idea** of inalienable possession may have been borrowed.

134)   ***m**-ogo*   ***n**-ogo*   ***y**-ogo*
       1S.EMP-friend   2S.EMP-friend   3S.EMP-friend
       '(my) friend'   'your friend'   'his/her friend'

       <u>Compare:</u>
       *may**ô**u* 'I myself'   *n**ô**u* 'you yourself'   *y**ô**u* 'he himself/she herself'
       ma̲ 'my'   *ne̲* 'your'   (*e̲* 'his/her')

The word *mogo* is actually the common word for 'friend', though *nogo* 'your friend' and *yogo* 'his/her friend' are not unusual. The form *yogo* 'his/her friend' has a special function in expressing reciprocity (see 4.3.3.1 RECIPROCAL USE OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

The word for mother also shows a trace, as follows:

***adi*ôu**	1s.mother	'mother'	(Lowland dialect)
duôu	mother	'mother'	(other dialects)
***a**-duôu*	1s-mother	'mother/my mother'	(other dialects)

Compare:

g 'I'

3.1.3.2 Directional prefixes

Three directional prefixes functioning in the verb have been found. They specify or modify the meaning as follows:

ɫi-	'towards'
***ɫi**-hagua*[67]	'come **towards**'
towards-come	
***ɫi**-migi*	'come down **towards**'
towards-come.down	
***ɫi**-fele̱*	'come in **towards**'
towards-come.up	
***ɫi**-deme̱*	'come downriver **towards**'
towards-come.downriver	
ga-	'downwards'
***ga**-dugu*	'look **down**'
downwards-look	
***dala**-*	'upwards'
***dala**-dugu*	'look **up**'
upwards-look	

3.2 Suppletion

There are a few suppletive forms.

dihi	'child'	*sisigo̱*	'children'
i	'go (sg.)'	*ya*	'go (du./pl.)' (Lowland dialect)

In the Mountain and Foothill dialects, the non-singular form for 'go' is regular: *i-ga* (go-DU/PL). However, this word is pronounced [igiˈɑ], due to bleed-through (see 2.3.4) and is quite often spelled <igiya>, in which case it may look like a suppletive verb form. As can be seen, the Lowland dialect variant comes from the last syllable.

A few other verbs, varying in form depending on number, are partly suppletive.

diafôu	'cut (sg.)'	*diafigi*		'cut (du./pl. object)'
sia	'walk around (sg.)'	*sulu.gua*	....DU/PL	'walk around (du./pl. subject)'
igile mugu	'remove (sg.)'	*igi-se*	...-DU/PL	'remove (du./pl. object)'

3.3 Compounding

Compound words are fairly common. There seem to be no specific rules as to what may be compounded with what.

N+ADJ	*a + hu = do*	'road+far=INT'	*ahudo*	'far away'
N+V	*sa + biye-i*	'land+sit-NFUT'	*sabiyei*	'in the morning'
	a + ko-gu	'road+hinder-OF.NFUT'	*akogu*	'hinder'
	fi̱ + ma̱-i	'soul+put-NFUT'	*fima̱i*	'a thought'
N+N	*a + di*	'door+area beside door'	*adi*	'doorpost'
N+N	*maga + u*	'jaw+hole'	*mogou*	'mouth'
ADJ+V	*damale̱ + ode*	'true+say'	*damale̱yode*	'believe'
ADV+ADV	*afu + kôu*	'earlier+prior'	*afukôu*	'old'

---

[67] Does not work with *i* 'go'.

The word *a* 'road' easily makes compounds with other words giving the meaning of 'via' and/or 'manner'. In these instances there is a transitional semi-vowel preceding it. It would be possible to interpret this construction as another case marker $= \{a\}$ as it attaches itself to the nominal phrase as do other case markers (see 5.2.3.2 CASE).

135) *Di̲a̲ do   o   mala̲   mele+y-a=be   tôu mala̲   fele-i.*
     3PL sickness man get.IRR.FUT roof+TRSV-road=TOP hold get.IRR.FUT go.up-NFUT
     'They took the sick man up **via** the roof.'

136) *a+di+y-a   dala*
     road+area.beside.door+TRSV-road be/have
     'to stand **by** the door'

137) *A   e   i=be,   sa   kasaga̲i+y-a   ke̲   i.*
     road 3s   go.NFUT=TOP   land bad+TRSV-road that go.NFUT
     'The road he went, went **via** a bad place.'

3.4 Zero Formation

The term 'zero formation' refers to a process used for nominalisation. Though there is no nominalising suffix as such, certain verb forms may be used as nouns without any affixation or other changes. Below are some examples.

138) *Na̲ t̲a-l-e̲   mei dala-l-i.*
     2s   talk-IRR-FUT NEG be/have-IRR-NFUT
     'You **will** now not be able to **speak**.'

139) *Godi=ha̲ t̲a*   (VERB ROOT of the verb *t̲a* 'talk'; compare the previous example,
     God=GEN talk   where it can be seen that *t̲a* is a verb)
     'the **Word** of God'

140) *fafa-i*   (NFUT)
     cut.flat.surface-NFUT
     'table'

141) *na-l-e̲*   (FUT)
     eat-IRR-FUT
     'food'

142) *biya-di*   (HAB)
     fight-HAB
     'war'

3.5 Reduplication and repetition

Reduplication and the syntactic process repetition occur on several levels of the Konai language:

- reduplication: verbs and nouns to signal non-singular
- repetition: verbal phrases to signal reciprocity
- repetition: one sentence type is based on a clause being repeated.

Non-singular
Partial reduplication occurs, signalling plural, especially plurality of an action. This includes iterative aspect and plural object (see 4.1.5.4.1 ITERATIVE ASPECT). Also, on a few nouns it occurs to mark plural (see 4.2.1 PLURAL NOUNS).

The most common reduplication is when the first syllable is reduplicated.

143) *t̲i-t̲ia-môu*
     RED.PL-sleep-PFV
     'rest **again and again**' (about the progress of a mortally wounded pig)

144) *Tisa=ha̲   ele=mokôu bôu   t̲a   he-hegi-e-i.*
     teacher=GEN   1DU.EX=LOC white.man talk RED.PL-show-RED.PL[68]-NFUT
     'The teacher **taught** us English (plural object, as well as on a daily basis).'

---

[68] This *-e* is explained under 4.1.5.4.1 ITERATIVE ASPECT and in the list of abbreviations: RED.PL: *-e*.

145) *Sa   kuo=kôu=be **su**-suwa   ta   dala   mei=do.*
    land here=LOC=TOP RED.PL-(every)thing INDF be/have NEG=INT

    'This place does not have anything/**a lot** of anything.'

Whole reduplication, with the same meaning as in previous examples, has been found for a few words, e.g. *taḫa* 'shoot'.

146) ***Taḫa   taḫa**-ma hebe-l-e   mu-gu   fiyo-u-môu*
    shoot shoot-ISQ carry-IRR-FUT go.down.OF fall-NFUT-PFV

    'After **shooting many times**, throwing it (a snake) down, ...'

Reciprocity
Verbal phrase repetition occurs to express reciprocity.

147) *nị=ne   niôu-sie   y-ogo=kôu   **solôu=do dege-i-ba***
    2PL=also 2PL.EMP-REFL 3S.EMP-friend=LOC heart=INT do-NFUT-PFV.IRR

    solôu=do dege-i-ba   *de-ma=be=ede-i*
    heart=INT do-NFUT-PFV.IRR PROV-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-NFUT

    '"... you too must love each other," he instructed.'

See also 4.3.3.1 RECIPROCAL USE OF EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

Clause repetition as a sentence type
One sentence type is based on repeating a clause.

148) *ta=nôu   bolo=fei   ta=nôu   bolo=fei*
    INDF=only good=total INDF=only good=total

    'one is as good as another'

See 7.2 CLAUSE REPETITION.

3.6 Cliticisation

Enclitics attach themselves phonologically to the preceding word, but they function on phrase,[69] sentence or discourse level. In natural text there is often only one enclitic on any phrase. More than three has not been observed.

3.6.1 Enclitics functioning at phrase level

Phrase level enclitics function with the nominal phrase but are not limited to that, or even to phrase level. These enclitics are case markers, limiters, an intensifier, a conjunction and an independent possessive enclitic. The order among the enclitics is not as fixed as among suffixes.

The relative order of enclitics with the nominal phrase:

(Intensifier)	Case	Limiter$_I$	(Intensifier)	Limiter$_{II}$	Conjunction	(Intensifier)
=*do*	=*ḫa*, =*kôu*, =*ye*	=*nôu*	=*do*	=*fei*, =*ne*	=*bôu*	=*do*
intensifier	genitive/control locative instrumental	only	intensifier	total also	and/with/also	intensifier

The intensifier =*do* may occur in different places depending on what is focused in on. See also Appendix II for co-occurrence restrictions on a nominal phrase with a pronoun or question word as head.

149) *fị=**ye**=**nôu**   tawa-i*
    soul=INS=only know-NFUT

    '(he/she) knew (it) by heart/... **by** (his/her) heart **only**'

150) *yo   bolou=**nôu**=**do**=**fei** sogo-gu*
    banana two=only=INT=total plant-OF

    '(he) planted **a total of only** two banana trees'

151) *Tigi nele=**do**=**ye**=**ne**   tiga-l-e   sagai   mei.*
    vine strong=INT=INS=also tie-IRR-FUT likely NEG

    'Not **even with very** strong vines could he be tied.'

152) *Ke=**nôu**=si   yo=be   e   towe=**bôu**=**do** ka=**ḫa**=**nôu**   kasagai.*
    that=only=CNTR base=TOP 3S hair=and=INT that=GEN=only bad

    'But **only because** he **has** feathers (he) is bad.'

---

[69] The instrumental case marker also functions on clause level in its use to express means.

153) *ma   aye=do*
      1s.POSS father=INT
      'my **real** father' (i.e. not a paternal uncle)

3.6.1.1 Case markers

There are three case enclitics functioning mostly on nominal phrases but not limited to that. Two of them also function in what traditionally would be sentence structures, one expressing reason and the other means.

={*ha*}	'genitive'	includes possessive, controlling agents, reason and time relationships	see 5.2.3.2 CASE
={*ye*}	'instrumental'	includes instrumental, non-referential; minor, non-controlling agents (as props), as well as means	
={*kôu*}	'locative'	includes locative, allative, recipient	

Genitive case marker ={*ha*}

154) *sasai=ha   so*   *sasai=ha=le*   **possessive**
      woman=GEN dog   woman=GEN=indp.poss
      'the woman**'s** dog'   'the woman**'s**'

155) *di   tewe   mei,   Godi=ha=nôu   tewe.*   **controlling agent**
      1PL.IN know   NEG   God=GEN=only   know
      '... we don't know; only **God** knows.'

156) *Dahamo   tisa   hagu=ya   mei ka=ha   dege-môu,*   **reason**
      Dahamo   teacher   come=SUBJ   NEG that=GEN do-PFV

      duôu   aye   ke+dia
      mother   father   that+3PL
      '**Because** there is no teacher coming to Dahamo, the parents …'

157) *sasai   e   do   hiye=do dege-i-môu,   o   ke+dia   hebe+ma*   **reason**
      woman 3s sickness big=INT do-NFUT-PFV   man that+3PL carry+put

      Dahamo i   ka=ha   hagi   a=bôu+de   dala.
      Dahamo go.NFUT that=GEN heavy 1s=and=PROV be/have
      '... because when (my) wife was very sick, the men carried her and went to Dahamo, (and) **because of** that I have (a) problem.'

158) *Sunday ka=ha   fele-i,   Monday kôu=ma=ha,*   **temporal setting**
      Sunday that=GEN go.up-NFUT Monday this=TOP=GEN

      sele   170 kina to-l-ôu   i
      money 170 kina hold-IRR-NPST go.NFUT
      '(I) arrived last **Sunday**; this **Monday** (I) held K170 and went ...'

Instrumental case marker ={*ye*} (dialectal/personal variant =***e***)

159) *Na hei=ye   dou   hebe-l-i.*   **instrumental**
      2s axe=INS   fire cut-IRR-NFUT
      'You are cutting firewood **with** an axe.'

160) *fi=ye=nôu   tawa-i*
      soul=INS=only   know-NFUT
      '(he/she) knew (it) **by** heart/... in (his/her) heart'

161) *sio   miye=be   ... Dia=me   o=ye   taha-l-i,*   **non-referential**
      bird Victoria.pigeon=TOP... 3PL=TOP   man=INS shoot-IRR-NFUT

      mala   gobo-l-ôu+ma   fogôu   i-di
      arrow   break-IRR-NPST+put   leave.for   go-HAB
      '... Victoria pigeons ... When they are shot at **by** man, (they) break off (the) arrow and leaving (they) go.'

162) *afu   o=e   ta   tawa-l-i   mei*   **non-referential**
      earlier man=INS INDF know-IRR-NFUT NEG
      '**people** did not know anything before'

163) *Hebe=be o   ke+di̱a̱ hou   sege-i=**ye**=no̱û   dala.*   **means**
  tree=TOP man that+3PL seedling plant-NFUT=INS=ONLY be/have
  'The trees are (here) only **by** having been planted by people.'

In the **Mountain dialect** =*ye* also marks time by making a body part into a day of the week. In this use it may be followed by the contrastive focus marker or a topic marker.

164) *sasama=ye=ge*   **temporal**
  ring.finger=INS=F.CNTR   **setting**
  '**on** Tuesday'

Locative case marker =**{ko̱û}**   =*moko̱û*   (used on personal pronouns)

                              =*mako̱û*   (used on emphatic pronouns)

                              =*ko̱û*   (used elsewhere)

Locative case marker =***moko̱û*** – on personal pronouns

165) *Di̱o̱u̱   a̱=**moko̱û** duwo.*   **locative**
  mosquito 1s=LOC   sit
  'The mosquito is sitting **on** me.'

166) *hoho̱   hiye=do ta   e̱=**moko̱û** hagu-mo̱û   dugu.*   **allative**
  light big=INT INDF 3s=LOC   come.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
  '…(he) saw a big light coming **towards** him.'

167) *Ne̱   adio̱û=ha̱   a̱=**moko̱û** ne̱-i̱.*   **recipient**
  2s.POSS mother=GEN 1s=LOC   give-NFUT
  'Your mother gave it **to** me.'

Locative case marker =***mako̱û*** – on emphatic pronouns

168) *sele   hiyou=ye mo̱-u̱   ke̱   a̱ sele haba   doso̱û+dia* **recipient**
  money steal=INS get-NFUT that 1s money but.PFV.IRR index.finger+3PL

  *ke-ge   dogo̱ûgu-o-ba,   di̱o̱û=**mako̱û** boho-l-o̱û   ne̱-mo̱û i-l-a-mo̱û*
  that-VBR help-FUT-PFV.IRR 3PL.EMP=LOC   turn-IRR-NPST give-PFV go-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
  '... the money (I) have stolen, I will join four times and give back **to** each person ...'

Locative case marker =***ko̱û*** – elsewhere

169) *Yesu   ma̱ eye̱   na̱ hebeni=**ko̱û** duwo.*   **locative**
  Jesus 1s big.brother 2s heaven=LOC sit
  'Jesus, my big brother, you sit **in** heaven.'

170) *A̱ moso̱=**ko̱û** i-l-i.*   **allative**
  1s house=LOC go-IRR-NFUT
  'I'm going home/**to** (the) house.'

171) *e̱ dihi=**ko̱û** hoho̱   hiye=do dege-l-i.*   **recipient**
  3s child=LOC light big=INT do-IRR-NFUT
  '… she is very pleased **with** (the) child.'

3.6.1.2 Limiters

There are three enclitics with a limiting function. Based on distribution there are two classes.

Limiting enclitics attaching to any nominal phrase

  Limiter I (closer to stem)   **Limiter II** (further from stem)
  =*no̱û* 'only'   =*fe̱i* 'total'

                                  =*ne* 'also'

172) *yo   bolo̱u=**no̱û**=do=**fe̱i** sogo-gu*
  banana two=only=INT=total plant-OF
  '(he) planted a **total** of **only** two bananas'

173) *Tigi   nele̱=do=ye=**ne**   tiga-l-e   saga̱i mei.*
  vine strong=INT=INS=also tie-IRR-FUT likely NEG
  'Not **even** with very strong vines could he be tied.'

3.6.1.3 The intensifier =*do*

The enclitic =*do* is used to emphasize certain words, phrases or even clauses. Often it can be translated as 'very' or 'really'. It most commonly occurs on adjectives, both as they function as modifiers in the nominal phrase and when they function as the comment in a topic-comment clause. The placement of this enclitic in the nominal phrase varies (see 3.6.1).

On some adjectives it has become more or less lexicalised, like in (179), (180) and (181). With these adjectives it is almost always there. It may occur with temporal phrases (182) and (183). Sometimes it occurs on whole clauses (184) - (187).

If the intensifier =*do* occurs straight on a noun, it gets the meaning of 'real' (189), (190) and (191).

174) *o   hiye*=***do***
      man big=INT

      '(a) **really** big man/(the) man (is) **really** big'

175) *O*=*be   hiye*=***do.***
      man=TOP big=INT

      'The man is **really** big.'

176) *moso   bolo*=***do***
      house good=INT

      '(a) **very** good house/(the) house (is) **very** good'

177) *sasai   sasa*=***do***
      woman tall=INT

      '(a) **very** tall woman/(the) woman (is) **very** tall'

178) *O   mei*=***do.***
      man NEG=INT

      '(There are) no people (here) **at all**.'

179) *a*+***hu***=***do***
      road+far=INT

      '**far** away'

180) ***dou***=***do***
      straight=INT

      '**very** straight'

181) ***su***=***do***
      many=INT

      '**very** many'

182) *gusugu*=***do***
      morning=INT

      '**very early** (in the) morning'

183) *Afu*=***do***   *o   ta   e   mowi i.*
      earlier=INT man INDF 3S hunt go.NFUT

      '**Some time** ago, (a) man went hunting.'

184) *E   Godi*=*kôu   taga-l-i*=***do.***
      3S God=LOC   like-IRR-NFUT=INT

      'He loves God **very much**.'

185) *E   goso-l-o   mei*=***do.***
      3S cry-IRR-FUT NEG=INT

      'He will **definitely** not cry.'

186) *Yesu hu   folo*=***do***
      Jesus   name go.up=INT

      'praising (the) name Jesus/(the) name Jesus going up **very** high'

187) *Mei dege-l-adi*=***do.***
      NEG do-IRR-PROS=INT

      '(I'm) **really** just about finished.'

188) *O   kôu̲=me koyo=do?*
    man this=TOP who=INT
    'Who **really** is this man?'

189) *ma̲   aye=do*
    1S.POSS father=INT
    'my **real** father' (i.e. not a paternal uncle)

190) *ma   mogo=do*
    1S.POSS friend=INT
    'my **special** friend'

191) *ôu̲   towôu̲   mei, towôu̲=do*
    sago string.skirt NEG string.skirt=INT
    'not (a) sago string skirt, (a) **real** string skirt (i.e. made from swamp grass)'

192) *o=do*
    man=INT
    '(an) **old** man'

3.6.1.4 The co-ordinating enclitic *=bôu̲*

The enclitic *=bôu̲* 'and/with/also' is used to co-ordinate any kind of non-verbal phrases. It is attached to each co-ordinate phrase.

193) *Ma̲   aye=bôu̲   a̲=bôu̲ ele   ya-i.*
    1S.POSS father=and 1S=and 1DU.EX go.DU/PL-NFUT
    'My father **and** I went.'

194) *I=bôu̲   we=bôu̲   huẹi hiye=do to-u-l-u.*
    yesterday=and day.before.yesterday=and water big=INT wash-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
    'Yesterday **and** the day before yesterday it rained very much (and it is still raining).'

This enclitic is also used to signal accompaniment, when it is attached to a word that is in a subordinate position to the main word as in (195). In (196) the main word is understood from the preceding sentence.

195) *o   sasa̲i hagi̲=bôu̲*
    man woman heavy=and
    'people **with** trouble'

196) *E̲ difi hiye=do. Na̲=bôu̲ ta=nôu̲   difi hiye=do.*
    3S heat big=INT 2S=and   INDF=only heat big=INT
    'She (is) very hot. (She is) **as** hot **as** you (are).'

See also 5.2.2.3 CO-ORDINATE NOMINAL PHRASE.

3.6.1.5 The independent possessive enclitic

The enclitic *=le* makes a possessive construction independent. It is obligatory pre-positioned by the possessive case marker *=ha̲* 'genitive', where the vowel becomes de-nasalised. The possessed item is usually not mentioned. The possessor cannot be expressed with a possessive pronoun in this construction, though the question word *koyo* 'who' can be the basis in the independent possessive construction.

197) *Di   fi̲=be   koyo=ha=le?*
    1PL.IN soul=TOP who=GEN=INDP.POSS
    'Who**se** are our souls?'

198) *Yesu=ha=le*
    Jesus=GEN=INDP.POSS
    'Jesus**'**.'

It may also, but rarely, be used for emphasis even if the possessed item is mentioned.

199) *m<u>a</u>*   *mal<u>a</u>=ha=le*   *dihi*
      1s.POSS   younger.sibling=GEN=INDP.POSS   child

      'my younger sibling**'s child**'

3.6.2 Sentence enclitics

There are three enclitics marking illocutionary force.

- *=(y)o*   'indicative'   in some statements

- *=(y)e*   'optative'   in some commands & suggestions

- *=(y)a*   'subjunctive'   in some purpose constructions, opinion statements and content questions

See 7.1 ILLOCUTIONARY FORCE

The most common use of these clitics is in so called quote verbs. See 4.1.1.3 QUOTE VERBS.

200) *<u>A</u> Dahamo=kôu=ge sawisie-i*   *Tuesday ka=h<u>a</u>*   *fene*
      1s Dahamo=LOC=F.CNTR be.day-NFUT Tuesday that=GEN airplane

      mu-l-<u>o</u>=yo+de-i-môu   *baha duwo-l-i*
      go.down-IRR-FUT=INDC+PROV-NFUT-PFV   look sit-IRR-NFUT

      'I sat waiting at Dahamo that Tuesday for the plane to come down as (they) had **said** ...'

201) *<u>a</u> di<u>a</u> dogôugu=ye+de tobo-l-ôu*   *i-môu du-l-o-môu*
      1s 3PL help=OPT+PROV   say-IRR-NPST   go-PFV hear-IRR-FUT-PFV

      '... I having heard that they had **said** I **must** help them ...'

202) *n<u>a</u> m<u>a</u>   dabai tolôu-ba*   *dege=ya+do-môu maka dege-l-i*
      2s 1s.POSS work hold-PFV.IRR   do=SUBJ+PROV-PFV   mark do-IRR-NFUT

      ku-h<u>e</u>.
      this-P.LOCR

      '... I appoint you here and now **in order for** you to hold and do my work.'

3.6.3 Discourse enclitics

There are three enclitics widely used to mark pragmatic functions in discourse.

=be	'topic marker'	see 8.3
=ge	'contrastive focus marker'	see 8.4
=si	'contrastive marker'	see 7.3.3.4

These enclitics may occur on any part of speech except particles, but they function mostly on discourse level in structuring the discourse in regard to foreground & background, theme development, participant reference etc. Disregarding the minor variants of the topic marker, these enclitics usually occur as the rightmost morpheme on the relevant part of speech. They usually do not co-occur, though the contrastive marker *=si* and the topic marker *=be* may occasionally be found on the same word, with the topic marker last.[70]

The topic marker ={*be*}

Marking of topic[71] in Konai is generally a backgrounding and generalising device (see 8.3). There may be more than one constituent marked for topic in a clause/sentence.

There are four allomorphs: *=me*   major variant, occurs on nasal pronouns

=b   minor variant, occurs before the subjunctive quote verb *=ade* in forms with plural object

=ma   minor variant, occurs preceding *=h<u>a</u>* 'genitive' in some demonstrative forms

=be   occurs elsewhere

The following examples only show the wide distribution of the topic marker. The first five examples show different kinds of **discourse functions**. They may have to do with type of discourse, foreground & background, participant reference etc. All of these things are discussed elsewhere in the paper. The topic marker is often untranslatable.

---

[70] What in some instances may seem like a co-occurrence of *=ge* and *=si* is actually *=si* following *-ge* 'verbaliser' (see 3.1.2.3).

[71] Marking of *topic* in this statement refers only to the operation involving ={*be*}.

203)   *Tawa-l-e̱   ṯa   ke̱=**me** kô̱u-g(u)e,   a̱=**me** hagi̱ hiye=do dege dala.*
       know-IRR-FUT talk that=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) 1S=TOP heavy big=INT do be/have

       'That message is like this: I have (a) very big problem.'

204)   *A̱=**me**   ifi̱=**be**   lesson 14 ...=bô̱u, haba   kuguo hiye=**be** lesson*
       1S=TOP   today=TOP   lesson 14 ...=and but.PFV.IRR paper big=TOP lesson

       6...   ke-ge   he-hegi-e-l-i.
       6...   that-VBR RED.PL-show-RED.PL-IRR-NFUT

       'Today I am teaching lesson 14 … and also lesson 6 ... in the Big Book.'

205)   *Yo-l-u-gi   dugu=**be**   hebe hiye=do ṯa   ṯafala.*
       go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT INDF stand

       'We went until we saw a big tree standing (there).'

206)   *Beye   ... E̱ na-l-e̱   na-l-a̱-mô̱u   su-l-u   ku-he̱.*
       possum ... 3S food-IRR-FUT food-IRR-SUBJ-PFV walk.around-IRR-NFUT this-P.LOCR

       *Ke̱=nô̱u=**si**=**be**   sisigo̱=ye   wo-l-o   saga̱i   mei.*
       that=only=CNTR=TOP children=INS   attack-IRR-FUT likely NEG

       'The possum ... here he is, walking around wanting/planning to eat food. Nevertheless, the children are not
       likely to kill him.'

207)   *na̱ do̱u=do   tobo-l-ô̱u   ke̱=**me**-he̱=yode   tobo-u.*
       2S straight=INT say-IRR-NPST that=TOP-P.LOCR=IQV say-NFUT

       '... "You say (it) correct there," (he) stated and said.'

The topic marker *=be* also functions **in the clause or sentence.** It may mark the topic in a verbless clause. It also
functions in conditional sentences, marking the antecedent.

208)   *O=**be**   kou?*   **verbless clause**
       man=TOP where   6.2 VERBLESS CLAUSES

       'Where are people?'

209)   *Suwa olô̱ufe̱i yodu-ba=**be**,   a̱ ni̱=mokô̱u milo-l-ô̱u.*   **conditional sentence**
       thing all   ask.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 1S 2PL=LOC   work-IRR-NPST 7.3.3.3 CONDITION

       'If you ask for anything I will do (it) for you.'

The following examples illustrate the **minor variants** of the topic marker. One is used in a couple of demonstrative
words and the other together with one of the quote verbs.

210)   *Ulie̱   kô̱u=**ma**=ha̱*   **demonstrative word**
       cicada this=TOP=GEN   4.8.2.1 THE DEMONSTRATIVE ...

       'This particular cicada ...'

211)   *hoho̱bô̱u-ma=**b**=ado-mô̱u*   **quote verb =ade 'assert'**
       be.glad-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV   4.1.1.3 QUOTE VERBS

       '... in order for them to rejoice ...'

The contrastive focus marker =ge

The enclitic *=ge* marks contrastive focus in regards to participants, time and location (see 8.4 FOCUS OF CONTRAST.)

212)   ***A̱*** ***e̱=mokô̱u*** *diho̱ baga̱   tobô̱u-mô̱u dugu,   haba   **e̱=ge**   a̱=**me***
       1S 3S=LOC   eye close say-PFV   see.NFUT but.PFV.IRR 3S=F.CNTR 1S=TOP

       huyafe̱i   dogô̱ugu-mô̱u
       little.total   help-PFV

       '**I** saw that praying to **him**, (and) **he** helping **me** a little again, (I) ...' (object -> subject)

213)   *hebe ... sasa=do ... ka=ha̱   sugu̱+tô̱u=**ge** fiye   sa̱-i   sasa=do ka=ha̱*
       tree long=INT ... that=GEN top+UP=F.CNTR thread twine-NFUT   long=INT that=GEN

       migi-mô̱u   dugu.
       come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       '… (they) saw that **from** the top of (a) very ... tall tree, ..., that very long rope came
       down.'

The contrastive marker =*si*

One way to signal semantic contrast is to use the discourse enclitic =*si* 'contrast'. This enclitic may occur on any part of speech, thus contrasting that particular part with another similar part of speech (see 7.3.3.4 CONTRAST).

The difference between =*si* 'contrastive marker' and =*ge* 'contrastive focus marker' is that =*ge* functions as a mark of reference in regard to participant, time and location, while =*si* contrasts semantic content of phrases and/or clauses/sentences.

214) *Godi sa sibige kôu milo-u, e̱=nôu=si damale̱=do Godi.*
God land essence prior work-NFUT 3s-only=CNTR true-INT God
'**But** God, who made the world, only he is the true God.'

215) *Soti=ha̱=si tewe.*
Soti=GEN=CNTR know
'**But** Soti knows.' (about an ancestor custom)

216) *O ta=ha̱ Tabubil=kôu e̱ mogo dala-ba i-ba=si,*
man INDF=GEN Tabubil=LOC 3s friend be/have-PFV.IRR go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR

e̱ mogo=ha̱ moso̱=kôu tia-l-e,
3s friend=GEN house=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT

'**But** if somebody having a friend in Tabubil goes (there), (he) will sleep in his friend's house and ...'
(If he has no friend there he cannot go.)

217) *Ke̱=nôu=si e̱ hagu-l-i mei.*
that=only=CNTR 3s come-IRR-NFUT NEG
'**But** he didn't come.'

3.7 Homophones and variants among suffixes and enclitics

There are three sets of homophones (3.7.1) and one set of variants (3.7.2) among the suffixes and enclitics that will be mentioned specially in this section. These homophones are usually unambiguous, but the second pair of homophones has one function, where the second member of the pair seems slightly related with the first member. Among the first set of homophones, there is one verb that is an almost-homophone, and there is a point of contact in meaning with one of the suffixes.

In the case of the variants, the variants are dialectal and may be confusing.

3.7.1 Three sets of homophones

category	form	meaning	function	example
numerical suffix	-*ma*	**'non-singular'**	in imperative & prohibitive mood	(218)
medial verb suffix	-*ma*	**'immediate sequence'**	telic in medial verbs expressing sequence	(219)
verb	*ma̱*	**'put'**	telic in serial verb constructions expressing plural object	(220)
derivational suffix	-*ge*	**'verbaliser'**	verbaliser of some demonstrative pronouns and some question words	(222)
discourse enclitic	=*ge*	**'contrastive focus'**	contrastive focus in regards to participants, time and location	(223), (224) (225)
derivational suffix	-*le*	**'approximate locativiser'**	derives an adverb from a demonstrative or a noun	(228), (229)
independent enclitic	=*le*	**'independent possessive'**	makes a complete NP of a possessive construction, where the possessed item is not mentioned	(230)

The suffixes -*ma* 'dual/plural' (3.1.1.3), **-*ma* 'immediate sequence'** (3.1.1.4) and *ma̱* **'put'** (5.1.3.8)

218) *i-ma*
go-DU/PL
'you (**du./pl.**) go!'

219) *Wai gua̱-ma i-môu, a̱ sese-ga i.*
pig squeal-ISQ go.NFUT-PFV 1s follow-DU/PL.FUT go-NFUT
'As soon as (the) pig **after** crying out had taken off, I followed (it) around.'

The next example shows the point of contact (i.e. number) between the dual/plural suffix (218) and the verb *ma̱* 'put' that together with a bare verbal root, implies a non-singular object. Example (221) is there for comparison only.

220) *A=me ma   wai   kama+dia   dala.   ... A   ma   wai*
      1s=TOP 1s.POSS pig middle.finger+3PL be/have ... 1s 1s.POSS pig

      wo+ma   na-l-e.
      attack+put   eat-IRR-FUT

      'I have three pigs. ... I will kill my pig**s** and eat **them**. '

221) *Miye ... e   dia   wala   na-l-a-môu   dege-l-i.*
      fish ... 3s crayfish attack.IRR.FUT eat-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT

      '(The) fish is trying to **kill** and eat (the) **crayfish (sg.)**'

The suffix -*ge* 'verbaliser' (3.1.2.3) and **the enclitic =*ge* 'contrastive focus marker'** (3.6.3)

222) *ke-ge*
      that-VBR
      '**be like** that'

223) *a   fi   hiye ma-i=be   kôu-g(u)e   ma-i,   Yesu na=ge   a*
      1s soul big put-NFUT=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) put-NFUT Jesus 2s=F.CNTR   1s

      dogôugu-ba,   haba   a   tewe mo-l-ôu   de tawa-l-e-môu
      help.NFUT-PFV.IRR   but.PFV.IRR 1s know get-IRR-NPST PROV know-IRR-FUT-PFV

      a   e=mokôu diho baga   tobo-u.
      1s 3s=LOC   eye close.eye say-NFUT

      '... thinking deeply, I thought like this, "When **you** Jesus help me, then I will get knowledge," and having realized that, I closed (my) eyes and said (prayed) to him.'

224) *afu   afu=ge*   *ha.ba   ha.ba=ge*
      earlier   earlier=F.CNTR   but.PFV.IRR but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR
      'earlier' 'earlier' (as **opposed to now or later**) 'again/but'   'later'

225) *ôu   ha-i   ko=kôu=ge*
      sago cut-NFUT that=LOC=F.CNTR
      '**from/at** (the place) of the cut down sago (palm)'

In the next two examples we can see the point of contact between the suffix and the enclitic. In (227), it seems that -*ge* must be the verbaliser (it is followed by a medial verb suffix).

226) *dia Sunday ke-le-ge   mala   hagua-si-l-e.*
      3PL Sunday that-A.LOCR-VBR get.IRR.FUT come-DU/PL-IRR-FUT
      '... they will bring it **on** Sunday'

227) *Duwo-di,[72] a   tewe môu-l-i   mei   fogo-u.   Ke-le-ge-môu,*
      sit-DSQ   1s know get-IRR-NPST NEG   leave.for-NFUT that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV

      a   fi+ma-i   hiye=do dege-i.
      1s soul+put-NFUT big=INT do-NFUT
      'I stayed until, getting no knowledge, I left. Then/**Being like** that there, I really thought it through.'
      (Mountain dialect)

The suffix -*le* 'approximate locativiser' (3.1.2.1 (Set II & III)) and **the enclitic =*le* 'independent possessive'** (3.6.1.5)

228) *bôu-gu-le*
      across-DEMR.D-A.LOCR
      '**somewhere** across there'

229) *e   eye=ha   dihi-le*
      3s older.brother=GEN   eye-A.LOCR
      '**in** front of his older brother'

230) *ma   aye=ha=le*
      1s.POSS father=GEN=INDP.POSS
      'my father**'s**'

---

[72] Mountain dialect; see next section.

3.7.2 Variants of *-gi* 'delayed sequence'

In the Lowland dialect, all verbs except existential state verbs, like *dala* 'be/have' and *duwo* 'sit', may take the medial suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence'. It is always preceded by the irrealis suffix *-l-* and a high or mid vowel. However, in existential state verbs *-gi* is dropped, leaving only *-l-i* 'irrealis non-future', seemingly with the meaning of 'delayed sequence'; i.e. 'until'.

231) *I,   i-l-e   i-**l-i-gi**,   Kiunga=kôu.*
      go.NFUT go-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ Kiunga=LOC

      '(I) went; (I) went and went **until** (arriving) at Kiunga.' (Lowland dialect)

232) *Ele   mogo   ta=nôu   dele-i.   Dala-**l-i**,   e   fene*
      1DU.EX   friend   INDF=only be/have-NFUT be/have-IRR-NFUT 3S airplane

      to-l-ôu-môu   Kiunga=kôu i.
      hold-IRR-NPST-PFV   Kiunga=LOC go.NFUT

      'We two were friends. (We) were (that) **until**, having caught a plane, he went to Kiunga.'
      (Lowland dialect)

In the Mountain dialect,[73] however, *-gi* is used also on existential state verbs, but without the preceding *-l-V*. The suffix *-gi*, in the Mountain dialect, also has a variant *-di* used on all verbs in this particular medial form. In addition, this variant has a homophone *-di* meaning 'habitual', which occurs on final verb forms in all dialects.

Lowland dialect		**Mountain dialect**	
*duwo-**l-i*** sit-IRR-NFUT	'sit until'	*duwo-**gi*** sit-DSQ	'sit until'
		*duwo-**di*** sit-DSQ	'sit until'
*i-l-i-**gi*** go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	'go until'	*i-l-i-**gi*** go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	'go until'
		*i-l-i-**di*** go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	'go until'
*duwo-**di*** sit-HAB	'habitually sit'	*duwo-**di*** sit-HAB	'habitually sit'
*i-**di*** go-HAB	'habitually go'	*i-**di*** go-HAB	'habitually go'

The examples below will show only the Mountain dialect forms.

233) *e sokôulôu duwo-**gi**, holode   dege-i-môu,   e*
      3S school   sit-DSQ holiday do-NFUT-PFV 3S

      '... he was in school **until** (it) having become holiday, he ...' (Mountain dialect)

234) *Duwo-**di**, a   tewe môu-l-i   mei fogo-u.*
      sit-DSQ 1S know get-IRR-NFUT NEG leave.for-NFUT

      'I stayed **until**, getting no knowledge, I left.' (Mountain dialect; part of (227))

235) *kuguo   dugu=be   dugu-l-o   hague-i-môu   ke-ge*
      paper   see.NFUT=TOP see-IRR-FUT be.difficult-NFUT-PFV   that-VBR

      *i-**l-i-di**,   Godi=ha ta huyadefei   ma   duo   dogogu,*
      go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ God=GEN talk little.total 1S.POSS spirit put.NFUT

      *a i-**l-i-di**   ise   kuhe tôufogôu-l-a-môu.*
      1S go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ finally so   leave-IRR-SUBJ-PFV

      '... (I) finding it hard to read, (and it) going on like that **until** a little of God's Word had (been) put into my heart; (and) going on like that **until** (I) am/was finally ready to die.' (Mountain dialect)

236) *E su-**l-u-di**   dugu=be,   wai i-môu dugu.*
      3S walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP pig go-PFV see.NFUT

      'He walked around **until** he saw a pig going away from him.' (Mountain dialect)

---

[73] What is here described for the Mountain dialect is also to some extent used by Foothill dialect speakers.

See 3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES for the Lowland dialect use of the medial verb suffix-*gi* 'delayed sequence'. See 3.1.1.3 THIRD ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES for the final verb suffix -*di* 'habitual'.

4. WORD CLASSES

There are nine word classes total. Six of them are based on their particular function, mostly in the phrase, and the kind of affixation they may, or may not, take. They are verbs, nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and particles.

There are three more word classes, which are set up based on their function in a wider perspective and not necessarily at all on what type of affixation they may, or may not, take. They are question words, deictic words and conjunctions.

4.1 Verbs

Verbs constitute an open class of words that can take suffixation for number, transitivity and tense/aspect/mood, as well as medial-verb suffixes. They function in verbal phrases, either as a medial or a final verb. Some medial verb forms are exactly the same as their final counter parts but have a somewhat different meaning. Certain verb forms may function as heads of nominal phrases (see 4.2.4 NOMINALISATION).

There are four semantically based classes of verbs, namely events, states, pro-verbs and quote verbs. There are also seven types of verbs based on the last root or stem vowel.

A verb may seemingly occur as a single root, but as some suffixation is zero, that may not be the case. The most frequently used forms occur with a TAM suffix indicating epistemic mood and tense. This is true for both medial and final verbs. Tense in a medial verb is relative, referring to what will happen in the following clause. Only final verbs occur in deontic mood, e.g. imperative.

The modal distinction between realis and irrealis is more basic than the tense distinction in the most common final verb word. This realis/irrealis marking interacts closely with a binary marking of tense, which for most verbs works out as non-future and future.

Number is only occasionally marked on the verb. There is also a focal suffix, which makes it possible to focus on an object connected with the verb, i.e. a kind of transitiviser.

This section is partitioned as follows: 4.1.1 CLASSES OF VERBS, 4.1.2 TYPES OF VERBS, 4.1.3 FINAL AND MEDIAL VERBS, AN INTRODUCTION, 4.1.4 VERB STRUCTURE, 4.1.5 TENSE, ASPECT AND MOOD (TAM), 4.1.6 NUMBER and 4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS.

4.1.1 Classes of verbs

There are four classes of verbs: events, states, pro-verbs and quote verbs. The classes of events and states are based on how the verb interacts with the modal distinction of realis and irrealis. Pro-verbs do not usually function on their own. As a group, they have several functions, such as giving a verbal function to a non-verb or co-ordinating phrases or clauses, as well as summarising stretches of speech, in that way having the same kind of functions as English conjunctions do. Quote verbs cliticise on the end of a quote.

There is no formal distinction between intransitive and intransitive verbs (but see 4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS).

4.1.1.1 Event verbs and state verbs

The main formal difference between events and states is that event verbs are irrealis in a present situation (237), while states usually are realis (238), (240). State verbs can be further divided into existential verbs and experience verbs. Existential state verbs, also called stative verbs in this grammar, are uninflected for tense to describe a present stable situation (238), whereas experience verbs take a non-future tense marking (240) in realis mood. Existential verbs do, however, take the irrealis marker to express an unstable or temporary present situation (239), usually as a medial verb.

Event verb

237) *O   hagu-l-u.*
      man come-IRR-NFUT
      'The man **is** coming.'

Existential state verb, stable situation

238) *A=me duwo.*
      1s=TOP sit
      'I **am** here.'

Existential state verb, temporary/unstable situation

239) *E̲ baha **duwo-l-i***
      3S look sit-IRR-NFUT
      'He **is** waiting **until** ...'

Experiential state verb

240) *Dihi **sugua-i.***
      child fever.get-NFUT
      'The child **has** a fever.'

4.1.1.1.1 Event verbs

Event verbs belong to a large open class of verbs. Their distinguishing trait is that in present tense they take irrealis mood while existential state verbs are realis (see above). Much more will be said about event verbs in sections to come, so there is no need to elaborate here.

4.1.1.1.2 Existential state verbs/Stative verbs

The existential state verbs belong to a limited small class of verbs. Based on posture and/or which existential state verb a noun most naturally goes with, it is possible to set up classes of nouns. I have not done so but will give a few examples below. Only the three first verbs have a semantic component of posture.

		typical example	scope
t̪ila	'lie down'	*bei* 'snake', *sabi* 'lizard'	anything/-body naturally in that posture
duwo	'sit'	*moso̲* 'house'	anything/-body naturally in that posture
t̪afala	'stand'	*hebe* 'tree'	anything/-body naturally in that posture
dala	'be/have'	concrete, e.g. *dihi* 'child'	anything/anybody
		abstract, e.g. *hagi̲* 'problem'	
sia/sulugua	'walk around (sg./pl.)'	*o/o sasa̲i* 'man/people'	anybody animate
t̪ie	'(sleep)/live'[74]	*o/o sasa̲i* 'man/people'	anybody animate

241) ***Sabi**   e̲ kulio   hiye=do dege-mo͡u, e̲ aso̲ difi ha   **t̪ila.***
      lizard   3S coldness big=INT do.FUT-PFV 3S sun heat get.warm lie.down
      'Because (the) **lizard** has become very cold, he **is lying** in the sun to get warm.'

242) *Ei   t̪ia-sie-di   **moso̲ duwo**=ko͡u **yo**   **t̪afala-gua.***
      1PL.EX sleep-DU/PL-HAB house sit=LOC   banana stand-DU/PL
      'At (the) place where (the) **house** we sleep in **sit**, there several **banana** (trees) **stand**.'

243) ***hebe** hiye=do t̪a   **t̪afala.***
      tree big=INT INDF stand
      '... a very big **tree is standing**.'

244) *a̲=me **hagi̲** hiye=do t̪a   **dala.***
      1S=TOP heavy big=INT INDF   be/have
      '... I **have** a very big **problem**.'

245) ***fula** olo͡ufe̲i=be   5 ke-ge   **dala***
      week all.total=TOP 5 that-VBR be/have
      '... there **are** five **weeks** to go ...'

246) *haba   sese-ga   **sulugua-l-i**   wala*
      but.PFV.IRR follow-DU/PL walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT attack.IRR.FUT

      mu-guo-u-mo͡u
      go.down-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV
      '... again we followed and **walked around until** we killed (it) and going down ...'
      (*sulugua* 'walk around' is conjugated as an existential state verb)

---

[74] The verb *t̪ie* with the meaning of 'live' is an existential state verb. When it is conjugated as an experiential state verb it means 'fall asleep/sleep'.

247) *A*   *ma*   *dibi*   **ŧie**   *sa*   *kôu*=*me* **gali**   *su*=*do*   **dala.**
      1s   1s.POSS forest live   land   this=TOP wild.animal many=INT be/have

      'In this my forest (where) I **live**, there **are** many **wild animals**.'

In addition, the two following verbs may function as existential state verbs:

   dafa   'be tired of'

   ŧewe   'know'   (from *ŧawa* 'know/understand')

The verb *dafa* 'be tired of' is conjugated as an existential state verb in present tense in (248), but as an event verb in (249). The verb *ŧawa* 'know' is conjugated as an existential state verb in present tense with the meaning of 'be in the state of knowing', (250) (an irregular form). When this verb is conjugated as an event verb the meaning is 'understand'.

248) *A* **dafa.**
      1s tired.of

      'I **am tired** (**of** …).'

249) *O*   *koyo*=*ha* *a*   **dafo-l-u**   *ke*=*me*, *e*=*me* *ma*   *Aye*=*ne*
      man who=GEN   1s be.tired.of-IRR-NFUT that-TOP 3s=TOP 1s.POSS   father

      dafo-l-u.
      be.tired.of-IRR-NFUT

      'whoever **is tired of** me, he **is tired of** my Father, too.'

250) *a* **ŧewe**   *a*   **ŧawa-l-i**
      1s know   1s know-IRR-NFUT

      'I **know**'   'I **understand**'

4.1.1.1.3 Experiential state verbs

The experiential state verbs are an open class, comprising a few verbs like *sugua* 'have fever' *ŧia* 'fall asleep/sleep' and many verbalised nouns, adjectives and adverbs (see next section: pro-verb *dege* 'do').

251) *ŧio-l-u*   (sleep-IRR-NFUT)   'falling asleep'   *ŧie-i*   (sleep-NFUT)   'be asleep'

      suguo-u-l-u   (have.fever.BLTV-IRR-NFUT) 'getting a fever'   *sugua-i*   (have.fever-NFUT) 'run a fever'

252) *hiye dege-l-i* (big do-IRR-NFUT)   'is growing'   *hiye dege-i* (big do-NFUT)   'be grown'

4.1.1.2 Pro-verbs

There are four pro-verbs:

   dege   'do'

   de   'pro-verb'

   kôugue   'be like this'

   kege   'be like that'

Dege 'do'

The most common pro-verb is *dege* 'do'. It …

– verbalises ideas expressed by adjectives, nouns or adverbs

253) *hiye dege-l-i*   (big#do-IRR-NFUT)   'is growing'

254) *mogo dege-i*   (friend#do-NFUT)   'being friends'

255) *mei dege-i*   (NEG#do-NFUT)   'finished'

In the following example *dege* is in a medial form with the meaning 'do and ...', resulting in an adverbial meaning.

256) *bolo dege dala*   (good#do#be/have)   'do well'

The proverb *dege* 'do' is also used with loan words.

257) *win dege*   'win'

258) *use dege*   'use'

– presents a state as ongoing and an action as repeated over and over again

These constructions can often be translated with 'keep (doing)'. The suffixes *-môu* 'perfective' and *-gi* 'delayed sequence' may be involved. Some speakers use them more than others.

259) *Yôu=makôu fiyo-u-**môu**   **dege-i**, haba   wai ka=ha   so   sese-l-e*
    3s.EMP=LOC   fall-NFUT-PFV   do-NFUT but.PFV.IRR pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT

    *hague-i.   A tafala ke-le   hagua tafala-**môu** dege-i, a taha-i*
    come-NFUT 1s stand that-A.LOCR come stand-PFV do-NFUT 1s shoot-NFUT

    '(Arrows) **kept** falling (back) on himself; again the pig came chasing the dog(s). (It) came and **kept trying** to stand where I stood; I shot (it); …'

260) *bei   ta   to   ko=kôu ke-le   duwo-môu taha-i,*
    snake INDF river that=LOC that-A.LOCR sit-PFV   shoot-NFUT

    *defe-ga   i-l-i-**gi**   **dege-i**,   ta-le=kôu   fiye-i.*
    miss.target-DU/PL   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   do-NFUT   river-A.LOCR=LOC   fall-NFUT

    '… (we) shot at a snake being there at the river; (we) continued to shoot a lot of (arrows) that **kept** missing until the snake fell into the river.'

261) *Mosole boho-l-ôu-**môu**   **dege-i**.*
    ship   turn-IRR-NPST-PFV   do-NFUT

    'The ship **was in the process of** turning over.'

It may also be used in constructions expressing reason. See 7.3.3.1.1 REASON-RESULT IN THE MEDIAL VERB SYSTEM.

– encodes the idea of 'try'

The combined suffix *-l-a-môu* -IRR-SUBJ-PFV 'purposing' together with the pro-verb *dege* 'do' gives the meaning of 'try'. This use is similar to the previous use, giving the sense of "ongoingness".

262) *A=me kuguo nala-l-**a-môu**   **dege-l-i**.*
    1s=TOP paper write-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT

    'I'm **trying** to write a letter.'

De 'pro-verb'

Another proverb is {*de*}, for which there is no particular gloss. It have found six functions. For five of them it works together with another verb in a typical auxiliary function. Its sixth function is in a co-ordinated nominal phrase.

This verb, being a type 2 verb, is irregular in spelling, in that the irrealis non-future form, i.e. present tense, is *dili* instead of **deli*, which would follow the spelling rules, while it actually is spelled phonemically (see 2.8.5 VOWEL HARMONY – SPELLING OF A FEW EXCEPTIONS: present tense).

– signals sequential time for existential state verbs in medial form

The existential state verbs use the pro-verb *de* to be able to take the suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence'.

263) *yo-l-u-gi,   Mende=kôu mu-gua   **duwo de-ma**,   haba   hagua-ma*
    go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ Mende=LOC go.down-DU/PL sit   PROV-ISQ but.PFV.IRR rise-ISQ

    yo-l-u-gi,   sa   e hu=be   Ukarumpa=kôu mu-gua-i.
    go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ land 3s name=TOP Ukarumpa=LOC go.down-DU/PL-NFUT

    '… we (two) ... going on until Mende, **after** having gone down and sitting (there and) after going up again, we went on until we went down at a place called Ukarumpa.'

– as part of a longer construction it signals delayed sequence 'until'

This proverb is part of a complex construction meaning 'until' (see 7.3.2.4 DELAYED SEQUENCE: second part).

264) *Dihi   ka=ha=ge   e aye   huguli   ke+dia   ta=nôu   du-l-o*
    child that=GEN=F.CNTR 3s father guardian that+3PL talk=only hear-IRR-FUT

    *sese-ga-môu   i=**be** **de-ba**,   sadebe e aye=ha*
    follow-DU/PL-PFV go=TOP PROV-PFV.IRR year   3s father=GEN

    maka+ma-i   sagai   ko=kôu kuhe folo   kogu-l-o.
    mark+put-NFUT likely that=LOC so   go.up.IRR.FUT reach-IRR-FUT

    'That child will listen to and obey his guardians **until** whatever time his father has determined will have been reached.'

– signals habitual future (the main verb is in its basic form)

265) *Ni sawisie ke defei=do tawa-l-e dala-ma, kefe-guo na de-ma.*
2PL be.day that careful=INT know-IRR-FUT be/have-DU/PL gather-OF eat PROV-DU/PL

'Know that day well and stay (so); gather and eat **habitually**.'

– signals hypothetic, including contrary-to-fact conditions

266) *Dia=me di sosôu dele-i de-ba=be, dia di*
3PL=TOP 1PL.IN family be/have-NFUT PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP 3PL 1PL.IN

tôufogôu-l-i mei.
leave-IRR-NFUT NEG

'**If** they **would have** been of our family they would not have left us.'

– signals co-ordination of overlapping or similar events

267) *Sabiya-môu, Asele dilie e sasai Dasame dilie Mali o=kôu*
be.morning.FUT-PFV Asele 3DU 3s woman Dasame 3DU Malin mouth.of.river=LOC

yo-u-môu, James=bôu e sasai Dalai=bôu a=bôu ei Dahamo=kôu
go.DU/PL-NFUT-PFV James=and 3s woman Dalai=and 1s=and 1PL.EX Dahamo=LOC

fogôu hagua-sie-i-môu de-i.
leave.for come-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV PROV-NFUT

'Having become morning, **while** Asele and his wife Dasame **went** to the mouth of the (river) Malin, James, his wife Dalai and I left for Dahamo and **came** (back).'

268) *Sio biya su-l-u-gi, sio ta wo-u-môu,*
bird fight go.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ bird INDF attack-NFUT-PFV

sowale ta wo-u-môu de-ma mala hebe-l-e hague-i
lizard INDF attack-NFUT-PFV PROV-ISQ get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come-NFUT

'(I) went around to shoot birds with a slingshot until (I) shot/**attacked a bird and a lizard**, after (that) (I) got (them) and carried (them) and came …'

269) *Godi=ha=ge di=mokôu midiho e-sofei ta dege-ma, haba sa*
God=GEN=F.CNTR 1PL.IN=LOC face 3S-SELF.ALONE INDF do-ISQ but.PFV.IRR land

ta o ke+dia=mokôu midiho e-sofei ta dege-ma de-di=yo mei.
INDF man that+3PL=LOC face 3s-self.alone INDF do-ISQ PROV-HAB=INDC NEG

'God does not **do** one thing to us **and** another thing to foreigners.'

– signals the end of a co-ordinated nominal phrase

270) *Hebe ha-i kôu=me yo=bôu siya=bôu bisope=bôu+de dala.*
tree cut-NFUT this=TOP banana=and sugarcane=and pineapple=and+PROV be/have

'This garden has bananas, sugarcane **and** pineapples.'

271) *Afu=do, o eye mala de-i*
earlier=INT man older.brother younger.sibling PROV-NFUT

olôufei=be dio-yosi ke-ge.
all.total=TOP bone/lower.arm-NUMR that-VBR

'A long time ago there **were** seven brothers.'

Demonstrative pro-verbs *kôugue* 'be like this' and *kege* 'be like that'

These verbs consist of a demonstrative root with the verbaliser *-ge* attached. They function like English adverbs and *kege* 'be like that' also functions as a conjunction. The pro-verb *kege* can take any verb suffixes both medial and final, while *kôugue* has only been found in its basic and in its past final forms.

272) *Yesu=ha kôu-g(u)e tobo-u, a ni=mokôu damale=do tobo-l-ôu ku-he*
Jesus=GEN this-VBR(BLTV) say-NFUT 1s 2PL=LOC true-INT say-IRR-NPST this-P.LOC

'Jesus said **like this**, "I am telling you the truth/truly ..."'

273) *A   ng=mokôu ṭawa-l-e   ṭa   ya=fei=do   kôu   kôu-g(u)e-i*. ...
      1S 2S=LOC   know-IRR-FUT talk small=total=INT this this-VBR(BLTV)-NFUT ...

      Dahamo kôu-le   hagu-ba=be,   ng   ne   sele=ye   gita   ṭa   môu.
      Dahamo this-A.LOCR come.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S   2S.POSS money=INS guitar INDF get.IMP

      'I have this very small message (request) for you **like this**: … when you come here to Dahamo, bring a guitar (bought) for your money.'

274) *E **ke-ge**   haguisa-i.*
      3S that-VBR   call.out-NFUT

      'He called out **like that**.'

275) ***Ke-ge-i***   *dege-môu, dou=be sibige   hiye=do.*
      that-VBR-NFUT do-PFV   fire=TOP essence big=INT

      'Because of **being like that**, the importance of the fire is great.'

276) ***Ke-ge-l-i-gi***   *o   ta=hg   ṭa   ôuga   tobo-u=ye.*
      that-VBR-IRR-NFUT-DSQ man INDF=GEN talk deceive say-NFUT=OPT

      '**Going on like that until** nobody can deceive you.'

277) ***Ke-ge-môu***   *wai kamafôu-môu, a*
      that-VBR-PFV   pig run-PFV   1S

      '**Having become like that/Then/So** while the pig was running away, I ...'

278) *e fi=ye   hagi   dege dala.   **Ke-ge-ma-môu**,   Godi=hg*
      3S soul=INS   heavy do   be/have that-VBR-ISQ-PFV God=GEN

      Jona   bologug   he-hegi-e-i
      Jonah   good.do   RED.PL-show-RED.PL-NFUT

      '… he is heavy in his spirit. **After it had been like that**, God taught Jonah a good lesson …'

The verb *kege* 'be like that' is also used with nominal phrases expressing the number of something (see 4.4.2.3).

279) *e dihi   olôufei   **kama+dia**   ke-ge*
      3S child all.total midddle.finger+3PL that-VBR

      'his **three** children'

4.1.1.3 Quote verbs

There are three quote-verbs. They cliticise to the quote and cannot stand by themselves. They may be conjugated as any other verb, both as a medial and a final verb. They are based on the illocutionary force clitics and a proverb.

	structure	gloss	free translation	cliticises to
• =*(y)o+de*	(=indicative+PROV)	indicative quote verb (=IQV)	'say'	anything
• =*(y)e+de*	(=optative+PROV)	optative quote verb (=OQV)	'direct/instruct'	verb in basic form
• =*(y)a+de*	(=subjunctive+PROV)	subjunctive quote verb (=SQV)	'assert/think that something is true' (but it may not be)	anything
• =*d(o)=a+de*	(=intensifier=Subj.+PROV	int. subj. quote verb (=INT=SQV)	'strongly assert/be sure that something is true'	anything

The quote verb =*ade* in its medial perfective form means 'in order to' (see 7.3.3.2.3 IMPOSED PURPOSE).

The quote verbs =*ede* 'direct/instruct' and =*ade* 'assert' have non-singular object forms, which may also be negated. The singular form of =*ede* may also be used with the prohibitive suffix -*da*.

	structure	free translation	cliticises to
• *(-da)-ma=be=ede*	((-PROH)-DU/PL=TOP=OQV)	' suggest to you (du./pl.)/them (not) to ...'	verb in basic form
• *(-da)-me=be=ede*	((-PROH)-HORT=TOP=OQV)	'suggest, "Let's (not) ..."'	verb in basic form
• *(-da)-ma=b=ade*	((-PROH)-DU/PL=TOP=SQV)	'order you (du./pl.)/them (not) to ...'	verb in basic form
• *(-da)-me=b=ade*	((-PROH)-HORT=TOP=SQV)	'order, "Let's" (not) ..."'	verb in basic form [75]

---

[75] The negative form of a hortative subjunctive quote has not been observed.

As the most common syllable pattern in Konai is CVCV, the singular quote verbs, in most cases, start with a *-y*. Also, the quote verbs, being type 2 verbs, are regular in spelling, in that the irrealis non-future form, i.e. present tense, are *=odili,* =*edili* and =*adili*, respectively, instead of e.g. **odeli*, which would follow the spelling rule for the rest of the verbs of this type (see 2.8.5 Vowel harmony – spelling of a few exceptions: present tense).

280) *Dahamo=be 1,466 kina ke̱=nôu̱=f̱ei̱ mala̱ hagua-ba,*
Dahamo=TOP 1,466 kina that=only=total get.IRR.FUT come.FUT-PFV.IRR

mola moso̱ ke̱ bologua-l-e̱=yode tobo-l-ôu̱ i.
medicine house that good.do-IRR-FUT=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT

'Concerning Dahamo, (they said), "A total of only K1,466 will be coming and will fix up the aidpost building," they **stated and** said.'

281) *a̱=bôu̱ Yagu=bôu̱ ele to̱ to-l-o=yode-ma i.*
1S=and Yagu=and 1DU.EX river wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ go.NFUT

'After I and Yagu had **said** we two were going swimming (we) went.'

282) *Josef e̱=ge ta bolo̱=yodi-l-i mei.*
Joseph 3S=F.CNTR INDF good=IQV-IRR-NFUT NEG

'… Joseph **did not agree** at all'

_____

283) *Hagua=yedi-l-i.*
come=OQV-IRR-NFUT

'"Come (**sg.**)," (he) **says**.'

284) *hagua-sie-ma=be=edi-l-i*
come-DU/PL-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-IRR-NFUT

'"Come (**du./pl.**)," (he) **says**.'

285) *Dihi kôu̱=me e̱ adiou=ha̱ huei̱ dôu̱ i=yede-môu̱,*
child this=TOP 3S mother=GEN water draw go=OQV-PFV

huei̱ dôu̱ i, e̱
water draw go.NFUT 3S

'This child, his mother **having told him** to go and draw water, (he) went to draw water; he ...'

286) *e̱ sidifi ta dege-da=yede-i.*
3S shame INDF do-PROH=OQV-NFUT

'... he **must not** be ashamed.'

287) *Jona=ha̱ di̱a=mokôu̱ tobo-u, ni̱ a̱=nôu̱ mala̱ huei̱-le=kôu̱*
Jonah=GEN 3PL=LOC say-NFUT 2PL 1S=only get.IRR.FUT water-A.LOCR=LOC

hebe-l-e fila̱-ma=be=ede tobo-u.
carry-IRR-FUT throw-DU/PL=TOP=OQV say-NFUT

'Jonah said to them, "You (**du./pl.**) just take, carry and throw me in (the) water," (he) **instructed and** said.'

288) *da to̱ to i-me=be=ede tobo-u.*
1DU.IN river wash go-HORT=TOP=OQV say-NFUT

'... "**Let** the two of **us** go swimming," he **suggested and** said.'

289) *e̱ di̱a ta̱-da-ma=be=ede-i.*
3S 3PL talk-PROH-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-NFUT

'... he **told them not to** speak.'

_____

290) *dihi ke̱=me te-i saga̱i tila-môu̱ o ke+di̱a*
child that=TOP die-NFUT likely lie.down-PFV man that+3PL

to-l-o i=yade tawa-l-e i.
die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=SQV know-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

'... while the child was lying down like dead, the people **thought that** he **must have** died.'

291) *a̲ ʈawa-i=be,   Godi=be a̲=bô̲u+de   dala=d=**ade**   ʈawa-i.*
    1s know-NFUT=TOP God=TOP 1s=and+PROV be/have=INT=SQV know-NFUT

    '... I knew **for sure** that God **must** be with me.'

Medial perfective forms of the subjunctive quote verb =*ade* is a purpose construction.

292) *A̲ mô̲u   yô̲uwa=be   a̲ du=yo   mei dege-mô̲u,*
    1s nothing without.purpose=TOP 1s hear=INDC   NEG do-PFV

    *Godi=ha̲ ʈa̲   kô̲u   a̲ ʈawa-l-e=**yado-mô̲u**.*
    God=GEN talk prior 1s know-IRR-FUT=SQV-PFV

    'Because while I (do) nothing, I do not hear/understand, so **in order for** someone to first teach me God's Word, (I am here in this course).' (Mountain dialect)

293) *o ilo ke-le-ge   e̲ hebe ha-i   ke̲ heliofe̲i   mala̲-ba*
    man part that-A.LOCR-VBR 3s tree cut-NFUT that rent.total get.IRR.FUT-PFV.IRR

    *makisi   dege-**ma-b-ado-mô̲u**.*
    market do-DU/PL=TOP=SQV=PFV

    '... (he) having rented out his garden to some men **in order for them** to trade in the market place.'

294) *Sasa̲i o   ʈo=**yade-ba**   wala   ʈo-da.*
    woman man die=SQV-PFV.IRR attack.IRR.FUT die-PROH

    'Do not attack people **in order for** them to die.' (Mountain dialect)

295) *N̲i o=mokô̲u himi̲=nô̲u   dege-ma, di̲a ni̲ midiho̲ bolo̲ ke̲*
    2PL man=LOC gentle=only do-DU/PL 3PL 2PL face good that

    *dugu-**ma**=b=**ade-ba**.*
    see-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV.IRR

    'Be gentle to people **in order for them** to see the good way you (live).'

4.1.2 Types of verbs

The verb types are based on the phonological shape of the verbal root or stem, mainly the last vowel. In accordance with that, there are seven types of verbs. When inflected for especially tense, the phonological shape of the TAM suffix will vary in accordance with this vowel in such a way that rules of vowel harmony will be met.
(See 2.7.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN VERBS.)

Type 1: Verb roots/stems ending in *i,*	e.g. *bigi* 'wash'
Type 2: Verb roots/stems ending in *e,*	e.g. *dege* 'do'
Type 3: Verb roots/stems ending in *a,* if a root, the vowel in any preceding syllable is **not** *i,*	e.g. *baha* 'look'
Type 4: Verb roots ending in *a,* where the preceding vowel **is** *i,*	e.g. *fiya* 'fall'
Type 5: Verb roots/stems ending in *u,*	e.g. *du* 'hear'
Type 6: Verb roots/stems ending in *ô̲u,*	e.g. *tobô̲u* 'say'
Type 7: Verb roots/stems ending in *o,*	e.g. *ʈogo* 'make'

When the verb root is suffixed for number or transitivity (see 4.1.4.1 VERB STEMS below), it is actually the final vowel of that suffix that decides what forms are chosen, when the stem is further suffixed.

4.1.3 Final and medial verbs, an introduction

In Konai, there are two kinds of verbs: medial and final, based on position, on conjugation and on the intonation contour of the clause they appear in (see 2.6.5 INTONATION). A sentence in Konai may be long, containing many medial clauses and ending with a final clause, where the final verb sets the tense/aspect and/or mood for the whole sentence.

The medial clauses carry the story forward using medial verbs with a relative tense and/or aspect marking to connect the different clauses, but it takes the absolute tense/aspect and/or mood from the verb in the final clause. The medial relative tense marking also signals same or different subject.

Final clauses may, however, also appear in the middle of a sentence with verbs conjugated as final verbs, but with an intonation of medial clauses. These partly final, partly medial verbs seem to be used to create anticipation for what is to come. In the free translation of examples this kind of clauses are marked with a semi-colon.

In the following example there are 22 clauses total: 18 medial clauses with **medial verbs and medial intonation**, three final clauses with **final verbs but medial intonation** and one final clause with a **final verb and final intonation**. The example has been shortened and only part of the full sentence appears here (see *Michael's hunting story* in APPENDIX IV for the full text).

296) *...Asika   ele   Miya-ba   **dugu-l-u-gi**   **dugu,**   sio   komôu*
     ... Asika 1DU.EX   a.river-along see-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT bird kingfisher.sp.

     *ta   fulôu   **i-môu,**   ele   **ya-môu**   **ka**   **i-l-i-gi***
     INDF flying   go.NFUT-PFV   1DU.EX   go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV   look.for   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

     duwo-môu *a   fa-i   defe-môu   fulôu   **i-môu***
     sit-PFV   1s   hit-NFUT   miss.FUT-PFV   flying   go.NFUT-PFV

     *... moso=kôu   ... **ya-i.***
     ... house=LOC   ... go.DU/PL-NFUT

     '... Asika and I **looked** along the river Miyan **until** we two **saw** a kingfisher flying away; we two immediately **having set off**, (we) **searched until sitting down**, I **shot (at it with a) slingshot**; **having missed**, (it) flying away, we immediately ... **went** ... home.'

Some verb types have forms that are the same for both medial and final verbs, but the meaning is different, depending on if the verb is a medial or a final verb. This example is from another story.

297) *wai ka=ha   a   **dugu-o fo-l-ôu**   **i-l-e,**   haba=ge   **hagu-môu***
     pig that=GEN 1s see-FUT run-IRR-NPST go-IRR-FUT but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR   come.NFUT-PFV

     *a   taha-i   ... **fiyo-u-môu**   **dege-i.***
     1s shoot-NFUT ... fall-NFUT-PFV do-NFUT

     '...the pig **saw** me **and ran away and went and** later **coming** (back), I **shot at** (it); ... (it) **was in the process of falling** (down).'

In the above example the final verb *degei* 'do.NFUT' is in past tense, indicating that the preceding medial verbs refer to something that happened in the past, too. The two verb forms *folôu* 'run.IRR.FUT' and *ile* 'go.IRR.FUT' may be used as medial verbs, as above, with the meaning "verb and ...", but the same forms may also be used as final verbs with a future meaning. The medial verbs *duguo* 'see.FUT', *hagumôu* 'come.NFUT.PFV and *fiyo-u-môu* 'fall-NFUT-PFV' however, have their own medial forms. See last paragraph in this section. The verb *tahai* 'shoot.NFUT' is a final verb with medial intonation.

In the following example, there are two sentences, each ending in a final verb: *molôu* 'run.IRR.FUT' and *ile* 'go.IRR.FUT',[76] indicating that the absolute tense of all verbs (except the first one) in these two sentences is future.

298) *e   tobo-u,   20 kina ne   na-l-e   **mo-l-ôu.**   OK, 40 kina*
     3s say-NFUT 20 kina 2S.POSS eat-IRR-FUT get-IRR-NPST OK   40 kina

     *ne   petolo   huei   dôu-l-a   ma,   Dahamo=kôu **i-l-e.***
     2S.POSS   petrol   water   draw.water-IRR-SUBJ put.FUT Dahamo=LOC go-IRR-FUT

     '... he said, (you) **will buy** your food for K20. Then, (you) will fill up your petrol for K40 and (you) **will go** to Dahamo.'

In the next example there are four medial and one final verb. Two verbs *diafolôu* 'cut.off.IRR.NPST' and *tahale* 'shoot.IRR.FUT' are medial verbs with the form of final verbs in future tense, but as medial verbs their meaning is 'cut off and' … and 'shoot and …', respectively. The two other medial verbs do not have the same form as any final verb forms . See the two listings after this example.

299) *aweki   dihi   ta   **mala,**   hebe sasa dege-i   ta   **diafo-l-ôu** ,*
     knife   child   INDF get.IRR.FUT tree   long   do-NFUT INDF cut.off-IRR-NPST

     *kuo=kôu aweki dihi   ke   **tiga-ma-môu** ka=ha   **taha-l-e+ma-i.***
     this=LOC knife child that   tie-ISQ-PFV   that=GEN shoot-IRR-FUT+put-NFUT

     '… (he) **took** a small knife **and cut off** a long piece of wood **and** when (he) **had tied** the small knife on it, he killed/**shot and put** (down) (the pig) with it.'

---

[76] This is the same form as in the previous example, but there it is a medial verb, meaning 'go and ...'.

Medial verbs in (297) and (299), where the forms are the same as final forms in future tense

VERB TYPE	FORM: BASIC	FORM: IRREALIS-FUTURE	MEDIAL MEANING		FINAL MEANING
6b	*fo*	**fo-l-o͡u** run-IRR-NPST	'run and ...'	(same subject)	'will run'
1	*i*	**i-l-e** go-IRR-FUT	'go and ...'	(same subject)	'will go'
6a	*diafo͡u*	**diafo-l-o͡u** cut.off-IRR-NPST	'cut off and ...'	(same subject)	'will cut off'
3a	*ṯaha̱*	**ṯaha-l-e̱** go-IRR-FUT	'shoot and ...'	(same subject)	'will shoot'

The medial verb use of the above verb forms, corresponds to the use of '... and' between verbs in English. It is a sequential strategy for the same subject.

Also, there are a number of medial verb forms not conjugated in the same way as final verbs. For example, in (297) and (299) the following medial verb forms are found.

Medial verbs in (297) and (299), where the forms are uniquely medial

VERB TYPE	FORM: BASIC	FORM: MEDIAL	MEANING		CLOSEST FINAL FORM	MEANING
5	*dugu*	**dugu-o** see-FUT	'see and ...'	(same subject)	*dugu-l-o* see-IRR-FUT	'will see'
4b	*hagua*	**hagu-mo͡u** come.NFUT-PFV	'coming'	(different subject)	*hagu-l-u* come-IRR-NFUT	'is coming'
6a	*mo͡u*	**mala̱** get.IRR.FUT	'get and ...'	(same subject)	*mo-l-o͡u* get-IRR-NPST	'will get'
4a	*ṯiga*	**ṯiga-ma-mo͡u** tie-ISQ-PFV	'had tied'	(same subject)	*ṯige-i* tie-NFUT	'tied'

For complete paradigms see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS.

4.1.4 Verb structure

Before giving the structures of the whole verb word, final and medial, I will present the structure of the verb stem. That will include the verb root and the first order verbal suffixes.

4.1.4.1 Verb stems

The verb stem functions in the verb word, final and medial.

Verb stem	→	Verb root	(SF)/(SF)
VS	→	V(-)	(Number)/(Object Focus)

The verb root may be affixed with one of the first order verbal suffixes: a number marker or the object focus marker, but usually not with both at the same time. (But see (303).) Alternatively, different verbs take one or the other or none.

These first order verbal suffixes are repeated here from the morphology section. For more information see 4.1.6.2.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL ON MOSTLY INTRANSITIVE VERBS, 4.1.6.4 PLURAL OBJECT and 4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS.

∅[77]	'singular'	all verbs
-ga	'dual/plural'	absolute marking: refers to the subject of intransitive verbs refers to the object of transitive verbs
-gua	'dual/plural'	stative verbs
-se	'dual/plural'	refers to the object of some transitive verbs
-sie	'dual/plural'	a few intransitive, mostly motion verbs

300)	*migi-**ga*** come.down-DU/PL 'come down (**du./pl.**)'	*nala̱-**ga*** write-DU/PL 'write **many** letters/pages/books'	*ṯila-**gua*** lie.down-DU/PL 'lie down (**du./pl.**)'	*hebe-**se*** throw.away-DU/PL 'throw away (**du./pl. object**)'	*fiya-**sie*** fall-DU/PL 'fall (**du./pl.**)'

See also (305).

---

[77] This will not be marked in the examples.

-gV 'object focus'

The vowel in the object suffix is *i, u, ôu*. In the following example, the money does not trigger the object focus, but a serial verb construction with plural meaning (see 5.1.3.8). In the next example however, the people gathering for a purpose, involving a dead man, does trigger the object focus.

301) *ei   sele   **kefe**+m**a**   dugu=be,   350.00   kina=nôu   dala-môu   dugu.*
       1PL.EX   money gather+put   see.NFUT=TOP 350.00 kina=only be/have-PFV see.NFUT

       '... we (excl.) **collected** (the) money and saw that there was only K350, (we) saw.'

302) *Dahamo o   olôuf**ei** **kefe-gu**-o   dala-môu,   kele=ye*
      Dahamo   man   all   gather-OF-FUT be/have-PFV that-A.LOCR=INS

      *mal**a**   migi.*
      get.IRR.FUT   come.down.NFUT

      'All the people of Dahamo **gather**ed **for** the **occasion** (a dead body being brought back by plane), and while (they) were (there), in that way (he was) brought down.'

In translation however, at least one verb form has been found, where object focus and the kind of number marking mentioned above occur together.

303) *yôu-sie   **e**   kolo igi=ye   **ka-gi-se**-di.*
      3S.EMP-REFL   3S   skin stone=INS cut-OF-DU/PL-HAB

      '... he habitually **cut** his own **skin in many places** with stones.'

Reduplication of part of the verb root, also occurs in the stem, indicating iterative aspect (see 4.1.5.4.1 ITERATIVE ASPECT), which sometimes changes the meaning of the verb as in the first example below.

304) *hegi   **he**-hegi-**e***
      show   RED.PL-show-RED.PL

      'show'   'teach'

305) *Wai **gu-gua**-ma   i-môu,   **a** sese-**ga**   i.*
      pig RED.PL-squeal-ISQ   go-PFV   1S follow-DU/PL   go

      'After the pig had **squealed repeatedly** (and) was going away, I followed **everywhere** and went.'

Please also note the non-singular suffix *-ga* and its meaning 'everywhere' in this context on the last example.

4.1.4.2 Structure of final verbs

There are three structures for different types of final verbs: verbs in epistemic mood, verbs in deontic mood and negative verbs with a present tense meaning.

Structure I – Verbs in epistemic mood

Final verb word$_I$ → Verb stem   SF+SF
FV$_I$ → VS-   Epistemic mood+Tense/Aspect

The verb stem is affixed with one each of the second and third order verbal suffixes: expressing mood and tense or aspect. The second and the more common third order verbal suffixes are repeated here from the morphology section (see 3.1.1.2 and 3.1.1.3).

Mood	(epistemic)	∅	'realis'	4.1.5.1 EPISTEMIC MOOD
		-l-	'irrealis'	
Tense	(statement)	*-i/-u*	'non-future'	4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS
		-e/-o	'future'	
		-ôu	'non-past'	
Aspect		*-di*	'habitual'	4.1.5.3 EPISTEMIC MOOD AND ASPECT
		-adi	'prospective'	

306) *N**a** kuguo Bimin=kôu sa-gi-**l-e***
      2S paper Bimin=LOC put.inside-OF-IRR-FUT

      'You **will** send a letter to Bimin.' (implied: put inside (a mailbag (to go on an airplane))

307)   *so-l-u.*   *sa-gi-l-i.*
        put.inside-IRR-NFUT   put.inside-OF-IRR-NFUT
        '**is** putting something inside'   '**is** putting something special inside'

        hagu-l-u.   *hagua-si-l-i.*
        come-IRR-NFUT   come-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT
        '**is** coming'   '**are** coming'

        tio-l-u.   *i-l-i.*
        sleep-IRR-NFUT   go-IRR-NFUT
        '**is** falling asleep'   '**is** going'

308)   *hagua-sie-i.*
        come-DU/PL-NFUT
        'they c**a**me'

309)   *Kueya   dig̲=me mihi̲=kôu   tia-di.*
        cassowary   3PL=TOP earth=LOC   sleep-HAB
        'Cassowaries **habitually** sleep on the ground.'

310)   *a̲   to-l-o   i-l-adi.*
        1S die-IRR-FUT   go-IRR-PROS
        '… I am **just about to** die.'

Structure II – Verbs in deontic mood

Final verb word_II	→ Verb stem	SF	SF
FV_II	→ VS-	Deontic mood	Number

The verb stem is affixed with one of the second order deontic suffixes, as well as a third order numerical. These are repeated here from the morphology section (see 3.1.1.2 and 3.1.1.3).

Mood	(deontic)	∅	'imperative'		4.1.5.5 DEONTIC MOOD
		-me	'hortative'		
		-da	'prohibitive'		

| **Number** | (deontic**)** | ∅ | 'singular' |
| | | *-ma* | 'dual/plural 2/3 person' |

311)   *Ni̲ hagua-sie-da-ma.*
        2PL come-DU/PL-PROH-DU/PL
        '**Don't** come (**du./pl.**).'

For more examples see 3.1.1.2 SECOND ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES.

Structure III – Negative verbs with present tense meaning   7.1.1 Indicative (in statements)

Final verb word_III	→ Verb stem	SF/SF	CLT	(#ADV)
FV_III	→ VS-	Tense: NFUT/Aspect: HAB	Indicative	(#NEG)

312)   *Sa   kasagai̲ dege-môu=be, e̲ ta̲-di=yo   mei.*
        land   bad   do-PFV=TOP   3s talk-HAB=INDC   NEG
        'When the weather is bad, it **does** not make any noise (about the cicada). '

In this construction the indicative clitic *=yo* may only co-occur with the tense suffixes *-i* and *-u*, 'non-future' or the aspect suffix *-di* 'habitual'. It functions together with the negator *mei* 'negative'. See also 6.4 NEGATION OF THE CLAUSE.

4.1.4.3 Structure of medial verbs

There are three basic structures of the medial verb. The medial verb suffixes *-môu* 'perfective' and *-ba* 'perfective irrealis' may occur in the two first structures as the final element.

- Medial verbs with **mood &tense/purpose inflection**   +/- *-môu* 'perfective' or *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'
- Medial verbs with *-ma* 'immediate sequence'   +/- *-môu* 'perfective' or *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'
- Medial verbs with *-gi* 'delayed sequence'

Structure I – Medial verbs with mood & tense/purpose inflection

Medial verb word$_I$	→ Verb stem	SF+SF	(SF)
MV$_I$	→ VS-	Epistemic mood+Tense/Purpose	(Perfective (irrealis))

The medial verbs with this kind of structure take no special medial suffixes in their basic conjugation, though they may take either of the two perfective suffixes in addition to their other suffixation. Two enclitics =*be* 'topic' and =*si* 'contrast marker' may also function together with the perfective medial suffixes (see 6.1.4 MEDIAL AND FINAL CLAUSES IN LONG SENTENCES).

The basic suffixes involved here are the common TAM suffixes, but they express a relative present and a relative future tense in regard to the following verb, as well as marking the same or a different subject in the following clause. Epistemic mood is also marked in this medial inflection, but it is used differently from how it is used in final verbs. For more details see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS. Below are just a few examples with explanations.

The purpose suffix referred to in the formula above is illustrated in (319).

313) *Sasai̱ dihi* **mohu-l-o** *ṭafala.*
     woman child hold-IRR-FUT stand

     'The woman is standing holding a child/**holds** a child **and** is standing.'

314) *o olôûfe̱i* **i-l-e,** *wai ke̱* **mala̱** **hebe-l-e** **hagua,**
     man all go-IRR-FUT pig that get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come.FUT

     ke-ge-môû, dia̱ **so-l-ôû-môû** *nala̱ i.*
     that-VBR-PFV 3PL cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST-PFV eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

     '... all the men **went and got** the pig **and carried** (it) **and came and** so **having** cooked (it) **on stones** they ate it.'

315) *disope olôûfei bolo̱u ke-ge* **gobo-l-ôû** *nala̱ i.*
     pineapple all.total two that-VBR break-IRR-NPST eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

     '... (we two) **picked** two pineapples **and** ate them.'

The three examples above show the strategy for the same subject in sequential actions: the relative tense marking is future shown by a final low vowel or -*lôû* (-IRR.NPST) for verb type 6, meaning 'verb and ...' and with -*môû* 'perfective' 'having verbed'. The absolute tense of the medial verbs is taken from the final verb.

In the following example, the high vowel *u* in *mu̱* 'go down' signals simultaneous time, as well as a change of subject.

316) *fe̱ne* **mu̱-môû** *dugu=be, David=bôû+de*
     air.plan go.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP David=and+PROV

     sa **mu̱-môû** *dugu.*
     put.inside.FUT go.down-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

     '...when (I) saw the plane **coming down**, (I) saw (it) **coming down** with David inside.'

In the next example, the overall tense is future, shown by the final verb *hagua-l-e* 'come-IRR-FUT'. The first two verbs in the sentence, *dege-l-e*=*be* 'do-IRR-FUT=TOP' and *mo-l-ôû*=*be* 'get-IRR-NPST=TOP' are also final verbs in future tense, setting the stage so to speak. Compare the four previous examples, where the final verbs are present or past.

The medial verbs are also mostly future (as in the three first examples), **but** a **relative future to signal sequence** involving **the same subject**. A change of subject happens at the verb *dala-ba* 'be/have-PFV.IRR', an existential state verb that in this form signals a different subject and simultaneous time (see 4.1.5.2.2).

317) *... sele ... 40.00 ke̱ oda dege-l-e*=*be, bi e̱ mo-l-ôû*=*be,*
     ... money ... 40 that order do-IRR-FUT=TOP thing 3s get-IRR-NPST=TOP

     baṭeli bokisi *bolo̱u ke-ge* **mala̱** **hagua,** *na̱ dogogu-o*
     battery box two that-VBR get.IRR.FUT come.FUT 2s put-FUT

     dala-ba, *a̱ mu-l-o̱ dugu-o mala̱ kuhe hagua-l-e.*
     be/have-PFV.IRR 1s go.down-IRR-FUT see-FUT get.IRR.FUT so come-IRR-FUT

     '... when (you) will make an order for K40, (the) thing(s) it will get is (this): (it) will bring/**get and come**) two boxes of batteries **and** you will **put** (them) **and having** (them there), I will **go down and see** (them) **and get** (them) **and** so (I) will come (back here).'

In the next example, the only medial verb is *dala-l-i* (be/have-IRR-NFUT) 'be/have until'. It also signals that the same subject will follow, sometimes, as here, after a lengthy description of weather conditions.

318) *Sesenabi=kôu*   **dala-l-i,**   *sabiye-i*   *ta,*   *Salale*   *ke-ge,*
      Sesenabi=LOC be/have-IRR-NFUT   be.morning-NFUT   INDF Saturday that-VBR

      sabiye-i   *gusubu*   *huei*   *te-i.*   *...* *a*   *mowi* *i.*
      be.morning-NFUT morning   water   wash-NFUT   ... 1S hunt go.NFUT

      '(I) **was** in Sesenabi **until** one day, on that Saturday in the morning it rained. ...
      I went hunting.'

The last example shows a purpose construction.

319) *e* **i-l-a-môu,**[78]   *kuolôu* *dia*   *dala-di*   *o*   *ko=kôu*   *tobo-u,*
      3S go-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   law   watch.over be/have-HAB man that=LOC say-NFUT

      '… he **planning to go**, gave instructions to the landlord, …'

Structure II – Medial verbs with *-ma* 'immediate sequence', a fourth order verbal suffix

Medial verb word$_{II}$ → Verb stem   SF   (SF)
MV$_{II}$ → VS-   Immediate sequence, telic   (Perfective (irrealis))

The suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' occurs on the basic verb form. It is telic in meaning, and it also signals that the next event follows immediately. It occurs mostly on intransitive and weakly transitive verbs.
See 3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES.

320) **Na-ma**   *mei* *dege-môu* **fogôu-ma**   *i-l-e.*
      eat-ISQ   NEG   do-PFV   leave.for-ISQ   go-IRR-FUT

      '**After** having finished **eating**, **after leaving** (they) will go (on).'

321) *diou*   *huei* **so-ma,**   *to*   *to*   *i.*
      canoe water remove-ISQ river wash go.NFUT

      '... **after** emptying (the) canoe of water, (we) went to (have a) swim.'

Stative verbs do not take this suffix, so a proverb is needed to take it.

322) *nele* *sa*   *Sepik=kôu* **dala**   **de-ma-môu,**   *Dahamo=kôu* *hague-i*
      2DU   land Sepik=LOC   be/have PROV-ISQ-PFV Dahamo=LOC   come-NFUT

      '... **after** the two of you **had** lived in the Sepik, (you) came to Dahamo.'

Structure III – Medial verbs with *-gi* 'delayed sequence', a fourth order verbal suffix

Medial verb word$_{III}$ → Verb stem   SF+SF+SF
MV$_{III}$ → VS-   Epistemic mood: IRR+Tense: NFUT+Delayed sequence

This suffix occurs together with the present tense suffix as it occurs in final verbs.
See also 3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES.

323) **I-l-i-gi,**   *so*   *ka=ha*   *wai*   *tigo-u-môu*   *i-l-e*   *dugu=be*
      go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ dog that=GEN pig   bark-NFUT-PFV go-IRR-FUT see.NFUT=TOP

      '(He) went **until** he (heard) the dog bark at a pig (when he) immediately went and
      saw that …'

324) *E*   *to*   *to-môu*   *su-l-u-gi,*   *kulio*   *dege-môu,*
      3S river wash.FUT-PFV walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ coldness do.FUT-PFV

      dou   *ha*   *duwo.*
      fire get.warm sit

      'He is swimming around **until** having got cold, (he) is sitting to warm himself by the fire.'

Structures I & II with perfective suffixes

The suffix *-môu* 'perfective (realis)' and the suffix *-ba* 'perfective **ir**realis' make the clause, where they occur, and any prior clause, a complete unit in itself. These two medial suffixes are used when the story teller wants, so to speak, to set a new scene, or when the next event/state has another, in the context, usually more important actor (see 7.3.1 SWITCH OF SCENE ...). In the first three examples the subjects change after the perfective suffix.

---

[78] The corresponding final verb form is *i-l-adi* (GO-IRR-PROS) '(he) is just about to go'; *-adi* 'prospective' (PROS) is an aspect marker used in final verbs only. Also, the *=a/-a* 'subjunctive', here interpreted as a suffix, is in its other functions interpreted as a clitic (see 7.1.3 Subjunctive (in purpose constructions, opinion statements and content questions).

325) *A̠ afu   kueya   duwo-môu   dugu.*
      1s earlier cassowary sit-PFV   see-NFUT

      'Earlier **I saw** (a) **cassowary** sitting.'

326) *A̠ mola   moso̠=kôu i=ba,   ni̠ dabai ta   dege-ma.*
      1s medicine house=LOC go.NFUT=PFV.IRR 2PL work INDF do-DU/PL

      '**I**'ll go to the clinic, **while you** continue to work.'

327) *Miti̠   tobo-l-ôu-gi,   sa   nugu-môu,   folo   tie-i.*
      meeting say-IRR-NPST-DSQ   land get.dark.NFUT-PFV go.up sleep-NFUT

      '(We) debated until it/(the) **land** was gett**ing** dark, **when** (**we/I**) immediately went up and
      slept.'

In the two following examples the subject is the same after the perfective suffixes, but a new scene is about to develop.

328) *Hagua-sige,   moso̠=kôu fele̠-ga-môu,   miye̠ sa   si-l-e*
      come-DU/PL.FUT house=LOC   come.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV fish put.into.FUT cook-IRR-FUT

      '**We** came and **having come up** to the house, (**we**) **put** the fish in (a pan) and cooked it
      and ...'

329) *hoho̠+bo-l-ôu-ba   hagua̠   tofôu-me.*
      light+rejoice-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR stand.up step-HORT

      '... **having** (started) to rejoice, let **us** stand up and move forward.'

The suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' may co-occur with both *-môu* and *-ba*.

330) *e̠ ... dugu=be,   wai hagu-môu   taha̠-i   to-l-o   i-môu,*
      3s ... see.NFUT=TOP pig come.NFUT-PFV shoot-NFUT die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV

      e̠ o   ka   hagua-môu,   o   tobôu-ma-môu i-l-e,
      3s man look.for come.FUT-PFV man say-ISQ-PFV   go-IRR-FUT

      mala̠   hebe-l-e   hagua-môu   so-l-ôu   na̠-i.
      get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come.FUT-PFV cook-IRR-NPST eat-NFUT

      '... he ... seeing that a pig was coming, (he) shot (it); (the pig having) died, he immediately came to look for
      people (to carry the pig home) and **when** he **had told** (the) men, they all went and got (the pig) and carried (it)
      and having come (back they) cooked and ate (it).'

Structures with perfective suffixes and the enclitics =be 'topic' and =si 'contrast marker'

Two enclitics *=be* 'topic marker' and *=si* 'contrast marker' may function together with the perfective medial markers
-môu and *-ba*.

331) *na̠ aso̠ ke̠ ha   duwo-ba=be,   na̠ difi ta   dugu-l-o mei=do*
      2s sun that get.warm sit-PFV.IRR=TOP   2s   heat INDF see-IRR-FUTNEG=INT

      '... **if** you sit in that sun to get warm, you do not feel any heat at all ...'

332) *E̠ moso̠ togo-ma-môu=be, e̠ kili   dala=di.*
      3s house build-ISQ-PFV=TOP 3s inside be/have-HAB

      'After he had finished build**ing** his house, (**it being there,**) he lived in it.'

333) *e̠ mogo dala-ba   i-ba=si,   e̠ mogo=ha̠*
      3s friend be/have-PFV.IRR go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR 3s friend=GEN

      moso̠=kôu tia-l-e
      house=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT

      '... **but if** (he) has a friend (and) goes, (he) will sleep in his friend's house ...'

4.1.5 Tense, aspect and mood[79] (TAM)

In 4.1.5.1, I will describe the epistemic moods realis and irrealis. In 4.1.5.2, I will discuss how these interact with tense. This
interaction is the backbone of the TAM system in Konai for final verbs. In 4.1.5.3, I will describe how the realis /irrealis
distinction interacts with certain aspects. In 4.1.5.4, some other aspects will be described. In 4.1.5.5, I will describe the
deontic moods imperative, hortative and prohibitive.

---

[79] In discussing modality, based on Bybee and Fleischman (1995:2), I am using the word 'mood' rather than 'mode', as modality in Konai
is signalled by inflectional affixes on the verb.

4.1.5.1 Epistemic mood

> The epistemic mode characterizes the actuality of an event in terms of alternative possible situations, or worlds (Chung & Timberlake 1985:242).

This quote describes the realis/irrealis distinction in Konai. Irrealis marks the non-actual and/or unstable event or state. The realis marks what has actually happened and/or is stable.

Realis is the unmarked form. This form may take a suffix marking tense or aspect. Some verbs are inherently in non-future tense, if the context so allows. Irrealis is marked by the suffix *-l-* and is **always** followed by a suffix expressing tense or aspect/purpose.

The irrealis/realis function is well understood for final verbs (4.1.5.1.1). However, when used in medial verb forms there is no general straight forward explanation (4.1.5.1.2).

4.1.5.1.1 Epistemic mood in final verbs

The following table and a few examples will show how the system works. If not explicitly stated that medial verb forms are involved, this section talks about final verbs.

Irrealis (*-l*) is used:

• when an event/state has not yet occurred but probably will	(334)
• when an event is in progress but not completed	(335)
• when an event/state is described as not having occurred nor will	(336), (337)
• for unstable states, usually stated as a non-final verb, i.e. a medial verb form	(338), (339)

Realis (the unmarked form) is used:

• for past events/states	(340), (341)
• present states	(342)
• present negatives (with medial verb forms)	(343)
• present questions (with medial verb forms)	(344)

334) *Na̱ idiba yo sogo-l-o.*
2S tomorrow banana plant-IRR-FUT

'You **will** plant bananas tomorrow.'

335) *Na̱ yo sogo-u-l-u.*
2S banana plant-BLTV-IRR-NFUT

'You **are** planting bananas.'

336) *Na̱ yo sege-l-i mei.*
2S banana plant-IRR-NFUT NEG

'You **did not** plant bananas.'

337) *Na̱ yo sogo-l-o mei.*
2S banana plant-IRR-FUT NEG

'You **are** not go**ing to** plant bananas.'

338) *Asele=ha̱ hebe sugu̱+to̱û tafala-l-i, wai ka=ha̱ so sese-l-e*
Asele=GEN tree top+up stand-IRR-NFUT pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT

hagua fogo̱û i-mo̱û taha̱-i̱=be
come.FUT leave.for go.NFUT-PFV shoot-NFUT=TOP

'Asele was standing up in a tree top **until** the pig came and chased the dog(s) and (as they were) passing by, (Asele) shot at (the pig) …'

339) *Ko̱û-le duwo-l-i tobo-l-o̱û.*
this-A.LOCR sit-IRR-NFUT say-IRR-NPST

'(I) **am** staying here speaking.'

---

340) *Na̱ i yo **sege-i.***
2S yesterday banana plant-NFUT

'You **planted** bananas yesterday.'

341) *Felix=ha̱ soko̱ûlo̱û **duwe-i** ta̱ susu-l-a-mo̱û*
Felix=GEN school sit-NFUT talk tell-IRR-SUBJ-PFV

'(I) want to tell (a) story (about when) Felix **was** (in) school.'

342) *A̱=me **duwo.***
1S=TOP sit

'I **am** here.'

343) *A̲ dugu=yo   mei.*
      1s see.NFUT=INDC   NEG

      'I **do not see** (them).'

344) *Ade,   na̲ ka-ge   ʈawa-i=ya?*
      father 2s how-VBR know-NFUT=SUBJ

      'Father, what **do** you **know**?' (Mountain dialect)

Though there is no present tense as such it should be noted that:

 irrealis is used in final verbs to express:

- present events   (335)

 realis is used in final verbs to express:

- present states   (342)
- present negatives (with medial verb forms)   (343)

Imperative is **not** an irrealis form, **nor** is irrealis used to express conditions.

4.1.5.1.2 Epistemic mood in medial verbs

The realis/irrealis distinction is easy to explain for final verbs, but for medial verbs there is no straight forward explanation.

In general, the following may be a guide line for all verb types, **except verb type 6** (see below in this section):

relative present tense, expressing a close temporal relationship '**a soon as**', '**-ing** …',
            marked by a stem final **high** vowel (also expresses different subject)

- **realis (Ø)** for forms **with** the suffixes *-môu* 'perfective' and *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'
       see (348), (349) for an event verb
       see (351) for a stative verb (basic form of stative verbs, ending in *o* or *a*)

- **irrealis (-l)** for existential state verb forms with *-i*; this looks like present tense but actually means 'until'
       see (352)

relative future tense,   expressing an unspecified temporal relationship '**and ...**', '**having** …'
            marked by a stem final **low** vowel (also expresses same subject)

- the **mood distinction seems irrelevant** for meaning. Some verb forms are always irrealis; some are always realis as will be described below:

In medial forms, where the last stem vowel is low, signalling an unspecified relationship to the following verb, there does not seem to be any difference in function or meaning whether the verb is in realis or irrealis mood. Other considerations seem to prevail. One rule of thumb is this:

- short stems – irrealis form to make the word longer
- longer stems – realis to make the word shorter

This rule is by no means full proof, but here are two examples to show what I mean:

345) *du* 'hear'   *du*[80] ... relative present: 'hearing ...'   *du-**l**-o* ... relative future: 'hear and ...'
      hear.NFUT   hear-IRR-FUT

346) *dugu* 'see'   *dugu* ... relative present: 'seeing ...'   *dugu-o* ... relative future: 'see and ...'
      see.NFUT   see-FUT

Based on this rule of length for verbs expressing an unspecified temporal relationship to the following verb, i.e. 'and ...', the following observations may be added:

- verb stems comprising more than a root are realis in relative future tense. Some examples are:
       verb root + number (347)
       verb root + object focus (see (345) and (346), including the footnote)
       demonstrative pronoun/adverb + verbaliser

                              – see 4.1.1.2 PRO-VERBS: *kôugue* 'be like this', *kege* 'be like that'

       other pro-verbs (348)   – see "   " : *dege* 'do', *de* 'proverb'

       question words + verbaliser   – see 4.7 QUESTION WORDS: *ka* 'how'

       quote verbs (they cliticise on the quote)   – see 4.1.1.3 QUOTE VERBS

---

[80] The root *du* probably means 'perceive', rather than 'hear'. The suffix *-gu* in *du(-)gu*, in (346) is probably the object focus suffix. These two verbs are used for the five senses: see, hear, taste, smell and feel.

Examples, verb types 1-5, 7

347) *Hagua-sige.ø,*   *mos̲o̲=kôu*   *fel̲e̲-ga.ø-môu,*   *miy̲e̲* *sa̲.ø*
come-DU/PL.REAL.FUT   house=LOC   come.up-DU/PL.REAL.FUT-PFV   fish put.inside.REAL.FUT

si-l-e,   *ôu* *si-l-e*   *de-ma-môu* *nal̲a̲*   *i.*
cook-IRR-FUT sago cook-IRR-FUT PROV-ISQ-PFV eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

'They came **and having** come into (the) house, after (they) had put the fish in (a pot) **and** cooked it **and** cooked sago they ate.' (*nal̲a̲ i* is a plural subject form, see, 4.1.6.2.1)

348) *Huli̲a̲me*   *sas̲a̲i* *dia* *oguo* *hoho* *dege.ø-i-môu,*   *miy̲e̲* *bese*   *i-l-i.*
darkness.TOP woman 3PL moon light do.REAL-NFUT-PFV fish angle.for go-IRR-NFUT

'At night, **as soon as** the moon is shining, women go (out) to fish.'

349) *so* *ka=h̲a̲* *wai* *tigo.ø-u-môu*   *i-l-e*   *dugu=be,*
dog that=GEN pig bark.REAL-NFUT-PFV go-IRR-FUT see.NFUT=TOP

wai *oye* *hiye=do* *k̲e̲* *tigo.ø-u-môu*   *dugu.*
pig male big=INT that bark.REAL-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

'… **as soon as** the dog barked at a pig, (he (a man)) **went and** saw (the dog) bark**ing** at that very big boar.'

350) *O* *e̲* *ôu* *duwo.ø-u-môu,*   *sas̲a̲i* *e* *dihil̲o̲*   *togo-l-o*   *duwo.*
man 3s sago split.REAL-NFUT-PFV woman 3s sago.filter make-IRR-FUT sit

'**While** the man is splitting the sago (palm), the woman is sitting making a sago filter./makes ... **and** sits.'

351) *A̲* *afu*   *kueya*   *duwo.ø-môu* *dugu.*
1s earlier cassowary sit.REAL-PFV see-NFUT

'Earlier I saw a cassowary sitt**ing**.'

352) *sio* *kisi-ma*   *duwo-l-i*   *dugu=be*
bird make.a.wall-ISQ sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP

'... after making a bird-hunting cover, (I) sat (there) **until** (I) saw ...'

_____

Verb type 6
Verbs of type 6 have their own rules:

  Relative present tense '-ing':   realis (Ø)   (353), (355)

  Relative future tense 'and ...', 'having ...': irrealis (-l-)   (354), (355)

353) *sa* *sa* *olôuf̲e̲i*   *tobôu.ø-môu* *sie-i.*
land land all.total say.REAL-PFV walk.around-NFUT

'... (he) went around speak**ing** everywhere.'

354) *a̲* *sug̲u̲* *folo-u-môu,*   *dia* *a̲* *to-l-ôu+m̲a̲-i*
1s top go.up-NFUT-PFV 3PL 1s hold-IRR-NPST+put-NFUT

'... climbing to the top, they held on to me **and** pinned (me down) …'

355) (*kueya*   *dihi*) *...* *bol̲o̲u* *ke-ge*   *to-l-ôu-môu,*   *ta* *so=ye* *sese-l-e*
cassowary child *...* two that-VBR hold-IRR-NPST-PFV INDF dog=INS follow-IRR-FUT

i-l-e   *wala*   *n̲o̲-u-môu* *dugu-o* *fogôu.ø*   *igiya-i.*
go-IRR-FUT attack.IRR.FUT eat-NFUT-PFV see-FUT leave.for.REAL go.DU/PL-NFUT

'... **having** got hold of two (cassowary chickens), (we) saw one pursued and killed and eaten by the dog, and leav**ing** we went.'

_____

However, occasionally the previous statement, repeated below:

    "**Relative future tense** … The mood distinction seems irrelevant for meaning …"

… comes into question. In the following three examples *dege-l-e-ba* (do-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR; basic form: *dege*) and *bi-l-o-ba* (sit.up/down-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR; basic form: *biyo* (irregular)) are in **irrealis** mood in their medial relative future forms. This is regular for the verb *biyo* 'sit up/down', a type 7 verb, but highly unusual for *dege* 'do' a type 2 verb that does not appear in this form in any of my text materials. However, it came up in translation, and the following examples were given to illustrate its use. The meaning of the forms is similar to the delayed sequence forms (see 7.3.2.4: *-gi*).

356) *dabai **dege-l-e-ba**,*   *na-l-e̲*   *na-l-e̲*
work do-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR eat-IRR-FUT eat-IRR-FUT

'when he **will have finished** working, he will eat the food (he has put aside)'

357) *na̲ dabai **dege-l-e-ba**,*   *sele*   *mo-l-ô̲u*
2s work do-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR money get-IRR-NPST

'when you **will have finished** working, you will be paid/receive money'

358) *Kevin=ha̲ literacy*   *school* **bi-l-o-ba**,   *na-l-e̲*   *na-l-e̲*
Kevin=GEN literacy   school sit.up/down-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR eat-IRR-FUT eat-IRR-FUT

'when Kevin **will have finished** school, he will eat the food (he has put aside)'

4.1.5.2 Epistemic mood and tense

Tense in Konai cannot be separated from the modal distinction of realis/irrealis, especially in final verbs. There are two tense distinctions that for most verbs correspond to non-future and future. A realis verb takes a non-future tense. An irrealis verb can take either. The exception is type 6 verbs, which end in *ô̲u*, where, if one wants to talk about tense at all, it can only be interpreted as past versus non-past. As will be shown, this corresponds exactly with the realis and irrealis forms respectively, and there is no choice for the irrealis form. The tense distinction between present and future is neutralised.

I will first describe the different forms of the TAM suffix, first for final then for medial verbs. Then a discussion of its different functions will follow.

4.1.5.2.1 Forms of the TAM suffix for final verbs

A **vowel chart** is the most helpful tool to understand the tense suffixes. In verb types 1-5&7, the non-future tense is marked by a high vowel and future is marked by a low vowel. Which vowel is chosen is a matter of vowel harmony (see 2.7.1). Type 6 verbs end in *ô̲u*, i.e. /o/. Rules of vowel harmony demand that the tense suffix should be *ô̲u*, i.e. /o/, a mid-vowel. Seemingly only because of /o/ being neither high nor low, there is no tense distinction for the irrealis forms.

Vowel chart

	Front	**Central**	**Back**
High	**i** /i/		**u** /u
Mid			**ô̲u** /o/
Low	**e** /ɛ/	**a** /ɑ/	**o** /ɔ/

The following table shows the seven types of verbs and how they are conjugated as final verbs. **Bold** shows **regular** conjugations based on vowel harmony rules described in 2.7.1. Verb types 3, 4, 6, 7 have sub-types showing irregular conjugation (e.g. 3b, 3c), where the irregular forms are <u>not</u> in bold.

Final verb conjugation, red = existential state verb

Type	LSV	Ex. Basic	Meaning	High[81] Vowel: *i, u*		Low Vowel: *e, o*
				R-NFUT past tense[82]	IRR-NFUT present tense	IRR-FUT future tense
1	*i*	*si*	**'cook'**	*si*	*si-l-i*	*si-l-e*
2	*e*	*bese*	**'fish/angle for'**	*bese-i*	*bese-l-i*	*bese-l-e*
3a	*a*	*da*	**'dig'**	*da-i*	*do-l-u*	*da-l-e*
3b		*hagua*[83]	'stand up'	*hagua-i*	*haguo-l-u*	*hagua-l-e*
3c		*ya*	'play'	*ya-i*	*ya-l-i*	*ya-l-e*
4a	*i/u(C)a*	*biya*	**'fight'**	*biye-i*	*biyo-l-u*	*biya-l-e*
4b		*sia*	'walk around'	*sie-i*	*su-l-u*	*su-l-o*
		hagua	'come'	*hague-i*	*hagu-l-u*	*hagua-l-e*
4c		*tila*	'lie down'	*tile-i*	*tila-l-i*[84]	*tila-l-e*
4d		*tafala*	'stand'	*tefele-i*	*tafala-l-i*	*tafala-l-e*
5	*u*	*yodu*	'ask'	*yodu*	*yodu-l-u*	*yodu-l-o*
6a	*ôu*	*môu*	**'get'**	*mo-u*	*mo-l-ôu*	*mo-l-ôu*
6b	*o*	*fo*	'run'	*fo-u*	*fo-l-ôu*	*fo-l-ôu*
7a	*o*	*wo*	**'attack'**	*we-i*	*wou-l-u*	*wo-l-o*
7b		*duwo*	'sit'	*duwe-i*	*duwo-l-i*[85]	*duwo-l-o*

As the basic form ends in a high vowel, verb types 1 and 5 are inherently past tense, if, as here, the context so allows.[86] A couple of verbs, ending in *e* or *o* and having an *l* in the root, use their basic form to express irrealis future, i.e. future tense, e.g. *folo* 'go up/will go up' and *fele* 'come up/will come up'.

As can be seen in the previous table, some of the verb types seemingly have two or three different roots. This is an illusion and easily explained by the rules described in 2.7.1 VOWEL HARMONY IN VERBS. In the next table I will show the verb types, where there are seemingly different stems and where they occur.

Vowel harmony effects on verb roots in final verbs, red = existential state verbs

Type	Meaning	Ex. Basic	Stem changed due to vowel harmony		
			R-NFUT	IRR-NFUT	IRR-FUT
3a/b	'dig'/'stand up'	*da/hagua*		*do-/haguo-*	
4a	'fight'	*biya*	*biye-*	*biyo-*	
4b	'walk around'/'come'	*sia/hagua*	*sie-/hague-*	*su-/hagu-*	*su-*
4c	'lie down'	*tila*	*tile-*		
4d	'stand'	*tafala* (irreg.)	*tefele-*		
6a	'get'	*môu*	*mo-*	*mo-*	*mo-*
6b	'run'	*fo* (irreg.)			
7a	'attack'	*wo*	*we-*	*wo.u-* (WO.BLTV-)	
7b	'sit'	*duwo*	*duwe-*		

Examples will be presented under 4.1.5.2.3 FUNCTIONS OF THE TAM SUFFIX.

---

[81]The high versus low vowel distinction does not apply to type 6 (see introduction to this section).

[82] This is also **stable present tense** for experiential state verbs, like *a sugua-i* 'I have a fever.' (See 4.1.1.1.3 EXPERIENTIAL STATE VERBS.)

[83] This form is irregular because the penultimate vowel is high, which should have resulted in a type 4 conjugation. Bleed-through has probably changed this form from **huga*.

[84] This form for existential state verbs is medial and means '… until'. In final verbs, present tense is the same as the basic form.

[85] This particular form does not follow rules of vowel harmony. Note also that the existential state verbs are conjugated in a similar way, regardless of verb type. Only future tense follows verb type.

[86] An alternative interpretation is that when the suffix is identical with the last stem vowel, assimilation occurs.

Past tense and negation

Vowel harmony rules are violated in expressing negative past states or events. The non-future tense form *-i* is always used, regardless of verb type.

359) *du-l-i*   *mei*   Type 5, basic form: *du*; past tense: *du* hear.NFUT
hear-IRR-NFUT   NEG   present form: *du-l-u* hear-IRR-NFUT
'did not hear'   'is hearing'

360) *E moso tege-l-i*   *mei.*   Type 7, basic form: *togo*; past: *tege-i* make-NFUT
3S house make-IRR-NFUT   NEG   present form: *togo-u-l-u* make-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
'He did not build a house.'   'is making'

361) *Sasai e miye bese-l-i*   *mei.* Type 2, basic form: *bese*; past: *bese-i* ...-NFUT
woman 3S fish angle.for-IRR-NFUT NEG   present form: *bese-l-i* angle.for-IRR-NFUT
'The woman did not fish.'   'is fishing'

4.1.5.2.2 Forms of the TAM suffix for medial verbs

Epistemic mood and tense in medial verb forms is not quite as straight forward as for final verbs. Instead of absolute tense, as in final verbs, there is a relative tense, which speaks about the temporal relationship to the following verb/clause. There is a basic two-way distinction: relative present and relative future.

The major complication in describing part of the TAM system for medial verbs, however, is that the forms that in final verbs signal tense only, in medial verbs also signal same or different subject.

Type 6 verbs and existential state verbs are conjugated differently from other verbs, as can be seen in the following line-up.

VERB TYPE/CLASS	SUFFIXES	MEANING IN MEDIAL VERBS	MEANING IN FINAL VERBS
1-5, 7	*-i, -u*	different subject, simultaneous	'non-future'
	-e, -o, -a	same subject, sequence	'future'
6	*-ôu*	same & diff. subject, simultaneous[87]	'non-future'
	-l-ôu[88]	same subject, unspecified time/'and'	'present/future'
stative	∅(*-môu*/*-ba*)	different subject, simultaneous	'basic/present'
	-l-i	same subject, <u>delayed</u> sequence	'unstable present'
	... *de-ma*	same subject, sequence	-

In the following table over medial verb conjugation, there are also columns for 'immediate sequence/ISQ' and 'delayed sequence/DSQ', even though those forms are not part of the same TAM suffix system as such. But as a common sequential form is lacking for stative verbs in the system described here, the *-ma* forms 'immediate sequence' are included. As for *-gi* 'delayed sequence', it is included because of how existential state verbs are conjugated. These stative verbs do not take *-gi* 'delayed sequence/DSQ', as active verbs do, but *-l-i* 'IRR-NFUT' to express delayed sequence.

---

[87] A different subject in the following clause requires the suffix *-môu* 'perfective'. If the subject is the same, this suffix may occur, but does not need to. This is true for all verbs (see 7.3.1.2 SWITCH OF SCENE).

[88] *-l-* 'irrealis', *de* 'proverb', *-ma* 'immediate sequence'

Medial verb conjugation[89]

red = existential state verbs; *-l-* 'irrealis', *-ma* 'immediate sequence', *de* 'pro-verb', *-gi* 'delayed sequence'

Type	LSV	Ex. Basic	HIGH VOWEL: *i, u, ôu* DIFFERENT SUBJECT + RELATIVE <u>PRESENT</u>/ SIMULTANEOUS	LOW VOWEL: *e, o, a* SAME SUBJECT + RELATIVE <u>FUTURE</u>/ SEQUENTIAL[90]	*-ma* SAME SUBJECT + IMMEDIATE SEQUENCE	*-gi/-l-i* SAME SUBJECT + DELAYED SEQUENCE 'until'
1	*i*	*si* 'cook'	*si*	*si-l-e*	_[91]	*si-l-i-gi* COOK-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
2	*e*	*dege* 'do'	*dege-i*	*dege*	*dege-ma*	*dege-l-i-gi*
		ne̲ 'give'	*ne̲-i*	*ne-l-e̲*	-	_[92]
3a	*a*	*sa* 'put inside'	*so-u*	*sa*	-	*so-l-u-gi*
		na̲ 'eat'	*no̲-u*	*nala̲*[93]	*na̲-ma*	*no-l-u̲-gi*
3b		*hagu̲a* 'stand up'	-	*hagu̲a*	*hagu̲a-ma*	-
3c		*ṯawa* 'know'	*ṯawa-i*	*ṯawa-l-e*	*ṯawa-ma*	-
4a	*i(C)a*	*sabiya* 'be morning'	*sabiyo-u*	*sabiya*	*sabiya-ma*	-
4b		*sia* 'walk around'	*su*	*su-l-o*	*sia-ma*	*su-l-u-gi*
4c		*tila* 'lie down'	*tila-∅*	-	*tila de-ma*	*tila-l-i* lie.down-IRR-NFUT
4d	*aⁿ*	*tafala* 'stand'	*tafala-∅*	-	*tafala de-ma*	*tafala-l-i*
5	*u*	*yodu* 'ask'	*yodu*	*yodu-l-o*	*yodu-ma*	-
6a	*ôu*	*ṯobôu* 'say'	*ṯobôu*	*ṯobo-l-ôu*	*ṯobôu-ma*	*ṯobo-l-ôu-gi*
		mo̲ûu 'get'	*mo̲ûu*	*mala̲*	-	*mo-l-ôu-gi*
6b	*o*	*fo* 'run'	*fo*	*fo-l-ôu*	-	-
7a	*o*	*ṯogo* 'make'	*ṯogo-u*	*ṯogo-l-o*	*ṯogo-ma*	*ṯogou-l-u-gi*
		goso 'cry'	*goso-u*	*goso-l-o*	*goso-ma*	*gosou-l-u-gi*
		folo 'go up'	*folo-u*	*folo*	*folo-ma*	*fou-l-u-gi*
		wo 'attack'	*wo-u*	*wala̲*	-	*wou-l-u-gi*
7b		*duwo* 'sit'	*duwo-∅*	-	*duwo de-ma*	*duwo-l-i*

---

[89] **Bold** means that the form is regular within its type.

[90] The irrealis marker *-l-*, may or may not occur in these forms. See 4.1.5.1.2 EPISTEMIC MOOD IN MEDIAL VERBS.

[91] Some of the chosen verbs in this table are too transitive to easily fit in this column (see 3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES: *-ma*).
Also, the form **fo-ma* 'run-ISQ' has not been found.

[92] Form not found in natural text.

[93] The form *nala̲* 'eat.IRR.FUT' is irregular; the same applies to the verbs *mala̲* 'get.IRR.FUT' and *wala̲* 'attack.IRR.FUT' further down the chart.

Examples of relative present and future tense,[94] also expressing different or same subject with the following verb

362) *wai ka=ha̲   a̲   dugu-o fo-**l-ôu**   i-l-e,   haba=ge   hagu-môu*
pig that=GEN 1s see-FUT run-IRR-NPST go-IRR-FUT but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR come.NFUT-PFV

a̲   taha̲-i̲ ...
1s shoot-NFUT

'…the pig saw me **and** ran away **and** went **and** later com**ing** (back), I shot it ...' (relative future tense: 'and …'x3, same subject; relative present tense: '-ing', different subject)

363) *a̲   ne̲   ta̲   du-l-**o**-môu   fo-u*
1s 2s.POSS talk hear-IRR-FUT-PFV run-NFUT

'I heard your talk **and** ran' (relative future tense: 'and …, same subject')

364) *Ke-ge   tobôu-môu, Godi=ha̲ a̲=mokôu nele̲   hiye=do ne̲-i̲-môu   dugu.*
that-VBR say.NFUT-PFV God=GEN 1s=LOC   strengthbig=INT give-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

'Say**ing** like that, (I) perceived God giv**ing** me great strength. (relative present tense: '-ing' x2, different subject)'

365) *dilie o ta   ta̲   tobo-u, na̲ yoti tobo-**l-ôu**   sia,*
3DU man INDF talk say-NFUT 2s feast say-IRR-NPST walk.around,

sa   sa   olôufe̲i=do.
land land all.total=INT

'... the two of them said to a man, "Go around everywhere **and** tell about the feast."'
(relative future tense: 'and …', same subject)

366) *CHW   training ta̲   ke̲ dokta=ha̲   tobôu-ba   du-l-o-ba,*
CHW   training talk that doctor=GEN say-PFV.IRR hear-IRR-**FUT**-PFV.IRR

na̲ Morobert e̲=mokôu tobôu.
2s Morobert 3s=LOC   say.IMP

'... when (you) **have** hear**d** the doctor talk**ing** about the Community Health Workers' Training Program, tell Morobert.' (relative **present** tense: '-ing', different subject; relative future tense: 'have (hear)d', same subject)

367) *Ele mogo ta̲=nôu   dele-i.   Dala-**l-i**,   e̲ fene*
1DU friend INDF=only be/have-NFUT be/have-IRR-NFUT 3s airplane

*to-**l-ôu**-môu   Kiunga=kôu i.*
hold-IRR-NPST-PFV Kiunga=LOC go.NFUT

'We two were close friends. (We) were (that) **until** he got on a flight **and** set out for Kiunga.' (stative verb: 'until', same subject[95]; relative future tense: 'and …', same subject)

---

[94] In this section the modal suffix -l- will only be bolded, where its presence makes a difference in regards to relative tense, e.g. verb type 6: *...ôu* relative present tense '-ing'; *-lôu* – relative future tense 'and …'

[95] Same subject, because one of two continues in the next clause. See 7.3.1.1.4 WHAT IS INCLUDED IN THE SAME SUBJECT?

4.1.5.2.3 Functions of the TAM suffix

The three different modal and tense combinations in **final verb forms** have the following functions or meanings:

Realis + non-future:

> **Past event**

368) *O   hague-**i**.*
man come-NFUT
'The man **came**.'

> **Present experienced state**

369) *Dihi   ţie-**i**.*
child sleep-NFUT
'The child **is** sleeping'.

> **Nouns denoting things that have been made/produced**

370) *sege-**i***
plant-NFUT
'garden produce'

(Realis and future do not co-occur.)

Irrealis + non-future:

> **Present/not completed event**

371) *O   yo   sogo-u-**l-u**.*
man banana plant-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
'The man **is** planting bananas.'

> **Present temporary existential state/until**

372) *Ạ baha duwo-**l-i**.*
1s look sit-IRR-NFUT
'I **am** wait**ing briefly**./... wait**ing until** ...'

373) *Ạ hohǫ   hiye=do dege tafala-**l-i**   fogôu   i-l-e   hafẹi   dege-l-i.*
1s light big=INT do   stand-IRR-NFUT leave.for go-IRR-FUT close.total do-IRR-NFUT
'I am happily staying (here), **until** (the time) to leave is closing in.'

> **Past negative event or state**

374) *Ẹ tobôu-**l-i**   mei.*
3s say-IRR-NFUT NEG
'He/she **did not** say.'

> **The same subject simultaneous strategy** (see 7.3.1.1.1 SWITCH-REFERENCE MARKING IN MOST EVENT VERBS)

375) *Wai...   Ẹ   o   dugu-**l-u**,   o   wo-l-o.*
pig...   3s   man see-IRR-NFUT man   attack-IRR-FUT
'(The) pig ... **when** he see**s** a man; (he) will kill (him/the man).'

376) *Haba=ge   ạ ţawa-**l-i**   tobo-l-ôu.*
but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR 1s know-IRR-NFUT say-IRR-NPST
'I will tell you later **as soon as** I know/remember.'

Irrealis + future:

Future event or state

377) *A̠=me ko͡u-le   duwo-**l-o**.*
        1S=TOP this-A.LOCR sit-IRR-FUT
        'I **will** be here.'

Future negative event or state

378) *A̠=me ko͡u-le   duwo-**l-o**   mei.*
        1S=TOP this-A.LOCR sit-IRR-FUT NEG
        'I **will not** be here.'

In **a non-final verb form** this combination of mood and tense is used in a relative way to indicate that the next event/state is only loosely connected, as far as time goes – a relative future, corresponding in meaning to 'and ...'**.** It also signals same subject.

379) *Ke-ge-mo͡u   a̠ i-**l-e**   gamani   o ta̠   tobo-u.*
        that-VBR-PFV 1S go-IRR-FUT government man INDF say-NFUT
        'Then I went **and** talked to a government official.'

In the first verb of **a serial**[96] **verb construction** it is used to indicate individuated **plural subject**.

380) *Di̠a kuidiho̠ ke̠   dugu-o-mo͡u, hoho   hiye=do dege-**l-e**   i.*
        3PL star that see-FUT-PFV light big=INT do-IRR-FUT go
        'Seeing (the) star, **they** rejoiced very much.'

Nouns denoting things not yet used

381) *na-**l-e̠***
        eat-IRR-NFUT
        'food'

In addition, still talking about epistemic mood, the **basic form** of a verb stem is realis and the tense is whatever the last stem vowel indicates. In that way, not all basic forms mean the same thing. It depends on:

- if the verb stem expresses a state or an event
- what verb type it is, i.e. what the final vowel of the stem is

Present existential state verbs – these verbs always end in a low vowel (a, o) = present tense

382) *o   tafal**a***
        man stand
        'The man **is** standing.'

Past events – verbs stems ending in a high vowel (i, u) = past tense

383) *o   **i**   sasa̠i m**u̠***
        man go.NFUT   woman go.down.NFUT
        'the man **went**'   'the woman **went** down'

384) *o   tefe-g**i***
        man stand-OF.NFUT
        'the man **was** placed standing'

Present negative events – verbs stems ending in a high vowel (i, u) = present tense

385) *a̠ **dug u**=yo   mei*
        1S see=INDC   NEG
        'I **do** not see …'

Simple purpose (any verb root)

386) *dilie o͡u   **ha**   i.*
        3DU sago cut go.NFUT
        'The two of them went **to** cut down a sago (palm).'

---

[96] This is different from the non-final verb form above in that nothing can come between this verb and the one following in this serial verb construction. The second verb is always *i* 'go'. See 4.1.6.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL for further information.

Forming certain nouns (irregular)

387) *diǫ + **ka***
grass+cut
'grass knife'

Proverbs functioning as modifiers – *kege* 'do like that' and *dege* 'do' with noun incorporation

388) *Ôu   ko�̂u = me ma   ôu, to   **hafei**   **dege**   tafala.*
sago this=TOP 1s.POSS sago river closeness.total do   stand
'This sago (palm) is my sago palm; (it) stands **close by** the river'

389) *e   sasai̯ = bôu e dihi olôufei̯   kama + dia   **ke-ge**   dia olôufei̯*
3s woman=and 3s child all.total middle.finger+3PL that-VBR 3PL all.total

na-ma   tia-sie-i
eat-ISQ sleep-DU/PL-NFUT
'... (he) and his wife (and) all his **three** children, after eating they all slept ...'

390) *sio isusu hebe go = kôu   duwo-môu dugu.   ... Sio   isusu   e*
bird pigeon tree branch=LOC sit-PFV   see.NFUT ... bird pigeon 3s

***ke-ge**   duwo-môu*
that-VBR sit-PFV
'... (I) saw a pigeon sitting on a tree branch. Seeing the pigeon sitting **like that** (I) ...'

The basic form of any verb type also expresses the imperative singular form (see 4.1.5.5.1 IMPERATIVE).

4.1.5.3 Epistemic mood and aspect

Two aspects will be covered in this section: habitual and prospective. These aspect markers can only occur on final verbs. Other aspects will be covered in later sections.

4.1.5.3.1 Past and present habitual aspect

Habitual expresses that which is usually done. It is marked by the suffix *-di* used with the realis form of the verb. It may be used about the past or present. A different form is used for future (see 4.1.5.4.3 FUTURE HABITUAL ASPECT).

391) *Na̱ koyo = ha moso̱ = kôu tia-**di**?*
2s whose   house=LOC sleep=HAB
'In whose house do you sleep/**live**?'

392) *biya-**di**.*
fight-HAB
'war /**always** fighting'

Habitual may also be expressed in the irrealis mood. It then seems to have the meaning 'doing what one is always doing'. It has only been observed in the present. This is more common in the Foothill dialect then in the Lowland dialect, which is the focus of this grammar.

393) *Dihi   goso-**di-l-i**.*
child cry-HAB-IRR-NFUT
'The child is crying **as usual**.' (Foothill dialect)

394) *Dihi   goso-**di**.*
child cry-HAB
'The child is **always** crying.' (Lowland dialect)

395) *Yomogôu-môu = be awaki to-l-ôu   i-l-e   nôu-**di-l-i**.*
start-PFV=TOP   knife hold-IRR-NPST go-IRR-FUT clear.garden-HAB-IRR-NFUT
'To start with (he) takes his knife and goes and clears (his) garden **in the usual way**.'

4.1.5.3.2 Prospective aspect

Prospective aspect expresses that which is just about to happen. It is marked by the suffix *-adi* used with the irrealis form of the verb.

396) *Huei̯   to-l-**adi**.*
water wash-IRR-PROS
'It is **just about to** rain.'

397) *A   i-l-**adi**.*
       1S go-IRR-PROS

       'I am **just about to** leave.'

4.1.5.4 Other aspects

There are three other aspects that are <u>not</u> signalled by suffixes. They are iterative, progressive and future habitual.

In addition, there are also the four medial verb markers, which are all aspect markers used to connect clauses: two are telic in nature, one immediate *-ma* and one durative *-gi* ; two are perfective *-môu* and *-ba*. These will be mentioned under the last heading of this section.

4.1.5.4.1 Iterative aspect

Iterative aspect expresses that which occurs again and again. It is signalled by reduplicating the first syllable of the verb root or sometimes, even the whole root. It includes the repetition of an act caused by there being many actors and/or objects (398). For stems ending in *i* or *u*, an *e* is added at the end of the stem.

398) *toto=do   neke olôufei   ko=kôu **do**[97]-dogogu-**e**+m**a**   fogôu-môu*
       quickly=INT net all.total that=LOC RED.PL-put-RED.PL+put leave.for-PFV

       '(**they**) quickly put (down) and left (their) net**s** there …'

399) *e   di**a**=mokôu **he**-hegi-**e**   **to**-tobôu-môu   i.*
       3S 3PL=LOC   RED.PL-show-RED.PL RED.PL-talk-PFV go.NFUT

       '… he … kept **teach**ing and talking to them **again and again**.'

400) ***ti-**tia-môu*
       RED.PL-sleep-PFV

       'having rested **again and again**' (about the progress of a mortally wounded pig)

401) *ele   **taha**   **taha**   i-l-i-gi,   wai to-l-o   i-môu,*
       1DU.EX shoot shoot go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ pig die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV

       '... we two **shot repeatedly** and went on until the pig died ...'

4.1.5.4.2 Progressive aspect

The progressive aspect expresses that which is going on, but without the speaker having a clear endpoint in mind. It is expressed by a serial verb construction. The first verb is in its basic form followed by the medial verb suffix *-môu* 'perfective'.[98] The verb in the second clause is often *i* 'go', *hagua* 'come', *sia* 'walk around', but others may be found. It can be in any form.

402) *tôu   dedei   dege-**môu** i-di.*
       body strong do-PFV   go-HAB

       '... **keep** strengthen**ing** the body.'

403) *e   di**a**=mokôu tobôu-**môu**   i.*
       3S 3PL=LOC   say-PFV   go.NFUT

       '... he **kept** talking to them.'

404) *t**a**   k**e**=me n**i** afu=do   du-**môu**   **hague-i**   k**e**=me*
       talk that=TOP 2PL earlier=INT hear-PFV   come-NFUT that=TOP

       '... that talk that you hear**d and have kept** hear**ing** (until now/a certain time in the past) …'

405) *e   i-l-e   sa   sa   olôufei   tobôu-**môu** **sie-i**.*
       3S go-IRR-NFUT land land   all.total say-PFV   walk.around-NFUT

       '… he went (away) and going from place to place **kept talking** (about ...).'

---

[97] Young people consider this particular form obsolete and take out the reduplication, leaving only *-e*. The same goes for *to-tobôu-môu* in the next example. Deleting the reduplication there, means deleting the plurality marked in the verb altogether, as there is no additional *-e*.

[98] The **ir**realis perfective form *-ba* cannot be used to get the meaning of progressive aspect, even if the final verb of the sentence is hypothetic or in future tense.

406) *Ke-ge   to-ba   miye susug-môu   fe-l-i-gi,*
      that-VBR river-along fish dive.for-PFV   come.up-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

      habi   dege-i-môu
      afternoon do-NFUT-PFV

      'Like that he kept diving for fish **coming closer to here until** in the afternoon (he) ...'

407) *ise   ôu=bôu   dou=bôu sa-i   ke   ta-môu   ke-le*
      finally sago=and fire=and put.inside-NFUT that unpack.FUT-PFV that-A.LOC

      dogogu-o fogôu-môu   i.
      put-FUT   leave.for-PFV go.NFUT

      '... and then having unpacked the sago and the matches (he) had packed earlier, (he) put them there and **moved away**.'

408) *sa   sa   olôufei   tobôu-môu sulugua-ma=b=ado-môu.*
      land land all.total say-PFV   walk.around-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV

      '... in order that (people) will **go around speaking** (about it).'

If used with a punctual transitive verb like 'give' or 'marry', this aspectual form has the additional meaning of 'each' or 'one after another'.

409) *o   ta=nôu   ta=nôu   dabai ne-môu   i.*
      man INDF=only INDF=only work give-PFV go.NFUT

      '... (he) **gave** work (**to each**) of (the) men'

410) *O   dio-yosi   ke-ge   ke+dia   sobôu   ke*
      man bone/lower.arm-NUMR that-VBR that+3PL married.woman that

      kôu   hu-môu   i=yode   tobo-l-ôu   i.
      prior marry-PFV go.NFUT=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT

      '"Seven men had **one by one** previously **married** that woman," they stated and said.'

4.1.5.4.3 Future habitual aspect

The habitual aspect for past and present events and states are signalled by the suffix *-di* (see 4.1.5.3.1 PAST AND PRESENT HABITUAL ASPECT). For future habituals, the pro-verb *de* is used (this pro-verb has no specific meaning). Note that the vowel for habitual in non-future *-di* is the high vowel *i*, like for non-future tense. For future habitual, using the proverb *de*, it is the low vowel *e*, like for future tense. The verb is in its basic form, when it is followed by the pro-verb.

411) *Ni   sawisie-i   ke   defei=do   tawa-l-e   dala-ma,*
      2PL be.day-NFUT that careful=INT know-IRR-FUT be/have-DU/PL

      kefe-gu-o   na   de-ma.
      gather-of-FUT eat PROV-DU/PL

      'Keep knowing that day well; gather and eat **each season**.'

412) *na   ta   tobo-l-ôu   de-ba,   sia-l-e   de-ba,   o   sasai   taga-l-e*
      2s talk say-IRR-NPST PROV-PFV.IRR walk.around-IRR-FUT PROV-PFV.IRR man woman like-IRR-FUT

      de-ba,   Godi=kôu damale=yode-l-e   de-ba,   e   dihi-le   ko=kôu
      PROV-PFV.IRR God=LOC   believe=IQV-IRR-FUT PROV-PFV.IRR 3s eye-A.LOCR that=LOC

      sibigi=bôu mei dala-l-e   de-ba   na midiho dou=do   ke=nôu
      dirt=and   NEG be/have-IRR-FUT PROV-PFV.IRR 2s face   straight=INT that=only

      milôu-ga-môu   sia   de.
      work-DU/PL-PFV walk.around PROV

      '… **always** in speaking, in living, in loving, in believing in God, in walking before him in cleanness you (must) **always** in everything keep working and living in a very straight way.'

4.1.5.4.4 Medial verb suffixes express aspect

For more information on medial verbs see 4.1.4.3 STRUCTURE OF MEDIAL VERBS.

Immediate telic aspect

The suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' is a medial verb suffix. It is used to express that an event/state in a clause is finished before the event of the next clause starts. In that way it expresses telic aspect. It cannot be used on its own but needs to be followed by another clause with the same subject.

413) *O   gisiai   ke-ge-môu,   e   hebe ha-l-e   dafa-ma,   yo*
      man single that-VBR-PFV 3S tree cut-IRR-FUT tired.of-ISQ banana

      bolou=nôu=do=fei sogo-gu.
      two=only=INT=total plant-OF.NFUT

      '(A) single man having become like that, **after** he cut down trees and got tired (of it)), (he) planted a total of only two banana plants.'

Durative telic aspect

The medial verb suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence' is used to express a delayed sequence between actions, but in doing that it gets a telic aspectual meaning, expressing that an event is going on up to a certain end point. It cannot be used on its own but needs to have the end point clearly expressed. Another clause with the same subject must follow, usually in the same sentence.

414) *Yo-l-u-gi   dugu=be   hebe hiye=do ta   tafala.*
      go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT INDF stand

      'We went for a while **until** we saw a big tree standing.'

415) *A   Debele=kôu tafala-gi, ma   mala   ele   Taka=kôu igiya-i.*
      1S   Debele=LOC stand-DSQ 1S.POSS younger.sibling 1DU.ExTaka=LOC go.DU/PL-NFUT

      'I was in Debele for a while **until** my younger brother and I went to Taka.' (Foothill dialect)

Perfective aspect in realis mood: past and present

The suffix *-môu* 'perfective realis' is a medial verb suffix. It is used to indicate that a new scene is developing in the next clause, sometimes with a new subject, but in doing that it gets a perfective aspectual meaning.

416) *sasai   sogo   si-môu,   dou   dahai hiye=do dege-l-i.*
      woman breadfruit cook.NFUT-PFV fire   smoke big=INT do-IRR-NFUT

      '... **as** the woman is cooking breadfruit, a lot of smoke is developing.'
      (a photo of a lady enveloped in smoke)

It is also used in the above described progressive aspect 4.1.5.4.2.

Perfective aspect in irrealis mood: future and hypothetic

The suffix *-ba* 'perfective irrealis' is a medial verb suffix. It is used to indicate that a new scene is developing in the next clause, sometimes with a new subject, but in doing that it gets a perfective aspectual meaning.

417) *Di   i-l-e-ba   dugu-me, Yesu heveni dala.*
      1PL.IN   go-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR see-HORT Jesus heaven be/have

      'We (incl.) **having** (start**ed**) to go, let's see Jesus sitting in heaven.'

4.1.5.5 Deontic mood

> The deontic mode characterizes an event as non-actual by virtue of the fact that it is imposed
> on a given situation (Chung Timberlake 1985:246).

In Konai, the three modal types imperative, prohibitive and hortative are imposed, but the non-actuality of the event is not formally expressed, i.e. the realis versus irrealis distinction is not part of verbs in deontic mood. The verb is in its basic form, when a deontic suffix is attached.

Deontic mood is expressed only on final verbs. Medial verbs may lead up to a verb in deontic mood. The perfective suffix, if occurring, must then be in the irrealis mood, i.e. *-ba*, rather than *-môu*.[99]

There is an obligatory number distinction for imperative and prohibitive mood. It is expressed by the final verb suffix *-ma* 'dual/plural'. Singular is the unmarked form.

Also, the topic marker *=be* may be added to verbs in the deontic mood. It seems to make a politer form.

---

[99] … except in the serial verb construction expressing progressive aspect see 4.1.5.4.2 PROGRESSIVE ASPECT.

The number suffix used in imperative and prohibitive verbs *-ma* 'dual/plural', the hortative suffix *-me* and the prohibitive suffix *-da* co-occur with the quote verbs =*ede* 'direct/instruct' and =*ade* 'assert' (see 4.1.1.3).

4.1.5.5.1 Imperative

Imperative is the unmarked basic form. It may function together with a second person subject. Using the pronoun together with the verb is supposed to be a more polite form.

418) *N̲a̲ i.*
      2S go
      'Go (**sg.**).'

419) ***I-ma.***
      go-DU/PL
      'Go (**du./pl**.).'

420) ***Nele*** *a̲=mokôu haba   chalk   ta   n̲e̲-ma=**be***.
      2DU   1S=LOC   but.PFV.IRR chalk INDF give-DU/PL=TOP
      '**Please**, **you two**, **give** me some more chalk.'

421) *Yesu=h̲a̲   ... o   ke+di̲a̲=mokôu tobo-u,   o   ke̲*
      Jesus=GEN ... man that+3PL=LOC   say-NFUT man that

      a̲=mokôu ***wo-l-ôu***   ***hagua-ma=be=ede-i.***
      1S=LOC   accompany-IRR-NPST come-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-NFUT
      'Jesus said to the men, "**You (sg./pl.) bring** that man to me," (he) **instructed**.'

4.1.5.5.2 Prohibitive

Prohibitive is marked by the suffix *-da.* It may function together with a second person subject. It may also be used to negate a hortative sentence, where it may function together with a first person inclusive subject (see (427) in the next section).

422) ***I-da.***
      go-PROH
      '**Don't** go (**sg.**).'

423) *N̲i hagua-**sie-da-ma**.*
      2PL come-DU/PL-PROH-DU/PL
      '**Don'**t come (**du./pl**.).'

424) *Hiyou mo̲û-**da**=**yede-i.***
      steal get-PROH=OQV-NFUT
      '"**Do not** steal (**sg.**)," he **instructed**.'

4.1.5.5.3 Hortative

Hortative is marked by the suffix *-me*. It may function together with a first person inclusive subject. It may be used together with the prohibitive.

425) *I-**me***
      go-HORT
      '**Let's** go.'

426) *Di   dugu-**me**.*
      1PL.IN see-HORT
      '**Let's** see.'

427) *Di   tobôu-**da-me**.*
      1PL.IN say-PROH-HORT
      '**Let's** not tell.'

428) *E̲ n̲e̲-ma   mei dege-**ba**,*
      3S give-ISQ NEG do-PFV.IRR

      *di   olôuf̲e̲i   Dahamo=kôu dihi   do   mal̲a̲   i-**me**.*
      1PL.IN all.total Dahamo=LOC   child sickness get.IRR.FUT go-HORT
      'After having finished giving (that), **let us all** take the sick child to Dahamo.'

429) *I-me=be.*
go-HORT=TOP

'(I) **think we should** go now.'

430) *Ma̱   mogo=ha̱ dugu   tobo-l-o̱u,   da   do̱uwa*
1S.POSS friend=GEN see.NFUT say-IRR-NPST 1DU.IN hornbill

wa-l-a-ba   i-me=be=ede-i.
attack-IRR-SUBJ-PFV.IRR go-HORT=TOP=OQV-NFUT

'My friend saw (it); (he) said, "**Let us** two go for the purpose of killing the hornbill,"
(he) **suggested**.'

4.1.6 Number

Number is not obligatorily marked on verbs, neither for subject nor for object. However, if the verb is in imperative or prohibitive mood, a dual or a plural subject is marked differently from a singular subject (4.1.6.1). On verbs in epistemic mood, a non-singular subject does not need to be marked, but it can be in order to make the actions of non-singular agents seem more individuated. Hopper & Thompson (1980:252-253) talk about "individuation of O", where O stands for patient, i.e. a kind of semantic object. I will apply the idea to actions, performed by agents, who impact their environment. We may call it individuated plural (4.1.6.2). The opposite is group plural which has no number marking at all, i.e. it is the same as for a singular agent. It is often used to speak about a group as a whole, often in background information (4.1.6.3) (see also example (434).

Number is not obligatorily marked on objects either, but there are several ways to do it (4.1.6.4).

4.1.6.1 Number in imperative and prohibitive mood

Number is obligatory marked on verbs in imperative and prohibitive mood. The final suffix *-ma* is used when the verb refers to a dual or plural subject.

431) *I-ma.*
go-DU/PL

'Go (**du./pl.**).'

432) *Ni̱ tia-sie-da-ma.*
2PL sleep-DU/PL-PROH-DU/PL

'Don't sleep (**du./pl.**).'

4.1.6.2 Individuated plural

Individuated plural is applied to plurality of action in this grammar. That means that it refers to plural agents each doing his/her own bit of the combined action, adding up to a multiple of actions. It is seemingly used to make a story or an expression more lively, more action oriented. In that way, it is a device to increase the transitivity of the clause, whether the clause is transitive in the classical sense or intransitive. As mentioned before, there is no formal difference between transitive and intransitive verbs or clauses.

Hopper and Thompson (ibid.:252) list a number of components which impact transitivity:

Components of transitivity	High transitivity	Low transitivity
participants, number of …	two or more	one
kinesis	action	non-action
aspect	telic	atelic
punctual/durative	punctual	durative
(non-)volitional	volitional	non-volitional
affirmation	affirmative	negative
mode	realis	irrealis
agency	high in potency	low in potency
affectedness of object	totally affected	not totally affected
individuation of object	highly individuated	non-individuated

Of these, for the particular purpose of how individuated plurality of action impacts its environment and/or any objects, I will concentrate on:

- number of participants: two or more
- kinesis   action, but also emotions, attitudes and states
- (non-)volitional   volitional
- agency   high in potency
- affectedness of object   highly affected if object includes the environment

A group of participants, each doing his/her own part of the action, will increase the impact on the environment; action and emotions will multiply, there will be more individual volition, potency will increase and the affectedness on any object will be that much more. There is also some evidence that animacy plays a role in the choice of a singular/group versus an individuated plural form (see 4.1.6.2.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL ON MOSTLY INTRANSITIVE VERBS).

There are two ways to signal individuated plurality of the subject: a serial verb construction described in the next section, and by a few different verbal suffixes, described in the following section.

For individuation of object see 4.1.5.4.1 ITERATIVE ASPECT: (398).

4.1.6.2.1 Individuated plural on transitive verbs

Individuated plurality of the subject, in connection with a more transitive verb, is expressed by a serial verb construction. The second verb is always *i* 'go'. It may occur in any mood, tense or aspect. The first verb for verb types 1, 2, 5-7 is always irrealis future/non-past. For verb types 3 and 4 (ending in *a*) the first verb is in its basic form, indicating that it is inherently relative future. What we have then, in this serial verb construction, is that the first verb is a medial verb form and regular for verb types 3 and 4 and slightly irregular for the other verb types (see 2.7.1.2 VOWEL HARMONY IN MEDIAL VERBS: fourth column in line-up).

Verb types 1, 2, 5-7: verb-*l-V*[-high]#*i* (verb-IRR-FUT#go)

Verb types 3, 4 (end in *a*): verb#*i*   (verb.FUT #go)

Nothing can occur between the two verbs.

The plurality is plurality of action. It applies to non-singular agents doing multiple "verbing". However, I have one example of this particular construction applied on a non-singular object (441).

433) *A̲   afu   1981-82 Sepe   o̲   fene   gabu*
      1s earlier 1981-82 Smipen mouth.of.river airplane place

      milo-u   t̲a̲. ... Habiya o   su̲=do milo-l-o̲û   i.
      work-NFUT talk ... Aekyom man many=INT work-IRR-NPST go

      '(A) story about (when) I earlier, in 1981-82, worked (on the) airstrip at (the) mouth of (the) river Smipen …
      Very **many** Aekyom people **worked** (there).'

In the following example there is a contrast between group plural and individuated plural.

434) *ei   Dahamo Community School ko̲û=ma=ha̲ duwo, celebration ya-l-e̲   i.*
      1PL.EX Dahamo Community School this=TOP=GEN sit   celebration play-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

      '… we **were here (as a group)** at the Dahamo Community School and **(each of us) celebrated**.'

The next example includes the word *su̲* 'many'. It would seem that would more or less trigger an individuated plural form, as seen in the first example too.

435) *O su̲=do dia sisigo̲   su̲=do soko̲ûlo̲û mu-gu-l-o   i-di.*
      man many=INT 3PL children many=INT school go.down-OF-IRR-FUT go-HAB

      '**Many** people **put** their **many** children in school.'

Example (436) is from near the beginning of an exciting hunting story. All the verbs are marked for non-singular, except *ti* 'call' and the perceptive verbs *du* 'hear' and *dugu* 'see'. This early on in the story the most transitive clauses are the ones saying that the dogs barked at something/a huge boar, with the serial verb construction *V*-IRR-FUT *i.* The other dual/plural verb forms will be described in the next section.

436) *James=bo̲û Asele=bo̲û ei   so ti-l-e   igiya-i   sulugua-l-i*
      James=and   Asele=and 1PL.EX dog call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

      du,   so tigo-l-o   i-mo̲û   fo̲ukua igiya-i   folo-ga-mo̲û   dugu,
      hear.NFUT dog bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV run   go.DU/PL-NFUT go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV see.NFUT

      wai oye hiye=do k̲e̲   tigo-l-o   i-mo̲û   dugu.
      pig male big=INT that bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

      '… James, Asele and I called up the dogs and **went**; we **walked around until** (we) heard the dogs **barking** at (something) (and) immediately we ran **on**; having **arrived**, we saw that they were **barking** at that very big boar.'

The next examples illustrate the use of individuated plural in describing emotions and attitudes.

437) *O   sas<u>a</u>i sio   miye   **hoho** hiye=do **dege-l-e   i-di.**
man woman bird Victoria.pigeon light big=INT do-IRR-FUTgo-HAB

'**People** really **like**/are really happy about the Victoria pigeon.'

438) *Sio   isusu=be <u>e</u> hu<u>i</u>=be bolo=f<u>ei</u>=do   o   ol<u>o</u>ûf<u>ei</u>   **ɫaga-l-e   i-di.***
bird pigeon=TOP3S meat=TOPgood=total=INT man all.total like-IRR-FUT go-HAB

'Regarding the "isusu" pigeon, its meat is really very good; all **people like** it.'

439) *Jona <u>e</u> i-l-e,   o   sas<u>a</u>i ke+di<u>a</u>=mok<u>o</u>û Godi=h<u>a</u> ɫa   he-hegi-e-i,*
Jonah 3S go-IRR-FUT man woman that+3PL=LOC   God=GEN talk RED.PL-show-RED.PL-NFUT

*o   sas<u>a</u>i ol<u>o</u>ûf<u>ei</u>   di<u>a</u> **damal<u>e</u>=yode-l-e i.***
man woman all.total 3PL true=IQV-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

'… Jonah went and he taught the people God's Word; all the **people believed**.'

It may be noted that the perceptive verbs ***du*** 'hear' and ***dugu*** 'see' do not usually conjugate for individuated plurality (see (436)). The exception is, when the point of interest is in the perceiving, like in the next example.

440) *Aso k<u>o</u>û=ma=h<u>a</u>=ge   <u>e</u> hoho dege-l-i.   Sa   sa   ol<u>o</u>ûf<u>ei</u>*
sun this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR 3S light do-IRR-NFUT land land all.total

*o   sas<u>a</u>i ke+di<u>a</u> **dugu-l-o   i-di.***
man woman that+3PL see-IRR-FUT go-HAB

'This sun is shining. Everywhere **people are looking** at it.' (a picture)

There is one example in my data, where the plurality **seems** to refer to the object. Actually, on closer examination this example is ambiguous, and the **second** free translation is probably the correct one.

441) **<u>E</u> kalase=b<u>o</u>û,   howili+dio=b<u>o</u>û+de   mal<u>a</u>,   ise   ye=ne**
3S (diving).glass=and fishing+bone=and+PROV get.IRR.FUTfinally stringbag=also

*mal<u>a</u>,   <u>o</u>û=b<u>o</u>û dou=b<u>o</u>û ye+du   **sa   i.***
get.IRR.FUTsago=and fire=and stringbag+inside put.inside   go.NFUT

'**He** got (his) **diving glasses and (his) fish spear** and finally **also (his) stringbag** and (**also**) **put** sago and **matches inside** the stringbag.'

(Translated as if *sa i* is a **serial verb**, signalling **plurality**.)

'(He) got **his diving glasses and (his) fish spear** and finally **also (his) stringbag** and **put** sago and matches **inside** the stringbag **and went**.'

(Translated as if ***sa*** 'put inside **and**' is a medial verb, followed by ***i*** 'go'.)

4.1.6.2.2 Individuated plural on mostly intransitive verbs

There are also a few non-singular suffixes used for different kinds of mostly intransitive verbs to express individuated plural of the subject:

-ga   dual and plural   some, mostly intransitive verbs[100]
-gua   dual and plural suffix   existential state verbs
-sie/*-sige*[101] dual and plural suffix   some motion verbs and the word for 'sleep'
ya/*igiya*   suppletive forms of *i* 'go sg.'

In addition to the examples below, see also (436).

442) *mos<u>o</u>=k<u>o</u>û folo-**ga**-i*
house=LOC go.up-DU/PL-NFUT

'**they** arrived at the house'

443) *M<u>a</u>   yo   sege-i   folo-**go**-l-u.*
1S.POSS banana plant-NFUT go.up-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

'My banana plants **are** coming up.'

444) *ɫafala-**gua***
stand-DU/PL

'**they** stand'

---

[100] Absolutive marking: refers to the subject of intransitive verbs and to the object of weakly transitive verbs.

[101] Alternatives show dialect variation: *-sie* 'dual/plural' and *ya* 'go (du./pl.)' are Lowland dialect, while *-sige* and *igiya* are used in the Foothill and Mountain dialects.

445) *hagua-**sie**-i*
      come-DU/PL-NFUT
      '**they** came'

446) *t̯ia-**sie**-i*
      sleep-DU/PL-NFUT
      '**they** are sleeping'

447) *Ṉi̱ fou-**sige**-ma .*
      2PL run-DU/PL-DU/PL
      'You (**pl**.) run!'

448) *ya-i*
      go.DU/PL-NFUT
      '**they** went'

There is some evidence that animacy also plays a role in the choice of a singular/group versus an individuated plural form. In the discussion about the following Bible verse, it was important to make sure that the verse is about people, not about sheep, and therefore the plural verb forms were important.

449) *ni̱=me wai sipsip s̱a̱   dege-i, f̱i̱   totôu   dege*
      2PL=TOP pig sheep likely do-NFUT soul forgetfulness do

      ***sulugua**-di   … ni̱ boho-l-ôu+ma   **ya**,   wai sipsip*
      walk.around.DU/PL-HAB … 2PL turn-IRR-NPST+put go.DU/PL.FUT pig sheep

      *dia   dala-di   Hiye O=kôu **folo-ga**   **dala-gua**-m̯ôu=be*
      watch.over be/have-HAB big man=LOC go.up-DU/PL.FUT be/have-DU/PL-PFV=TOP

      '... you (pl.) were like sheep, when you (**pl**.) kept **walking around** in forgetfulness ... you (**pl**.) turned around
      and **went** and **went up** to the Big Shepherd and (now) **staying** (there) ...'

4.1.6.3 Group plural

Non-singular suffixation on verbs is not obligatory to agree with a dual or plural subject. A singular form of the verb is used quite often in normal conversation. The emphasis then is on a pair or a group as a whole.

450) *a̱   **i-l-i**   ele   **i-l-i**   ei   **i-l-i***
      1s go-IRR-NFUT   1DU.EX   go-IRR-NFUT   1PL.EX   go-IRR-NFUT
      'I'm going'   'we two are going'   'we are going'[102]

In the following example, the speaker uses two singular forms of the verb 'be/have' in an introductory statement, but having set the background he switches to a plural form of the verb 'sit' when he starts on the plot of the story.

451) *Afu   afu=do   kôuguai   ke+di̱a̱ **dele-i**.   **Dala-l-i**,*
      earlier   earlier=INT ancestor that+3PL be/have-NFUT   be/have-IRR-NFUT

      t̯a   sabiye-i,   habi   dege-i-m̯ôu,   huei̱=bôu dibiye=bôu
      INDF be.morning-NFUT afternoon do-NFUT-PFV   water=and thunder=and

      hiye=do dege-i. Dibiye   hiye=do fu-fuo-u-m̯ôu,
      big=INT do-NFUT thunder big=INT RED.PL-break.open-NFUT-PFV

      *di̱a̱ baha **duwo-gua-l-i**   dugu=be*
      3PL look sit-**DU/PL**-IRR-NFUT   see.NFUT=TOP

      'A very long time ago, the ancestors **lived**. (**They**) **lived** until one day in (the) afternoon, there was a lot of rain
      and thunder. While the thunder kept crashing, **they sat** (there) waiting **until** (they) saw …'

4.1.6.4 Plural object

A non-singular object is only occasionally marked in a verb, but there are several ways to do it. On certain verbs it is marked one way and on other verbs it is marked another way. On most verbs it is not marked at all.

Plural object forms
Typical verbs are:

			Singular object	
igi-se	'remove'	(remove-DU/PL)	*igi-l-e mu-gu*	(remove-IRR-FUT#go.down-OF)
hebe-se	'throw away'	(carry-DU/PL)	*hebe-l-e fiḻa̱*	(carry-IRR-FUT#throw)

---

[102] The corresponding individuated plural/non-singular looks like this: *ele/ei **yo-l-u*** (1DU/1PL go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT) 'we (two) are going'.

452) *bi*   **hebe-se-i**   *ka*   *sulugua-l-i*   *dugu-o-môu*
    thing carry-DU/PL-NFUT look.for walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see-FUT-PFV

'... we walked around to look for (the) things (we had) thrown (aside) until having found/seen (them) ...'

Absolutive marking with *-ga* (see 3.1.1.1 FIRST ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES)

Typical verbs are weakly transitive verbs:

*dege-**ga***	'do many things'	(do-DU/PL)
*sese-**ga***	'follow everywhere'	(follow-DU/PL)
*ṯawa-**ga***	'know many things'	(know-du/pl)

453) *igi*   *dosogôu* *dege-i=bôu* *fo*   *dege-i=bôu+de* **naḻa-ga-i**   *... ke*
    stone black   do-NFUT=and white do-NFUT=and+PROV write-DU/PL-NFUT *...* that

'a stone that is **marbled**'

(Compare:

*folo-**ga**-i*   'they went up'   (go.up-DU/PL-NFUT))

Serial verb construction with *ma* 'put'

V[TRANS]**+put** (see 5.1.3.8 ENHANCED TRANSITIVITY: PLURAL OBJECT)

Typical verbs are transitive to very transitive verbs:

môu+ma	(get+put)	'get many things'
ṯôu+ma	(hold+put)	'hold many things'
wôu+ma	(accompany+put)	'accompany/look after/rule many things'
sa+ma	(put.inside+put)	'put inside many things'
wo+ma	(attack+put)	'attack many things'

There is also a telic aspect to this serial verb construction.

454) *Ele*   *ye,*   *howili+dio,*   *kalase,*   *awaki=bôu+de* **ṯôu+ma** *iga-i.*
    1DU.EX stringbag fishing+bone diving.glas knife=and+PROV hold+put go.DU/PL-NFUT

'The two of us (each one) **grabbed** (a) stringbag(s), (a) diving spear(s), fishing glasses and (a) knife/(knives) (**many things**) **and** went.'

Compare:

455) *ṯa*   *ṯiga-ma*   **ṯo-l-ôu**   *fele-i.*
    bow tie-ISQ hold-IRR-NPST go.up-NFUT

'... after tying my bow (I) **held** (**it**) and went up.'

Reduplication of verbal form

RED.PL-V[TRANS]**(-*e*)** (reduplication of verbs = iterative aspect; also refers to the plurality of action necessary to deal with non-singular objects; the *-e* only occurs on verb stems ending in a high vowel (types 1 and 5)

Typical verbs where this occurs are:

he-hegi-e	'teach'	*ṯi-ṯia*	'going in and out of consciousness'
do-dogogu-e	'put many things'	*fu-fua*	'recurring load noises/explosions'

456) *Jona*   *e*   *i-l-e,*   *o*   *sasai*   *ke+dia=mokôu*
    Jonah 3S go-IRR-FUT man woman that+3PL=LOC

Godi=ha   *ṯa*   **he-hegi-e-i**
God=GEN   talk   RED.PL-show-RED.PL-NFUT

'... Jonah went and **taught** the people God's Word ...'

4.1.7 Object focus

There is no wide-spread formal marking in Konai to distinguish between intransitive and transitive verbs (but see 4.1.6.2 talking about different ways of marking number in the verb; these different operations are in some way dependent on transitivity). You can talk about intransitive versus transitive but that is a semantic rather than a grammatical distinction. In fact, as will be seen when describing the clause, it is even hard to make a case for intransitive versus transitive clauses.

Instead, it is possible to focus in on an object connected with a certain verb. The marking of this focus is by the verbal suffix *-gV*, where V may be *i*, *u* or *ôu*. This vowel seems to be arbitrary and does not follow rules of vowel harmony, but some verb roots may under the influence of this suffix change according to these rules (465), (466).

Objects may then be focused or unfocused. Compare (457) with (458), (459) with (460) and (461) with (462). In (457), (459) and (461) there is no focus or it is on the action as a whole. In some cases you have a choice as in (461), (462) between the unmarked case in (461) and the highly marked construction in (462). In the other pairs of examples there is no choice. Certain combinations of verbs and objects require the object to be either focused or unfocused.

457) *dio ka*
   grass cut
   'cut grass'

458) *widio towe ka-gi*
   head hair cut-OF
   'cut hair'

459) *bi sa*
   things put.inside
   'put things into something'

460) *Na kuguo Bimin=kôu sa-gi-l-e*
   2s paper Bimin=LOC put.inside-OF-IRR-FUT
   'You will send a letter to Bimin.' (implied: put inside (a mailbag to go on an airplane))

461) *yo sogo*
   banana plant
   'plant bananas'

462) *yo bolou=nôu=do=fei sogo-gu*
   banana two=only=INT=total plant-OF
   '(he) planted a total of only two banana (plants)'

463) *A sôu.*
   road open
   'Open the door!'

464) *hebeni a sôu-gôu-môu ... dugu.*
   heaven road open-OF-PFV ... see.NFUT
   '… (they) saw (the) door to heaven open ...'

The above examples all have traditional transitive verbs. The following verbs are traditional intransitive verbs. Still they are marked for focus in the same way as the above examples, but here the suffix really has a traditionally transitivising effect.

465) *tefe-gi*   (basic form: *tafala* 'stand')
   stand-OF
   'put someone in a standing position'

466) *biye-gi*   (basic form: *biyo* 'sit up/down')
   sit.up/down-OF
   'put someone in a sitting position'

467) *Na dou fe-gu.*   (basic form: *fe* 'burn')
   2s fire burn-OF
   'Make a fire.' (Foothill dialect)

4.1.7.1 A continuum of transitivity

There are certain verbs that appear to have the object focus suffix permanently attached, e.g. *dogogu* 'put' and *bagagi* 'tie'. There are other verbs that do not, even though they would seem to have an equal potential for a focused object, nor do they seem to be able to take a focus marker, e.g. *ma* 'put', *ka* 'look for'. Is there a continuum of verbs in regard to object focus, a continuum of perceived transitivity? At one end we have verbs that are not object oriented at all and cannot have a focused object (intransitive), in the middle we have verbs that can either have it or not have it, and at the other end we have verbs that have to have a focused object. These are of two kinds: Those that have become lexicalised in their object focused form and those that are inherently object focused (transitive) and therefore unmarked.

←low transitivity   high transitivity→
_____

intransitive	intransitive/transitive		enhanced transitivity		transitive		transitive	
i ‘go’	*tafala/tefegi*	‘stand/put to stand’	*sa(gi)*	‘put inside’	*dogogu*	‘put’	*ma*	‘put’
hagua ‘come’	*biyo/biyegi*	‘sit up/put to sit’	*ka(gi)*	‘cut’	*dogôugu*	‘help’	*ka*	‘look for’
	hagua(gi)	‘rise/raise’	*sogo(gu)*	‘plant’	*bagagi*	‘tie’		
	dou fe(gu)	‘burn/make fire’	*a sôu(gôu)*	‘open (a) door’				
			a tefe(gu)	‘shut (a) door’				
			du(gu)	‘hear/see’				
			sese(gu)	‘follow/hand over’				
			sese/sosogôu	‘follow/lead’				
			kefe(gu)	‘gather (for a purpose)’				

4.2 Nouns

Nouns constitute an open class of words that function as the head of nominal phrases. There is no gender marking, and there are no formal noun classes (but see 4.1.1.1.2 EXISTENTIAL STATE VERBS). Most nouns may be interpreted as singular, dual or plural, depending on context. A few have a non-singular form, either through reduplication or as a suppletive form. There are traces of inalienable possession marking on a few kinship nouns. Compound nouns occur. There are a number of abstract nouns. Derivation from other word classes does not occur, but certain verb forms may be used as nouns. The traditional numerical system is based on nouns denoting body parts (see 4.4.2.1 TRADITIONAL ORDINAL NUMBERS).

A noun **may** take case markers and other nominal enclitics, but that will be described under the nominal phrase, as that is the level it is functioning on (see 3.6.1 ENCLITICS FUNCTIONING AT PHRASE LEVEL and 5.2.3.2 CASE).

468) *a   mota=ye   mala   hagu-l-u-gi*
      1S motor.canoe=INS get.IRR.FUT come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

      ‘... I travelled coming **by motor canoe** until ...’

469) *Ma   aye=ha   ôu   ta   ha-i.*
      1S.POSS father=GEN sago INDF cut-NFUT

      ‘My **father** cut down a sago (palm).’

This section is partitioned as follows: 4.2.1 PLURAL NOUNS, 4.2.2 TRACES OF INALIENABLE POSSESSION, 4.2.3 ABSTRACT NOUNS and 4.2.4 NOMINALISATION.

4.2.1 Plural nouns

Plural is not an inflection on the noun, nor is it an obligatory category. It is mostly used to talk about a specific group of something, usually people. For certain nouns it may be expressed as reduplication of the whole noun. For some, only part of the noun is reduplicated. For human nouns, plural is often expressed by a pluralising word, *olôufei* ‘all’ or *kedia* ‘those’ following the noun. The word *dihi* ‘child’ has a suppletive form for plural, *sisigo* ‘children’, where the plural form is mostly used for groups. Plural may also be indicated on the verb or in a serial verbal phrase (see 4.1.6.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL).

470) *Na o ka   i,   sa   sa   olôufei.*
      2S man look.for go   land land all.total

      ‘Go and look for people **everywhere**.’

471) *Sa   kuo=kôu=be su-suwa   ta   dala   mei=do.*
      land here=LOC=TOP RED.PL-thing INDF be/have NEG=INT

      ‘This place really does not have anything/**a lot** of anything.’

472) *O   olôufei   moso=kôu i-di.*
      man all.total house=LOC go-HAB

      ‘**Everybody** habitually went to (their) houses.’

473) *Sasai ke+dia   yukuei gofo-l-ôu   i-l-i.*
      woman that+3PL cloth sew-IRR-NPST go-IRR-NFUT

      ‘**The women** are sewing.’

474) *sisigo*   *dihi*
      children   child

      ‘children’   ‘child’

475) *sokôulôu* **sisigo**
     school   children
     'school **children**'

476) *Hiye dege-môu, e̲ sas<u>a</u>i hu-l-o,   **dihi su=do** mo̲-u̲.*
     big do.FUT-PFV 3S woman marry-IRR-FUT child many=INT get-NFUT
     'Having grown up, he married and had **many children**.'

4.2.2 Traces of inalienable possession

There is no difference between alienable and inalienable possession except a historic trace in a couple of kinship words. Compare the personal pronouns above the example.

	a̲ '1s'			*e̲* '3s'		
477)	**a-diôu**	**ma̲**	**a-diôu**	**e-diôu**	**e̲**	**a-diôu**[103]
	1s-mother	1s.POSS	1s-mother	3s-mother	3s	1s-mother
	'(**my**) mother'	'**my** mother'		'**his/her** mother'	'**his/her** mother'	

The word *adiôu* is often used for anybody's mother, though you may also hear *ediôu* 'his/her mother', or if the possessor is expressed as a noun, the root form may be used.

478) *Nancy=ha̲ **diôu***
     Nancy=GEN mother
     'Nancy's **mother**'

The word *mogo* is actually the common word for 'friend', though *nogo* 'your friend' and *yogo* 'his/her friend' are not unusual. The prefixes are probably the first part of the emphatic pronouns. The form *yogo* 'his/her friend' is used in expressions of reciprocity.

	mayôu '1S.EMP'	*nôu* '2S.EMP'	*yôu* '3S.EMP'
479)	**m-ogo**	**n-ogo**	**y-ogo**
	1s.EMP-friend	2s.EMP-friend	3s.EMP-friend
	'(**my**) friend'	'**your** friend'	'**his/her** friend'

480) *Di   diyôu-sie   **y-ogo**=kôu   solôu=do dege-i-ba   solôu=do*
     1PL.IN 1PL.IN.EMP-REFL 3s.EMP-friend=LOC heart=INT do-NFUT-PFV.IRR heart=INT

     dege-i-ba   de-me.
     do-NFUT-PFV.IRR PROV-HORT
     'Let's love each **other**.'

4.2.3 Abstract nouns

There are a number of abstract nouns. They are different from adjectives in that they usually do not occur on their own in the adjectival slot following the head noun in the nominal phrase but require a pro-verb. Compare examples (481) and (482). Neither are they adverbs. Compare examples (483) and (484). Nor are they verbs as they cannot take verbal affixation.

481) *o **bolo**=f<u>e</u>i*   **adjective**
     man good=total
     'a **good** man'

482) *o **hoho̲** dege-i*   **noun**
     man light do-NFUT
     'a **happy** man'

483) *Yesu=ha̲ di̲a̲=mokôu **toto**   tobo-u*   **adverb**
     Jesus=GEN 3PL=LOC   quickly say-NFUT
     'Jesus **quickly** said to them, …'

484) *Godi=ha **hoho̲** dege tobo-u.*   **noun**
     God=GEN light do   say-NFUT
     'God **joyfully** said … '

---

[103] Nasalisation on the pronominal forms *a̲* '1s' and *e̲* '3s' is lost when used in this way.

485) *A̱ do   dege-l-i.*   **noun**
      1s sickness   do-IRR-NFUT
      'I am getting sick/(a) **sickness**.'
      'I hurt/do (a) **pain**.'

486) *A̱ dabai dege-l-i.*   **noun**
      1s work   do-IRR-NFUT
      'I am working/doing **work**.'

Some of the abstract nouns are:

dabai	'work'	*ho*	'desire'
do	'sickness'	*hoho̱*	'light, joy'
gue̱	'fear'	*totôu*	'forgetfulness'
hegie	'hunger'	*huli̱a(me)*	'darkness'[104]
kulio	'coldness'		

4.2.4 Nominalisation

A verb or an object+verb may function as the head of a nominal phrase. There is no nominalising suffix as such, but a verb, or object+verb, may be used as a noun. I have called this zero formation, when talking about morphological processes.

The nominalised verb may be in its basic form, but usually it is not. The most common form is the realis non-future form used for 'made' or 'produced' items. An item may also be viewed as not yet used, such as food, when an irrealis future form of the verb is used (489).

487) *di̱o̱+ka*
      grass+cut
      'grass knife'

488) *Kope fafa-i=kôu   duwo.*
      cup   cut.flat.surface-NFUT=LOC sit
      'The cup is on the **table**.'

489) *... a-li=be   hagi̱   hiye=do na-l-e   kô̱u-di,*
      ... road-E.LOCR=TOP   heavy big=INT   eat-IRR-FUT carry.on.head-HAB

      sege-i   kô̱u-di,   bi+ma̱-i   kô̱u-di,
      plant-NFUT carry.on.head-HAB thing+put-NFUT carry.on.head-HAB
      '... on the road (it is) very hard to habitually carry **food**, habitually carry **garden produce**, habitually carry **packed possessions** ...'

Also, there is a locative nominaliser that derives a noun out of a minimal clause or a common noun:

-mi 'place'

tie-i-mi	(sleep-NFUT-place)	'place of sleep/dream'
wida-i-mi=kôu	(bury-NFUT-place=LOC)	'in the grave'
dabai dege-i-mi=kôu	(work#do-NFUT-place=LOC)	'at the place of working'
to̱ a̱i-mi=kôu	(river#deep-place=LOC)	'in the depth of the river'
diou-mi+du	(canoe-place+inside)	'inside the canoe'

490) *Sasa̱i e̱ ôu ko   sa+ma̱   ôu ga-i-mi=kôu   i-l-i.*
      woman 3s sago flakes put.inside+put sago gather-NFUT-place=LOC go-IRR-NFUT
      '(The) woman puts (the) sago flakes inside (a container) and is going to (the) **sago (powder) gathering place**.'

4.3 Pronouns

There are five sets of pronouns: personal, possessive, emphatic, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns. The first three sets are related in form. In addition, there is one vocative pronoun. There is no gender distinction in the pronominal forms.

---

[104] It is unsure what *...me* in this word is. I have glossed it in this grammar as 'topic marker', but the allomorph *=me* is actually only used for nasal **pronouns**; in addition it may occur followed by what really is the topic marker (981).

There are three suffixes that may function together with pronouns: *-sie* 'reflexive', *-sofei* 'self alone' and *-bukôu* 'first' See 3.1.2.5 SUFFIXES GIVING ADDITIONAL MEANINGS TO PRONOUNS.

Pronouns may take some nominal enclitics, but the functions of these are in the nominal phrase. See 5.2.2.1.2.

4.3.1 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns constitute a closed class of words that function as heads of nominal phrases, substituting for nominal phrases with nouns as heads. The pronouns consist of a pronominal root.

A third person pronoun may be used to refer to a non-human entity and even an inanimate entity. An animate generic entity may be referred to with a singular or plural personal pronoun. An inanimate generic entity is usually referred to by a third person singular pronoun (495)-(497).

Personal pronouns may be used to trace participant in the Konai language. (see 8.7.3.8 FREE PRONOUNS).

Personal pronouns

Person	Singular	Dual	Plural
1 exclusive	*a*	*ele*	*ei*
1 inclusive		*da*	*di*
2	*na*	*nele*	*ni*
3	*e*	*dilie*	*dia*

491) **A**=**me** mei.
     1S=TOP NEG
     'I (have) none.'

492) Ne   adiôu   **a**=**mokôu** ne-i.
     2S.POSS mother 1S=LOC   give-NFUT
     'Your mother gave (it) **to me**.'

493) **dilie** ôu   ha-i.
     3DU sago cut-NFUT
     '**the two of them** cut down (a) sago (palm).'

494) Sasai   **e** ôu   ga-i.
     woman 3S sago gather-NFUT
     '(The) woman **she** gathered sago.'

495) Moso **e** gofôu   mei.
     house 3S hard/strong NEG
     '(The) house **it** (is) not strong ...'

496) Kôu=me sio   miye.   **Dia**=me su=do   sulugua-di   ...
     this=TOP bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP many=INT walk.around.DU/PL-HAB ...

     Sio   miye   **e** na-di=be
     bird Victoria.pigeon 3S eat-HAB=TOP
     'These are Victoria pigeons. **They** walk around in flocks. ... (A) Victoria pigeon, **he/she** eats ...'

497) Gali   **dia**=me mala dugu-o gue   hiye=do. Yo=be mala **e**=me
     wild.animal 3PL=TOP arrow see-FUT fear   big=INT base=TOP arrow 3S=TOP

     dedei hiye=do.
     strong big=INT
     'Wild animals **they** see (an) arrow and are very afraid. The reason is (the) arrow **it** is very strong.'

4.3.2 Possessive pronouns

For most persons the personal pronoun set is also used to show possession. A few forms are different, which are shown in bold.

Possessive pronouns

Person	Singular	Dual	Plural
1 exclusive	**m<u>a</u>**	ele	ei
1 inclusive		da	di
2	**n<u>e</u>**	nele	n<u>i</u>
3	<u>e</u>	dilie	di<u>a</u>/**die**

    As can be seen the first and second person singular possessive forms are different from the personal pronouns. Third person plural possessive has two forms in free variation, the first being the same as the personal pronoun form.

498) *<u>A</u> m<u>a</u>   mos<u>o</u>=kôu i-l-i.*
    1s 1s.POSS house=LOC go-IRR-NFUT

    'I'm going to **my** house.'

499) ***N<u>e</u>***   *fene,   Des. 21 ke-le-ge   hagu-ba=be*
    2S.POSS airplane Dec. 21 that-A.LOC-VBR come.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP

    'When/if **your** flight comes on December 21, …'

500) *O   t̯a   <u>e</u> sas<u>a</u>i dilie wai dia   dele-i.*
    man INDF 3s woman 3DU pig watch.over be/have-NFUT

    'A certain man and **his** wife raised pig(s).'

501) *duôu   aye   ke+di<u>a</u>   **die**   sisig<u>o</u>   wôu+m<u>a</u>   dala-gua-gi*
    mother   father that+3PL 3PL.POSS children   accompany+put be/have-DU/PL-DSQ

    dugu=be
    see.NFUT=TOP

    '… the parents brought **their** children and stayed until (they) saw …'

    The following suffixes function with the possessive pronouns: *-sof<u>e</u>i* 'self alone' and *-bukôu* 'first' [105] (see 3.1.2.5).

4.3.3 Emphatic pronouns

The emphatic pronouns are based on the personal pronouns, except first person singular which is based on the possessive pronoun *m<u>a</u>* 'my'. All emphatic pronouns end in *ôu*.

Emphatic pronouns

Person	Singular	Dual	Plural
1 exclusive	**may<u>ô</u>u**	olôu	eiyôu
1 inclusive		dôu	diyôu
2	n<u>ô</u>u	nolôu	n<u>i</u>ôu
3	y<u>ô</u>u	dilôu	di<u>ô</u>u

    These pronominal forms may occur by themselves, but they often occur with the reflexive suffix *-sie*, making the pronoun reflexive.

502) ***eiyôu***   *du-l-o   i-l-i=be,   o   kôu=me sa   sa   o   sas<u>a</u>i*
    1PL.EX.EMP hear-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT=TOP man this=TOP land land man woman

    di   mamo-l-<u>ô</u>u   o=d=ade   t̯awa-l-e   i-l-i   kah<u>a</u>.
    1PL.IN buy.back-IRR-NPST   man=INT=SQV know-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT that=GEN

    '…because **we ourselves** (**excl.**) hear and know for sure (that) this man is the man, (who) will buy us people of (the) world back.'

---

[105] The second person singular form has been given as **n<u>a</u>**-*bukôu* '**you** are first', not **n<u>e</u>*-*bukôu*.

503) *Ka-ge-i=ye*   *ta*   *dia* *tobo-l-ôu*   *i-l-i=be*   *di*   ***diyôu***   *di*
      how-VBR-NFUT=INS talk   3PL   say-IRR-NPST go-IRR-NFUT=TOP 1PL.IN   1PL.IN.EMP   1PL.IN

      ta=e=nôu   *tobo-l-ôu*   *i-môu*   *du-l-o*   *i=ya?*
      talk=INS=only   say-IRR-NPST   go.NFUT-PFV   hear-IRR-FUT   go=SUBJ

      'How come (that) we hear them speak each one of **our own** (**incl.**) languages?'

504) *O*   *sasai* *ke+dia*   *die*   *midiho* *kasagai* *milôu-di*   *ke*   ***diôu*-*sie***
      man   woman   that+3PL 3PL.POSS face   bad   work-HAB   that   3PL.EMP-REFL

      solôu=do   *dege-l-e*   *i.*
      heart=INT   do-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT

      'The people were sorry **for themselves** for their habitually bad behaviour.'

505) *Dia* *fi+ma-i*   ***diôu*-*sie***   *dia* *dege-l-i*   *ke*   *kasagai=d=ade*
      3PL   soul+put-NFUT 3PL.EMP-REFL 3PL   do-IRR-NFUT that   bad=INT=SQV

      tawa-l-e   *i.*
      know-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT

      'They knew for sure **about themselves** (that) what they were doing must be bad.'

506) ***yôu*-*sie***   *e*   *duo*   *mako-di*
      3S.EMP-REFL   3S   spirit destroy-HAB

      '(he) keeps destroying **his own** soul'

4.3.3.1 Reciprocal use of emphatic pronouns

Plural emphatic pronouns are used to express reciprocity. This construction also involves repetition of the verbal phrase, as well as the third person relational noun *yogo* 'friend' and the proverb *de*.

507) *Di*   ***diyôu*-*sie***   *y-ogo=kôu*   *solôu=do*   *dege-ba*
      1PL.IN 1PL.IN.EMP-REFL   3S.EMP-friend=LOC heart=INT   do.FUT-PFV.IRR

      dogôugu-ba   ***dogôugu-ba***   ***de*-*me*.**
      help.NFUT-PFV.IRR   help.NFUT-PFV.IRR   PROV-HORT

      'Having loved **each other**, let us help each other.'

508) *ni*   ... ***niôu*-*sie***   *y-ogo=kôu*   *midiho* *bolo=nôu*   *milôu-ba*   *milôu-ba*
      2PL ... 2PL.EMP-REFL   3S.EMP-friend=LOC face   good=only   work-PFV.IRR   work-PFV.IRR

      ***de*-*ma*.**
      PROV-DU/PL

      '... you ... do good to **each other**.'

4.3.4 Demonstrative pronouns

There are two basic demonstrative pronouns:

      kôu   'this'

      ke   'that'

They are used widely. There is also a whole series of topographical demonstrative pronouns, seldom used in isolation. See 4.8.2 for details and examples of both kinds.

4.3.5 Indefinite pronouns

An indefinite pronoun refers to non-referential entities. There are two pronominal-like forms and a few other forms that are used as indefinite pronouns. Examples of the two pronominal forms will be shown below.

o = be (often subject)	'people in general'	(man=TOP)	variant: *o = ye* (man=INS); rejected by some, as a homophone with *oye* 'male'; but compare (510) with (511)
o = mokôu (non-subject)	'people in general'	(man=LOC)	the word for *man* with the <u>pronominal</u> form of the locative enclitic (see 3.6.1.1 CASE MARKERS).

(o) koyo	'whoever'	((man) who)	see 4.7 QUESTION WORDS
(o) ta ... mei	'no one'	((man) INDF ... NEG)	see 4.4.2.4 THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE
ka-ge	'whatever/however'	(how-VBR)	see 4.7 QUESTION WORDS

509) *Aso̱ e̱=me bolo=fe̱i=do   o=be   t̪aga-l-e   i-di.*
     sun 3S=TOP good=total=INT man=TOP like-IRR-FUT go-HAB
     'The sun is good; **people** like it.'

510) *Na-l-e̱=be   o=be   milôu-môu, na-l-e̱   kuhe t̪amạ dege-di.*
     eat-IRR-FUT=TOP man=TOP work-PFV   eat-IRR-FUT so   appear do-HAB
     'Concerning food, **people** are producing (it), (and) so food always comes up/appears.'

511) *sio   miye   ... Dia̱=me o=ye   t̪aha-l-i̱,*
     bird Victoria.pigeon ... 3PL=TOP man=INS shoot-IRR-NFUT

     mala   gobo-l-ôu+mạ   fogôu   i-di.
     arrow break-IRR-NPST+put leave.for go-HAB
     '... Victoria pigeons ... When they are shot at **by man**, (they) break off (the) arrow and leaving (they) go.'

512) *Wai e̱=me bolo=fe̱i=do.   O=be   mogo=do.*
     pig 3S=TOP good=total=INT man=TOP friend=INT
     'The pig (generic) is good. It is a friend **of people**.'

513) *Fele̱-ga-l-i   mei, dia̱ o=mokôu yodu*
     come.up-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT NEG 3PL man=LOC   ask.NFUT
     'Before they arrived, they asked **people**, ...'

4.3.6 A vocative pronoun

There is one pronominal form that in Konai is unique of its kind. It is used when addressing several people.

mogo di̱a̱ma, ... '(my) friend**s**, ...'   (friend 3PL.VOC)

mogo, ...   '(my) friend, ...'   (friend)

This pronoun *di̱a̱ + mạ* may consist of the following parts: 3PL+1S.POSS, with the nasalisation lost on the last part.

4.4 Adjectives

Adjectives are an open class of words functioning as modifiers in the nominal phrase, but also as the head of the modifier phrase in the verbal and in the descriptive clause. This class of words does not correspond exactly with the English word class of adjectives, as this Konai word class, apart from modifying nouns also modifies verbs and other adjectives (see 5.3 THE MODIFIER PHRASE.)

I have chosen to call this class of words adjectives, rather than the more general term 'modifiers' to distinguish them from a class of adverbs described in 4.5.1 MODIFYING ADVERBS.

The adjectives are not conjugated but may take nominal enclitics, but that will be described under the heading of the nominal phrase (see 5.2.2). Quantifying words are part of the adjective class and so are cardinal numbers. Ordinals, however, are nouns, actually names of body parts, but will be described under this main heading.

Adjectives may be verbalised by using the pro-verb *dege* 'do'. In a medial verb construction, with this pro-verb in its basic form, it acquires an adverbial meaning.

There are no grammatical forms to use for comparison of adjectives but see 7.3.3.6 COMPARISON.

Here are some common adjectives:

bolo̱	'good'	*olôufe̱i*	'all'	
do̱u	'straight'	*su̱*	'many'	
ebele	'new'	*ta*	'indefinite article'	
gehe̱	'new/green'			
gofôu	'hard/strong/angry'	*ta=nôu=fe̱i*	'one'	(INDF=only=total)
hiye	'big'	*bolo̱u*	'two'	
huyadefe̱i	'small'	*kama+dia*	'three'	(middle.finger+3PL)
kasaga̱i	'bad'	*bolo̱u#bolo̱u*	'four'	(two#two)
sasa	'tall'	*hou-yosi*	'five'	(thumb-NUMR)
to̱u	'short'	*yeto̱u-yosi*	'ten'	(shoulder-NUMR)

514)   *moso̱ **hiye***
       house big

       '(a) **big** house/(the) house (is) **big**'

515)   *Ke̱=me   **hiye**.*
       that=TOP big

       'That (one) is **big**.'

516)   *dihi   **huyadefe̱i***
       child small.total

       '(a) **small** child'

517)   *midiho̱ **kasaga̱i***
       face   bad

       'a sin'

518)   *Midiho̱ kôu=me   **do̱u**   mei.*
       face   this=TOP straight NEG

       'This (kind of) behaviour is not **right**.'

519)   *Wai kôu=me   **gofôu**   hiye=do.*
       pig this=TOP hard/strong big=INT

       'This pig is very **angry**.'

Many adjectives hardly ever occur as a single root. Some almost always occur with the intensifier *=do* attached. Others almost always occurs with the enclitic *=fe̱i* 'total'. The words *huyadefe̱i* 'small' and *olôufe̱i* 'all' always occur with this enclitic.

*hiye=**do***	'very big'	*bolo=**fe̱i***	'very good'
*do̱u=**do***	'very straight'	*huyadefe̱i*	'little'
*su̱=**do***	'very many'	*olôufe̱i*	'all'

520)   *ta̱   **do̱u=do***
       talk straight=INT

       '**right** talk/(the) talk (is/was) **correct**'

521)   *o   **olôufe̱i***
       man all.total

       '**all** men/people'

Verbalised adjectives

Adjectives may be verbalised by using the pro-verb *dege* 'do'. They are then conjugated as an experiential state verb (see 4.1.1.1 EVENT VERBS AND STATE VERBS)

522)   *di̱a dihi   ke̱   fofo-l-ôu   dala-l-i,   **hiye dege-i**.*
       3PL child that raise-IRR-NPST   be/have-IRR-NFUT big do-NFUT

       Hiye dege-môu, e̱ sasa̱i hu-l-o
       big do.FUT-PFV 3S woman marry-IRR-FUT

       '… they raised the child until (he) **was grown up**. **Having grown up**, he married and …'

523) *hiye dege-l-i*
      big do-IRR-NFUT

      '**is growing**'

Verbalised adjectives with an adverbial function

524) *n̠a bolo̠ dege dala*
      2s good do be/have

      '… you are **well** …'

525) *fi̠ hiye=do mo̠-u̠-ba=be,   n̠a de sasa=do   dege ʈofo-l-o̠û?*
      soul big=INT put-NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s good long/tall=INT do step-IRR-NPST

      '… if you think a lot …, will you (then) live a long life/live "**longly**"/?'

4.4.1 Compounded adjectives and numerical adjectives

A few adjectives are compounded words.

526) *afu + ko̠û*
      earlier+prior

      'old'

527) *bogo + ko̠û*
      white.rock+prior

      'having white hair'

Numerical adjectives are derived from body part words. They are derived by adding the numeraliser suffix *-yosi*.

528) *fula hou-yosi*
      week thumb-NUMR

      'five weeks'

4.4.2 Numerical systems

There are three partly competing numerical systems: traditional ordinal numbers (1-15), traditional cardinal numbers ((1), 2, (3), 4, 6) and modern numbers.

4.4.2.1 Traditional ordinal numbers

The traditional numerical system is based on body parts. It translates into ordinal numbers. As such, it is used to name the months of the year and the days of the week, especially in the Mountain dialect.

sasafe̠i	'little finger'	'first'	'January'	'Monday'
sasama	'ring finger'	'second'	'February'	'Tuesday'
koma̠	'middle finger'	'third'	'March'	'Wednesday'
doso̠û	'index finger'	'fourth'	'April'	'Thursday'
hou	'thumb'	'fifth'	'May'	'Friday'
wala̠i	'wrist'	'sixth'	'June'	'Saturday'
dio	'bone/lower arm'	'seventh'	'July'	'Sunday'
dima	'elbow'	'eighth'	'August'	
dese	'upper arm'	'ninth'	'September'	
yeʈo̠u	'shoulder'	'tenth'	'October'	
kehe̠[106]	'ear'	'eleventh'	'November'	
diho̠	'eye'	'twelfth'	'December'	
muku̠o	'nose	'thirteenth'		
mogou	'mouth'	'fourteenth'		
dobogo̠û ʈa hand#INDF	'the other hand'	'≥fifteenth'		

---

[106] *du* 'ear', 'hear' in the Mountain dialect

These numbers may be used for counting, but not as cardinal numbers but as ordinals: "first, second, third, …". The body part numerals are used without any affixes or clitics, pointing to each body part. For naming the month of the year, a strategy widely used within the language group, the generic & specific formula is often used (see 5.2.1 THE NOUN GROUP).

529)   *oguo* **hou**
        moon thumb
        'May'

Using body parts for the days of the week is more common in the Mountain dialect than in the Lowland dialect, where the English words are widely used. In the Mountain dialect, body parts, used as days of the week, are marked by the instrumental case marker =*ye*/=*e*.

530)   **Sasaf<u>ei</u>**=**ye**=*ge*   (Mountain dialect)
        little.finger=INS=F.CNTR
        'On Monday,...'

531)   **Monday   ka**=**h<u>a</u>**=*ge*   (Lowland dialect)
        Monday   that=GEN=F.CNTR
        'On Monday …'

532)   *gusubu*=*do*   **dio**=**e**   (Mountain dialect)
        morning=INT bone/lower.arm=INS
        'early **Sunday** morning'

533)   *gusugu*=*do*   **Sunday**   (Lowland dialect)
        morning=INT Sunday
        'early **Sunday** morning'

A body part number, with an ordinal meaning, sometimes precedes the noun it modifies.

534)   *2005*=*h<u>a</u>*   **sasaf<u>ei</u>**   *oguo* *ka*=*h<u>a</u>*
        2005=GEN little.finger   moon that=GEN
        'In **January** of 2005 …'

A body part numeral may be used as a cardinal number, modifying a noun, giving the number of a group. Used in that way, it takes the numeralising suffix -*yosi* and is most often followed by the demonstrative verb *kege* 'be like that'.

535)   *so*   *dihi*   **dio-yosi**   **ke-ge**
        dog   child   bone/lower.arm-NUMR   that-VBR
        '**seven** puppies'

536)   *Sawisie-i*   **wal<u>ai</u>-yosi**   **ke-ge**   *mei dege-i-môu*
        be.day-NFUT   wrist-NUMR   that-VBR   NEG   do-NFUT-PFV
        '**Six** days having gone by …'

A few of the body part numbers may also be followed by the pronoun *di<u>a</u>* '3PL'.

537)   *Yesu*=*h<u>a</u>*   *o*   **dosôu**+**di<u>a</u>**   **ke-ge**   *haguiso-u-môu,*
        Jesus=GEN man index.finger+3PL that-VBR call-NFUT-PFV

        di<u>a</u>   <u>e</u>   sese-l-e   ya-i
        3PL 3s follow-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT
        '… When Jesus called **four** men, they immediately followed him'

… and as a last example of ordinal body part numbers from a song:

538)   **Sasaf<u>ei</u>**   *Aye*   *Godi,* **sasama**   *Yesu*   *Kelesu,*
        little.finger father God   ring.finger Jesus Christ

        kom<u>a</u>   *Fi*   *Gof<u>ôu</u>,*   *di<u>a</u>*   *dabai   ta*=*nôu.*
        middle.finger soul   hard/strong 3PL   work   INDF=only
        'The **first** (is) God the Father, the **second** (is) Jesus Christ, the **third** (is) the Holy Spirit' (and) their work is the same.

However, in ordinary conversation/text, the following is a more natural way to express order of priority:

539)   *O*   **<u>e</u>-bukôu**   *kôu-g(u)e*   *tobo-u*   ... *O*   **ta**=**h<u>a</u>**=**ne**   *tobo-u*
        man 3s-first this-VBR(BLTV) say-NFUT ... man INDF=GEN=also say-NFUT
        'The **first** man said like this ... The second/**Another** man said …'

4.4.2.2 Traditional cardinal numbers

The traditional cardinal number system is based on two.

bol<u>ou</u>	'two'	'two'
bol<u>ou</u> bol<u>ou</u>	'two#two'	'four'
bol<u>ou</u> bol<u>ou</u>, bol<u>ou</u> de	'two#two##two PROV'	'six'

These numbers may be followed by *kege* 'being like that'.

540) *Wai **bol<u>ou</u>** hebe ha-i-mi=kôu debe n<u>a</u> i-l-i.*
pig two tree cut-NFUT-place=LOC seedling eat go-IRR-NFUT
'**Two** pigs are going to the garden to eat seedlings.'

541) *<u>A</u> m<u>a</u> sio ayomôu **ol<u>ô</u>uf<u>ei</u>=be** **bol<u>ou</u> bol<u>ou</u> ke-ge.***
1s 1s.POSS bird fowl all.total=TOP two two that-VBR
'I (had/have) **four** hens.'

542) *<u>E</u> sok<u>ô</u>ul<u>ô</u>u duwo-l-i, sadebe **bol<u>ou</u> bol<u>ou</u>, bol<u>ou</u> de** mei dege-môu,*
3s school sit-IRR-NFUTyear two two two PROV NEG do-PFV

ŧewe hiye=do mo-l-<u>ô</u>u wini dege-i.
know big=INT get-IRR-NPST win do-NFUT
'He having been in school until **six** years were gone, (he) got a lot of knowledge and passed his exams.'

To this system may be added:

ŧa=nôu	(INDF=only)	'one'
kom<u>a</u>+di<u>a</u>	(middle.finger+3PL)[107]	'three'

543) *Yo **kama+dia** ke-ge ŧafala-gua. Yo **bol<u>ou</u>=be kôu***
banana middle.finger+3PL that-VBR stand-DU/PL banana two=TOP prior

*mu-gu duwo. K<u>e</u>=nôu=si yo **ŧa=nôu** ŧa=be mu-gu-l-i*
go.down-OF sit that=only=CNTR banana INDF=only INDF=TOP go.down-OF-IRR-NFUT

mei, you.
NEG not.yet
'**Three** banana trees stand (here). **Two** banana trees already have (fruit) hanging down. But **one** of them has no (fruit) hanging down yet.'

4.4.2.3 Modern numbers

The modern set of numbers may start out with five cardinal numbers from the two other numeral sets, e.g.:

ŧanôu	'INDF.only'	'one'
bol<u>ou</u>	'two'	'two'
kamadia	'middle.finger.3PL'	'three'
bol<u>ou</u> bol<u>ou</u>	'two two'	'four'
houyosi	'thumb.NMBR'	'five'

For numbers over five, English is often used. As cardinal numbers in Konai are often followed by the demonstrative verb *kege* 'be like that', so are the English numerals. Examples (541) above, (544) and (545) are typical in a sentence telling how many of something, including the word *ol<u>ô</u>uf<u>ei</u>(=be)* 'all' as a prelude.

544) *Sas<u>ai</u> dihi ka=h<u>a</u> <u>e</u> sadebe **ol<u>ô</u>uf<u>ei</u>=be** **12 kege.*** (Lowland dialect)
woman child that=GEN 3s year all.total=TOP 12 that-VBR
'The girl was **twelve** years old.'

545) *duo kasag<u>ai</u> **ol<u>ô</u>uf<u>ei</u>=be** **7 ke-ge** igi-se-i* (Lowland dialect)
spirit bad all.total=TOP 7 that-VBR remove-DU/PL-NFUT
'(he) drove out **seven** evil spirits'

---

[107] The compound word is *kamadia*; vowel harmony has been applied and the nasalisation is lost.

546) *Ulou+di=kôu*   *ama*   *tafala-gi,*[108]
      cave+area.beside.door=LOC be.alert   stand-DSQ

      tibo   **19 ke-ge**   *we-i.*
      flying.dog 19 that-VBR   attack-NFUT

      '(I) stood quietly alert in (the) entrance to (the) cave until (I) killed **19** flying foxes.'

In the Mountain dialect, body part numbers prevail.

547) *E̱ hiya̱ goguei=do **du**   de-i.*   (Mountain dialect)
      3S year all=INT   (h)ear PROV-NFUT

      'She was **eleven** years old.'

4.4.2.4 The indefinite article

The word used as an indefinite article in Konai is the basic form for 'one' *ta*. In this grammar this numeral is glossed INDF 'indefinite', as that is its most common function, though in many contexts it may be translated 'one'. It has two functions:

- it is an indefinite article functioning much as its English counterpart 'a/an' (548), (549), (550); as such it may be used for referential unknown or not named referents (551), (552), (553)

- it is obligatory in certain negative clauses, giving the meaning of '(not) any' (554), (555) (see 7.3.5 NEGATIVE AND OTHER SCOPES IN A SENTENCE)

548) *Edolo dihi **ta** Kula=kôu sokôulôu i.   E̱ hu̱=be   Mak*
      Edolo child INDF Kula=LOC school   go.NFUT 3S name=TOP Mark

      '**A** child from Edolo went to school in Kula. His name (is) Mark.'

549) *Mogo,   a̱=me hagi̱ hiye=do **ta**   dala.*
      friend   1S=TOP heavy big=INT INDF be/have

      'Friend, I have **a** very big problem.'

550) *Ta̱   **ta=be**   tisa=be   2003 kalada   mei, na̱ **ta**   dala-ba=be,*
      talk   INDF=TOP   teacher=TOP 2003 calendar NEG 2S INDF   be/have-PFV.IRR=TOP

      ne̱=ye,   a̱=mokôu.
      give=OPT   1S=LOC

      '**Another** thing/talk is that the teachers do not have calendars; if you have **any** you may give me (one).'

551) *O **ta=ha̱**   Godi=ha̱ ta̱   tobo-l-ôu.*
      man INDF=GEN God=GEN talk say-IRR-NPST

      'Some**one** will speak God's Word.'

552) *O **ta=ha̱** Tabubil=kôu e̱ mogo   dala-ba   i-ba=si,   e̱*
      man INDF=GEN Tabubil=LOC 3S friend be/have-PFV.IRR go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR 3S

      mogo=ha̱   moso̱=kôu tia-l-e
      friend=GEN house=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT

      'But if some**one** having (a) friend in Tabubil goes (there), (he) will sleep in his friend's house and ...'

553) *O **ta=e**   hagi̱ a̱=mokôu hague-i dala*
      man INDF=INS   heavy 1S=LOC   come-NFUT be/have

      'Some**one** has come (and) given me problems ...'

554) *Moso̱ kôu̱=me o **ta**   tia-di=ya   mei, moso̱ e̱-sofe̱i   duwo.*
      house this=TOP man INDF   sleep-HAB=SUBJ   NEG house 3S-self.alone sit

      '(In) this house no**one** is habitually sleeping; it stands/sits by itself.'

555) *2005=ha̱ sasafe̱i   oguo=ha̱ a̱ i-l-e.   Sawisie-i   a̱ **ta** tobo-l-ôu   mei.*
      2005=GEN little.finger moon=GEN 1S go-IRR-FUT be.day-NFUT 1S INDF say-IRR-NPST NEG

      'In January of 2005, I will go. (**Which**) day I (can)**not** say.'

---

[108] Foothill dialect.

But some negative clauses do not have the indefinite marker, as the perspective is different.

556) *Toto   taha-l-e̲   sagai̲   mei.*
      quickly shoot-IRR-FUT likely NEG

      'You are not likely to shoot (one) quickly.' (about cassowaries)

4.5 Adverbs

Adverbs, with the exception of a certain type of locative adverbs constitute a seemingly closed class of words, mostly functioning in the modifier phrase. Based partly on what suffixes they take and partly on meaning, adverbs are of three kinds: modifying, locative and temporal. (See also 5.3 THE MODIFIER PHRASE.)

4.5.1 Modifying adverbs

Modifying adverbs usually express aspectual and modal ideas. They are adverbs, rather than adjectives, because they do not occur within the nominal phrase. Some examples follow:

haba	'but/again/instead' (but.PFV.IRR)
hobôu	'can' (always in a negative clause)
ise	'finally/and so/presto'
kôu	'prior'
kuhe	'so/then/at last' (does not join clauses or anything else, i.e. it is not a conjunction)
toto	quickly'
you	'not yet'

Two adverbs frequently occur within the verbal phrase.

mei	'not'
sagai̲/sa̲	'likely'

557) **Haba**   *dege.*
      but.PFV.IRR   do

      'Do it **again**.'

558) *Na̲* **hobôu** *gue̲*   *dege-da.*
      2s can   fear   do-PROH

      'Don't be afraid/You **can**not be afraid.'

559) *Hiye=do   tafala-l-i,   sawisie-i   ta   ke-le-ge*   **ise**   *fene*
      big=INT   stand-IRR-NFUT be.day-NFUT   INDF that-A.LOCR-VBR   finally   airplane

      hiye=do ka=ha̲   hagua-môu, **ise**   *sa+ma̲*   *hagua,   Selbang=kôu*
      big=INT that=GEN come-PFV   finally put.inside+put come.FUT Selbang=LOC

      duwo de-ma, **ise**   *hagua̲-ma hagua,   Biangabip=kôu duwo de-ma,*
      sit PROV-ISQ finally rise-ISQ   come.FUT Biangabip=LOC sit   PROV-ISQ

      Kala̲i   o   su̲=do   sa+ma,   **ise**   *Dahamo=kôu* **kuhe** *hague-i.*
      Konai man many=INT put.inside+put finally Dahamo=LOC   so   come-NFUT

      '(I) stayed there for a long time until one day that very big plane **finally** having come, **and so** (I and my cargo were) put inside, and (I) came and after being (down) in Selbang, **finally** after taking off (I) came and after being (down) in Biangabip, a lot of Konai people (were) put inside, and **so finally** (I) came to Dahamo.'

560) *Yo   bolo̲u=be* **kôu**   *mu-gu*   *duwo.*
      banana two=TOP   prior go.down-OF.NFUT sit

      'The fruit on two banana (trees) have **already** come down.'

561) *Ke=nôu=si   e kôu   sokôulôu bologua duwe-i=ye,   sadebe e   haba*
    that=only=CNTR   3S prior   school   good.dosit-NFUT=OPT year   3S but.PFV.IRR

    bolou ke-ge   mei¹⁰⁹ dege-l-i   mei.¹¹⁰
    two   that-VBR   NEG do-IRR-NFUT   NEG

    'But he might have done/sat OK in school **earlier**, but (the) year he did again two (times), he did not finish.'

562) *na ma   sele kôu mala,   ne   sa   Ukarumpa=kôu*
    2S 1S.POSS   money prior get.IRR.FUT 2S.POSS land Ukarumpa=LOC

    fai mala   hagua-ma dala-ba,   a i-l-e   mo-l-ôu.
    file get.IRR.FUT come-ISQ be/have-PFV.IRR 1S go-IRR-FUT get-IRR-NPST

    '... you will **first** get my money and at your place Ukarumpa (you) will get (a) file and after coming (back, it) being (there with you), I will go and get (it).'

563) *Dou tôu-ma,   ôu=bôu dia=bôu   dusuwe=bôu+de si+ma-môu   no-l-u-gi,*
    fire light-ISQ sago=and crayfish=and turtle=and+PROV   cook+put-PFV eat-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

    sa   hulia   dege-i-môu, hulia.me   hagu-l-u-gi,   moso=kôu kuhe fele-i.
    land darkness do-NFUT-PFV, darkness.TOP come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   house=LOC so   come.up-NFUT

    'After lighting the fire (and) having cooked the sago, the crayfish and the turtle, (he) ate until it was dark, when (he) immediately came on (towards home) in the night until he **at last** arrived at the house.'

564) *Defei=do   fi+ma-i   gofôu=do   ka=ha=nôu*
    careful=INT soul+put-NFUT hard/strong=INT that=GEN=only

    kuhe *i-ba=si   bolo=fei.*
    so   go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR good=total

    'But having a sharp mind and **so** going it would be OK.'

565) *A ... sio kisi-ma   duwo-l-i   dugu=be,   e   ta=nôu ta*
    1S ... bird make.a.wall-ISQ sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP megapod.bird INDF=only INDF

    fe-l-i-môu   dugu.   Ise   ke-ge-môu   a kuhe taha-i.
    come.up-IRR-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT finally that-VBR-PFV 1S so   shoot-NFUT

    'I ... after making a bird hunting shelter sat (there) until (I) saw one of the megapod birds come up. **Finally** (it) having become like that, and **so** I shot (it).'

566) *Hebe ebele ha-i   yo   you   fo-u-l-u*
    tree new   cut-NFUT banana not.yet come.up-BLTV-IRR-NFUT

    mosôu=yo   mei.
    bear.fruit=INDC   NEG

    'The bananas in the new garden are not bearing fruit **yet**.'

567) *Ke=nôu=si   yo   ta=nôu   mu-gu-l-i   mei, you.*
    that=only=CNTR banana INDF=only go.down-OF-IRR-NFUT NEG   not.yet

    'But one of the banana (trees) does not have any (fruit) hanging down **yet**.'

568) *Ma   abogou toto=nôu   te-i.*
    1S.POSS foot   quickly=only remove-NFUT

    'I **quickly** removed my foot.'

The adverb **mei** 'negative' is different in that, if it occurs with a verb, it follows it and is more closely tied to it than most other adverbs, and so it is analysed as being part of the verbal phrase.

569) *Dia Godiha ta   du-di=yo   mei.*
    3PL God=GEN talk hear-HAB=INDC   NEG

    'They habitually **do not** hear the Word of God.'

570) *E ta   du-l-i   mei.*
    3S talk hear-IRR-NFUT NEG

    'He **did not** hear (what was) said.'

---

¹⁰⁹ *mei dege* (NEG do) 'finish' is a verbalised negative (see 4.1.1.2 PRO-VERBS: *dege* 'do').

¹¹⁰ The adverb *mei* 'negative' will be focused on later in this section.

571) *Sele*   **mei**   *degei.*   **Mei.**
      money NEG   do-NFUT   NEG

      'The money is **finished**. All **gone**!'

572) *O*   **mei.**
      man NEG

      '(There are) **no** people (here).'

The adverb **sagai** 'likely' is different in that it always occurs following an irrealis future/non-past verb. It is also analysed as part of the verbal phrase. The meaning of this adverb includes 'desire', 'likelihood' and 'likeness'. Expressing likeness to an object or a situation, it occurs as *sa dege* in the Lowland dialect, one of its meanings being 'be alike', and there is a wider choice in what it may follow (578).

573) *E̲*   *moso̲=ko̲u*   *i-l-e*   **sagai.**
      3S house=LOC   go-IRR-FUT likely

      'He **wants to** go home.'

574) *Ke̲=no̲u=si*   *dilie*   *dihi=no̲u,*   *gali*   *wo-l-o*   **sagai**   *mei.*
      that=only=CNTR 3DU   child=only   wild.animal attack-IRR-FUT likely   NEG

      'But they are only puppies and **not likely** to kill wild animals.'

With the help of the pro-verb *dege* 'do' the tense can be changed from future to non-future.

575) *E̲*   *na-l-e̲*   **sagai**   *dege-mo̲u*   *tila.*
      3S eat-IRR-FUT likely   do.FUT-PFV lie.down

      'He is lying (there) because (he) **wants to** eat.'

When *sagai* 'likely' is followed by the pro-verb *dege* 'do' it most often occurs as *sa* in the Lowland dialect.

576) *A̲=me*   *to-l-o*   *i-l-e*   **sa̲**   *dege-i.*
      1S=TOP die-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT likely   do-NFUT

      'I almost died./It seemed **likely** I would die.'

577) *Duwo*   **sa̲**   *dege-i.*
      sit   likely   do-NFUT

      'I **think** he is here.'

578) *ke̲*   **sa̲**   *dege-i*
      that likely   do-NFUT

      '**like** that'

4.5.2 Locative adverbs

There are two kinds of locative adverbs: those derived from locative roots & demonstrative pronouns and those derived from nominals. The last is an open class of locative adverbs.

4.5.2.1 Locative adverbs derived from locative roots & demonstrative pronouns

There is a series of locative adverbial roots from which topographical demonstrative pronouns may be derived. These may then be further suffixed to form whole series of locative adverbs. In this section only a short summary will be given, but see 4.8 DEICTIC WORDS, where more detailed descriptions are given under several different headings.

Locative roots
These locative roots are in themselves locative adverbs.

ko̲u	'anywhere'
mo̲u	'down below'
to̲u	'up (t)here'
bu	'upriver'
u	'downriver'
bo̲u	'across (t)here'
du	'inside'

579) *Ma̲*   *sa=be*   *to̲u* *i-l-e,*   *a̲* *du=be*
      1S.POSS land=TOP   up   go-IRR-FUT 1S hear.NFUT=TOP

      'I went **up** to my place and heard that …'

Whole sets of other adverbs may be derived from these, via a couple of demonstrativisers: *-ku* 'near demonstrativiser' and *-gu* 'distant demonstrativiser' (see 4.8.2.2). They will be described in 4.8.3 LOCATIVE ADVERBS, but here are a few examples:

580)   *E̲   sugu̲ = do   **tôu-gu-le** = ne   t̯ia-di = yo   mei.*
            3S   top=INT   up-DEMR.D-A.LOCR=also   sleep-HAB=INDC   NEG
            'He (a bird) does not sleep **up in the very** top (of trees) either.'

581)   *t̲o   hebe   **bu-gu-li***
            river   headwaters   upriver-DEMR.D-E.LOCR
            '**right up there** by the headwaters of the river'

582)   *miye̲   t̲a-le = ko̲u   **môu-gu-he̲**   su-l-u*
            fish   river-A.LOCR=LOC   down-DEMR.D-P.LOCR   walk.around-IRR-NFUT
            'a fish is swimming **down there** in the river (**pointing**)'

583)   *Dia = be   ...   hue̲i   **du-le**   môu   duwo-di.*
            crayfish=TOP...   water   inside-A.LOCR   down.below   sit-HAB
            'Crayfish ... live **down below** in the water'

584)   ***du-le + lu**[111]*
            inside-A.LOCR+inside
            'inside'

Demonstrative roots

Also from the demonstrative pronouns *ko̲u* 'this' and *ke̲* 'that', locative adverbs may be derived. These are similar to the sets derived from the locative adverbs briefly described above. A few examples will be shown here. For the full set see 4.8.3 LOCATIVE ADVERBS.

     ko̲u   'this'   *ko̲u-le*[112]   'here'   this-A.LOCR

     ke̲   'that'   *ke-le*   'there'   that-A.LOCR

585)   *E̲ = me   **ko̲u-le**   mei.*
            3S=TOP   this-A.LOCR   NEG
            'He is not **here**.'

Two other locative adverbs

There are two other locative adverbs that can be combined with some of the locative roots first mentioned in this section.

     t̯age[113]   'over'

     t̯age+tôu   over+up   'on top'

     haye+môu   under+down   'underneath'

     haye+lu/+du   under+inside   'underneath'

586)   *E̲   dobogo̲u   **t̯age**   t̯ige-i.*
            3S   hand   over   tie-NFUT
            'He has folded his arms (**one over** the other).'

587)   *sea   **t̯age+tôu**   duwo-l-i   nal̲a   i-l-i.*
            chair   over+up   sit-IRR-NFUT   eat.IRR.FUT   go-IRR-NFUT
            '… sitting **up on** chairs they are eating.'

588)   *bilika   **haye+du**   dogogu-di = yo   mei*
            saucepan   under+inside   put-HAB=INDC   NEG
            '... you do not usually put (it) **under** an (upside-down) saucepan ...'

---

[111] *+lu* rather than *+du* is a dialectal and/or personal variant, but the variant *+lu* never occurs word initially for phonological reasons (see 2.2 CONSONANTS: /l̲/).

[112] See 2.7.6 DE-NASALISATION BEFORE /g/, /l/ AND /k/ for spelling of these adverbs.

[113] The word *t̯age* may consist of the following morphemes: *t̯a = ge* INDF=F.CNTR, with the meaning '(one over) the other'.

4.5.2.2 Locative adverbs derived from nominals

Locative adverbs may also be derived from nouns, or rather, from nominal phrases. The following derivational suffixes may be used:

-le[114]	'approximate locativiser'	(see 3.1.2.1 DEICTIC SUFFIXES: Set III)
-li	'exact locativiser'	
-ba	'along'	

A few examples:

aso̱-le＝kôu	(sun-A.LOCR=LOC)	'in(to) the sun'
t̯a-le-kôu	(river-A.LOCR=LOC)	'in the river'
a-li-kôu	(road-E.LOCR=LOC)	'right on the road'
t̯o̱-ba	(river-along)	'along the river'

589)   *kansol*   **dihi̱-le**
        council   eye-A.LOCR

        '**in front of** the council'

590)   *ele*   *Sesenabi＝kôu i-ga-di*   *a*   **t̯o̱-ba**   *tu-ga-môu*
        1DU.EX   Sesenabi=LOC   go-DU/PL-HAB   road   river-along   go.upriver-DU/PL.FUT-PFV

        gobo-l-ôu
        break-IRR-NPST

        '… the two of us having gone upriver on the usual road to Sesenabi **along the river**, crossed (it) and …'

Also, the locative adverbial roots, described in 4.5.2.1, make compounded locative adverbs with a single noun or a nominal phrase.

bidi-le＋t̯ôu	(shore-A.LOCR+up)	'up on shore'
sugu̱+t̯ôu	(top+up)	'up in the top'
sugu̱+lul＋du[115]	(top+inside)	'in/at the top (and) inside'
moso̱＝kôu＋lu	(house=LOC+inside)	'inside the house'

591)   *hati*   **widi-le＋t̯ôu**   *mu-gu*
        hat   head-A.LOCR+up   go.down-OF

        'put (a) hat **on** (his) **head**'

592)   **dou＋lu＝kôu**
        fire-inside=LOC

        '**in** (the) **fire**'

593)   *Hebe*   **sugu̱＋lu**   *t̯ia-di-l-i*[116]
        tree   top+inside   sleep-HAB-IRR-NFUT

        'He habitually sleeps **in** (the) tree **top**s.'

594)   *gamani*   *o*   *ka＝ha̱*   **moso̱＝kôu＋lu**[117]   *folo-ga-i*
        government   man   that=GEN   house=LOC+inside   go.up-DU/PL-NFUT

        'they went up **inside** that government official's **house**'

---

[114] The suffixes *-le* and *-li* are the same as the approximate and exact locativisers, respectively, described in 3.1.2.1 DEICTIC SUFFIXES: Set II, but used with a noun, they have a few different characteristics:
     - the vowels in the noun, which it is suffixed to, may become fronted
     - if the noun is a nasal word, this suffix also becomes nasalised (this is not written as it is so predictable)

[115] Dialectal and personal variation.

[116] Foothill dialect.

[117] The following interpretation was rejected **moso̱＝kôu#lu* as /l/ can not occur word medially (see 2.2 CONSONANTS).

4.5.3 Temporal adverbs

Some temporal adverbs end with the suffix *-ba* 'perfective irrealis', one of the medial verb suffixes. In these adverbs they are a permanent part of the word, functioning as a temporal future marker. If you remove it, you usually end up with a nonsense word.

A few temporal adverbs (the three to the right) can take the enclitic *=do* 'intensifier' (596), where it emphasizes the basic meaning.

afu	'earlier'	*gusugu*	'morning'[118]
we	'day before yesterday/recently'	*agali*	'noon'
i	'yesterday'	*habi*	'late afternoon'
ibigi	'earlier today'		
ifi	'today'		
diaba	'later today'		
idiba	'tomorrow'		
ôudaba	'day after tomorrow'		
haba=ge	'later' (but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR)		

595) *A̲* **we**   *ôu*   *ha-i*   *ta*   *folo-môu*
      1s day.before.yesterday sago cut-NFUT INDF go.up-PFV

      '**Recently**, I having gone up to a (place where someone) had cut down a sago (palm) …'

596) *A̲=me* **idiba**   **gusugu=do** *i-l-e.*
      1s=TOP tomorrow.PFV.IRR morning=INT   go-IRR-FUT

      'As for me, I will go **early tomorrow morning**.'

4.6 Particles

Particles form a small open class of words functioning as one-word sentences in response to various verbal and non-verbal situations. They cannot take any affixes or clitics. They do not seem to occur much in storytelling, but quite often in response to real life situations. Some of them are:

ehe̲	'yes'	*ebei*	'how terrible!' (the word is related to *bei* 'snake')
hele	'yes!'	*imi*	'that's funny!'
e e [ʔɛʔæ]	'no'	*ai*	'that's funny'
yei	'that's totally wrong'	*yawo*	'bye-bye, wow!'
wa	'What did you say?'; 'false assumption'	*hasei*	'thank you'
aie	'ouch'		
wei	'ouch' (the word is probably *we-i* (attack-NFUT) 'attacked/killed'		

597) **Ehe̲**, *a̲* *kôu*   *du=ye,*
      yes 1s prior hear.NFUT=OPT

      '**Yes**, I heard but ...'

598) *Na̲* *idiba*   *i-l-e,*   **hele?**
      2s tomorrow go-IRR-FUT yes

      'You are going tomorrow, **aren't you?**' (positive answer expected)

---

[118] The words *gusugu* 'morning', *agali* 'noon', *habi* 'late afternoon', may be abstract nouns, as they are used as greetings with an adjective attached, as is *huli̲g* 'darkness', which **is** analysed as an abstract noun. However, it may only be a literal translation from English: *Gusugu bolo=fe̲i* 'Good morning.' (morning good=total).

599) *e̱   tobo-u,   e-e,   na̱   ke̱   tobo-l-ô̱u   ke̱=me   a̱   ta*
    1s   say-NFUT no 2s that say-IRR-NPST that=TOP 1s INDF

    tawa-i=yo   mei=yode   tobo-u.
    know-NFUT=INDC   NEG=IQV   say-NFUT

    '… he said, "**No,** that which you are saying I do not know anything (about)," (he) stated and said.'

600) *Yei,   Alex   mei.   E̱   hu̱=be   Aron.*
    that's.totally.wrong Alex NEG 3s name=TOP Aron

    '**Da!** - his name is not Alex. It's Aron.'

601) *dia̱=ge   wa,   die   godi   ke+dia̱   die   ta̱   ke̱*
    3PL=F.CNTR false.assumption 3PL.POSS god that+3PL 3PL.POSS talk that

    du-l-u=yade   tawa-l-e   i-di.
    hear-IRR-NFUT=SQV know-IRR-FUT go-HAB

    '... they think **mistakenly** that their gods hear their talk.'

602) *Sawisie-i   ke-le-ge=be,   ebei*
    be.day-NFUT that-A.LOCR-VBR=TOP   how.terrible

    'On that day, **how terrible,** …'

603) *Nataniel   e̱   kesi-gi-e-mô̱u   tobo-u,   imi,   sa   Nasaret o?*
    Nathanael 3s rouse-OF-FUT-PFV say-NFUT that's.funny land Nazareth man

    'Nathanael having got a surprise said, "**That's funny,** a Nazarene?"'

604) *Ai,   o   kô̱u=me Josep=ha̱ dihi=nô̱u.*
    that's.strange man this=TOP Joseph=GEN child=only

    '**That's strange,** this man is only the son of Joseph.'

605) *yawo   de   tobô̱u-ma fogô̱u   ...*
    goodbye PROV say-ISQ   leave.for ...

    '...so after he had said **good-by** (he) left ...'

4.7 Question words

Question words are a closed class of words used to ask content questions. There are six basic question words. Two of them have more than one form. They are a mixed group as can be seen from the fact that they take different kinds of endings. The reason seems to be that the question words usually occur in the place of the clause where the thing asked for would have occurred. The forms translating 'why' are medial verbs and occur as medial clauses in the sentence.

Two of the question words may also function as indefinite pro-forms in statements.[119]

koyo	'who'	
koyo=ha̱	'who, whose'	(who=GEN)
ke̱i	'what'	
kili̱+	'where+'	
kili̱+ya	'where'	(where+(TRSV)road)
kou	'where'	(in a verbless clause)
kobo-	'when-'	
koboge	'when'	(when.VBR)
ka-/+	**'how/why/how many-/+'**	
ka-ge		(how-VBR)
ka-ge-i		(how-VBR-NFUT)
ka-ge-l-e		(how-VBR-IRR-FUT)
ka-ge-mô̱u	**'why'**	(how-VBR.FUT-PFV)
ka+dege		(how+do)
ka+dege-mô̱u	**'why'**	(how+do.FUT-PFV)

---

[119] Only *koyo* 'who' and *ka-/+* 'how' have been found with that meaning.

Concerning the form *ka-* 'how/why/how many', the suffixes and the context will determine which English translation is most suitable. Only a few of its conjugations are shown above. In general, however, the forms taking the medial suffix *-môu* 'perfective' tend to translate 'why'. There is no difference in meaning between the use of the verbaliser *-ge* and the full proverb *dege* 'do' in verbalising the question word root *ka-/+* 'how'

Koyo 'who'

606) *Sas<u>ai</u> koyo?*
woman who
'**What/Which** woman?'

607) *N<u>e</u>   h<u>u</u>   koyo?*
2S.POSS name who
'**What** is your name?'

608) *K<u>ôu</u>=me koyo=h<u>a</u> mos<u>o</u>?*
this=TOP who=GEN   house
'**Whose** house is this?'

Koyo may be used as an indefinite pro-form meaning '**whoever**'.

609) *Wage tawa-l-e   t<u>a</u>   o   koyo=h<u>a</u> tobo-l-ôu.*
final know-IRR-FUT talk man who=GEN   say-IRR-NPST
'**Anyone** may present the final announcements.'

610) *Koyo=h<u>a</u> testimony   dala   fel<u>e</u>.*
who=GEN   testimony   be/have come.up
'**Whoever** has a testimony (must) come up.'

611) *o   koyo n<u>a</u>=me Godi=h<u>a</u> t<u>a</u>=be   olôuf<u>ei</u>   tewe hiye=do o   n<u>a</u>=me*
man who 2S=TOP God=GEN   talk=TOP all.total know big=INT man 2S=TOP

t<u>a</u>=bôu mei.
talk=and NEG
'... **whoever** you are, you who know all of God's Word very well, you would do OK
(in this work)'

K<u>ei</u> 'what'

612) *K<u>ôu</u>=me k<u>ei</u>?*
this=TOP what
'**What** is this?'

613) *Di<u>a</u> Sekalaiya=kôu   yodu,   n<u>a</u> dihi   h<u>u</u>=be   k<u>ei</u>=yode-l-e.*
3PL Zechariah=LOC   ask.NFUT 2S child   name=TOP what=IQV-IRR-FUT
'They asked Zechariah, "**What** will you say (your) child's name (will be)?"'

Kil<u>i</u>ya 'where'

614) *N<u>a</u> kil<u>i</u>+ya   i=ya?*
2S where+(TRSV)road go.NFUT=SUBJ
'**Where** are you going?'

Kou 'where' (verbless clause)

615) *M<u>ou</u>   kou?*
grandfather where
'**Where** is grandpa?'

Koboge 'when'

616) *N<u>a</u> koboge   boho-l-ôu+m<u>a</u>   hagua-l-e?*
2S when.VBR turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT
'**When** will you start to come back?'

***Ka*-/+** 'how/why/how many'

In many Papuan languages, the "why" question implies disapproval. That is not the case in Konai.[120]

617) <u>A</u>=me ɉo-l-o-ba　　　　**ka-ge-l-e?**
1s=TOP die-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR how-VBR-IRR-FUT
'**How** will I die?'

618) *N<u>a</u> **ka**+**dege** kabiyali hou　 sogo-di=ya?*
1s how+do tapioca seedling plant-HAB=SUBJ
'**How** do you plant tapioca?'

619) *N<u>e</u>　　　 sisig<u>o</u>　 ol<u>o</u>ûf<u>ei</u>　　 **ka**+**dege?***
2s.POSS children all.total how+do
'**How many** children do you have?'

620) *Midih<u>o</u> ka=h<u>a</u>　 hagua-l-e=be　 **ka-ge**　 hagua-l-e?*
face that=GEN come-IRR-FUT=TOP how-VBR come-IRR-FUT
'That which will happen **how** will it happen?'

621) *Fel<u>e</u>　　 hague-i　 **ka**+**dege-m<u>o</u>û?***
plane come-NFUT how+do.FUT-PFV
'**Why** did the plane come?' <u>or</u> '**Because of what** did the plane come?'

622) *Kevin=h<u>a</u>　 dihi　 do　　　 mal<u>a</u>　　　 i　 **ka-ge-i-ya?***
Kevin=GEN child sickness get.IRR.FUT go how-VBR-NFUT=SUBJ
'… Kevin's sick child who was taken out, **how** is (he)?'

623) *Sekalaya=h<u>a</u>　　 <u>e</u>sol　 Gebrul=k<u>o</u>û　 ɉobo-u,*
Zechariah=GEN angel Gabriel=LOC say-NFUT

***ka-ge-m<u>o</u>û**　　　　 <u>a</u>　 n<u>e</u>　　　 ɉ<u>a</u>　　 damal<u>e</u>=yode-l-e?*
how-VBR.FUT-PFV 1s 2s.POSS talk true=IQV-IRR-FUT
'Zechariah said to the angel Gabriel, "**How can/why should** I believe your word?"'

624) *n<u>a</u> dihi　 k<u>o</u>û=ma=h<u>a</u> h<u>u</u>=be　 **ka-ge**　 ɉi-l-e　　　 de　 yodu-l-o　 i-m<u>o</u>û*
2s child this=TOP=GEN name=TOP how-VBR call-IRR-FUT PROV ask-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV
'… when they asked, "Concerning the name of this child of yours, **what** will you call him?" …'

Ka-/+ may be used as an indefinite pro-form meaning **'however/whatever'**.

625) *Bi　　 **ka-ge-i,**　　　 di　　 <u>e</u>=mok<u>o</u>û yodu=be,　　 <u>e</u>　 di=mok<u>o</u>û ne-l<u>e</u>.*
thing how-VBR-NFUT 1PL.IN 3s=LOC ask.NFUT=TOP 3s 1PL.IN=LOC give-IRR-FUT
'**Whatever** we (incl.) ask of him, he will give to us.'

626) *Ke-ge-m<u>o</u>û,　 <u>a</u>　 **ka-ge-l-e**　　　 de　 ɉawa-i　　 fi+m<u>a</u>-i.*
that-VBR-PFV 1s how-VBR-IRR-FUT PROV know-NFUT soul+put-NFUT
'Then/So I thought about what I should know.'

627) *N<u>a</u> na-l-<u>e</u>　　　 o sele　 n<u>a</u> **ka-ge**=f<u>ei</u>　　 dege-i,*
2s eat-IRR-FUTor money 2s how-VBR=total do-NFUT

<u>a</u>=ne　　 n<u>a</u> ke-ge=f<u>ei</u>　　 dege-l-e.
1s=also 2s that-VBR=total do-IRR-FUT
'**The total of what** you will have spent in food or money, I, too, will spend like that (on you).'

---

[120] In the Ama language, the other Papuan language I am familiar with, the more common "why" question can hardly be used at all for anything but to express disapproval.

4.8 Deictic words

The deictic word class is not a uniform group, but comprises words from three more traditional word classes:

- pronouns: demonstrative
- adverbs: locative
- verbs: directional in space and time

What they have in common is that they ...

> … refer directly to the personal, temporal or locational characteristics of the situation within which an utterance takes place, …(the) meaning (of each) is thus relative to that situation; …
> The term is also used for words which refer backwards and forwards in discourse …
> (Crystal 1985:86).

Strictly speaking, there are more words and affixes that could be called deictic, like personal pronouns, temporal adverbs and tense suffixes, but, in Konai, they do not fit into the same system as the words that will be presented here do.

The deictic centre, from which any situation is described – conversations, directions or storytelling, is in Konai the speaker's perspective on the situation. The speaker is "here" and the listener is "there". The speaker "goes" to the listener, but the listener "comes" to the speaker. In that way, there are general words that are totally defined by the speaking situation, like *kôu* 'this' and *ke* 'that'. The same general deictics and its derivates are used to navigate in a discourse: e.g. *kôu* refers forward and *ke* refers backwards.

One group of words, with members from demonstrative pronouns, adverbs and verbs, has as their deictic centre only the speaker and/or the present utterance in a discourse. Another group of demonstrative pronouns, adverbs and verbs has the speaker **and** one other reference point, which is a geographical feature, e.g. a river.

- the speaker is the deictic centre
- a personal deictic centre + a geographical reference point

In describing the deictic words, I will start with the most basic forms, which are the locative adverbial roots (4.8.1), followed by demonstrative pronouns (4.8.2), locative adverbs (4.8.3), demonstrative verbs (4.8.4) and verbs of 'go' and 'come' (4.8.5).

4.8.1 Locative adverbial roots

The reason the locative adverbial roots head this group of deictic words, rather than the demonstrative pronouns, is that they are of a simpler form than their corresponding demonstrative pronouns. They are (repeated here from 4.5.2.1 LOCATIVE ADVERBS DERIVED FROM LOCATIVE ROOTS & DEMONSTRATIVE):

kôu	'anywhere'
môu	'down below'
tôu	'up (t)here'
bu	'upriver'
u	'downriver'
bôu	'across (t)here'
du	'inside'

These forms are words in their own right and can be used as such.

628) *Ma   sa=be   tôu i-l-e,   a   du=be*
     1s.POSS land=TOP up go-IRR-FUT 1s hear.NFUT=TOP
     'I went **up** to my place and I heard that …'

629) *E   moso=kôu folo-môu   dugu,   du   baha duwo-môu dugu-o-môu,*
     3s house=LOC go.up.FUT-PFV see.NFUT inside look sit-PFV   see-FUT-PFV

     ei   olôufei   ki-le   duwe-i.
     1PL.EX all.total inside-A.LOC sit-NFUT
     '(We two) having gone to his house saw him sit **inside** and wait and we all sat inside there.'

In addition these locative roots are used to form:

- demonstrative pronominal roots, e.g.   *môu-ku*- 'this down below'   down-DEMR.N   see 4.8.2.2
                                          môu-gu- 'that down below'   down-DEMR.D
- locative adverbs of different kinds, e.g.   *bu-gu-le* 'somewhere upriver' upriver-DEMR.D-A.LOCR   see 4.8.3

4.8.2 Demonstrative pronouns

There are two sets of demonstrative pronouns:

- *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* 'this' and *k$\underline{e}$* 'that'
- topographical demonstratives

4.8.2.1 The demonstrative pronouns *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* 'this' and *k$\underline{e}$* 'that'

The most common demonstrative pronouns are *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* 'this and *k$\underline{e}$* 'that'. Using these pronouns, **the speaker is the deictic centre**, or for discourse, the present utterance is.

k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$/kuo/ku[121]	'this'	near to speaker, cataphoric reference
k$\underline{e}$/ke/ka/ko	'that'	away from speaker, anaphoric reference

The demonstrative pronouns *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* 'this' and *k$\underline{e}$* 'that' may occur with the following enclitics and words:

k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$	'this'	(this)	*k$\underline{e}$*	'that'	(that)
k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ + di$\underline{a}$	'these'	(this+3PL)	*ke + di$\underline{a}$*	'those'	(that+3PL)
k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ + dilie	'these two'	(this+3DU)	*k$\underline{e}$ + dilie*	'those two'	(that+3DU)
k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ = me	'concerning this'	(this=TOP)	*k$\underline{e}$ = me*	'concerning that'	(that=TOP)
---			*ka = h$\underline{a}$*	'that control'	(that=GEN)
k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ = ma = h$\underline{a}$	'this one in control'	(this=TOP=GEN)	*ka = ma = h$\underline{a}$*	'that one in control'	(that=TOP=GEN)
kuo = k$\hat{o}u$	'here'	(this=LOC)	*ko = k$\hat{o}u$*	'there'	(that=LOC)
			k$\underline{e}$ = n$\hat{o}u$ = si	'but'	(that=only=CNTR)
			k$\underline{e}$ = n$\hat{o}u$ = f$\underline{e}i$	'that's all'	(that=only=total)
ku-h$\underline{e}$	'right here' (pointing)	(this-P.LOCR)	*ke-h$\underline{e}$*	'right there' (pointing)	(that-P.LOCR)
k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ = me-h$\underline{e}$[122]	'right here' (pointing)	(this=TOP-P.LOCR)	*k$\underline{e}$ = me-he*	'right there' (pointing)	(that=TOP-P.LOCR)

Other combinations of discourse enclitics may also occur. See for example (644): *ka = h$\underline{a}$ = si* (that=GEN=CNTR) below. The following examples will show some of the possibilities for *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* 'this' and *k$\underline{e}$* 'that' in context.

As a head in a NP: DEM=TOP/=LOC   (see 5.2.2.1.2)

630) ***K$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ = me* *k$\underline{e}i$?***
       this=TOP what
       'What **is this**?'

631) ***K$\underline{o}\hat{u}$ = me* *sio* *miye*.**
       this=TOP bird Victoria.pidgeon
       '**This is** a Victoria pigeon.' (showing a drawing)

632) *Godi = h$\underline{a}$* *haguisa-m$\hat{o}u$* *tobo-u*, ***k$\underline{e}$ = me*** *m$\underline{a}$* *dihi*.
       God=GEN   call.FUT-PFV   say-NFUT   that=TOP 1s.POSS child
       '… God having called said, "**That** is my child."' (God is in heaven)

633) *$\underline{e}$* *di$\underline{a}$ = mok$\hat{o}u$* *tobo-u*, *n$\underline{i}$ = me* ***kuo = k$\hat{o}u$*** *duwo-ma*.
       3s 3PL=LOC   say-NFUT   2PL=TOP this=LOC sit-DU/PL
       '… he said to them, "As for you, sit **here**."'

---

[121] Variants *kuo-* and *ku-* reflect the pronunciation of particular forms. For the variants of *k$\underline{e}$* 'that' see 2.7.2 MINOR VOWEL HARMONY and for both pronouns see 2.7.6 DE-NASALISATION BEFORE /g/, /l/ AND /k/. The spelling of nasalisation (underlining of the last vowel/diphthong **only** in a word) is in certain words not consistently applied, neither for the *k$\underline{e}$* words, nor for the *k$\underline{o}\hat{u}$* words.

[122] The suffix *-h$\underline{e}$* 'pointing locativiser' following a clitic may be an analytical somersault. However, I will leave it like this, as it has only been found in two words, this one and the corresponding one with *k$\underline{e}$* 'that'.

As a modifier in a NP, singular/group: [123] NG#... DEM(=TOP/=LOC/=GEN)   (5.2.2.1.1)

634) *Sa*   ***ke=me*** *Ukarumpa=be hiye mei=yode tobo-l-ôu   i-môu   du.*
     land that=TOP Ukarumpa=TOP big NEG=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT-PFV hear.NFUT
     '**That** place (Kainantu) is bigger than Ukarumpa, (I) heard them state and say.'

635) *O* *bolou* ***kôu=me*** *aso dugu-l-a-môu   dege-l-i.*
     man two this=TOP sun see-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT
     '**These** two men are trying to look at the sun' (showing a drawing)

636) *ta*   *yafei=do* ***kôu*** *kôu-g(u)e-i.*
     talk small=INT this this-VBR(BLTV)-NFUT
     '**This** very small talk (is) like this. ...'

637) *O*   *sasai*   *olôufei*   *dia* *dou=be* *hoho* *dege-di.*
     man   woman   all.total   3PL fire=TOP light do-HAB

     Yo=be *dou* ***ko=kôu*** *na-l-e*   *si-l-e*   *na-di* ***ka=ha****.*
     base=TOP fire that=LOC eat-IRR-FUT cook-IRR-FUT eat-HAB that=GEN
     'Everybody likes the fire. **Because on the** fire they cook (their) food.'

638) *o* ***ka=ha***   *dihi*
     man that=GEN   child
     'that man'**s** child' (possessive: 5.2.2.2)

As a modifier in a NP, non-singular individuated: NG#... DEM+PRON(=TOP/=LOC/=GEN)

639) *Dilie* *o*   ***ke+dia=mokôu*** *na-l-e*   *hiye=do* *ne-i.*
     3DU   man that+3PL=LOC eat-IRR-FUT big=INT give-NFUT
     'The two of them gave **those** people plenty to eat.'

As a modifier in a NP to express time: NG^TEMP#DEM(=TOP)=GEN   (5.2.3.2.1 ..: Genitive of time expressions)

640) *Fula* ***kôu=ma=ha*** *i-l-e.*
     week this=TOP=GEN go-IRR-FUT
     '(he) will go **this** week.'

641) *idiba...*   *Monday* ***ka=ha***   *hagua-l-e*
     tomorrow Monday that=GEN come-IRR-FUT
     '... tomorrow ... on "this"/**that** Monday (he) will start to come (back)'
     See also (644).

Participant reference, minor participant: NG#DEM((=TOP)=GEN)/(=LOC)   (8.7.6.1.2)

642) *o* ***ka(=ma)=ha***   *o* ***ke***   *o* ***ko=kôu***
     man that(=TOP)=GEN   man that   man that=LOC
     '**that** man' (minor agent in control) '**that** man' (object/patient/theme) '**to the** man'

Reason constructions: CLAUSE# DEM=GEN   (5.2.3.2.1 ... Genitive of reason)

643) *A solôu=do dege-i=be, ele=be   mogo=do **ka=ha** dege-môu*
     1s heart=INT do-NFUT=TOP 1DU.EX=TOP friend=INT that=GEN do-PFV
     'I was really sorry, **because** the two of us had been close friends …'
     See also (637).

Relative clauses: CLAUSE# DEM(=TOP/=GEN/=LOC)   (6.5.2)

644) *O* *Kiunga=kôu i*   ***ke=me*** *fula ta* ***ka=ha=si***   *hagua-l-e.*
     man Kiunga=LOC go.NFUT that=TOP week INDF that=GEN=CNTR come-IRR-FUT
     'Concerning the man, **who** went to Kiunga, (he) will come back **already next week**.'

---

[123] The contrast 'group' versus 'individuated non-singular' in verb forms was discussed under 4.1.6.3 and 4.1.6.2. As can be seen by comparing (635) with (639), this contrast may be seen in the use of demonstrative pronouns, too.

645) *o*   *ta*   *e*   *mogo*   *me̲i*   **ka**=**ha**   *i-ba*=*be*   *e̲*=*me̲*   *mo̲so̲*=*kôu*
      man   INDF   3S   friend   NEG   that=GEN   go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 3S=TOP   house=LOC

      tia-l-e   *mei.*
      sleep-IRR-FUT NEG

      '... if a man, **who** does not have a friend (there), goes, as for him (he) will not be sleeping
      in a house.'

As roots in locative adverbs and demonstrative verbs

The demonstrative pronouns *kôu̲* 'this' and *ke̲* 'that' are also the root forms of several locative adverbs and verbs.

- locative adverbs, e.g. **kôu**le 'here' see 4.8.3

- demonstrative verbs, e.g. **ke**ge 'be like that' see 4.8.4

4.8.2.2 Topographical demonstrative pronouns

Topographical demonstrative pronouns are those with **a personal deictic centre + a geographical reference point**; these are based on roots of locative adverbs, augmented by one of two demonstrativiser:

- -**ku** '**near** demonstrativiser'

- -**gu** '**distant** demonstrativiser'

These forms, without further suffixation or cliticisation, are not very common.

-		*kôu-gu*	'that somewhere'
môu-ku-	'this down below'	*môu-gu-*	'that down below'
tôu-ku-	'this up here'	*tôu-gu-*	'that up there'
bu-ku-	'this upriver'	*bu-gu-*	'that upriver'
u-ku-	'this downriver'	*u-gu-*	'that downriver'
bôu-ku-	'this across here'	*bôu-gu-*	'that across there'
du-ku-	'this inside here'	*du-gu-*	'that inside there'

The difference between -*ku*- and -*gu*, then, is distance: [124] -*ku* signals something relatively close-by, while -*gu* signals something further away. The difference is exemplified below:

646) *Tôu-**ku**=me   sio.*
      up-DEMR.N=TOP bird

      'This up **here** is a bird.'

647) *tôu-**gu**=me*
      up-DEMR.D=TOP

      'that **far** up **there**'

The demonstrative pronouns with a geographical reference point are the bases of many locative adverbs, e.g. *tôu-gu-li* (up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR) 'right up there'. See next section.

---

[124] It is possible that visibility is part of this distinction, but it does not seem to be the case in all instances.

4.8.3 Locative adverbs

The demonstrative pronouns form the basis for three sets of locative adverbs.

- **pointing** locative adverbs   marked by the suffix *-he*   'pointing locativiser'
- **exact** locative adverbs   marked by the suffix *-li*   'exact locativiser'
- **approximate** locative adverbs   marked by the suffix *-le*   'approximate locativiser'

Also, in two of the sets, vowel fronting is used for further specification (see last in this section).

DEMONSTRATIVE STEM DEM PRON		DEM-**P.LOCR** '(…) here/there' (pointing)	DEM-**E.LOCR** ' right (…) here/there'	DEM-**A.LOCR** 'somewhere (…) here/there'
kôu	'this'	*ku-he*	*kôu-li*	*kôu-le*
ke	'that'	*ke-he*	---	*ke-le*
---	'inside'	---	*ki-li*	*ki-le*
---	'this somewhere'	---	---	*(kôu-ku-le)*[125]
môu-ku[126]	'this down below'	*môu-ku-he*	*môu-ku-li*	*môu-ku-le*
tôu-ku	'this up here'	*tôu-ku-he*	*tôu-ku-li*	*tôu-ku-le*
bu-ku	'this upriver'	*bu-ku-he*	*bu-ku-li*	*bu-ku-le*
u-ku	'this downriver'	*u-ku-he*	*u-ku-li*	*u-ku-le*
bôu-ku	'this across here'	*bôu-ku-he*	*bôu-ku-li*	*bôu-ku-le*
du-ku	'this inside'	*du-ku-he*	*du-ku-li*	*du-ku-le*
kôu-gu[127]	'that somewhere'	---	*kôu-gu-li*	*kôu-gu-le*
môu-gu	'that down below'	*môu-gu-he*	*môu-gu-li*	*môu-gu-le*
tôu-gu	'that up there'	*tôu-gu-he*	*tôu-gu-li*	*tôu-gu-le*
bu-gu	'that upriver'	*bu-gu-he*	*bu-gu-li*	*bu-gu-le*
u-gu	'that downriver'	*u-gu-he*	*u-gu-li*	*u-gu-le*
bôu-gu	'that across there'	*bôu-gu-he*	*bôu-gu-li*	*bôu-gu-le*
du-gu	'that inside'	*du-gu-he*	*du-gu-li*	*du-gu-le*

648) *A ku-he.*
1s this-P.LOCR
'I am **here** (e.g. **pointing** to a photo).'

649) *Na kôu-le   ma-l-e.*
2s this-A.LOCR put-IRR-FUT
'You will put it **somewhere here**.'

650) *ke-he = fei*
that-P.LOCR=total
'that's all' (Mountain dialect)

651) *Kôu-gu-le   fou.*
somewhere-DEMR.D-A.LOCR run
'Get clear!/Get **out of my sight**.' (said to a dog that someone stumbled over)

652) *to   ilo   kôu-gu-li   dala*
river part somewhere-DEMR.D-E.LOCR be/have
'**somewhere right** on the other side of the river' (not very near)

---

[125] This form has not been observed, but the fronted version *ke-ke-le* somewhere-DEMR.D-A.LOCR 'somewhere where you are' (see towards the end of this section) is said to be grammatical.

[126] *-ku* 'near demonstrativiser'

[127] *-gu* 'distant demonstrativiser'

653) *miye̲ ta̲-le=kôu* **mô̲u-gu-le** *su-l-u*
fish river-A.LOCR=LOC down-DEMR.D-A.LOCR walk.around-IRR-NFUT
'a fish is swimming around in the river, **somewhere deep down there**'

654) *tô̲uguei* **mô̲u-gu-le** *dala*
rat down-DEMR.D-A.LOCR be/have
'the rat is **somewhere deep down there**'

655) *Yomogo-u=be, o ka=ha̲ asô̲u* **mô̲u-gu-li=do** **dege** *da+ma̲-mô̲u,*
start-NFUT=TOP man that=GEN ground down-DEMR.D-E.LOCR=INT do dig+put-PFV

mouti gofô̲u=do ke̲=nô̲u fo-fo-gue-i.
post hard/strong=INT that=only RED.PL-rise-DU/PL-NFUT
'To start with, the man having dug **deep right down there**, planted strong posts only …'

656) *miye̲ ta̲-le=kôu* **mô̲u-gu-he̲** *su-l-u*
fish river-A.LOCR=LOC down-DEMR.D-P.LOCR walk.around-IRR-NFUT
'a fish is swimming around **deep down there** in the river' (**pointing**)

657) *mô̲u-gu-he̲*
down-DEMR.D-P.LOCR
'deep down there' (**pointing**)

658) *mô̲u-ku-he̲*
down-DEMR.N-P.LOCR
'down here' (closer than last example; **pointing**)

659) *mô̲u-ku-li*
down-DEMR.N-E.LOCR
'right down this way'

660) *mô̲u-gu-li*
down-DEMR.D-E.LOCR
'right down there'/'very far down'

661) *sio hebe sugu̲+tô̲u* **tô̲u-gu-le** *duwo*
bird tree top+up up-DEMR.D-A.LOCR sit
'the bird is sitting **somewhere far up there** in the tree top'

662) *oguo agudi-le+tô̲u* **tô̲u-gu-li** *duwo*
moon sky-A.LOCR+up up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR sit
'the moon is **right up there** in the sky' (far away)

663) *sio hebe sugu̲+tô̲u* **tô̲u-gu-he̲** *duwo*
bird tree top+up up-DEMR.D-P.LOCR sit
'the bird is **far up there** in the tree top' (**pointing**)

664) *sosi moso̲* **bu-gu-le** *duwo*
church house upriver-DEMR.D-A.LOCR sit
'the church is **somewhere upriver**' (**a bit away**)

665) *ma̲ yukuei sosi moso̲=kôu* **bu-gu-le** *dala*
1s.POSS cloth church house=LOC upriver-DEMR.D-A.LOCR be/have
'my clothes are in the church **a bit upriver**'

666) *to̲ hebe* **bu-gu-li**
river headwaters upriver-DEMR.D-E.LOCR
' **right up there** close to the headwaters of the river' (**far away**)

667) *sosi moso̲* **bu-gu-he̲** *duwo*
church house upriver-DEMR.D-P.LOCR sit
'the church is **upriver there** (**pointing**)' (**a bit away**)

668) *Omei=ha̲ moso̲=kôu* **u-gu-le**
Omei=GEN house=LOC downriver-DEMR.D-A.LOCR
'In Omei's house **downriver**' (**a bit away**)

669)   *ma̠*   *moso̠*   *to̠*   *ilo*   **bôu-gu-li**   *duwo*
       1s.POSS house river part across-DEMR.D-E.LOCR sit

       'my house is **a bit away, across right there** on the other side of the river'

670)   *kuguo*   **du-gu-le**   *dala*   *ke̠*   *mala̠*   *hagua*
       paper inside-DEMR.D-A.LOCR be/have that get.IRR.FUT come

       'bring the book, which is **inside somewhere**' (**not very near**)

Vowel fronting to signal position of addressee

The exact and approximate locative adverb sets have forms that imply that the addressee is within the area referred to. The vowel in the locative adverbial root is thus fronted but keeps the approximate[128] height of the original vowel. This fronting spreads to the suffix *-ku* 'near demonstrativiser'. The suffix *-gu* 'far demonstrativiser' has not been observed in this context; this particular contrast seems to have been neutralised.

LOC-DEMR.N-A.LOCR   **LOC-DEMR.N-A.LOCR** + **fronting to signal position of addressee**

---		*ke-ke-le*	'somewhere where you are'
môu-ku-le	'down below'	*me-ke-le*	'down below where you are'
tôu-ku-le	'up here'	*te-ke-le*	'up there where you are'
bu-ku-le	'upriver'	*bi-ki-le*	'upriver where you are'
u-ku-le	'downriver'	*i-ki-le*	'downriver where you are'
bôu-ku-le	'across'	*be-ke-le*	'across where you are'
du-ku-le	'inside'	*di-ki-le*	'inside where you are'

LOC-DEMR.N-E.LOCR   **LOC-DEMR.N-E.LOCR** + **fronting to signal position of addressee**

môu-ku-li	'right down below'	*me-ke-li*	'right down below where you are'
tôu-ku-li	'right up here'	*te-ke-li*	'right up there where you are'
bu-ku-li	'right upriver'	*bi-ki-li*	'right upriver where you are'
u-ku-li	'right downriver'	*i-ki-li*	'right downriver where you are'
bôu-ku-li	'right across'	*be-ke-li*	'right across where you are'
du-ku-li	'right inside'	*di-ki-li*	'right inside where you are'

671)   *ma̠*   *bolo*   *to̠*   *ilo*   *be-ke-le*   *fogo-u*
       1s.POSS ball river part other.side-DEMR.N-A.LOCR leave.for-NFUT

       'I lost my ball on the other side of the river, **somewhere across where you are**'

672)   *ma̠*   *bolo*   *to̠*   *ilo*   *bôu-gu-le*   *fogo-u*
       1s.POSS ball river part other.side-DEMR.D-A.LOCR leave.for-NFUT

       'I lost my ball on the other side of the river, **somewhere across there**' (the addressee is **not** on the other side of the river)

673)   *kuguo*   *be-ke-le*
       paper other.side-DEMR.N-A.LOCR

       'the book is **across there, where you are**'

674)   *kuguo*   *bôu-gu-le*
       paper other.side-DEMR.D-A.LOCR

       'the book is **somewhere across there**' (the addressee is **not** there)

---

675)   *kuguo*   *di-ki-le*   *ka*
       paper inside-DEMR.N-A.LOCR look.for

       'look for the book **inside where you are**'

676)   *kuguo*   *du-gu-le*   *ka*
       paper inside-DEMR.D-A.LOCR look.for

       'look for the book **inside** (the addressee is **not** there)'

---

[128] As there is no front vowel corresponding to the close-mid vowel /o/, written ⟨ôu⟩, the fronted vowel comes out as /ɛ/, written as ⟨e⟩.

677) *miye   me-ke-le*
     fish   down-DEMR.N-A.LOCR

     'the fish is **somewhere down below where you are**'

678) *miye   me-ke-li*
     fish   down-DEMR.N-E.LOCR

     'the fish is **right down below where you are**'

4.8.4 Demonstrative verbs

Two demonstrative verbs are formed by adding the verbaliser *-ge* to the demonstrative pronouns *kôu* 'this' and *ke* 'that'. They may be conjugated like any other verbs. The demonstrative pronouns with a geographical reference point (topographical demonstrative pronouns) cannot be verbalised, but see next section for a list of verb roots meaning 'come' or 'go', most of them with a geographical reference point.

kôu	'this'	*kôu-g(u)e*	'be like this'	(this-VBR(BLTV))
ke	'that'	*ke-ge*	'be like that'	(that-VBR)

The simple locative adverbs *kôule* 'here' and *kele* 'there' may also be verbalised.

kôu-le	'this'	*kôu-le-ge*	'be like this here'	(this-A.LOCR-VBR)
ke-le	'there'	*ke-le-ge*	'be like that there'	(that-A.LOCR-VBR)

These two last forms are more common in the Mountain dialect than in the Lowland dialect, though the form *kelege* has one very specific function in the Lowland dialect, too, where it is used in temporal phrases.

The most common of the demonstrative verbs is *kege* 'be like that'. Here are a few of its conjugated forms:

kege-i	'is/was like that'	(that.VBR-NFUT)
kege-i=yo mei	'is not like that'	(that.VBR-NFUT=INDC#NEG)
kege-l-i mei	'was not like that'	(that.VBR-IRR-NFUT#NEG)
kege-l-i-gi	'is/was like that until …'	(that.VBR-IRR-NFUT-DSQ)
kege-l-e i	'they were like that'	(that.VBR-IRR-FUT#go)
kege-môu	'then/so'[129]	(that.VBR.FUT-PFV)
kege-ma-môu	'after (it) had become like that'	(that.VBR-ISQ-PFV)

The function of these demonstrative verbs is similar to some English adverbs and conjunctions. The form *kegemôu* 'then/so' may be used to demarcate paragraphs in narratives (see 8.2.1.3 MORE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRO-VERB LINKAGE).

Demonstrative verb		Major functions	Examples
kôugue	'be like this'	adverbial before speech/quote	(679), (680)
kege	'be/become like that/ then/so'	with *-môu* 'perfective' connects paragraphs in a story	(681)
		connects sentences	(682)
	-	adverbial, following cardinal numbers	(683)
kelege	'be like that there'	marks **temporal** (and locative) phrases	(685), (686)
	'at that time'	adverbial, setting the time	(684)

679) *A̱   na̱=mokôu **kôu-g(u)e**   tobo-l-ôu,   na̱ ma̱   sele   kôu   mala̱, …*
     1S 2S=LOC   this-VBR(BLTV)   say-IRR-NPST   2S 1S.POSS money prior   get …

     fai   mala̱   hagua-ma dala-ba,   a̱ i-l-e   mo-l-ôu.
     file   get.IRR.FUT come-ISQ be/have-PFV.IRR 1S go-IRR-FUT get-IRR-FUT

     'I am telling you **like this**, you will first get my money and … (you) will get (a) file and after coming (back, it) being (there with you), I will go and get (it).'

---

[129] Literally: 'having become like that'.

680) *Tawa-l-e*   *ṯạ=be*   **kôu-g(u)e,**   *ạ* *sisigọ=bôu*   *o+do=bôu*
      know-IRR-FUT talk=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) 1S children=and man+old/sickness=and

      olôufẹi=be   *15.*
      all.total=TOP   15

      'The message is **like this**: I have a total of 15 children and adults in school.'

681) *... fiye   sạ-ị   kẹ=me   ye   dihi   gomogu=bôu*
      ...   string twine-NFUT that=TOP stringbag child   knot=and

      migi-môu   dugu.
      come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

      Ke-ge-môu,   *diạ ye   dihi   kẹ   ṯu-l-o-môu   dugu=be,*
      that-VBR-PFV 3PL stringbag child that remove-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP

      dihi   ṯa   sa-l-a-môu   dugu.
      child   INDF   put.inside-IRR-SUBJ-PFV see.NFUT

      Ke-ge-môu,   *diạ dihi   kẹ   fo-fo-l-ôu   dala-l-i,*
      that-VBR-PFV   3PL child that RED.PL-run-IRR-NPST be/have-IRR-NFUT

      hiye dege-i. Hiye dege-môu, ẹ sasại hu-l-o,   dihi   sụ=do   mọ-ụ.
      big do-NFUT big do.FUT-PFV 3S woman marry-IRR-FUT child many=INT get-NFUT

      Ke-ge-môu,   *diạ ẹ hụ+ti=be   Dibiye   Hiyạdibi=yode-i.*
      that-VBR-PFV   3PL 3S name+call=TOP Thunder Hiyandibi=IQV-NFUT

      '… (they) saw a small stringbag tied to the rope coming down with it.
      Then, they, having removed the small stringbag, saw that a child must have been put inside.
      Then they raised that child until he was grown up. Having grown up, he married and got many children.
      So they called his clan Thunder Hiyandibi.'

682) *... **Ke-ge**=yodi-l-i.*

      ... that-VBR=IQV-IRR-NFUT

      '... He says **like that**.'

683) *fula   olôufẹi=be   **5 ke-ge**   dala   ka=hạ   dege-môu.*
      week   all.total=TOP 5 that-VBR be/have that=GEN do-PFV

      '… because there are still **5** weeks to go.'

684) **Ke-le-ge**=be   *...*
      that-A.LOCR-VBR=TOP

      '**At that time** ...'

685) *Nẹ fene,   Des. 21 **ke-le-ge**   hagu-ba=be,*
      2S airplane Dec. 21 that-A.LOCR-VBR come.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP

      'If your airplane comes **on** Dec. 21 ...'

686) *Ạ afu=do   huyadefẹi **ke-le-ge**   daga=do   gamani   o ke+diạ*
      1S earlier=INT small   that-A.LOCR-VBR different=INT government man that+3PL

      hụ sôu hagu-môu   dugu
      name call come.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT

      'A long time ago, **when** I was little, I saw men of a different government come to take
      a census ...'

4.8.5 Verbs of 'go' and 'come'

There are five pairs of verbs for 'go' and 'come' in Konai. One pair has the speaker as the deictic centre, and corresponds in function, though not in form, with the demonstrative pronominal pair *kôu* 'this' and *ke* 'that' and their derivates. The other pairs have a personal deictic centre as well as a geographical reference point, e.g. a river. They correspond somewhat in meaning, but not in form, to the locative adverbial roots, e.g. *u* 'downriver', and their derivates.

These verbs are:

go		**come**	
i/ya	'go away from speaker (sg./pl.)'	*hagua*	'come towards speaker'
mu	'go down/outside'	*migi*	'come down/outside'
folo	'go up/inside, arrive'	*fele*	'come up/inside, arrive'
dôu	'go downriver'	*deme*	'come downriver'
tu	'go upriver'	*timi*	'come upriver'

Note that the pairs 'go & come up/down' also means 'go & come inside/outside'. This is explained by the fact that houses are built on poles. To go inside you go up and to go outside you go down. This does not correspond with the locative roots, where there is a word for 'inside' *du*. There is a noun meaning 'outside' *tama*, which can be used together with the locative case marker *=kôu*.

The verb *folo* 'go up' especially, but also the verb *fele* 'come up' are frequently used for 'arrive' in storytelling.

687) *A,   testimony,   a   Kiunga=kôu i.   ...   gamani   dia o   ...ha   sele*
     1s   testimony   1s Kiunga=LOC   go.NFUT ...   government 3PL man ...=GEN money

     a   60 kina te-l-e   ne-i.   Ke-ge-môu,   a   mala   hague-i.
     1s   60 kina remove-IRR-FUT give-NFUT that-VBR-PFV 1s get.IRR.FUT come-NFUT

'I (have) a testimony, I **went** to Kiunga. … one of the government's official … removed K60 and gave me. So I took (it) and **started to come** (back).' (story told in the village)

688) *A sa   Dahamo tôufogôu fene+ya   hague-i.*
     1s land   Dahamo   leave   airplane+road come-NFUT

     Sa   Ukarumpa=kôu migi.
     land   Ukarumpa=LOC   come.down.NFUT

'I left Dahamo **coming** by airplane. (I) **came down** at Ukarumpa.' (story told at Ukarumpa)

689) *Sa+ma-môu,   moso=kôu ya   folo-ga-môu,*
     put.inside+put-PFV house=LOC go.DU/PL.FUT go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV

     subulu   sa   si-l-e-môu   nala   i.
     sweet.potato put.inside.FUT cook-IRR-FUT-PFV eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

'When (they) had put (the sweet potatoes) inside (the stringbag), they **went** home and **having arrived**, (they) put the sweet potatoes in (a pot) and having cooked (it) they ate.'

690) *dôu-ma   tu-ma   de-di*
     go.downriver-ISQ go.upriver-ISQ PROV-HAB

'habitually **going up** and **down the river**' (about a daily walk on the airstrip parallel to the river)

691) *idiba   deme-l-e*
     tomorrow   come.downriver-IRR-FUT

'(he) **will come downriver** tomorrow'

692) *idiba   timi-l-e*
     tomorrow   come.upriver-IRR-FUT

'(he) **will come upriver** tomorrow' (different reference point compared to last example)

4.8.5.1 More on 'go' and 'come'

The Ronny text in APPENDIX III, can illustrate how the verbs *i* 'go' & *folo* 'go up/arrive' and *hagua* 'come' & *fele* 'come up/arrive' are used. The story is about a man, Ronny, telling his own story of how he went to town to buy food for a feast and how he came back to the village, where the story was told. In sentence 1-5 he uses the verb *i* 'go' and *folo* 'go up/arrive' in

their different forms. In sentence 6 he switches to *hagua* 'come' and *fele̲* 'come up/arrive' in their different forms. This is maintained through sentence 13, except for a direct quote with *i* 'go' in sentence 9 and a digression for sleeping in the first clause of sentence 11. Sentence 14 and 15 are stationary. In sentence 16 he starts the summing up of his story and goes back to *i* 'go'.

The interesting thing about these verbs of motion is that the direction of the motion is more important than the motion itself. The deictic centre is usually, not to say always,[130] the speaker/the story teller. A few examples will show that.

A common way to express continuous motion in Tok Pisin is *i go i go i go* 'to keep going'. In Konai, if the motion is towards the place where you are speaking, the expression has to be based on the verb *hagua* 'come'.

693)   ***hagu-l-u-gi***   ***hagu-l-u-gi***   ***hagu-l-u-gi***   *fele̲*
      come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ come.up

'... (I) **came travelling** (back towards the village) **until** (I) arrived and ...'

A seemingly simple question like "When did you come?" translated literally into Konai, will not work, as the word *hagua* 'come' will imply the start of the return journey. The corresponding question in English that would work would be "When did you arrive/come up?"

694)   *Na̲ koboge   **hague-i***?
      2s when.VBR come-NFUT

      *A̲ we   **hagu-l-u-gi***   *ibigi*   *fele̲-i.*
      1s day.before.yesterday come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ earlier.today come.up-NFUT

'When did you **start your journey back**? I **started to come** (the) day before yesterday, (coming on) **until** (I) arrived earlier today.'

Also, for example, if you want to invite someone you meet on the road to your house, you will have to use *i* 'go' even though you plan to take him or her to the house yourself. Example (696) is incorrect.

695)   *Ma̲   moso̲=kô̲u **i**-me.*
      1s.POSS house=LOC go-HORT

'Let's **go** to my house!'

696)   ***Ma̲   moso̲=kô̲u   hagua.***
      1s.POSS   house=LOC   come-IMP

* '**Come** (with me) to my house!'

Another indication that *hagua* 'come' and *i* 'go' is not used in the same way as in English is the following example. When asking someone coming back to the village where they have come from, they always use *i* 'go' in the answer. Example (698) is incorrect.

697)   *A̲=me hebe ha-i   sa̲=kô̲u   **i**.*
      1s=TOP tree cut-NFUT land=LOC   go-NFUT

'I **went** to the garden.'

698)   ***A̲=me   hebe   ha-i   sa̲=kô̲u=ge   hagu-l-u.***
      1s=TOP   tree   cut-NFUT   land=LOC=F.CNTR   come-IRR-NFUT

'I **am *coming** from the garden.'

However, if telling a story about a place that you do not know anything about, the **deictic centre** may be set at the place of a main participant. The following example is from a story about John the Baptist, told by a church member.

699)   *Jon e̲ hiye dege-mô̲u, ... **i-l-e**,   sa ... bito̲u   sa ko=kô̲u ta̲fala-mô̲u,*
      John 3s big do.FUT-PFV ... go-IRR-FUT land ... mountain land that=LOC stand-PFV

      *o   su̲=do   e̲=moko̲u **hagua-sige**   fele̲,   Jon=ha̲   ta̲   du-di.*
      man many=INT 3s=LOC   come-DU/PL.FUT come.up.FUT John=GEN talk hear-HAB

'When John had grown up, (he) ... **went and** standing on a ... mountain, many people used to **come** (along) and arrive and listen to John's talk.'

---

[130] But see last example in this section.

4.8.5.2 Using *i* 'go' and *hagua* 'come' to express temporal relationships

The verbs *i* 'go' and *hagua* 'come' are also used to express an event/state going on over time.

The verb *i* 'go' is used when the event starts at a certain time and continuous for a while in the past, present or future.

The verb *hagua* 'come' is used when an event has started prior to a certain other event and then continues up to the point of that other event.

See 4.1.5.4.2 Progressive aspect and 7.3.2.4 Delayed sequence.

700) *e ... midihǫ kasagai gehę gehę olôufei* **dege-ga-môu i-l-i-gi,**
3s ... face bad new new all.total do-DU/PL-PFV go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

sele olôufei nǫ-i mei dege-i.
money all.total eat-NFUT NEG do-NFUT

'... he **continued to do** all kinds of bad things **until** all (his) money was gone.'

701) *tǫ nị kôu* **du-môu hague-i** *ke=me*
talk 2PL prior hear-PFV come-NFUT that=TOP

nị defei=do tôu-ma.
2PL careful=INT hold-DU/PL

'... the talk that you **have been hearing up to now**, hold on to that carefully.'

702) *Godi=hǫ tǫ Abraham=kôu dege-l-e=yode-ma maka+mǫ* **dele-i=be,**
God=GEN talk Abraham=LOC do-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ mark+put be/have-NFUT=TOP

sadebe olôufei 430 ke-ge **hagua mei dege-môu,** *Godi=hǫ*
year all.total 430 that-VBR come NEG do-PFV God=GEN

yôu e kuolôu tǫ ke Moses=kôu kuhe he-hegi-e tobo-u.
3s.EMP 3s law talk that Moses=LOC so RED.PL-show-RED.PL say-NFUT

'**From the time** God spoke to Abraham (and) marked (him for what he) would do, 430 years **passed** and then God taught and spoke his own law talk to Moses.'

703) *He-hegi-e tobôu-môu* **i=be de-môu,** *habi dege-i-môu,*
RED.PL-show-RED.PL say=PFV go=TOP PROV-PFV afternoon do-NFUT-PFV

e dabai dege-di o ke+diǫ hagua-sie-môu tobo-u
3s work do-HAB man that+3PL come-DU/PL.FUT-PFV say-NFUT

'... (he) taught and spoke **until** it became afternoon, when his disciples having come said ...'

4.9 Conjunctions

Conjunctions belong to a small heterogeneous class of words, even including one or two enclitics, set up on the basis of their function to connect paragraphs, sentences, clauses and/or elements of compounded phrases. As the most important of these, so called conjunctions, is a verb that may be conjugated, it is not quite a closed class. Three of its basic forms are conjugations based on the demonstrative pronoun *ke* 'that'.

There are several other different strategies in Konai to connect sentences and clauses. Some are morphological, like temporal linking (see 7.3.2) and purpose (see 7.3.3.2). Some strategies are based on repetition of longer stretches of speech, like head-tail linkage (see 8.2.1) and clause repetition (see 7.2). However, none of those strategies will be presented here.

These are the forms that may on the basis of their function be called conjunctions:

ke-ge-môu	'having become like that/ so/then'	(that-VBR-PFV)	connects paragraphs
ke-le-ge-môu[131]	'having become like that there/ so/then'	(that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV)	connects paragraphs
(ke=nôu)=si	'but'	((that=only)=CNTR)	connects clauses & sentences
ka=ha (dege-môu)	'because'	(that=GEN do-PFV)	may connect clauses; together with *yobe* 'reason' connects sentences
yo=be	'reason'	(base=TOP)	connects sentences
ne=be/*=ne*	'also'	(also=TOP/=also)	connects sentences
ha/*haba*	'but/or/again/instead'[132]	(but(PFV.IRR))	connects clauses & sentences
o	'or'	loan word (maybe)	connects elements of compounded phrases; connects clauses
de	'proverb'		may function together with *=bôu* 'and' in compounded phrases; may also connect clauses
=bôu	'and'		connects elements of compounded phrases
=be	'topic marker'		connects phrases & clauses

As *kege* 'like that' is really a verb it can take any of the verbal suffixes. That gives a few more "conjunctions":

ke-ge-ma-môu	'after having become like that'	(that-VBR-ISQ-PFV)
ke-ge-ba	'will have become like that'	(that-VBR-PFV.IRR)
ke-ge-ba=be	'if like that'	(that-VBR-PFV.IRR=TOP)
ke-ge-ba=si	'in that way, in contrast to other ways'	(that-VBR-PFV.IRR=CNTR)

704)   **Ke-ge-môu,**   *ele*   *tobo-u*
       that-VBR-PFV   1DU.EX say-NFUT

       '**Then** the two of us said, ...'

705)   *wai oye hiye=do ke̲ tigo-u-môu dugu.*
       pig male big=INT that bark-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       Ke-ge-môu,   *e̲*   *taha̲*   *taha̲-môu*   *su-l-u-gi*
       that-VBR-PFV   3S shoot shoot-PFV walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

       '... (he) saw/heard (the dog) barking at that very big boar.
       Then he kept circling around shooting again and again until, ...'

706)   *wai ôu no-l-u̲.*
       pig sago eat-IRR-NFUT

       Ke-le-ge-môu,   *e̲ kisi.*   *... duwo-gi dugu*   *wai hagu-l-u.*
       that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV   3S make.a.wall.NFUT... sit-DSQ see.NFUT pig come-IRR-NFUT

       Ke-le-ge-môu   *e̲*   *taha̲-i.*
       that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV   3S   shoot-NFUT

       '…(a) pig was eating sago (fibres).
       Then he (a man) made a hunting shelter. ... (he) sat until (he) saw a pig coming.
       Then he shot (it).' (Mountain dialect)

---

[131] Mountain dialect – function and meaning seem to be the same as for *kegemôu* 'having become like that/then/so'.

[132] The words *ha* and *haba* seem basically to mean 'change'.

707) *Duwo-di,*   *a̱*   *ƚewe* *mô̱u-l-i̱*   *mei fogo-u.*
      sit-DSQ[133] 1s know get-IRR-NFUT NEG leave.for-NFUT

     Ke-le-ge-mô̱u,   *a̱*   *fi+ma̱-i*   *hiye=do dege-i.*
     that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV   1s soul+put-NFUT big=INT do-NFUT

     'I was sitting there until not gaining any knowledge I left.
     Then I thought (about it) a lot.' (Mountain dialect)

708) *e̱*   *di̱a=mokô̱u yodu,* ... **Ke̱=nô̱u=si**   *di̱a tobô̱u-li*   *mei.*
      3s 3PL=LOC   ask ... that=only=CNTR 3PL say-IRR-NFUT NEG

     '... he asked them, ... **But** they did not answer.'

709) *aso̱*   *bei.*   *O*   *obô̱u di̱a hoho̱*   *hiye=do.* **Ke̱=nô̱u=si**   *a̱*   *hoho̱*   *mei.*
      sun   snake man some 3PL light big=INT that=only=CNTR 1s light NEG

     Yo=be   *e̱* *o* *gala-di*   **ka=ha̱.**
     base=TOP 3s man bite-HAB that=GEN

     '... death adder. Some people like (it) very much. **But** I do not like (it). **Because** it bites
     people.' (Foothill dialect)

710) *Fi̱*   *ke̱=me* **yo=be** *Yesu=kô̱u=ge*   *hague-i.*
      soul that=TOP base=TOP Jesus=LOC=F.CNTR   come-NFUT

     '**The** cause/**reason** of that life comes from Jesus.'

711) **Ne̱=be** *ke̱=nô̱u*   *ƚefe-l-e,*
      also=TOP that=only measure-IRR-FUT

     '**Also**, in the same way and ...'

712) *ƚa̱*   *kasaga̱i,*   **ha** *bolof̱ei?*
      talk bad   but good=total

     'is it bad **or** good talk? (it is very good)'

713) *Fofai* *hiye=do dala,*   **ha** *ke̱=nô̱u=si*   *sugua-i=bô̱u*   *mei.*
      swollen big=INT be/have but that=only=CNTR have.fever-NFUT=and NEG

     '(He) has (a) very big swelling, **but even so**, there is no fever with (it).'

714) *Figi* *ilo*   *left* *side=kô̱u=be* *bolo=f̱ei*   *dala,*
      side part left side=LOC=TOP good=total   be/have

     ha *fi̱gi* *right* *side=kô̱u=be do*   *hiye=do.*
     but side right side=LOC=TOP sickness big=INT

     '(His) left side **is** OK, **bu**t (his) right side **is** really sick/painful.'

715) *Ƚo̱*   *ƚa,*   *e̱* *hu̱*   *Tili=ha̱* *hebe*   *ke-le*   *bito̱u*   *ƚa*
      river INDF 3s name Tili=GEN headwaters that-A.LOC mountain INDF

     ilo=kô̱u dala-mô̱u,   **ha** *ƚa ilo=kô̱u* *dala-mô̱u*   *duo*   *ke-le*   *dala.*
     part=LOC be/have-PFV but INDF part=LOC be/have-PFV spirit[134] that-A.LOCR be/have-PFV

     'A river, by name of Tili, at its headwaters, there is a mountain on one side and **again** another on the other side,
     there in the middle is (Tabubil).'

716) *Na-l-e̱*   *hiye=do si-l-e,*   *sege-i*   *na̱=be de-ma,* *ƚô̱u dedei* *dege-mô̱u*
      eat-IRR-FUT big=INT cook-IRR-FUT plant-NFUT eat=TOP PROV-ISQ body strong do.FUT-PFV

     i=di. **Ha** *ke-ge*   *i-l-i-gi,*   *o*   *duwo mei ke-le=nô̱u*   *ƚio-l-u.*
     go-HAB but that-VBR go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ man sit NEG that-A.LOCR=only sleep-IRR-NFUT

     'Cooking a lot of food and after eating all that garden produce, the body would keep on getting strong. **Again**
     hiking/going on like that until (I would) sleep in no-man's land.'

717) *kulio*   *hiye=do ka̱=ha̱=nô̱u=si*   *kasaga̱i.*
      coldness big=INT that=GEN=only=CNTR bad

     Ha *suwa*   *olô̱uf̱ei*   *ke̱=me* *kasagai ƚa mei*
     but something all.total that=TOP bad   INF NEG

     '… **but apart** from how very cold it is, there is nothing else bad …'

---

[133] In this position, in the Mountain dialect, this is probably 'delayed sequence', rather than 'habitual'.

[134] Or 'middle'.

718) *sawisie-i   ta   ke-le-ge,   **ha** sawisie-i   kôu=ma=ha,*
      be.day-NFUT INDF that-A.LOCR-VBR but be.day-NFUT that=TOP=GEN

      '... a later day, **but** even today/this day ...'

719) *Jon=ha   fafeleya   dege-di=be   o   ke+dia   dabai?*
      John=GEN baptism   do-HAB=TOP   man that+3PL   work

      ***Ha** hebeni=ha   dabai?*
      but heaven=GEN work

      'Concerning John's baptism, is (that) men's work?
      Or heaven's work?' (It is the business of heaven.)

720) *Hou=**ne**   hiye=do dala.   Siya=**si**   dugu-l-i   mei. Mei **o** dala,*
      taro=also big=INT be/have sugarcane=CNTR see-IRR-NFUT NEG   NEG or be/have

      a   tewe   mei.
      1s   know   NEG

      '... Taro **too**, there were lots of. **But** I haven't seen (any) sugarcane. I don't know
      (if there) is any **or** not.'

721) *dôu-ma   tu-ma   **de**-di*
      go.down.river-ISQ go.up.river-ISQ PROV-HAB

      'habitually going down **and** up the river (going back & forth)'

722) *Sasai e   dihi   o   dihi=**bôu** sasai dihi=**bôu**+**de**   ta-le=kôu*
      woman 3s   child   man child=and woman child=and+PROV river-A.LOCR=LOC

      miye bese   i-l-i.
      fish angle.for go-IRR-NFUT

      'The woman with her son **and** daughter is going to the river to angle for fish.'

723) *O   sasai   olôufei=do=be   disope=be   taga-l-e   nala   i-di.   ...*
      man woman all.total=INT=TOP pineapple=TOP like-IRR-FUT eat.IRR.FUT go-HAB ...

      ***Ke**=nôu=**si**   na sosou   na-ba=**be**,   na ogue dege-l-e.*
      that=only-CNTR 2s unripe eat-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s itch do-IRR-FUT

      ***Yo**=**be**   e=**me** sosou   ka=ha   dege-môu.*
      base=TOP 3s=TOP unripe   that=GEN do-PFV

      'Everybody likes and eats pineapples. **But if** you eat (it) unripe, you will get (an) itch. **Because** it **is**
      unripe.'

5. PHRASES

There are three kinds of phrases based on their function in the clause. The two main kinds are the verbal phrase and the nominal phrase. The modifier phrase encodes location, time, some verb-modifying ideas, as well as some aspectual and modal concepts.

5.1 The verbal phrase

The verbal phrase functions as the head of the verbal clause. Before describing the verbal phrase in itself, I will recognize that there are three smaller units, on the level with the verb word itself, that have their function within the verbal phrase. They are the serial verb construction, the noun incorporation construction and the noun/adjective/adverb incorporation with the proverb *dege* 'do'. The last one will be described first as that is the more uniform and also the most simple of the three.

5.1.1 Noun/adjective/adverb incorporation with the pro-verb *dege* 'do'

A number of nouns, both abstract and concrete, as well as adjectives and adverbs may be verbalised by the common pro-verb *dege* 'do'.

Structure of noun/adjective/adverb incorporation

V$_{INC}$ →   N/ADJ/ADV   V

724)	*kulio dege*	(coldness#do)	'be(come) cold'	(noun)
725)	*asi dege*	(red colour#do)	'be(come) red' (from fruit/ground pigment)	(noun)
726)	*mogo dege*	(friend#do)	'be(come) friends'	(noun)
727)	*hiye dege*	(big#do)	'be(come) big/to grow'	(adjective)
728)	*bolo dege*	(good#do)	'be(come) good'	(adjective)
729)	*sa dege*	(likely#do)	'be like/likely'	(adverb)
730)	*mei dege*	(NEG#do)	'be(come) finished'	(adverb)

All these verbs, with incorporated nouns, adjectives or adverbs are experiential state verbs. This means that the irrealis non-future form, which for event verbs means present tense, for these verbs means a change of state, while the realis non-future is the stable state and translates into a present tense form in English.

731) *O   sasai   dia **kulio   dege-i-môu,**   dia aso   ha   i-di=be*
      man   woman   3PL coldness   do-NFUT-PFV   3PL sun get.warm   go-HAB=TOP

   bolo=fei=do   dugu-di.
   good=total=INT see-HAB

   'When people **are cold**, (and) when they warm (themselves in the) sun, (they) feel good.'

732) *Ma   sasai **sobôude   dege-l-i.** E dihi   mo-l-ôu   sagai   mei.*
      1s.POSS woman old.woman do-IRR-NFUT 3s child get-IRR-NPST likely NEG

   'My wife **is getting old**. She is not likely to have a child.'

733) *ma   sasai e   **sobôude   dege-i.***
      1s.POSS woman 3s old.woman do-NFUT

   '... my wife **is** an old woman.'

An adjective may modify the verbalised noun.

734) *a   gue   **hiye=do** dege-i.*
      1s fear   big=INT   do-NFUT

   '... I was **very much** afraid.'

The pro-verb *dege* 'do' is also used with loan words. Those verbal constructions are not necessarily state verbs, but mostly event verbs.

735) *try dege*   'try'   (loan word)

736) *study dege*   'study'   (loan word)

737) *Ke=nôu=si   Oumemi   o   ke+dia   ya-i=be,   dia=me*
      that=only=CNTR Oumemi   man that+3PL play-NFUT=TOP 3PL=TOP

   wini dege-l-i   mei=do.
   win do-IRR-NFUT NEG=INT

   'But when the Oumemi men played, they **really did not win**.'

5.1.2 Other noun incorporation

Two temporal verbs, based on the noun for 'land' *sa*, each with a different verb root attached, are very common paragraph markers in narratives:

- *sa+wisie*   'be day'   (meaning of verb root unknown)
- *sa+biya*   'be morning'   (*biya* 'sit')

Two other verbs with a noun incorporated are:

- *to to*   'wash oneself/swim'   (river#wash)
- *huei to*   'rain'   (water#wash)

And two more:[135]

- *moso togo*   'build a house'   (*togo* 'make')
- *ye togo*   'make a stringbag'

738) **Sa**+**wisie-i** *ta*   *a*   *i-l-e-môu*   *gôusi*   *dogogu.*   **Sa**+**biyo-u-môu,**
     land+?-NFUT INDF 1s go-IRR-FUT-PFV   trap   put.NFUT   land+sit-NFUT-PFV

   i-l-e-môu   *dugu*=*be*   *kueya*   *to-u*   *dugu.*
   go-IRR-NFU-PFV   see.NFUT=TOP cassowary hold-NFUT   see.NFUT

   'One day I having gone, put a trap. At dawn, (I) having gone, saw that a cassowary
   was caught (there).'

739) **Sa**+**biya-môu,** *Asele dilie* *e*   *sasai* *Dasame dilie*
     land+sit-PFV Asele 3DU   3s woman Dasame 3DU

   Mali   *o*=*kôu*   *yo-u-môu*
   Malin mouth.of.river=LOC go.DU/PL-NFUT-PFV

   'Next morning, while Asele and his wife Dasame went to the mouth of the (river) Malin ...'

740) **huei**   **te-i**
     water wash-NFUT

   '(it) rained'

741) **to**   **te-i**
     river wash-NFUT

   '(he) swam'

742) *Huei*   **to**-*l-adi.*   *A*=*me*   *to*   *to*   *i-l-i*
     water wash-IRR-PROS   1s=TOP   river   wash go-IRR-NFUT
     NP   VP   NPs   NPo   VP

   '(It) is just about to rain.'   'I'm going to swim.'

743) *O*   *moso*   **togo**-*l-o.*   *Sasai*   *ye*   **togo**-*l-o.*
     man   house   make-IRR-FUT   woman   stringbag   make-IRR-FUT
     '(The) man will build a house.'   '(The) woman will make a stringbag.'

5.1.3 Serial verbs

It is very common to have two or more verbs following in a row in natural speech. In most cases it is possible to insert other parts of speech in between them.

There are, however, several constructions where one verb follows on another, and where it is not possible to insert anything in between, while still keeping the same meaning. These qualify as serial verb constructions. All but one have a grammatical function.[136]

- individuated plurality on verbs taking an object
- progressive aspect
- simple purpose
- conative mode
- future habitual aspect
- telic states
- hypothetic, including contrary-to-fact conditions
- enhanced transitivity: plural object
- enhanced transitivity: completive
- set expressions

In addition to these, there are a number of verb strings that do not quite qualify as serial verbs (see 5.1.3.11).

---

[135] These are borderline; they could be analysed as object and verb.

[136] See also 7.3.2.4 DELAYED SEQUENCE (second part): *ibe demôu* & *haguabe demôu* and *ibe deba* & *haguabe deba*, all with the basic meaning of 'until'. You could claim that these forms are also serial verbs constructions.

There are other verb combinations that may look like they would qualify as a serial verb construction, but do not quite do that. Verbs under the general area of meaning of '**bring**' and '**take**', as well as a few others, come in that category and will be commented on in 5.1.3.11 OTHER VERB STRINGS.

The serial verbs have the following structure, where V$_1$ is a distinct conjugation of a certain groups of verbs, and V$_2$ is usually one of the following verbs: *i* 'go', *hagua* 'come', *dege* 'do', *de* 'pro-verb', *ma* 'put'.

Structure of serial verbs

- V$_{SER}$ → V$_1$ V$_2$

5.1.3.1 Individuated plurality on verbs taking an object

Individuated plurality (see 4.1.6.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL) for **transitive** verbs is expressed as a serial verb construction. For most verb types, V$_1$ is in irrealis future or non-past form. For type 3 and 4 verbs, verb stems ending in **a**, however, V$_1$ is in its basic form. The exception is verb type 3c, which follows the first pattern. V$_2$ is always the verb *i* 'go' in any form.

- V$_{SER.INDV}$ → **V-IRR-FUT/NPST** *i* 'go' (Verb types 1-2, 3c, 5-7)
- V$_{SER.INDV}$ → **V$_{BASIC}$** *i* 'go' (Verb types 3, 4, i.e. regular transitive verbs ending in *a*)

744) *Dia kuidiho ke dugu-o-moû, hoho hiye=do **dege-l-e i.***
3PL star that see-FUT-PFV light big=INT do-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

'Having seen the star, **they were** very happy.' (type 2 verb; stem ends in **e**)

745) *Habiya o su=do **milo-l-oû i.***
Aekyom man many=INT work-IRR-NPST go.NFUT

'Many Aekyom **people were working** (there).' (type 6 verb; stem ends in **oû**)

746) *O sasai su=do e=mokoû hagua-sie-i, e ta **du-l-o i.***
man woman many=INT 3S=LOC come-DU/PL-NFUT 3S talk hear-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

'Many people came to him; **they heard** his talk.' (type 5 verb; stem ends in **u**)

747) *Sio isusu=be e hui=be bolo=fei=do o oloûfei **taga-l-e i-di.***
bird pigeon=TOP 3S meat=TOP good=total=INT man all.total like-IRR-FUT go-HAB
'Concerning the meat of the "isusu" pigeon (it) is very good; everybody likes/all **people lik**e it.' (type 3c verb; stem ends in **a**, but is not conjugated as other *a*-verbs)

748) *Oû koû=me ma oû, ... Ke=noû=si o dia hiyou=ye **ha i.***
sago this=TOP 1S.POSS sago ... that=only=CNTR man 3PL steal=INS cut go.NFUT

'This is my sago (palm) ... But the **men cut** (it) down, stealing it.' (type 3a verb; stem ends in **a**)

For contrasting examples with group plural see 4.1.6.3 and example (434) under 4.1.6.2.1 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL ...

5.1.3.2 Progressive aspect

Progressive aspect (see 4.1.5.4.2 PROGRESSIVE ASPECT) is also expressed as a serial verb construction, with the meaning 'keep doing something'. V$_1$ is in its basic form followed by *-moû* 'perfective', never *-ba* perfective irrealis, even when the final verb is in future tense or expressing something hypothetic. V$_2$ is usually the verb *i* 'go' or the verb *hagua* 'come', but other forms are possible (751). V$_2$ may be in any form. Note (752), where the final verb is in future tense.

- V$_{SER.PROG}$ → **V-*moû*** *i* 'go'
- V$_{SER.PROG}$ → **V-*moû*** *hagua* 'come'

749) *di dabai hiye=do **dege-moû i-l-i.***
1PL.IN work big=INT do-PFV go-IRR-NFUT
'... we **keep on** working very hard.'

750) *Hagi hiye=do a **dugu-moû hague-i** oloûfei ke=me na koû tewe.*
heavy big=INT 1S see-PFV come-NFUT all.total that=TOP 2S prior know
'All the problems I **have had up to now**, you already know.'

751) *nị   ya,   sa   sa   olôûfei   sulugua-l-i,*
 2pl   go.DU/PL land land all.total walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

 ṭa   uwo   bolo=fei   kôû   o   sasai   olôûfei   ke+diạ=mokôû
 talk noise good=total this man woman all.total that+3PL=LOC

 ṭobôû-môû sulugua-ma=be=ede   ṭobo-u.
 say-PFV   walk.around.DU/PL-DU/PL=TOP=OQV say-NFUT

 '... "Go and as you travel/walk around everywhere, you must tell all people this good talk," (he) instructed
 them and said.'

752) *Godi=kôû bolo=fei=yode   **ṭobôû-môû** i-l-e.*
 God=LOC   good=total=IQV say-PFV   go-IRR-FUT

 '... (people) will go on thanking God.'

5.1.3.3 Simple purpose

Simple purpose is of the type "I'm going fishing". V_1 is in its basic form and V_2 is usually a motion verb, most commonly *i*
'go' in any form, but it is often a final verb with tense marking.

- $V_{SER.SIMP.PURPOSE} \rightarrow$ **V_{BASIC}**   *i* 'go'

753) *Mạ   sasại e ôû **ga**   i.*
 1s.POSS woman 3s sago gather go.NFUT

 'My wife **went to gather** sago.'

754) *Ạ=me   yukuei **bigi**   i-l-i.*
 1s=TOP   cloth   wash   go-IRR-NFUT

 'I **am going** (to the river) **to wash** clothes.'

5.1.3.4 Conative mode

The conative mode type is of the type "I am trying to catch a fish" (Foley 1986:152). V_1 is an irrealis medial form of the
verb, signalling purpose. V_2 is usually the verb *dege* 'do' in any form.

- $V_{SER.TRY}$ $\rightarrow$ **V-IRR-SUBJ-PFV**   *dege* 'do'

755) *Miyẹ e hụ=be   ṭabaga, e dia   wala*
 fish 3s name=TOP fish.sp. 3s crayfish attack.IRR.FUT

 *na-**l-ạ-môû**   **dege-l-i.***
 eat-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT

 'A fish by name of *tabaga*, he **is trying to** kill and eat crayfish.' (a caption to a picture)

Please also note a similar construction with the proverb *de* in the first line of the following example:

756) *Wai ka=hạ   ạ wa-**l-a**   **do-môû**, ... mala hebe ka=hạ*
 pig that=GEN 1s attack-IRR-SUBJ PROV-PFV ... arrow tree that=GEN

 *gu-**l-a-môû**   **dege-i.***
 poke-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   do-NFUT

 'The pig **having tried to** kill me (but didn't) ... I **tried to** poke (my) wooden arrow into
 him.'

It is probably too narrow to say that this construction means just "try to ..". Perhaps "plan to .." is better.

757) *ele   sio   mowi ya-**l-a-môû**   **dege-l-i-gi**   dugu,*
 1DU.EX bird hunt go.DU/PL-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT

 Mikael   yukuei bigi i-môû
 Mikael cloth wash go.NFUT-PFV

 '... the two of us **were planning to** go bird hunting **until** we saw Mikael on his way to wash clothes, when we
 immediately ...'

5.1.3.5 Future habitual aspect

Future habitual aspect is also expressed in a serial verb construction, where V_1 is its basic form and V_2 is the pro-verb *de* in
any form.

- V_{SER.FUT.HAB} → **V_{BASIC}** *de* 'proverb'

758) *Godi=ha̠ t̠a bologu̠a=do he-hegi-e t̠obôu de.*
    God=GEN talk good.do=INT RED.PL-show-RED.PL say PROV
    '**Keep** teaching and **preaching** well.'

5.1.3.6 Telic states

An existential state verb with an endpoint is expressed in a serial verb construction where V₁ is a state verb and V₂ is the proverb *de* with the medial suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence' attached.

- V_{SER.ISQ.STAT} → **V_{STAT}** *de-ma* 'PROV-ISQ'

759) *Elementary duwo de-ma mei dege-i-môu=be,*
    elementary.school sit PROV-ISQ NEG do-NFUT-PFV=TOP
    '... **after finishing** elementary school, ...'

5.1.3.7 Hypothetic, including contrary-to-fact conditions

Hypothetic conditions may be non-future or future. They are expressed by a serial verb construction using the pro-verb *de*. V₁ is any verb in epistemic mood, and V₂ is *de* 'pro-verb' in the perfective irrealis form. In fact, V₁ does not even need to be there (762).

- V_{SER.HYP} → **V** *de-ba*(*=be*) 'PROV-PFV.IRR(=TOP)'

760) *o bi mei o ke+di̠a=mokôu ne-l-e̠ de-ba=be bolo̠.*
    man thing NEG man that+3PL=LOC give-IRR-FUT PROV-PFV.IRR good
    '... if (you) **would give** to poor people, (it) **would be** good.'

761) *midiho̠ gehe̠ gehe̠ ni̠ dihi̠-le ko=kôu milôu-ga-i saga̠i ke̠=nôu*
    face new new 2PL eye-A.LOCR that=LOC work-DU/PL-NFUT likely that=only

    t̠efe-l-e milôu-ga-i de-ba=be, di̠a fi̠ bohôu-ma
    be.like-IRR-FUT work-DU/PL-NFUT PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP 3PL soul turn-ISQ
    '... if (I) **would have done** the same miracles (in front of them) that I have done in front of you, they after repenting **would** ...'

762) *Te-i fi̠ de-ba=be, hu̠i=bôu mei, dio=nôu dala-ba*
    die-NFUT soul PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP meat=and NEG bone=only be/have-PFV.IRR

    dugu-l-o.
    see-IRR-FUT
    'If (the soul) **would be** (a) dead soul, we **would** not see any flesh, just the bones by themselves.'

5.1.3.8 Enhanced transitivity: plural object

There are several ways to signal plural object. One of them is a serial verb construction with the verb *ma̠* 'put'. Both V₁ and V₂ are in their basic forms. The typical meaning of this serial verb construction is illustrated in the first example as compared to the second.

- V_{SER.TRANS.PL.O} → **V_{BASIC}**+*ma̠* 'put'

The two verbs in this serial construction are considered by mother-tongue speakers to be a compound word, so it is written as one word.

763) *awa dio ... mô̠u+ma̠ hagua-sige fele̠-ga-i*
    black.palm bone ... get+put come-DU/PL come.up-DU/PL-NFUT
    '**plenty** of people ... brought **lots of** black palm strips'

Compare:

764) *mal̠a̠ hagua*
    get.IRR.FUT come
    '... **one** person bringing as much as he can carry'

In the following example two boys are gathering all the things they need for a fishing trip. Both of them are grabbing one thing after another. The second verb in this serial verb construction functions as a strong transitiviser. The emphasis is on the plurality of action, one action per object (and person), which of course makes plural objects.

765) *Ele   ye,   howili+dio,   kalase, awaki=bôu+de **tôu+ma** i-ga-i.*
      1DU.EX   stringbag fishing+bone glass   knife=and+PROV hold+put go-DU/PL-NFUT

      'The two of us (each one) **grabbed** stringbag(s), diving spear(s), fishing glass(es) and knife/(knives) (**many things**) **and** went.'

766) *Ele   hebe **ha-gi+ma**   tigi   **ka-gi+ma**-môu digigi-l-e   folo-ga-i.*
      1DU.EX tree cut-OF+put vine   cut-OF+put-PFV tie-IRR-FUT go.up-DU/PL-NFUT

      'We two **cut pieces** of wood **and** having **cut some** vines, tied it (made a ladder) and
      went up (the tree).'

767) *Sabiye-i   dia wai **sa+ma**   i.*
      be.morning-NFUT 3PL pig put.inside+put go.NFUT

      'In the morning; they **put pieces of** pig meat **in** (their stringbags) **and** went.'

768) *A   ma   sio   ayomôu dihi   su=do   ke=nôu=si   sagatai=ye*
      1s 1s.POSS bird fowl   child   many=INT that=only=CNTR hawk=INS

      wo+ma   *no-l-u-gi   mei dege-i.*
      attack+put eat-IRR-NFUT-DSQ NEG do-NFUT

      'I had many chickens, but (a) hawk **killed them and** ate (them) until (they) were (all) gone.'

5.1.3.9 Enhanced transitivity: completive

Another kind of enhanced transitivity, which is expressed by a serial verb construction, is that of an encreased degree of effect on the object. In this serial verb construction, the last verb is also *ma* 'put', but it may be in any form, and the first verb is in irrealis mood and future/non-past tense. It is also possible to read 'completive' into this form, which would be the more common Papuan interpretation of a serial verb construction, where the last verb means 'put'.

- V$_{SER.TRANS.COMPL}$ → **V-IRR-FUT/NPST+*ma*** 'put'

The two verbs in this serial construction are also considered by mother-tongue speakers to be a compound word, so it is written as one word.

769) *dôuwa   **to-l-ôu+ma**   wala   i.*
      hornbill hold-IRR-NPST+put attack.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

      '... we **grabbed** the cassowary **and** killed it.'

770) *miye ka=ha   folo,   bidio suku-l-o   bugu.*
      fish that=GEN go.up.FUT shore approach-IRR-FUT vomit.NFUT

      *Bugu-l-u-gi,   Jona **te-l-e+ma+i.***
      vomit-IRR-NFUT-DSQ Jonah remove-IRR-FUT+put-NFUT

      'The fish went up, approached (the) shore and vomited. (He) vomited until (he) **spit** Jonah **out**. '

771) *yo   môu i-l-i.   Yo   mala,   haba   **boho-l-ôu+ma**   hagua-l-e*
      banana get go-IRR-NFUT banana get.IRR.FUT but.PFV.IRR turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT

      '... (I) am going to get bananas. (I) will get the bananas and again **turn around (completely) and** come (back) and ...'

772) *sio   miye=be   nele   hiye=do. Dia=me o=ye   taha-l-i,*
      bird Victoria.pigeon=TOP strength big=INT   3PL=TOP man=INS   shoot-IRR-NFUT

      *mala   **gobo-l-ôu+ma**   fogôu   i-di.*
      arrow break-IRR-NPST+put leave.for go-HAB

      '... Victoria pigeons (are) very strong. When they are shot at by man, (they) **break off** (the) arrow **and** leaving (they) go.'

773) *De=ha   **taha-l-e+ma**-môu*
      maternal.uncle=GEN shoot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV

      'Uncle having **shot and killed** (it) ...'

Compare with the following example:

774) *De=ha   **taha-ma-môu***
      maternal.uncle=GEN shoot-ISQ-PFV

      'After (the pig) had been **shot at** by uncle ... (it didn't die)'

5.1.3.10 Set expressions: *mala fele* 'bear' and *tolo i* 'die'

The verb forms *mala fele* 'bear (a child)' and *to-l-o i* 'die (sg.)' are serial verb constructions:

- V_{BEAR} → **V.IRR.FUT** *fele*   'come up'

- V_{DIE} → **V-IRR-FUT** *i*   'go'

775) *Maria=ha Yesu mala   fele-i*
      Maria=GEN Jesus get.IRR.FUT come.up-NFUT
      'Maria **bore** Jesus ...'

776) *Dihi   kôu-me   e adiôu   to-l-o   i-mou,   e-sofei   tia-di.*
      child this=TOP 3s mother die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV 3s-self.alone sleep-HAB
      'Concerning this child, his mother having **died**, he lives alone.'

Compare:

777) *A o ke   dugu-o-môu, a to-l-o   fiye-i.*
      1s man that see-FUT-PFV 1s die-IRR-FUT fall-NFUT
      'Having seen that man, I **fell down** (**like**) **dead**.'

5.1.3.11 Other verb strings

If the criteria for proposing a serial verb construction is that there cannot come anything in between the two verbs in the series, there are some verb strings that are serial-like but do not quite qualify.

- *mala i/hagua*   'bring/take'

- *tolôu i/hagua*   'hold and go/come'

- *wolôu i/hagua*   'accompany and go/come'

- *sesele i/hagua*   'follow and go/come'

- *fogôu i/hagua*   'leaving (he) go(es)/come(s)'

mala i 'take' and mala hagua 'bring'
The verb series meaning 'take' and 'bring': (778) and (779) have variants, (782)-(784). Also, another verb is easily put in between V_1 and V_2, namely the verb for 'carry' *hebe*, in the form of *hebe-l-e* (carry-IRR-FUT): (780), (781).

778) *Kevin=ha dihi   do   mala   i   ka-ge-i=ya?*
      Kevin=GEN child sickness get.IRR.FUT go.NFUT how-VBR-NFUT=SUBJ
      '... how is Kevin's sick child who **was taken** (to hospital)?'

779) *Mogo, fai   hiye=do mala   hagua.*
      friend file big=INT get.IRR.FUT come.IMP
      'My friend, **bring** a very big file (to sharpen knives).'

780) *miye ... Ele   mala   hebele   hagua-sige-i,*
      fish … 1DU.EX get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come-DU/PL-NFUT

      moso=kôu   fele-i.
      house=LOC come.up-NFUT
      '... we two **took** (the) fish **and carried** (it) **and came**; (we) arrived at the house.'

781) *wai mala   hebe-l-e   hagua-môu so-l-ôu   na-i.*
      pig get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come.FUT-PFV cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST eat-NFUT
      '... having **got and carried and come** (with the) pig, (we) cooked and ate (it).'

Also, these forms vary for singular and plural object

- **Singular**: what one person can carry as **one load**   (see the five examples above)

- **Plural**:   what makes up **several loads**, usually with plural actors   (see the next three examples below)

782) *Do   daga   daga   môu+ma hagua-sie-di.*
      sickness different different get+put come-DU/PL-HAB
      '(People) **get all kinds** of sicknesses **and keep coming**.'

783) *sege-i   hou   môu+ma i-l-e   sogo-di-l-i.*
      plant-NFUT seedling get+put go-IRR-FUT plant-HAB-IRR-NFUT
      '... (people) **get** garden produce seedling**s and go and** plant (them) as usual.'

784)   *di̱a̱=bôu   a̱=bôu+de   na-l-e̱   môu+ma̱ hague-i.*
       3s=and   1s=and+PROV eat-IRR-FUT get+put come-NFUT

       '...they and I **brought** (the) food.'

to̱lôu i/hagua '(take) hold (of) and go/come'

785)   *sele   170 kina   to̱lôu   i,   sitouwa=kôu folo-môu*
       money   170 kina   hold-IRR-NPST   go   store=LOC   go.up.FUT-PFV

       '... (I) **took hold of** (the) 170 kina **and went**; having arrived at the store ...'

786)   *di̱a̱ sele   ke̱   to̱lôu   hagu-môu,*
       3PL money that   hold-IRR-NPST   come.NFUT-PFV

       '... they **took hold of** (the coin) **and coming** ...'

787)   *to-l-ôu   mala̱   i-l-e   saga̱i   mei.*
       hold-IRR-NPST   get.IRR.FUT   go-IRR-FUT likely NEG

       '... not likely to **take hold of** (it) **and take** (it) **and go**.'

The verb *tôu* 'hold' also has a plural object form.

788)   *Bobasi   bolo̱u dilie bilika   tôu+ma̱ hue̱i   na̱   yo-l-u.*
       younger.sister two   3DU   saucepan hold+put water eat go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

       '(My) younger sister and her (friend), the two of them, **hold** saucepans **and go** to (get and)
       drink water.'

wolôu i/hagua 'accompany and go/come' (used for animate objects)

789)   *o   ilo ke+di̱a̱ o   ta,   duo   kasaga̱i=ye to-u   ke̱*
       man part that+3PL man INDF spirit bad=INS   hold-NFUT that

       wo-l-ôu   hagua   fele̱-go-u-môu   dugu.
       accompany-IRR-NPST come.FUT   come.up-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT

       '... (he) saw some men arrive, **bringing** a man, who was possessed by an evil spirit.'

790)   *so   oye ta=nôu=fe̱i   wo-l-ôu   mowi i.*
       dog male INDF=only=total accompany-IRR-NPST hunt go.NFUT

       '... (he) **took** just one male dog **and went hunting**.'

Also *wôu* 'accompany' has a plural object form.

791)   *ele   so   wôu+ma̱   mowi igiya-i.*
       1DU.EX dog accompany+put hunt go.DU/PL-NFUT

       '... the two of us **took** (the) dogs and **went hunting**.'

sesele i/hagua 'follow and ...' (sg. subject), *sesele ya/haguasie* 'follow and ...' (du./pl. subject)'

792)   *haba   wai ka=ẖa̱   so sese-l-e   hague-i.*
       but.PFV.IRR   pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT   come-NFUT

       '... again the pig came chasing the dog(s).' (literally: '... **followed and came**.')

793)   *kueya   ... ise   hagu-môu   a̱ taha̱-i.   Taha̱-môu   si-ma*
       cassowary   ... finally come.NFUT-PFV 1s shoot-NFUT shoot.FUT-PFV feel-ISQ

       hebe-l-e   i-môu,   sese-l-e   i-l-e-môu   dugu,
       carry-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV follow-IRR-FUT   go-IRR-FUT-PFV   see

       kueya   to-l-o   i.
       cassowary   die-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT

       '... finally, as the cassowary came I shot at it! Having been shot at (it) after feeling (the arrow), carried (it away)
       and went, (and) I immediately **having followed**, saw (that) the cassowary was dead.'

794)   *kuidiẖo̱ aso̱ hagu-l-u   kôu dugu   ka=ẖa̱   i-môu   dugu-o-môu,*
       star   sun come-IRR-NFUT prior see.NFUT that=GEN go.NFUT-PFV see-FUT-PFV

       di̱a̱ ke̱=nôu   sese-l-e   ya-i.
       3PL that=only follow-IRR-FUT   go.DU/PL-NFUT

       '... having seen (the) star, (they) had seen in the east/(where (the) sun comes), going, they **followed**.'

795) *O   sas<u>ai</u>   s<u>u</u>=do   <u>e</u>   sese-l-e   dogôugu-o ya-i.*
man woman many=INT 3s follow-IRR-FUT help-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT

'Many people **followed and helped** him along the way/**and went**.'

***fogôu i/hagua* 'leaving (he) go(es)/come(s)'**

796) *<u>E</u>   a   ta   fogôu   i.*
3s road INDF leave.for go

'He went another way./**Leaving** for another road he **went**.'

797) *<u>e</u>   fogôu   hagua-l-a-môu   dege-i*
3s leave.for come-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-NFUT

'...while he was planning to **leave for** (home and) **come**, ...'

798) *N<u>a</u>-ma   mei dege-môu fogôu-ma   i-l-i.*
eat-ISQ NEG do-PFV   leave.for-ISQ go-IRR-NFUT

'(A cassowary) having finished eating, **after leaving went** on.'

799) *ise   ôu=bôu   dou=bôu sa-i   k<u>e</u>   ta-môu   ke-le*
finally sago=and fire=and put.inside-NFUT that unpack.FUT-PFV that-A.LOCR

dogogu-o   fogôu-môu   i.
put-FUT   leave.for-PFV go.NFUT

'... finally having taken out the sago and the matches, (which he) had put into (his stringbag), (he) put (them there) and **leaving** (he) **went**.'

In the following example, the second verb is one of the other deictic verbs: *folo* 'go up'.

800) *<u>e</u>   Aye   Godi=kôu fogôu   faladi=d=ade   tawa-i.*
3s father God=LOC   leave.for go.up.IRR.PROS=INT=SQV know-NFUT

'... (he) knew for sure that (he) would **shortly leave and go up** to his Father God.'

5.1.4 Structure of the verbal phrase

The verbal phrase consists of one verb, which may be a simple verb, a verb with an incorporated noun/adjective/adverb or it may be a serial verb construction, functioning as a unit. If it is a final verb, it may be followed by one or two specific adverbs.

Structure - Verbal phrase

VP   →   V/V$_{INC}$/V$_{SER}$ (ADV)(x2)

The adverbs that can fill the adverbial slot are *mei* 'negative', *sag<u>ai</u>* 'likely', or both together. All other adverbs occur before the verb but not necessarily immediately before. They are best analysed as heads of modifier phrases that function as peripheral arguments in various places in the clause (see 6.1 VERBAL CLAUSES).

801) *O   <u>e</u>   Kiungakôu i.*
man 3s Kiunga=LOC go.NFUT

'The man **went** to Kiunga.'

802) *<u>E</u>   mos<u>o</u>=kôu i-l-e   sag<u>ai</u>.*
3s house=LOC go-IRR-FUT likely

'He **wants to go** home.'

803) *<u>E</u>   dihi   mo-l-<u>ôu</u>   sag<u>ai</u>   mei.*
3s child get-IRR-NPST likely NEG

'She is **not likely to have** a child.'

804) *Di<u>a</u> Godi=h<u>a</u> t<u>a</u>   du-di=yo   mei.*
3PL God=GEN talk hear-HAB=INDC   NEG

'They **habitually do not hear** the word of God.'

805) *mogo   dege-i*
friend do-IRR-NFUT

'being friends'

806) *mei dege-l-e   mei*
NEG do-IRR-FUT NEG

'will not finish'

In the two following examples each colour, **red**, **blue**, **yellow**, **green** and **brown**, illustrates a verbal phrase; all, except two, being the only component of a clause.

807) *gamani*   *ke + di̠a̠*   *sele*   *mei = yode*[137] *t̠obo-l-o̠û*   *i*
      government   that+3PL money   NEG=IQV   say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT
      VP   **VP** (serial verb)

'"... the government's money is gone," they stated and said.'

808) *I-l-e*   *su-l-u-gi*   *dugu = be,*
      go-IRR-FUT walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP
      VP   **VP**   **VP**

      kueya   *t̠i-l-e*   *uwo*   *dege-i-mo̠û*   *a̠*   *du.*
      cassowary call-IRR-FUT noise do-NFUT-PFV   1s   hear.NFUT
                  VP   **VP** (incorporated noun)   **VP**

'(We two) went and walked around until (we) saw, (and) I heard a cassowary calling and making noises.'

5.1.5 Function of the verbal phrase

The function of the verbal phrase is as the obligatory core element of the verbal clause. See 6.1 VERBAL CLAUSES.

5.1.6 Negation of the verbal phrase

As the verbal phrase is the obligatory core argument of the verbal clause, it may be argued that negating the clause is negating the verbal phrase. See 6.4 NEGATION OF THE CLAUSE.

5.2 The nominal phrase

There are three main types of nominal phrase based on their internal structure: simple nominal phrase, possessive nominal phrase and co-ordinate nominal phrase.

The nominal phrase may function as subject or object, or as an instrumental, temporal or locative argument in a verbal clause. It may also function in a verbless topic-comment clause as either the topic or the comment. The function of the nominal phrase is marked by word order and/or case markers.

I will describe the formal structure of the nominal phrase in 5.2.2 and the function in 5.2.3. However, before that, it will facilitate the description to recognise a level in between the noun and the nominal phrase. I will call it the noun group.

5.2.1 The noun group

The noun group is a category between the noun and the nominal phrase. It may consist of just a noun, e.g. *moso* 'house', but that noun may be optionally **preceded** by a modifier. This modifier may be another noun, an adjective or a clause. A generic-specific relationship is often expressed as a noun group (809)-(811).

Structure - Noun group

NG   →   (N/ADJ/RC)   N

809) *sio isusu*
      bird pigeon
      'pigeon'

810) *wai hoso*
      pig horse
      'horse'

811) *awaki dihi*
      knife child
      'small knife' (literally: 'a knife child')

812) *ebele moso̠*
      new   house
      'a new house'

---

[137] As the quote verbs are clitics, the whole quote is verbalised.

If the modifier is a clause, it expresses one kind of relative clause (see 6.5 THE RELATIVE CLAUSE).

813) ***ṯia-l-e   mosǫ***
     sleep-IRR-FUT house
     'sleeping mat'

814) ***dabai dege-di o***
     work do-HAB man
     '(a) worker'

The **head noun** may not be expressed, but only implied.

815) ***Ą   dabai dege-l-i=kôu   i.***
     1s work do-IRR-NFUT=LOC go.NFUT
     'I went to (**where we**) are working.'

816) ***Edolo i   i   hague-i.***
     Edolo yesterday go.NFUT come-NFUT
     '(**The people**), who yesterday went to Edolo, came (back).'

Defining the noun group will make the description of one of the simple nominal phrase types easier: Instead of having a noun as head, they will have a noun group.

5.2.2 Structure of the nominal phrase

There are three types of nominal phrases: the simple nominal phrase 5.2.2.1, the possessive nominal phrase 5.2.2.2 and the co-ordinate nominal phrase 5.2.2.3.

5.2.2.1 Simple nominal phrase

The simple nominal phrase has two sub-types:

- a noun group as head
- a pronoun, demonstrative or question word as head

5.2.2.1.1 A noun group as head

A simple nominal phrase with a noun group as head may consist of just a noun group or be followed by one or two modifiers. More than two has not been observed in natural speech. The kind of modifiers that may occur are adjectives, numerals and quantifiers, demonstratives and relative clauses. The numeral *ṯa* 'one' functions as an indefinite article. A noun that is modified by a relative clause has not been observed to have any other modifiers except *ke* 'that', which is part of the relative clause construction (see 6.5 THE RELATIVE CLAUSE).

Structure I - Simple nominal phrase

NP$_I$ $\rightarrow$ NG   (ADJ/NUM/QNT)(x2)   (DEM)   (RC)

817) ***o***
     man
     'man'

818) ***Ą yukuei   sibigi bigi-l-i.***
     1s cloth   dirt wash-IRR-NFUT
     'I am washing **dirty clothes**.'

819) ***o   olôufei***
     man all.total
     'all people'

820) ***duo   kasagai olôufei***
     spirit bad   all.total
     'all bad spirits'

821) ***o   kasagai bolǫu***
     man bad   two
     'two bad men'

822) ***awaki mę   gofôu   bolǫ***   (noun group with two adjectives)
     knife tooth hard/strong good
     'a **good, sharp knife edge**'

823) **O   ta   i-l-i.**
      man   INDF   go-IRR-NFUT
      '**A man** is going.'

824) **o   ka=ha   tobo-u**
      man   that=GEN   say-NFUT
      '**that man** said, ...'

825) **o   damale=yodi-l-i   mei   ke+dia**
      man   true=IQV-IRR-NFUT   NEG   that+3PL
      'the non-believers'

5.2.2.1.2 A pronoun or question word as head

A simple nominal phrase may also have as its head a personal, emphatic or demonstrative pronoun, or the question words *koyo* 'who' and *kei* 'what'. If that is the case there can be no modifiers.

Structure II - Simple nominal phrase

NP$_{II}$ →   PRON/DEM/QW

826) **E   duwo.**
      3S sit
      '**He/she/it** is (here).'

827) **Kôu=me kei?**   **Koyo=ha   mo-l-ôu?**
      this=TOP what   who=GEN   get-IRR-NPST
      '**What is this**?'   '**Who** will get (it)?'

Plural personal pronouns may, however, be modified by *olôufei* 'all'.

828) **Dia olôufei   hagua-sige-i.**
      3PL all.total   come-DU/PL-NFUT
      '**They all** came.'

The following two examples have a theme slot in the beginning of each clause, filled by a personal pronoun. The subject of both clauses is an emphatic pronoun (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOTS).

829) **A   mayôu=nôu   tawa-i.**
      1S 1S.EMP=only   know-NFUT
      'I learnt **all by myself**.'

830) **di   diyôu=fei   i-me=be=ede   tobo-l-ôu   i.**
      1PL.IN   1PL.IN.EMP=total   go-HORT=TOP=OQV say-IRR-NPST   go.NFUT
      '… let us go **by ourselves** they suggested and said.'

See also Appendix II for co-occurrence restrictions with enclitics functioning in nominal phrases with pronouns as head.

5.2.2.2 Possessive nominal phrase

A possessive nominal phrase has a simple nominal phrase as head, preceded by another nominal phrase in the genitive case marked by the clitic *=ha*, or it may be preceded by a possessive pronoun. Pronoun copy is common with possession (833). It seems to be used for general emphasis.

831) **Godi=ha ta**
      God=GEN   word
      'God's Word'

832) **ma   mala=ha   dihi**
      1S.POSS   younger.sibling=GEN   child
      'my younger sibling's child'

833) **Moso kôu=me, dihi   ka=ha   e   moso.**
      house this=GEN child that=GEN 3S   house
      'This house, it is **the child's house**.'

834) **ne   adiôu**
      2S.POSS   mother
      'your mother'

835) ***ele   sa***
      1DU.EX land

      'the ground belonging to the two of us/our country'

The head of a possessive nominal phrase may be deleted. When that happens the genitive case marker -*ha̱* is followed by the enclitic =*le* 'independent possessive'. The genitive suffix itself is de-nasalised. The independent possessive suffix does not function together with the genitive pronouns.

836) ***Di   f̱i=be   koyo=ha=le?   Yesu=ha=le.***
      1PL.IN soul=TOP who=GEN=INDP.POSS Jesus=GEN=INDP.POSS

      '**Whose** are our souls? **Jesus'**.'

The enclitic =*le* may also, but rarely, be used for emphasis even if the possessed item is mentioned.

837) ***ma̱   mala̱=ha=le   dihi***
      1S.POSS younger.sibling=GEN=INDP.POSS child

      'my younger sibling's child'

5.2.2.3 Co-ordinate nominal phrase

A co-ordinate nominal phrase is a combination of simple nominal phrases and/or possessive nominal phrases. They are co-ordinated by the enclitic =*bôu*, occurring at the end of each phrase within the co-ordinate phrase.

838) ***A̱=bôu Geẖe=bôu i-l-e.***
      1S=and Gehen=and go-IRR-FUT

      'Gehen **and** I will go.'

The co-ordinating enclitic =*bôu* may actually be used to co-ordinate any kind of phrases.

839) ***I=bôu   we=bôu   hue̱i   hiye=do ṯo-u-l-u.***
      yesterday=and day.before.yesterday=and water big=INT wash-BLTV-IRR-NFUT

      'Yesterday **and** the day before it rained very much (and it is still raining).'

Accompaniment is a variant of co-ordination, where only the last nominal phrase is marked by =*bôu*.

840) ***A̱   na̱=bôu i-l-e.***
      1S 2S=and go-IRR-FUT

      'I am going **with** you.'

In a text most co-ordinated nominal phrases finish off with the pro-verb ***de***.

841) ***Hebe ha-i   ko̱u=me yo=bôu   siya=bôu   bisope=bôu+de   dala.***
      tree cut-NFUT this=TOP banana=and sugarcane=and pineapple=and+PROV be/have

      'This garden has bananas **and** sugarcane **and** pineapples.'

842) ***E̱   e   sasa̱i   Maria=bôu+de   i***
      3S 3S woman Mary=and+PROV   go

      'He went **with** his wife Mary, ...'

5.2.3 Function of the nominal phrase

The nominal phrase may function as subject or object, including locative object and recipient, or as an instrumental, temporal or locative argument in a verbal clause. It may also function in a verbless topic-comment clause, either as the topic or the comment. The function of the nominal phrase is marked by word order and/or case markers.

5.2.3.1 Word order

Normal word order in Konai is SOV, and normal word order is sometimes the only indication of whether a nominal phrase functions as subject or object, though a noun higher up the scale of animacy would normally be taken to be the subject regardless of word order.

843) ***dilie   o   ṯa   ta̱   ṯobo-u***
      3DU   man   INDF   talk   say-NFUT
      SUBJECT **OBJECT**   OBJECT

      '**the two of them** said to **a man**, ...'

844) ***Oʊ̂***   ***o***   *hei=ye*   *ha-l-adi.*
      sago   man   axe=INS   cut-IRR-PROS
      OBJECT   **SUBJECT**

> '(A) **sago** (palm) is just about to be cut down by (a) **man** with (an) axe.' (Translating this example as a passive, because of the reversed word order of subject and object, is the truest free translation into English.)

However, in normal speech the subject and/or the object is/are often marked in some way. Marking of case is one such way. This will be described below. Another strategy is pronoun copy of the main-participant, who is usually the subject. This will be dealt with in the section about participant reference (see 8.7.3.7 PRONOUN COPY).

5.2.3.2 Case

There are three case markers, each with a fairly broad function. They are:

- ={*ha̲*}   'genitive/control'
- ={*ye*}   'instrumental/non-control'
- ={*kôu*}   'locative/recipient'

The case markers occur on phrase or clause level. The genitive case marker does mark possession, and the instrumental case marker does mark an instrumental nominal phrase, but both have broader functions. The locative case marker marks different locative functions, as well as recipient.

There is possibly a fourth case marker:

- =*kôuge*   'ablative'

It is made up of two enclitics and sometimes has the meaning 'from'.

5.2.3.2.1 The genitive case

The genitive case marker is the enclitic ={*ha̲*}. It has a wide area of usage, the meaning typically indicating some degree of control. It never occurs on a nominal phrase where the head is a personal pronoun. Nor does it occur with a plural subject. It has a phonological variant *-ha̲* (see 5.2.2.2 POSSESSIVE NOMINAL PHRASE).

The genitive case is used to indicate the following relationships:

- possession
- agent in control
- time
- reason

Genitive of possession
The genitive case marker marks a possessor as described in the section 5.2.2.2 POSSESSIVE NOMINAL PHRASE. It is obligatory, if the possessor is expressed as a noun.

845) ***sas̲ai̲=ha̲***   *ye*
      woman=GEN   stringbag
      '**the woman's** stringbag'

846) ***ma̲***   ***owôu=ha̲***   ***e̲*** ***ma̲=ha̲***   *adiôu*
      1S.POSS   older.sister=GEN   3S   husband=GEN   mother
      '**my older sister's husband's** mother'

847) ***o***   ***ka=ha̲***   *dihi*   ***o***   ***ka=ha=le***
      man   that=GEN   child   man that=GEN=INDP.POSS
      '**that man's** child'   '**that man's**'

Genitive of agent in control

The genitive case marker is used for an animate agent, who is in control of a situation. It is only used for the singular, never for dual or plural. The controlling agent has a pivotal role in what happens.

The control the agent exercises may be on two levels:

- overall control
- local control

The control may be **an overall control**, wielded by God, a government official, a father or an older brother. He (or she) may not be a main character of a story, but (s)he has a pivotal function in the theme of the story/conversation. Often this kind of agent is referred to with a proper noun or a kinship noun.

In daily conversation, this function is used a lot. In storytelling it is used sparingly, perhaps once in a short story, often marking someone in authority over the story teller.

848) ***Godi=ha*** *sa   sibige   o   sasai   olôufei   solôu=do hiye=do dege-môu,*
      God=GEN   land essence man woman   all.total heart=INT big=INT do.FUT-PFV

      yôu   e   Dihi   ta=nôu=fei   ke   di=mokôu ne-i.
      3S.EMP 3S child one=only=total that 1PL.IN=LOC give-NFUT

      'Because **God** loved all people in the world very much, (he) gave his one& only Son to us (incl.).'

849) *Gamani   dia o **J.K.=ha** sele   a 60 kina*
      government 3PL man J.K.=GEN money 1S 60 kina

      te-l-e   ne-i.
      remove-IRR-FUT give-NFUT

      'One of their government officials, **J.K.** removed K60 and gave (it to) me.'

850) ***Ma   aye=ha*** *tobo-u*
      1S.POSS father=GEN say-NFUT

      '**My father** said, …'

851) ***Sodipae=ha*** *nala-i.*
      Sodipae=GEN write-NFUT

      '**Sodipae** wrote (it).'

The controlling agent is animate, but not necessarily human. Our one-time dog, partly Rottweiler, was seen as someone who controlled her environment, but she could not be blamed for everything.

852) ***ne so=ha*** *we-i*
      2S dog=GEN attack-NFUT

      '**your dog** bit (him/her)'

853) ***so ta=ha*** *we-i*
      dog INDF=GEN attack-NFUT

      '**another dog** bit (him/her)'

If the **control is limited to part of a story**, like that of a minor participant, the genitive case marker is used together with the demonstrative pronoun *ke* 'that', generating the form *kaha* 'that in control' (see 2.7.2 MINOR VOWEL HARMONY: *ke* 'that'). In this case, the agent cannot be referred to with a proper or kinship noun. A common noun must be used, sometimes together with a relative clause. In pig hunting stories, this locally controlling agent is often a dog or the pig as in the next two examples. The first example is from a story, where the author is the main character, but two of his maternal uncles are the overall controlling agents. One of them is named Asele.

854) ***Asele=ha*** *hebe sugu+tôu tafala-l-i,*
      Asele=GEN tree top+up stand-IRR-NFUT

      wai   ka=ha *so sese-l-e   hagua fogôu   i-môu taha-i=be*
      pig   that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT come leave.for go.NFUT shoot-NFUT=TOP

      '**Asele** was standing up in a tree top until **the pig** came and chased the dog(s) and (as they were) passing by (Asele) shot at (the pig) ...'

855) *I-l-i-gi   **so ka=ha**   wai tigo-u-môu   i-l-e   dugu=be*
      go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ dog that=GEN pig bark-NFUT-PFV go-IRR-FUT see.NFUT=TOP

      '(He) went until **the dog** barked at a pig, when (he) immediately went and saw that ...'

856) ***Godi=ha̱ ta̱=be tawa-ga-i   o ka=ha̱=no̱û i-ba=si***
    God=GEN talk=TOP know-DU/PL-NFUT man that=GEN=only go.NFUT-PFV.IRR-CNTR

    bolo=fe̱i. Mo̱û o=ye i-l-e=be
    good=total nothing man=**INS** go-IRR-FUT=TOP

    'But **the man who knows God's Word**, if he goes (he) will be OK. When **a man without** (that knowledge), goes ...'

In the previous example the man lacking the knowledge is marked by the instrumental case marker =***ye***, which is also used for unimportant agents. However, even an agent, seemingly out of control, may be marked by ***kaha̱*** 'that in control' like in the next example. As long as you are seen as being able to make a choice, you may be talked about as controlling the situation, even though you do not make the best of choices.

857) ***Moso̱ e̱ gofo̱û   mei. Yo=be o moso̱ ke̱ tege-i***
    house 3S hard/strong NEG base=TOP man house that make-NFUT

    o ka=ha̱ hebe tatabai dege-i mo̱û+ma̱ tege-i.
    man that=GEN tree soft do-NFUT get+put make-NFUT

    '(The) house (is) not strong. The reason (is) that **the man, who built the house,** brought soft timber and built.'

The use of the genitive case marker for a controlling agent may have **developed out of an ergative case marking**.[138] Other **Bosavi languages** (Grosh 2004, Logan 2008) do have ergative. In *Kalai*, when the genitive does occur in its controlling capacity, it is usually on the subject of a transitive-like clause, but there are exceptions, like in the following examples.

858) ***Sasa̱i soboude ko̱û=me ... e̱ mogo=be fogo̱û i.   Ke-ge-mo̱û e̱***
    woman old.lady this=TOP ... 3S friend=TOP leave go.NFUT that-VBR-PFV 3S

    mogo baha dala.   ... E̱ mogo=ha̱ i-l-i   ko=ko̱û baha dala.
    friend look be/have ... 3S friend=GEN go-IRR-NFUT that=LOC look be/have

    'Concerning this old woman ... her friend leaving went. Having become like that, (she) waits for her friend. Where **her friend goes** there (she) waits.'

859) ***Ke-le=ge   so ka=ha̱ dihi guoko̱û   duwo de-ma-mo̱û,***
    that-A.LOCR=F.CNTR dog that=GEN child stomach.LOC sit PROV-ISQ-PFV

    dihi ta ma̱-mo̱û dugu=be
    child INDF put-PFV see.NFUT=TOP

    'At that time, **that dog,** after having been/**sat** pregnant, having given birth to/put a pup, saw that ...'

860) ***O ta̱=ha̱ [Tabubil=ko̱û e̱ mogo dala-ba]   i-ba=si,***
    man INDF=GEN Tabubil=LOC 3S friend be/have-PFV.IRR go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR

    e̱ mogo=ha̱ moso̱=ko̱û tia-l-e   ...
    3S friend=GEN house=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT ...

    Ke̱=no̱û=si o ta [e̱ mogo mei] ka=ha̱ i-ba=be,
    that=only=CNTR man INDF 3S friend NEG that=GEN go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP

    e̱=me moso̱=ko̱û tia-l-e   mei.
    3S=TOP house=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT NEG

    'But if **a man** [having (a) friend in Tabubil] **goes**, (he) will sleep in his friend's house ... But if **another man**, [not (having a) friend] **goes**, he will not sleep in (a) house.'

Genitive of time expressions

The genitive case marker, again together with the demonstrative pronoun *ke̱* 'that', also occurs on some nominal phrases functioning as temporal phrases. It is used to indicate exact time, e.g. this week, next week etc.

861) ***fula ko̱û=ma̱=ha̱ hagua-l-e***
    week this=TOP=GEN come-IRR-FUT

    '(he) will come **this week**'

---

[138] Ergative-absolutive case marking: the subject of a transitive clause is marked differently from a subject of an intransitive clause. The subject of the intransitive clause has instead the same marking as the object of the transitive clause.

862) **Sasama**   **ka=ha**   Ukarumpa=kôu migi-l-e-môu
      ring.finger that=GEN   Ukarumpa=LOC   come.down-IRR-FUT-PFV

      '**That Tuesday**, having landed at Ukarumpa ...'

Genitive of reason

The genitive case marker, again together with the demonstrative pronoun *ke* 'that', may mark a clause as the controlling reason for what the main clause is expressing. The word *ka=ha* (that=GEN) may express reason,[139] on its own, but it may also be elaborated on within the medial verb system, as seen in two of the following examples. See also 7.3.3.1.1.

The expression with the controlling *kaha* is usually translated 'because', but it could equally well be translated as '... and that controls the fact' (863).

863) *E   ke*   *dege-i* **ka=ha**   *tewe hiye=do mo-u.*
      3S that do-NFUT that=GEN know big=INT get-NFUT

      '**Because** he did like that, (he) got big knowledge.'/'He did like that, **and that controls the fact that** (he) got big knowledge.'

864) *Dahamo tisa   hagu=ya[140]   mei **ka=ha**   **dege-môu,** duôu   aye   ke+dia*
      Dahamo   teacher come=SUBJ   NEG that=GEN do-PFV   mother father that+3PL

      ...die   sisigo=be   fi-l-e-môu,   ilo Suabi=kôu i-l-e,   ilo=be
      ...3PL.POSS children=TOP divide-IRR-FUT-PFV part Suabi=LOC go-IRR-FUT part=TOP

      Hawenai   i-l-e
      Hawenai go-IRR-FUT

      '**Because** there is no Dahamo teacher coming, the parents having divided up their children, some will go to Suabi; some will go to Hawenai ...'

865) *Tabubil=be o   su=do, kalo su=do, kege-i   **ka=ha**   uwo=be hiye=do.*
      Tabubil=TOP man many=INT car   many=INT that-VBR-NFUT that=GEN noise=TOP big=INT

      'Tabubil has a lot of people, a lot of cars, **because of that** there is a lot of noise.'

866) *Nele   hagua-l-e=be   date 3 o 4 ka=ha=ge,   nele Edolo=kôu hagua-ma.*
      2DU   come-IRR-FUT=TOP   date 3 or 4 that=GEN=F.CNTR 2DU Edolo=LOC come-DU/PL

      *Yo=be   a=me hagi   hiye=do dala   **ka=ha**   **dege-i-môu.**
      base=TOP 1S=TOP heavy big=INT be/have that=GEN do-NFUT-PFV

      'Concerning that you two will come, come to Edolo on the 3rd or the 4th. **The reason is** that I now have (a) very big problem.'

Next example is unusual in that the demonstrative is lacking in the construction.

867) *sokôulôu duwo-di=**ha** e yo=be tewe   môu-l-a-môu.*
      school   sit-HAB=GEN 3S base=TOP know   get-IRR-SUBJ-PFV

      '... being in school **ITS reason** (is) to get knowledge.'

5.2.3.2.2 The instrumental case

The instrumental case is marked by the clitic *={ye}*. It contrasts with the genitive case, marked by *=ha*, which includes control, by its lack of control. It comprises instrument, props,[141] inanimate and non-referential agents, as well as means. In the Mountain dialect it also marks certain time phrases. It has a variant *=e*.

Instrument

868) *Na   **hei=ye**   dou   hebe-l-i.*
      2S axe=INS   fire carry-IRR-NFUT

      'You are cutting firewood **with an axe**.'

Props/inanimate/non-referential agent

869) *O   **ta=e**   hagi   a=mokôu hague-i   dala*
      man INDF=INS   heavy 1S=LOC   come-NFUT be/have

      'A man brought me (the) problems (I) have.'

---

[139] There are other ways to express reason-result, not involving the genitive case marker.

[140] Foothill dialect.

[141] See 8.7.6.1.3 PROPS.

870) *Ne̱   moso̱ **dou**=**ye**   na̱-i.*
      2s.POSS house fire=INS   eat-NFUT
      'Your house **burnt** down.'

871) ***o***=***ye***   *hu*
      man=INS   marry
      'marri**ed**' (about a woman)

Means

872) ***Patolo   i-di***=***ye***=*ge*   *ko̱u   tewe.*
      patrol go-HAB=INS=F.CNTR   prior know
      '(We) know **by habitually having gone on patrols**.' (Mountain dialect)

873) ***Hiye O***=***ha̱   dege-i***=***ye*** *ni̱ misiho-l-o   duwo-l-o.*
      big man=GEN do-NFUT=INS 2PL rest-IRR-FUT sit-IRR-FUT
      '... **by what the Lord has done** you will have rest.'

Time

In the Mountain dialect the enclitic =*ye* would be better named the "oblique" case, as it also derives the days of the week from certain body part[142] words.

874) *Sasafe̱i*=***ye***=*ge*
      little.finger=INS=F.CNTR
      'On Monday ...'

875) *Hou*=***ye***=*be...*
      thumb=INS=TOP
      'On that Friday ...'

876) *dio*=***e***
      bone/lower.arm=INS
      'Sunday ...'

5.2.3.2.3 The locative case

The locative case is used for locative, allative and recipient. That includes some objects of traditional transitive and ditransitive clauses (885), (886), (882), (883) and locatives and allatives in traditional intransitive clauses (877)-(881). There are three allomorphs of this case marker. The enclitic =*ko̱u* is used when the head of the nominal phrase is a noun group and =*moko̱u* is used when the head is a pronoun. The third one, =*mako̱u*, is used together with emphatic pronouns.

Locative

877) *O   ta   **moso̱**=***ko̱u*** *duwo.*
      man INDF house=LOC sit
      'A man is sitting **in the house**.'

878) *Dio̱u   a̱*=***moko̱u*** *duwo.*
      mosquito 1s=LOC   sit
      'The mosquito is sitting **on me**.'

Allative

879) *A̱ ma̱   moso̱*=***ko̱u*** *i-l-i.*
      1s 1s.POSS house=LOC go-IRR-NFUT
      'I'm going **home**.'

880) *A na̱*=***moko̱u*** *hague-i.*
      1s 2s=LOC   come-NFUT
      'I came **to you**.'

881) (*mala*)   *... **Yo̱u***=***mako̱u*** *fiyo-u-mo̱u*
      (arrow) *...* 3s.EMP=LOC   fall-NFUT-PFV
      'While (the arrow) fell (back) **on himself** (the shooter), ...'

---

[142] See 4.4.2.1 TRADITIONAL ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Recipient

882) ***Godi=kôu*** *ne̱-i̱.*
God=LOC   give-NFUT
'(he) gave (it) **to God**'

883) *dabai* ***di=mokôu*** *ne̱-i̱.*
work   1PL.IN=LOC give-NFUT
'gave work **to us**'

Contrasting patient and recipient

Patient is an unmarked case. A verb like *dugu* 'see' may take either a patient or a recipient as object.

884) *A̱=me* **ṉa̱** *dugu=yo   mei.*
1S=TOP 2S see=INDC   NEG
'I do not **see you**.'

885) *A̱=me* ***ṉa̱=mokôu*** *dugu=yo   mei.*
1S=TOP 2S=LOC   see=INDC   NEG
'I do not **look at you**.'

886) ***Foto=kôu*** *dugu.*
photo=LOC see
'Look **at the photo**.'

Also note 'about'

887) *Jona   aso̱ difi+ya   diogu.   E   ko=kôu=ge   fi+ma̱-i̱=be,*
Jonah sun heat+road shade.NFUT 3S that=LOC=F.CNTR   soul+put-NFUT=TOP

*o   Niniba   tie   o   ke+dia̱=**mokôu*** *fi+ma̱-i̱*
man Nineveh sleep man that+3PL=LOC   soul+put-NFUT
'Jonah was shaded from the heat of the sun. From that (circumstance) he thought **about** the people living in Nineveh. '

5.2.3.2.4 The pseudo ablative case

The ablative case, if there is one in Konai, is marked by the combined enclitic *=kôu=ge* (LOC=F.CNTR). One of its meanings is 'from'.

888) *ôu   ha-i   ko=**kôu=ge**   wai ta so ka=ha̱ tigo-u-môu   du.*
sago cut-NFUT that=LOC=F.CNTR pig INDF dog that=GEN bark-NFUT-PFV   hear.NFUT
'... **from** the place of (the) cut down sago (palm), (I) heard the dog barking at a pig.'

However, the basic meaning of this double enclitic is more general in meaning. It establishes the general area, where something happens; a **'point of departure'** for whatever happens in a story. This interpretation seems to work for both of the following examples, which are introductory sentences in two stories.

889) *Ei   Dulo   o̱   ko=**kôu=ge**,   James=bôu Asele=bôu ei*
1PL.EX Dulo mouth.of.river that=LOC=F.CNTR James=and Asele=and 1PL.EX

so   ti-l-e   igiya-i   sulugua-l-i   du
dog   call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT walk.around-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT hear.NFUT
'We (excl.), **at** the mouth of the (river) Dulo, (i.e.) James, Asele and I called up the dogs and went; we walked around until (we) heard ...'

890) *Afu=do   Tinahai=**kôu=ge** duwo-l-i   dugu=be   a̱=me hegie*
earlier=INT Tinahai=LOC=F.CNTR sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP 1S=TOP hungry

dege-i-môu dugu.   A̱ ke-ge-i-môu   kiyei   ka   i-l-e-môu
do-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT 1S that-VBR-NFUT-PFV pandanus look.for go-IRR-FUT-PFV
'Earlier, (I) was **in** Tinahai until (I) realised I was hungry. Being like that, I having gone to look for pandana fruit, ...'

The following example may be understood but is considered ungrammatical.

891) *<u>A</u> sa   Dahamo=**k<u>ôu</u>**=**ge** fene+ya   hague-i.
     1s land   Dahamo=LOC=F.CNTR airplane+road come-NFUT
     'I came ***from** Dahamo by plane.'

The notion of "from", in this context, is more easily expressed by a verb *t<u>ô</u>ufog<u>ô</u>u* 'leave'.

892) <u>A</u> sa   Dahamo **t<u>ô</u>ufog<u>ô</u>u** fene+ya   hague-i.
     1s land   Dahamo leave   airplane+road come-NFUT
     '**Leaving** Dahamo I came by plane.'

5.2.4 Relative order of enclitics with the nominal phrase

Apart from the case enclitics, there are several other enclitics functioning with the nominal phrase. See 3.6.1.2 LIMITERS, 3.6.1.3 The INTENSIFIER =*do* and 3.6.1.4 The CO-ORDINATING ENCLITIC =*b<u>ô</u>u*. They occur in the following relative order:

(Intensifier)	Case	Limiter$_I$	(Intensifier)	Limiter$_{II}$	Conjunction	(Intensifier)
=*do*	=*h<u>a</u>*, =*k<u>ô</u>u*, =*ye*	=*n<u>ô</u>u*	=*do*	=*f<u>ei</u>*, =*ne*	=*b<u>ô</u>u*	=*do*
intensifier	genitive/control instrumental locative	only	intensifier	total also	and/with/also	intensifier

893) yo   bol<u>ou</u>=**n<u>ô</u>u**=**do**=**f<u>ei</u>**
     banana two=only=INT=total
     '(a) **total of only** two banana (plants)!'

894) sio   bol<u>o</u>=**f<u>ei</u>**=**do**
     bird good=total=INT
     '(a) **very, very** good bird'

895) midih<u>o</u> ka=**h<u>a</u>**=**n<u>ô</u>u**=**f<u>ei</u>**
     face   that=GEN=only=total
     '**caused only** (and) **totally by** that kind of behaviour ...'

If the head of the nominal phrase is a pronoun or a question word, there are restrictions, see APPENDIX II.

5.2.5 Negation of nominal phrase

Nominal phrases are negated by just adding the adverb *mei* 'negative'. The addition of the negative to the phrase makes it a verbless clause (see 6.2.2 EQUATIVE/DESCRIPTIVE VERBLESS CLAUSES).

896) <u>A</u>=me **t<u>a</u>**   **mei.**
     1s=TOP talk   NEG
     'I have **nothing to say**.'

897) O   **mei**=**do.**
     man NEG=INT
     '(There are) **no** people (here) **at all**.'

5.3 The modifier phrase

The modifier phrase functions as a peripheral argument in the verbal clause. It may also fill the comment slot in a verbless clause. There are two structures: one or two adjectives[143] or one or two adverbs. The second structure includes modifier phrases with locative and temporal meaning. But see also how a nominal phrase may express time and location in 5.2.3 FUNCTION OF THE NOMINAL PHRASE, 5.2.3.2.1 THE GENITIVE CASE: Genitive of time expressions, 5.2.3.2.2 THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE: Time, as well as 8.4 FOCUS OF CONTRAST: Temporal marking.

Structure I - Modifier phrase

MP$_I$ →   ADJ (ADJ)

898) Dihi   **hiye** goso-u-l-u.
     child big   cry-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
     'The child is crying **loudly**.'

---

[143] See 4.4 ADJECTIVES.

899) *K<u>ôu</u>=me **kasagai** **hiye**=do.*
this=TOP bad   big=INT
'This is **very bad**.'

Structure II - Modifier phrase

MP_{II} → ADV (ADV)

900) *<u>E</u> dobog<u>ôu</u> **tage** tige-i.*
3S hand   over tie-NFUT
'He is folding his arms (**one over the other**).'

901) *N<u>a</u> **hob<u>ô</u>u** gu<u>e</u> dege-da.*
2S can   fear do-PROH
'You **canno**t be afraid.'

902) *Hebe ebele ha-i yo **you** fo-u-l-u moso-u=yo mei.*
tree new cut-NFUT banana not.yet rise-BLTV-IRR-NFUT bear.fruit-NFUT=INDC NEG
'The banana trees in the new garden have not borne (any) fruit **yet**.'

903) *K<u>e</u>=n<u>ô</u>u=si yo ta=n<u>ô</u>u ta=be mu-gu-l-i mei, **you**.*
that=only=CNTR banana INDF=only INDF=TOP go.down-OF-IRR-NFUT NEG not.yet
'But one of the banana plants does not carry fruit **yet**.'

904) *12 kolok **you**.*
12 o'clock not.yet
'It is **not** 12 o'clock **yet**.'

905) *M<u>a</u> mos<u>o</u> **ku-h<u>e</u>**.*
1S.POSS house this-P.LOCR
'My house is **here**.' (**pointing**)

906) *<u>E</u>=me **kôu-le** mei.*
3S=TOP this-A.LOCR NEG
'He is not **here**.'

907) ***Hebe sugu+lu** tia-di-l-i.*
tree top+inside sleep-HAB-IRR-NFUT
'He habitually sleeps in/**inside the tree tops**.'

908) *gamani o ka=h<u>a</u> **mos<u>o</u>=kôu+lu** folo-ga-i*
government man that=GEN house=LOC+inside go.up-DU/PL-NFUT
'they went up **inside** that government official's **house**'

909) ***Haba** dege.*
but.PFV.IRR do
'Do (it) **again**.'

910) *<u>A</u>=me **idiba** **gusugu=do** i-l-e.*
1S=TOP tomorrow morning=INT go-IRR-FUT
'I will go **early tomorrow morning**.'

911) *Salale ke-ge, sabiye-i **gusubu** hu<u>ei</u> te-i.*
Saturday that-VBR be.morning-NFUT morning water wash-NFUT
'On Saturday, **in the morning** it rained.' (Mountain dialect)

6. CLAUSES

The clause functions in the sentence. There are two types based on structure: verbal and verbless. Verbless clauses are analysed as containing a topic and a comment. Verbal clauses are **not** analysed in that way, though perhaps, they could be with the subject being the topic and the rest of the clause being the comment.

Verbal clauses are of two classes based on function: medial and final. Final clauses contain a final verb, expressing absolute tense and can stand alone. Medial clauses cannot usually stand alone, as they express a relative tense and depend on the verb in the final clause to be understood correctly. Structural differences are position in the sentence, intonation and conjugation of the verb in the verbal phrase of the clause.

The relative clause will also be described in this section.

6.1 Verbal clauses

Konai is an SOV language with a fairly strict word order, though rearrangements are possible. Verbal clauses have one verbal phrase as an obligatory head. No other argument is obligatory though one or more often do occur. In isolated one-clause sentences, one to four arguments per clause would commonly occur. Clauses with as many as six arguments have been observed. In stories/texts, where multi-clause sentences often occur, sequential clauses often contain only a verbal phrase. Some clauses have a "theme" slot preceding the subject (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOTS)

Verbal clauses may be medial or final. Medial clauses have level or slightly rising intonation. Final clauses usually have falling intonation but may be level, if a final clause occurs in mid-sentence.

I will first give examples of simple final clauses in one-clause sentences (6.1.1). A detailed structure of the clause will be given in the section where transitivity is discussed (6.1.2). Medial clauses will not be looked at in isolation, but in 6.1.4 I will look at medial and final clauses in long sentences as they normally occur in narrative stories.

6.1.1 Simple final clauses

The structure of the simple final clause is given below. The core argument is the verbal phrase. As will be discussed in section 6.1.2 TRANSITIVITY, there is no real difference between a transitive and an intransitive clause. Therefore the only nominal phrase that has been given a name in this preliminary formula is the nominal phrase subject.

Structure – Simple Final Clause

CLAUSE   →   (NPs)   (NP)(x2)   (MP)   VP

                          ↑_____↑   (the modifier phrase may occur in different places; compare (916) with (918))

912)   *I-me.*
       go-HORT
       VP
       'Let's go!'

913)   *A*   *idiba*   *i-l-e.*
       1s   tomorrow   go-IRR-FUT
       NPs   **MP**   **VP**
       'I will go tomorrow.'

914)   *Haba=ge*   *dugu-l-o.*
       but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR   see-IRR-FUT
       MP   **VP**
       'See you later!'

915)   *Na*   *kuguo*   *Bimin=kôu*   *sa-gi-l-e.*
       2s   paper   Bimin=LOC   put.inside-OF-IRR-FUT
       NPs   **NP**   **NP**   **VP**
       'You will send a letter to Bimin.' (implied: put inside (a mailbag to go on an airplane))

916)   *E=me*   *Kalai*   *ta*   *hiye=do*   *tewe.*
       3s=TOP   Konai   talk   big=INT   know
       NPs   **NP**   **MP**   **VP**
       'He knows Konai well.'

917)   *Na*   *hei=ye*   *dou*   *hebe-l-i.*
       2s   axe=INS   fire   carry-IRR-NFUT
       NPs   **NP**   **NP**   **VP**
       'You are chopping fire wood.'

918)   *Nele*   *a=mokôu*   *haba*   *chalk*   *ta*   *ne-ma=be.*
       2DU   1s=LOC   but.PFV.IRR   chalk   INDF   give-DU/PL=TOP
       NPs   **NP**   **MP**   **NP**   **VP**
       'Please give me some more chalk.'

919)   *E*   *mosole*   *obôu=kôu*   *sele*   *ne-i.*
       3s   ship   owner=LOC   money   give-NFUT
       NPs   **NP**   **NP**   **VP**
       'He gave money to the captain.'

920) *O   e   dabai   di=mokôu   ne-i.*
      man   3s   work   1PL.IN=LOC give-NFUT
      NPs   **NP**   **NP**   **VP**

      'A man, he gave work to us.'

6.1.2 Transitivity

It is possible to distinguish between intransitive, transitive and ditransitive clauses. **Based on the examples in the previous section only**, the basic structures would be as below. Bold means core arguments. A parenthesis means non-obligatory. For changes in word order see 6.1.3 CHANGES IN WORD ORDER.

Intransitive: (**NPs**)   (MP)   **VP**   (912), (913)

Transitive: (**NPs**) (**NPo**) (NP_LOC/NP_INS/MP) (**NPo**) **VP**   (914), (915), (916), (917)

Ditransitive: (**NPs**) **NPo**   (**NP_REC**)   (MP)   (**NPo**) **VP**   (918), (919), (920)

As can be seen from (915) and (918) a locative and a recipient nominal phrase are marked the same.

Also, the ordering of arguments is not absolute, as can be seen from (920) versus (918), (919). In fact, for a ditransitive clause there is probably no "basic" order of arguments. More pragmatic reasons prevail. Also in the transitive clause, the place of the object is not fixed.

So even though it is possible to distinguish between intransitive, transitive and ditransitive clauses, it is equally possible to claim that there are no formal differences, as the following examples show.

921) *A   moso=kôu   hague-i.*
      1s   house=LOC   come-NFUT
      NPs   **NPLoc**   **VP**

      'I **came to** the house.'

922) *A   na=mokôu   hague-i.*
      1s   2s=LOC   come-NFUT
      NPs   **NPLoc**   **VP**

      'I **came to** you.'

923) *A   na=mokôu   ne-i.*
      1s   2s=LOC   give-NFUT
      NPs   **NPLoc**   **VP**

      'I **gave** (it) **to** you.'

924) *E   hegie   hiye=do   goso-u-l-u.*
      3s   hungry   big=INT   cry-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
      NPs   **NPo**   **VP**

      'He is **crying from** severe hunger.'

925) *Rumginae=kôu   Tom   ele   kos   i.*
      Rumginae=LOC   Tom   1DU.EX course   go
      Theme   NPs   **NPo**   **VP**

      'Tom and I **went to a course** in Rumginae.'

926) *Dia   moso   ya-l-i.*
      3PL   house   play-IRR-NFUT
      NPs   **NPo**   **VP**

      'They are **playing in** the house.'

927) *Dia   bolo   ya-l-i.*
      3PL   ball   play-IRR-NFUT
      NPs   **NPo**   **VP**

      'They are **playing with** the ball.'

928) *Yomogôu-môu=be* **elementary** *duwo-di.* **Elementary** *duwo* *de-ma*
      start-PFV=TOP   elementary   sit-HAB   elementary   sit   PROV-ISQ
      Theme   **NPo**   **VP**   **NPo**   **VP**

      mei dege-i-môu=be, **community** **sokôulôu** *duwo-di.*
      NEG   do-NFUT-PFV=TOP community   school   sit-HAB
      VP   **NPo**   **VP**

      'To start with, (they) go to/**sit in** elementary school. Having finished going to/**sitting in** elementary school
      (they) go to/**sit in** community school.'

929) *di̠a moso̠=kôu duwo*
      3PL house=LOC sit
      NPs **NPLoc**   **VP**

      'they are **sitting in** the house'

930) *A̠   na̠   dugu.*
      1s   2s   see.NFUT
      NPs **NPo** **VP**

      '**I saw you**.'

931) *Na̠   foto=kôu   dugu.*
      2s   photo=LOC see.NFUT
      NPs **NPLoc**   **VP**

      '**Look at** the photo!'

A traditional intransitive clause with a nominal phrase expressing a location is usually marked by the locative case marker *=kôu/=mokôu* (921), (922), (929), but it does not need to be (925), (926), (928). The recipient in a traditional ditransitive clause is always marked by the locative case marker (923). The object in a traditional transitive clause is usually unmarked (927). A verb like *dugu* 'see/look', however, can take either a recipient or a patient as object (930), (931).

It appears then that although it is possible to distinguish intransitive, transitive and ditransitive clauses it does not give a true picture of how the language works. It is better to say that there are verbal clauses and by word order, case markers and also the object focus marker described in 4.1.7, you get the meanings associated with transitivity.

A traditional intransitive clause in English, like 'he cries' needs a preposition to be able to take an additional argument. In Konai, the verb *goso* 'cry' may take an object (924). This in itself only says that in Konai this verb is transitive, in the sense that it is able to take an object. This has no bearing on the discussion at hand, as languages differ in the set of verbs that are seen to be intransitive, transitive or ditransitive. It seems that the important part is this: if in a certain language many verbs may be anywhere on the transitive scale, depending on how they or their dependent arguments are marked, it is better not to make an artificial division between transitive and intransitive clauses. This seems to be the case in Konai.

Based on more data, a general formula for a verbal clause may be outlined as this:

Structure I - Verbal clause

$$\text{CLAUSE}_{\text{VERBAL}} \rightarrow \text{(NPs)} \quad \text{(MP)} \quad \text{(NPo)} \quad (\text{NP}_{\text{INS}}/\text{NP}_{\text{TEMP}}/\textbf{NP}_{\textbf{LOC}}) \quad \text{(MP)} \quad \textbf{(NPo)} \quad \text{(MP)} \quad \textbf{VP}$$

Bold means core argument. A parenthesis means non-obligatory. As can be seen then, only the verbal phrase is an obligatory core argument.

A recipient is a locative argument as seen above in e.g. (922), (923). The patient, NPo, and the recipient/locative argument, NP$_{\text{LOC}}$ may be switched as may most other non-obligatory arguments. You could say that the string (NPo)(NP$_{\text{INS}}$/NP$_{\text{TEMP}}$/NP$_{\text{LOC}}$) corresponds to the NP$_{\text{THEME}}$ in CLAUSE$_{\text{THEME II}}$ in 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOTS.

The modifier phrase MP may also occur in several places.

Though the subject normally precedes the object, the order may be switched without either of them being marked. The more animate entity would normally be regarded as subject regardless of word order. See 6.1.3 CHANGES IN WORD ORDER.

6.1.2.1 Additional note on transitivity

Even though there is no real difference between intransitive and transitive clauses, there are at least two ways to signal increased transitivity:

- object focus   4.1.7
- enhanced transitivity   5.1.3.8, 5.1.3.9

932) *a   sôu*   *a   sôu-go-u*
      door open   door open-OF-NFUT
      'open a door'   'an open**ed** door'

933) *E̲   dihi=ha̲   siho   goso-l-o+ma̲   su-l-u.*
      3S child=GEN mourning cry-IRR-FUT+put walk.around-IRR-NFUT
      '(She) is mourning and crying **violently** for her child and (she) wanders around.'

934) *e̲   haba   moso̲=kôu boho-l-ôu+ma̲   i-l-i.*
      3S but.PFV.IRR house=LOC turn-IRR-NPST+put   go-IRR-NFUT
      '... he turned around again and went **back** home.' (**a complete turn-around**)

6.1.3 Changes in word order

Arguments may be rearranged in a clause, but it is not very common, except for fronting certain arguments to a sentence initial slot at the beginning of a story, or at a major break in the story (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOT).

The two following examples are somewhat unusual. A nominal phrase, following the verbal phrase, sounds very much like an after-thought.

935) *Dia̲ olôufe̲i   na̲-ma   tia-sie-i,   dia̲   moso̲=kôu.*
      3PL all.total   eat-ISQ   sleep-DU/PL-NFUT 3PL   house=LOC
      NPs   **VP**   **VP**   **NP**
      'After eating they all slept, **in their house**.'

936) *Ma̲   dihi   Beny ne̲,   ikoke=be.*
      1S.POSS child Beny give   nail=TOP
      NP   **VP**   **NP**
      'Give (them) to my child Beny, **the nails I mean**.'

A more common rearrangement is switching the place of the subject and object, fronting the object, a strategy used to highlight a local point of interest. The clauses under scrutiny are marked in red. These constructions are not grammatical passives but have the same function, namely to make the object more salient. See 5.2.3.1 WORD ORDER.

937) (*kueya   dihi*) ... *bolo̲u ke-ge   to-l-ôu-môu,*
      cassowary child ... two   that-VBR hold-IRR-NPST-PFV

      ta   so=ye sese-l-e   i-l-e   wala   no̲-u-môu
      INDF   dog=INS follow-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT attack.IRR.FUT eat-NFUT-PFV
      NPo   **NPs**   **VP**

      dugu-o   fogôu   igiya-i.
      see-FUT   leave.for go.DU/PL-NFUT
      '... (we) having got hold of two (cassowary chickens), (we) saw **one** pursued and killed and eaten **by the dog**, and leaving we went.'

938) *ôu   ha-i   ko=kôu=ge   wai ta   so ka=ha̲   tigo-u-môu   du.*
      sago   cut-NFUT   that=LOC=F.CNTR pig INDF dog that=GEN bark-NFUT-PFV   hear.NFUT
                                         NPo   **NPs**   **VP**
      '... from the place of (the) cut down sago (palm), (I) heard that **a pig** was being barked at **by the dog**.'

6.1.4 Medial and final clauses in long sentences

Verbal clauses are of two classes based on function in the sentence: medial and final. Final clauses most commonly occur sentence final, and medial clauses usually do not. However, based on suffixation and on intonation, there are **two types of final clauses**:

> **Finite final clause**
- final verb suffixation on the verb, **falling** intonation, **sentence final**

> **Non-finite final clause**
- final verb suffixation on the verb +/- =*be* 'topic marker', **level** intonation, **mid-sentence**;[144]
  signals excitement and/or peak

---

[144] If the verbs are verbs of perception, this is often a place, where minor participants are introduced.

A medial clause ends on a rising or level intonation. Based on suffixation of the verb in the clause, there are **seven types of medial clauses**:

- Medial verbs with **tense/mood inflection**   +/- *-môu* 'perfective' or *-ba* 'perfective irrealis' (relative present or future tense/same or different subject)
- Medial verbs with ***-ma*** 'immediate sequence'   +/- *-môu* 'perfective' or *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'
- Medial verbs with ***-gi*** 'delayed sequence'

For details see 4.1.4.3 S<small>TRUCTURE OF MEDIAL VERBS</small>.

There are also four more medial clause types, where two discourse markers interact with two of the medial suffixes.

- *-môu=be*   'whenever'   (-PFV=TOP)
- *-ba=be*   'if/when'   (-PFV.IRR=TOP)
- *-môu=si*   'but when'   (-PFV=CNTR)
- *-ba=si*   'but if'   (-PFV.IRR=CNTR)

There is **one verbal phrase per clause**, medial or final. However, there are a few serial verbs, like the individuated plural form in (942). There is no clause break in the middle of those construction (see 5.1.3 S<small>ERIAL VERBS</small>).

In the examples below, the only nominal phrases that are marked for function are the ones functioning as subjects.

939) ***I-l-i-gi,   so   ka=ha   wai   tigo-u-môu   i-l-e   dugu=be***
go-IRR-NFUT=DSQ dog that=GEN pig bark-NFUT-PFV go-IRR-FUT see-NFUT=TOP
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small> CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
VP   NPs   NP   VP   VP   VP

'(He) went until (his) dog barked (and) immediately he went on and saw that ...'

940) ***wai ka-gi+ma   sa+ma   kôu+ma   igiya-i.***
pig cut-OF+put put.inside+put carry.on.head+put go.DU/PL-NFUT
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
NP   VP   VP   VP   VP

'... we cut up (the) pig and put (the pieces in our stringbags) and carried (those) on (our) heads and went.'

941) ***A   ma   sio   ayomôu dihi   su=do   ke=nôu=si***
1s 1s.POSS bird fowl   child many=INT that=only=CNTR
CLAUSE<small>VERBLESS</small>

sagatai=ye   wo+ma   no-l-u-gi   mei   dege-i
hawk=INS   attack+put eat-IRR-NFUT-DSQ NEG   do-NFUT
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
NPs   VP   VP   VP

'I (had) many chickens, but (a) hawk killed them and ate (them) until (they) were (all) gone.'

942) ***Dia dou tôu-ma   miye dou+lu=kôu   si-l-e   duwo.***
3PL fire light-ISQ fish fire+inside=LOC cook-IRR-FUT sit
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
NPs NP   VP   NP   NP   VP   VP

Dia miye si   hiyo-u-môu   meleki=kôu sa+ma
3PL   fish cook.NFUT be.cooked-NFUT-PFV plate=LOC put.inside+put
CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>
NPs   NP:N+V   VP   NP   VP

sea   tage+tôu duwo-l-i   nala   i-l-i.
chair over+up sit-IRR-NFUT eat.IRR.FUT go-IRR-NFUT
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
MP   VP   VP (serial verb: 'individuated plural')

'After lighting (the) fire, they sit and cook the fish in the fire. As soon as (the) cooked fish is "ready", they put (it) into bowls and sit on chairs eating.'(Drawings are illustrating the text.)

943) ***Yo-l-u-gi   dugu=be   hebe hiye=do ta   tafala.***
go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT INDF stand
CLAUSE<small>MEDIAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>   CLAUSE<small>FINAL</small>
VP   VP   NPs   VP

'We went until (we) saw a big tree standing.'

Hebe	*kôu̠=ma=ha̠*	*fu̠=kôu*	*dugu,*	*douwa*	*duwo.*
Tree	this=TOP=GEN	hole=LOC	see.NFUT	hornbill	sit
CLAUSE_{FINAL}				CLAUSE_{FINAL}	
NP			VP	NPs	VP

'(We) saw a hornbill sitting in a hole of this tree.'

Duwo-môu	*dugu-o*	*fogôu-môu*	*i.*
sit-PFV	see-FUT	leave.for-PFV	go.NFUT
CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}	CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}	CLAUSE_{FINAL}	
VP	VP	VP (serial verb: 'progressive aspect')	

'(We) saw (it) sitting (there) and moved on/leaving (we) went.'

In the two following examples there are also embeddings of different kinds.

944)

na̠	*ne̠*	*sele=ye*	*gita*	*ta*	*môu. ...*
2S	2S.POSS	money=INS	guitar	INDF	get ...
CLAUSE_{FINAL}					
NPs	NP		NP		VP

Na̠ mo-l-ôu	*sagai*	*mei*	*dege-i-ba=be*	*fogo-l-ôu=ne*		*de,*
2S get-IRR-NPST	likely	NEG	do-NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP	leave.for-IRR-NPST=also		good
CLAUSE_{FINAL}				CLAUSE_{FINAL}		
NPs VP				VP		
CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}				CLAUSE_{VERBLESS}		
NPs			VP	NPs		MP

na̠	*nôu=nôu*	*tawa-ga*	*dugu.*
2S	2S.EMP=only	know-DU/PL.FUT	see.NFUT
CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}			CLAUSE_{FINAL}
NP_{TH} NPs		VP	VP

'... get a guitar for your money. ... If you cannot get (it), leaving (it is) OK too; you will decide.'

945)

A̠	*du-di=be,*	*sokôulôu*	*duwo*	*de-ma*	*tewe*	*môu-ba=si,*
1S	hear-HAB=TOP	school	sit	PROV=ISQ	know	get-PFV.IRR=CNTR
					CLAUSE_{FINAL}	
					VP	
CLAUSE_{FINAL}		CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}			CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}	
NPs	VP	NP		VP (serial verb:[145])	NP	VP

sele	*dabai*	*to-l-ôu=yode*	*tobo-l-ôu*	*i-môu*	*du-di.*
money	work	hold-IRR-NPST=IQV	speak-IRR-NPST	go.NFUT-PFV	hear-HAB
CLAUSE_{FINAL}					
NP		VP			
CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}			CLAUSE_{MEDIAL}		CLAUSE_{FINAL}
VP (quote)			VP (serial verb:[146])		VP

'I hear them state and say that after finishing school (and) getting knowledge, in contrast with other ways, (that) will get (you) a money (earning) job.'

6.2 Verbless clauses

Verbless clauses are analysed as containing a topic and a comment. The topic may be a nominal phrase or a clause. The comment may be a nominal phrase, a clause or a modifier phrase. The topic may take the enclitic ={*be*} 'topic marker' (see 8.3.1 MARKING THE TOPIC IN A TOPIC-COMMENT CLAUSE). Also, any clause, verbless or not, may have a "theme" slot preceding the subject (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOT).

There are two kinds of verbless clauses: Locative (6.2.1) and Equative/Descriptive (6.2.2). See also 6.2.3 PSEUDO VERBLESS CLAUSES for a seemingly different type.

6.2.1 Locative verbless clauses

A locative verbless clause has a nominal phrase or a clause as a topic, and it always has a modifier phrase, containing a locative adverb, as a comment. Note that the question word *kou* 'where' is a locative adverb (949). This clause type may be negated (948).

---

[145] 'telic state'

[146] 'individuated plural'

Structure II - Locative verbless clause

CLAUSE_{LOCATIVE VERBLESS}   →   NP_T/CLAUSE_T   MPc

> 946) *Kuguo tage+tôu.*
> paper over+up
> NP_T   MPc
>
> 'The book is above (it).'

> 947) *Ma   moso   ku-he.*
> 1s.POSS house this-P.LOCR
> NP_T   MPc
>
> 'My house is here (pointing).'

> 948) *E=me kuo=kôu   **mei.***
> 3s=TOP this=LOC NEG
> NP_T   MPc
>
> 'He is not (from) here.'

> 949) *Mou   kou?*
> grandfather where
> NP_T   MPc
>
> 'Where is grandpa?'

> 950) *E   hagu-l-u   **ku-he.***
> 3s   come-IRR-NFUT   this-P.LOCR
> CLAUSE_T   MPc
>
> 'Here he comes!'

> 951) *E na-l-e   nala-môu   su-l-u   **ku-he.***
> 3S eat-IRR-FUT eat.IRR.FUT-PFV walk.around-IRR-NFUT this-P.LOCR
>
> 'Here he is, roaming around in order to eat.'

It seems that the comment cannot be filled by a locative nominal phrase without adding a verb.

> 952) *E   moso=kôu duwo.*
> 3S   house=LOC sit
> NPs NP_{LOC}   VP
>
> 'He is in the house.'

6.2.2 Equative/Descriptive verbless clauses

In an equative/descriptive verbless clause the topic may be a nominal phrase or a clause. The comment may be a nominal phrase, a clause or a modifier phrase. There is no formal distinction between equative and descriptive. It is a purely semantic matter. This clause type, too, may be negated (969). In (965), (966), it is the comment itself that is the negative.

Structure III - Equative/Descriptive verbless clause

CLAUSE _{EQUATIVE/DESCRIPTIVE VERBLESS}   →   NP_T/CLAUSE_T   NPc/CLAUSEc/MPc

Examples (953) - (959) are all **equative** in meaning.

> 953) *E=me bose.*
> 3S=TOP boss
> NP_T   NPc
>
> 'He is the boss.'

> 954) *Ne   hu   koyo?*
> 2S.POSS name who
> NP_T   NPc
>
> 'What is your name?'

> 955) *Ma   hu=be   Kevin.*
> 1S.POSS name=TOP Kevin
> NP_T   NPc
>
> 'My name is Kevin.'

> 956) *Kôu=me   kei?*
> this=TOP   what
> NP_T   NPc
>
> 'What is this?'

957) *Mosǫ̲ togo-di=be dabai hiye=do.*
house   build-HAB=TOP work   big=INT
CLAUSE_T   NPc

'To build a house is hard work.'

958) *Die̲ fei-l-e-ba koboge?*
song sing-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR when.VBR
CLAUSE_T   CLAUSE_C

'When is the church service?'

959) *Tǫ e̲ hu̲=be Sepe̲ ǫ.*
river 3S name=TOP Smipen mouth.of.river
Theme NP_T   NPc

'The name of the river is Smipen.'

Examples (960) - (969) are all **descriptive** in meaning.

960) *O hiye=do.*
man big=INT
NP_T MPc

'The man is big./A big man ...'

961) *O=be hiye=do*
man=TOP big=INT
NP_T   MPc

'The man is big.'

962) *Ei ta̲ dou̲=do.*
1PL.EX talk straight=INT
NP_T   MPc

'Our speech is correct.'

963) *Battery mǒu bolǫ?*
battery get   good
CLAUSE_T   MPc

'Is it OK to take the battery?'

964) *Ele=be sisigo olǒufe̲i kama+dia.*
1DU.EX=TOP children all   middle.finger+3PL
NP_T   CLAUSE_C

'We two have three children.'

965) *A̲=me mei.*
1S=TOP NEG
NP_T   MPc

'I have none.'

966) *O mei=do.*
man NEG=INT
NP_T MPc

'(There are) no people (here) at all.'

967) *Fele̲ hague-i ka+dege-mǒu?*
plane   come-NFUT how+do-PFV
CLAUSE_T   CLAUSE_C

'Why did the plane come?'

968) *Abogǒu seseme.*
foot   biting.ant
NP_T   NPc

'(My) foot is numb.'

969) *A̲=me o=bǒu mei.*
1S=TOP man=and NEG
NP_T   NPc

'I do not have a husband.'

6.2.3 Pseudo verbless clauses

Sometimes you hear clauses that do not have a verb, but take arguments as if they did. The best way to analyse these seems to be to assume that the pro-verb *dege* 'do' has been left out. It may be added last in all of the examples below (but see (970)).

970)   *A   ng̱=mokôu solôu=do.*   *A   ng̱=mokôu solôu=do **dege-i.***
          1s 2s=LOC   heart=INT   1s 2s=LOC   heart=INT do-NFUT
          NPs NP_{LOC}   NPo   NPs NP_{LOC}   NPo   **VP**
          'I am sorry for you.'   'I am sorry for you.'

971)   *A   kalase hoho̱.*[147]
          1s glass light
          NPs NPo
          'I would like a fishing glass.'

972)   *E̱=me nele gue̱.*
          3s=TOP 2DU fear
          NPs   NPo
          'He is afraid of the two of you.'

973)   *Na̱ e̱=mokôu   bisi.*
          2s 3s=LOC   son.in.law
          NPs NP_{LOC}   NPo
          'You(r relationship) to him (is that he is your) son-in-law.'

6.3 Clauses with theme slots

Any clause type can, if occurring at the beginning of a story or conversation, take one or more arguments in an initial slot to, so to speak, set the scene for what is coming, i.e. main participants, time and place. This slot is called a 'theme' slot in this grammar.

The theme slot may also be occupied at major breaks in a story (see (1067), which is an example from the middle of a descriptive story). It may also be used for other effects.

Structure IV – Clause with theme slot

CLAUSE_{THEME I}   →   (THEME) CLAUSE

There is also a theme slot immediately to the right of the subject.

Structure V – Clause with post-subject theme slot (978)

CLAUSE_{THEME II}   →   NPs (THEME) ...

The two following examples are the first sentences in two stories. The initial clause in the first example is analysed as having two theme slots.

974)   ***A   afu   kôu-le=ge   ga̱=bôu   Yagu=bôu***
          1s   earlier this-A.LOCR=F.CNTR   1s=and Yagu=and
          Theme   Theme
          NP   MP   MP   NP
          main participant, time, place   main participants

          ele   to̱   to-l-o=yode-ma   (i.)
          1DU.EX river wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ (go.NFUT)
          NPs   VP (noun INC)   (VP)
          '**Some time ago**, (when) **I** (was) **here**, Yagu and I, after the two of us said (we) would go for a swim ((we) went.)' (introduction to a story about killing a hornbill)

975)   ***Felix   e̱=me   Dahamo   dihi.***
          Felix   3s=TOP Dahamo child
          Theme   NP_T   NPc
          NP
          '**Felix** he (is a) kid from Dahamo.'

---

[147] The NPo is a noun group *kalase hoho̱* 'want glasses'; *hoho̱* means 'joy', 'liking'. The NPo in the next example is also a noun group.

The following example is from an embedded quote summarising the story about the hornbill.

976) *Ke-ge-môu,*   *ele*   *ŧobo-u,*
     that-VBR-PFV 1DU.EX say-NFUT

     Da   ***ifi***   *Godi=hạ* ***solôu=do*** *da=mokôu*   *nẹ-i*
     1DU.IN today   God=GEN   heart=INT   1DU.IN=LOC   give-NFUT
     Theme   NPs   Theme   NPLoc   VP ...
     NP   MP   NPo
     main participants, time

     ku-hẹ=yode   *ŧobo-u.*
     this-P.LOCR=IQV say-NFUT

     'Then the two of us (excl.) said, "**The two of us** (incl.) **today**, God has shown his **love** to us (incl.) here,"
     (we) stated and said.'

The fronting of arguments may be an instance of a more general rule, namely that the further to the left, the more prominent a certain argument is. In the previous example, note the two first arguments marked "Theme", and also the object, marked like-wise, coming before the locative argument. We saw this principle at work earlier, when talking about word order in the clause; the object may switch place with the subject to make it more prominent, which also happens in the following sentence.

977) ***Tạ***   ***ẹ***   *ŧobôu-ba=be,*   *nị=ge*   *defẹi=do*   *du-l-o-ba*
     talk   3S   say-PFV.IRR=TOP 2PL=F.CNTR careful=INT hear-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR
     Theme NPs VP   ...
     NPo

     sese-ga-ma.
     follow-DU/PL-DU/PL

     '(The) **talk**, when **he** speaks, you all, listen carefully and follow (it).'

In the following example the object has been fronted to follow immediately on the subject with the locative phrase being moved to the right. As for the nominal phrase with pronoun copy in the beginning of the clause, that is analysed as a theme followed by a pronoun in its own nominal phrase, which in this case, is the real subject of the clause. See also 8.7.3.7 PRONOUN COPY. Examples (974) and (975) also have pronoun copy.

978) ***O***   ***ẹ***   ***dabai***   *di=mokôu*   *nẹ-i.*
     man   3S   work   1PL.IN=LOC   give-NFUT
     Theme NPs Theme   NPLoc   VP
     NP   NPo

     '(**A**) **certain man** gave **work** to us.'

See also 5.2.3.1 WORD ORDER and 6.1.3 CHANGES IN WORD ORDER.

6.4 Negation of the clause

Negation of the clause is marked in the verbal phrase (see 5.1.4 STRUCTURE OF THE VERBAL PHRASE). In general, it is the verbal phrase of the last final clause of a sentence that may be marked as negative (see also 7.3.5 NEGATIVE AND OTHER SCOPES IN A SENTENCE), but embedding of negative final clauses occur.

There are five negative constructions, four of them are related by the use of the word *mei*, 'negative', but slightly different in their constructions. The fifth one is the prohibitive suffix -*da*.

Another use of *mei* 'negative' is in the expression *mei dege* 'be finished'.

Verbal clauses with event verbs - present tense, habitual aspect: =*yo mei* (INDC#NEG)[148]

The conjugation of the verb forms is medial (see 2.7.1.2 VOWEL HARMONY IN MEDIAL VERBS: Present negative).

979) *ei*   *ŧa*   *dafo-u=**yo***   ***mei.***   (basic   form: *dafa*)
     1PL.EX INDF be.tired.of-NFUT=INDC   NEG

     'we **are not** tired of (it)'

980) *ẹ*   *dihi*   *ka*   *su-l-u,*   *ẹ*   *dugu=**yo***   ***mei.***
     3S child look.for walk.around-IRR-NFUT 3S see.NFUT=INDC   NEG

     '... she is walking around looking for her child; (she) **does not** find her.'

---

[148] The Foothill and Mountain dialects use =*ya* 'subjunctive' instead of =*yo* 'indicative' here.

981) *Dia*　　　　*di̠g̠=me*　*huli̠g̠.me=be*　*ti̠a-di=yo*　　　　*mei,*　*sulugua-di.*
crayfish=TOP 3PL=TOP　night.TOP=TOP　sleep-HAB=INDC　　NEG　walk.around.DU/PL-HAB

'Concerning crayfish, they **do not** sleep at night; they always move around.'

Verbal clauses with existential state verbs - present tense; also **verbless clauses**: *mei* (NEG)

982)　*e̠　duwo **mei***　　　　　*dala　　**mei***　　　　*a̠　tewe　**mei***
3S sit　NEG　　　　　　be/have　NEG　　　1S know　NEG

'he/she is **not** (here)'　　　'is **not**/has **not**'　　　'I **do not** know'

983)　*a̠　bi　　　**mei***　　　　*a̠　**mei***　　　　*o　　**mei***
1S thing　NEG　　　　1S　NEG　　　man NEG

'... I **do not** have anything'　　'I have **none**/it was **not** me'　　'there are **no** people (here)'

A variation in verbless clauses is this: *=bôu mei* (=and#NEG)

984)　*Fofa-i*　　*hiye=do dala,*　*ha　ke̠=nôu=si*　　*sugua-i=bôu*　　　　*mei.*
swell-NFUT big=INT be/have but that=only=CNTR　have.fever-NFUT=and　NEG

'(He) has (a) very big swelling, but even so, there is **no fever with** (it).'

In the previous example the expression *sugua-i* is probably interpreted as a nominalised form meaning 'fever', paralleling *ta̠=bôu#mei* in the next example, where *ta̠* 'talk' is the basic form of the verb *ta̠* with the same meaning, widely used as a noun. (see 4.2.4 NOMINALISATION).

985)　*o　ng̠=me ta̠=bôu　mei.*
man 2S=TOP talk=and　NEG

'... concerning you man, (I) **have nothing to say**.'

Verbal clauses - past tense (any verb): *-l-i mei* (-IRR-NFUT#NEG)

986)　*Di̠g̠ tobôu-l-i　mei.*
3PL say-IRR-NFUTNEG

'They **did not** say.'

Note that the vowel in the non-future suffix does not follow rules of vowel harmony but is always *i*, when used with the negative *mei* in past tense.

Verbal clauses - future tense (any verb): *-l-V[-high] mei* (-IRR-FUT#NEG)

987)　*A̠　i-l-e　　mei.*
1S go-IRR-FUT NEG

'I **will not** go.'

Negative future tense verbs are conjugated as their positive counter parts.

Verbal clauses - prohibitive: *-da* (PROH)

988)　*i-da*
go-PROH

'**do not** go'

6.5 The relative clause

There are two main kinds of relative clauses.

- a relative clause preceding the head noun
- a relative clause, marked by *ke̠* 'that' or *=be* 'topic marker' following the head noun

6.5.1 The relative clause precedes the head noun

In this type, the head noun is preceded by the relative clause, which is unmarked. This has been described under 5.2.1 THE NOUN GROUP. The head noun may be implicit as in example (991).

Structure I – Relative clause

Relative Clause_I   →   CLAUSE   (head of RC)
RC_I   →   CLAUSE   (N)

989) ***dabai dege-di o***
       work   do-HAB   man

       '(a) **man**, who **always works**'

990) ***sogo   si-l-i   dou*** *dahai*
       breadfruit   cook-IRR-NFUT fire smoke

       'smoke from (a) **fire**, where (people) are **cooking breadfruit**'

991) *A̱* ***dabai dege-l-i***=*kôu   i.*
       1s work   do-IRR-NFUT=LOC go

       'I went to (**where**) (we) **are working**.'

992) ***Mos̱o̱   kô̱u   tege-i   o***=*be   Kiunga*=*kôu i   dala.*
       house this build-NFUT man=TOP Kiunga=LOC go.NFUT be/have

       'The **man**, who **built this house**, went to Kiunga; (he) lives (there).'

In the following example, the head of the relative clause is stated twice, before and after. The relative clause in itself is still unmarked.

993) ***O***   *mos̱o̱   **ke̱**   **tege-i   o**   ka*=*ha̱   hebe t̠at̠abai dege-i*
       man   house that build-NFUT man that=GEN tree weak   do-NFUT

       mô̱u + ma̱ t̠ege-i.
       get+put build-NFUT

       'The **man**, who **built that house**, brought weak timber and built.'

Also, in the above example, part of the content of the relative clause is repeated in the main clause, a spin on the clause repetition structure (see 7.2 CLAUSE REPETITION).

6.5.2 The relative clause follows the head noun

Another type of relative clause is marked by the demonstrative pronoun *ke̱* 'that'/*ka(ha̱)* 'that(GEN)'/*ko(kôu)* 'that(LOC), or by =*be* 'topic marker', and follows the head noun. A general formula would be as below, though there are variations.

The construction with {*ke̱*} 'that' is the more common one.

Structure II- Relative clause

Relative Clause_{II}   →   (head of RC)   CLAUSE   DEM
RC_{II}   →   (N)   CLAUSE   *ke̱*/*ka(ha̱)*/*ko(kôu)*   'that/that(GEN)that/(LOC)'
                                                          =*be*   'topic marker'

It is most common that the head of the relative clause is omitted.

994) ***O   ka***=***ha̱   t̠obo-u   ke̱***=*nôu   sese-i.*
       man that=GEN say-NFUT   that=only follow-NFUT

       '(He) did **what the man had told** (him).'

995) ***afu   e̱sol   ka***=***ha̱   t̠obo-u   ke̱***=*nôu   t̠efe-i.*
       earlier angel that=GEN say-NFUT that=only measure-NFUT

       '... (it) was exactly **as the angel had said earlier**.'

996) ***Hiyou mô̱u-di o   dia̱ ama-i   dala***+***ya   ke̱***   *i.*
       steal get-HAB man 3PL watch-NFUT be/have+road that go.NFUT

       '(He) went on (a) **road**, **where thieves watched** (for suitable victims).'

997) *e̱* ***sokô̱ulô̱u kô̱u   duwe-i   ke̱***=*nôu   haba   duwe-i.*
       1s school   prior sit-NFUT that=only but.PFV.IRR sit-NFUT

       '... exactly **as** he had been/**sat in school before**, (he) sat (there) again.'

998) ***ka̱lo hue̱i   dô̱u***+***di   ko***=***kôu o***
       car water draw-HAB that-LOC man

       '... (the) man at the gas station .../(the) man **where** (they) **habitually draw vehicle water**)'

The head noun may be separated from the rest of the relative clause (999).

999) *A=nôu* **Godi=ha** **moso** *bafo-l-ôu,*   *o*   *ke+dia* *tege-i*   **ke**.
      1s=only God=GEN   house   break=IRR-NPST   man   that+3PL build-NFUT   that

      'I will tear down **God's house**, (the one) **that** men built.'

1000) **Na** **sele** **ka-ge** *mei* *dege-i,* *a* *ke* *tefe-l-e*   *ne-l-e.*
      2s   money   how-VBR   NEG   do-NFUT   1s   that measure-IRR-FUT   give-IRR-FUT

      '**Whatever money** you **have finished**, I will give you **that** amount.'

1001) *E* **ke-ge**   *a=mokôu* *dege-l-e,*   **na** *tobo-l-ôu*   *sagai*   *ke=nôu*
      3s   that-VBR   1s=LOC   do-IRR-NFUT   2s   say-IRR-NPST   likely   that=only

      tefe-l-e   *dege-l-e.*
      measure-IRR-FUT   do-IRR-FUT

      'He will do to me exactly **like** you say.'

These are examples of relative clauses with =*be* 'topic marker'.

1002) **A**   *e* *i=be*   *sa*   *kasagai+ya* *ke*   *i.*
      road   3s   go.NFUT=TOP   land   bad+road   that go.NFUT

      '**The road** he went on went through bad ground.'

1003) **Edolo** **sisigo**   *kama+dia*   *ke+dia*   *dege-l-e=be,*
      Edolo   children   middle.finger+3PL   that+3PL   do-IRR-FUT=TOP

      a *ta*   *dugu=ya*   *mei.*
      1s   INDF   see=SUBJ   NEG

      '(**What**) **the three Edolo children will do**, I do not know (perceive).' (Foothill dialect)

7. SENTENCES

When describing Konai sentence structure, I will first describe it in terms of illocutionary force in 7.1, then go on to clause repetition in 7.2 followed by complex sentences in 7.3. The first section under complex sentences talks about switch of subject and switch of scene (7.3.1). The second part is about temporal linking, which is typically used in narratives (7.3.2). The third section will describe logical linking of clauses, such as reason-result, purpose and condition (7.3.3). The next section will be about complementary linking, involving verbs of perception and cognition, as well as quotes (7.3.4). The last section (7.3.5) talks about negative and other scopes in the sentence.

7.1 Illocutionary force

Illocutionary: ...

> ... relating to or being the communicative effect (as commanding or requesting) of an utterance ... (Merriam-Webster 2015).

In Konai, illocutionary force is marked in certain contexts as an enclitic, occurring on clause or even sentence level. It expresses mode. The categories are (Simons 1987):

- =*(y)o*[149] 'indicative'   (in statements)   fact
- =*(y)e*   'optative'   (in commands & suggestions)   choice, preference, wish[150]
- =*(y)a*   'subjunctive'   (in purpose constructions, opinion statements   uncertainty of outcome
                                 and content questions)

Any statement can be modified so it becomes a command, a suggestion, an expressed purpose or a question. However, the illocutionary force marking only occurs in certain contexts. For example, a plain statement is not marked for illocutionary force, nor is a simple command. A suggestion is marked. Most purpose clauses are marked. Among the questions, basically only content questions in present tense are. See examples at the beginning of 7.1.1 Indicative (in statements), 7.1.2 OPTATIVE (in commands & suggestions), 7.1.3 SUBJUNCTIVE (in purpose constructions, opinion statements and content questions).

Also, in a statement, you have the choice between the epistemic moods realis and irrealis. To get a command, the mood of the verb needs to be changed to one of the deontic moods imperative, hortative or prohibitive. There are two kinds of

---

[149] For the insertion of the semi-vowel see 2.7.4.

[150] Merriam-Webster 2015.

question. Yes/no questions are different from a statement in intonation. Content questions contain a question word and take partly different verbal affixation compared to a statement, but have the same intonation. Also, as mentioned above, they are marked for illocutionary force in present tense.

7.1.1 Indicative (in statements)

As said above, the illocutionary force marking occurs only in certain contexts. Regarding statements, a plain statement is not marked (1004). The =*(y)o* 'indicative' occurs only if the statement is presented as a quote and is then obligatory (1005), (1006). It is also part of the most common negative construction of the clause in present tense.

1004)   *Hebe   a-hu=do   ƚafala-gua-môu   dugu-l-u.*
        tree   road+far=INT   stand-DU/PL-PFV   see-IRR-NFUT

        '(I) see trees far away.'

Compare:

1005)   *ạ   dabai dege-l-e   dafa=yo+de-i.*
        1s   work do-IRR-FUT   tired.of=INDC+PROV-NFUT

        'I **said**, "I am tired of working."'

1006)   *Adiôu   aye   Yesu   hagua-l-e=yo+di-l-i.*
        mother father Jesus come-IRR-FUT=INDC+PROV-IRR-NFUT

        'Mother, father, I **declare** that Jesus will come.'

1007)   *A   dege-i=yo   mei.*
        1s do-NFUT=INDC   NEG

        'I am **not** doing (it).' (in the Mountain and Foothill dialects =*ya* 'subjunctive' is used in these negative
                           constructions)

1008)   *A   ƚa   dugu=yo   mei.*
        1s INDF see.NFUT=INDC NEG

        'I do **not** see a thing.'

1009)   *nị=me mosọ ko+du   ƚa   folo-ga-di=yo   mei*
        2PL=TOP house that+inside INDF go.up-du./pl.-HAB=INDC NEG

        '… you are **not** going into that house …'

1010)   *ƚobôu=yo   mei*
        say=INDC   NEG

        'does **not** say'

1011)   *E   ẹ=me mihị=kôu ƚia-di=yo   mei.*
        megapod.bird   3s=TOP earth=LOC sleep-HAB=**INDC**   NEG

        'The megapod bird, he does **not** sleep on the ground.'

7.1.1.1 More about statements

A statement is used to convey information. In an isolated one-clause statement there has to be a subject, though as part of a longer stretch of speech, discourse rules apply, and you will not find an explicit subject in any part of some multi-clause sentences. In verbal statements there is the choice between the epistemic moods realis and irrealis.

A statement ends with falling intonation.

1012)   *A=me hebe ha-i=kôu   i-l-i.*
        1s=TOP tree cut-NFUT=LOC go-IRR-NFUT
        CLAUSE
        NPs   NPLOC   VP

        'I'm going to (the) garden.'

1013)   *O   ẹ   mosọ   ƚege-i.*
        man   3s   house   make-NFUT
        CLAUSE
        Theme   NPs   NPo   VP
        NP

        'A certain man built a house.'

1014) *Yo-l-u-gi   dugu=be   hebe hiye=do ta   tafala.*
       go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT   INDF stand
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   VP
       VP   VP   NPo

'We (two) went until (we) saw a big tree standing.'

Hebe   kôu=ma=ha fu=kôu   dugu   douwa   duwo.
tree   this=TOP=GEN hole=LOC see.NFUT   hornbill sit
CLAUSE   CLAUSE
NPLoc   VP   NPs   VP

'In (a) hole of this tree, (we) saw (a) hornbill sitting.'

Duwo-môu dugu   fogôu-môu   i.
sit-PFV   see.NFUT   leave.for-PFV   go.NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE
VP   VP   VP (serial verb)

'(We) saw (it) sitting (there); leaving (we) went.'

7.1.2 Optative (in commands & suggestions)

Commands and suggestions are used to tell someone to do or not to do something. The verbs of most of these clauses are in the deontic mood and may be of various strengths. Imperative and prohibitive are the strongest. A simple command, prohibition or hortative are not marked for illocutionary force (see 7.1.2.2). The =*(y)e* 'optative', one of the clitics signalling illocutionary force, occurs only if a command, prohibition or hortative is presented as a quote (1015)-(1018). Without occurring in a quote, only the weakest form of a suggestion is expressed by the optative by itself (1019). This form does not take a deontic modal suffix.

1015) *moso   togo=ye+de-i-môu*
       house make=OPT+PROV-NFUT-PFV

       '... (they) **having told** (me) to build (on a) house ...'

1016) *Hiyou   môu-da=ye+de-i.*
       steal   get-PROH=OPT+PROV-NFUT

       '(He) **said**, "Do not steal."'

1017) *ni   a=nôu   mala   huei-le=kôu   hebe-l-e*
       2PL 1s=only get.IRR.FUT water-A.LOCR=LOC carry-IRR-FUT

       fila-ma=be=e+de   tobo-u.
       throw-DU/PL=TOP=**OPT**+PROV say-NFUT

       '... "**You (du./pl.)** just take, carry and throw me in (the) water,"
       (he) **instructed and** said.'

1018) *da   to   to   i-me=be=e+de   tobo-u.*
       1DU.IN river wash go-HORT=TOP=**OPT**+PROV say-NFUT

       '... "**Let** the two of **us** go swimming," he **suggested and** said.'

1019) *Na   ta=be   na=ye.*
       2S   INDF=TOP eat=**OPT**

       'You **may** eat one.' (a polite invitation)

7.1.2.1 More about the optative

The illocutionary force clitic =*(y)e* 'optative' occurs with all commands and suggestions presented as quotes as shown above. In addition, it occurs on its own with simple clauses, verbal and verbless. It often expresses a wish or choice, with the meanings of 'may', 'might', 'lest', 'but'.

A verb in optative mood in final position has two conjugations, roughly corresponding to 'may' and 'might'.

- V$^{[-high]}$=*ye* (e, a, ôu, o) 'may'

- V$^{[+high]}$=*ye* (i, u) 'might' (Type 1 and 5 verbs only have this form conjugated as a final verb; see 2.7.1.1)

- in the case of a verbless clause, the context will decide the meaning

1020)   *T<u>a</u>*   *ta=be*   *tisa=be*   *2003 kalada   mei, n<u>a</u>   ta*   *dala-ba=be,*
        talk   INDF=TOP   teacher=TOP 2003 calendar NEG   2S   INDF   be/have-PFV.IRR=TOP

        n<u>e</u>=ye,   *<u>a</u>=mok<u>ô</u>u.*
        give=OPT   1S=LOC

        'Another thing/talk (is) that the teacher does not have (a) 2003 calendar; if you have any, you **may** give me (one).'

1021)   *sas<u>a</u>i*   *t<u>o</u>*   *to*   *i=ye*
        woman   river   wash   go=OPT

        'the women **might** have gone to (have a) swim' (a picture of two women looking wet)

1022)   *sasa=do=ye*   *t<u>o</u>u*   *dege-i*
        long=INT=OPT short   do-NFUT

        '(it) **might** (have been) long, but (now it is) short.' (about a pencil)

1023)   *<u>A</u>=me*   *t<u>a</u>-le=k<u>ô</u>u*   *to-l-o*   *i=ye.*
        1S=TOP   river-A.LOCR=LOC die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=OPT

        'I **might** drown in the river./**Lest** I drown in the river.'

The optative mood is utilised in different types of sentences, including the following two:

- *lest*   (last stem vowel – V$^{[+\mathbf{high}]}$); sentence final   7.3.3.7 WARNING
- *even though*   (last stem vowel – any final verb); mid-sentence   7.3.3.4 CONTRAST

1024)   *nj<u>ô</u>u*   *tawa-i=b<u>ô</u>u,*   *ke-ge-l-i-gi*   *o*   *ta=h<u>a</u>   ni*
        2PL.EMP know-NFUT=and that-VBR-IRR-NFUT-DSQ man INDF=GEN 2PL

        og<u>ô</u>u-ga-i=ye.
        lie-DU/PL-NFUT=OPT

        '... look out, **lest** someone deceives you'

1025)   *Sa*   *Ukarumpa as<u>o</u> hiye=do dala=ye,*   *k<u>e</u>=n<u>ô</u>u=si*   *difi=be mei=do.*
        land   Ukarumpa sun big=INT be/have=OPT that=only=CNTR   heat=TOPNEG=INT

        '**Even though** there **may** be a lot of sun at Ukarumpa, there is really no warmth at all.'

7.1.2.2 More about imperative, prohibitive, hortative

A one-clause command in deontic mood, i.e. imperative, prohibitive and hortative, may or may not have a grammatical subject. It is supposed to be a more polite form to include the subject.

The imperative and the hortative may be weakened by adding the topic marker *=be*. A command has a more level intonation than a statement.

Imperative (singular) is the unmarked basic form.

1026)   *N<u>a</u> i.*
        2S go

        'Go (**sg.**).'

1027)   *I-ma.*
        go-DU/PL

        'Go (**du./pl**.).'

1028)   *I-ma=be.*
        go-DU/PL=TOP

        '**You** (two) **better** go now.'[151]

Prohibitive is marked by the suffix *-da.*

1029)   *I-da.*
        go-PROH

        '**Don't** go (**sg.**).'

---

[151] Once when visiting in a house, we were told this, because it looked like it was going to rain.

1030) *N̲i hagua-sie-**da**-**ma**.*
       2PL come-DU/PL-PROH-DU/PL
       '**Don't** come (**du./pl**.).'

Hortative is **marked** by the suffix *-me*. Hortative and prohibitive may co-occur.

1031) *I-**me**.*   *I-da-**me**.*
       go-HORT   go-PROH   HORT
       '**Let's** go.'   '**Let's** not go.'

1032) *Di   dugu-**me**.*
       1PL.IN see-HORT
       '**Let's** see.'

1033) *I-**me**=be.*
       go-HORT=TOP
       'I think **we should** go now.'

7.1.3 Subjunctive (in purpose constructions, opinion statements and content questions)

The third illocutionary force clitic is *=(y)a* 'subjunctive'. It is obligatory in two of three purpose constructions (see 7.3.3.2 PURPOSE). It also occurs in present tense content questions, where it is obligatory. A literate Konai speaker expresses the meaning of a sentence with this clitic/suffix by saying that the outcome is a "question mark", which also covers the third use: opinion statements (1038).

In the two first examples, where this subjunctive morpheme expresses the wish of the subject, it is functioning as a suffix.

1034) *A̲ nele=mokôu mola   ta̲   tobôu-l-**a**-môu.*
       1S 2DU=LOC   medicine talk   say-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
       'I **want to** speak about medicine to the two of you.'

1035) *a̲ i-l-i-di^[152]   ise   kuhe tôufogôu-l-**a**-môu.*
       1S go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   finally so   leave-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
       '... going on like that I **am planning to** finally be ready to die.'

1036) *e dilie=mokôu sele   ta̲   ne̲=**ya**+do-môu   hawa-i.*
       3S 2DU=LOC   money INDF give=SUBJ+PROV-PFV   beg-NFUT
       '... **for the purpose** of the two of them giving him some money he begged them.'

1037) *a̲ hague-i=be, a̲ o diho̲ du   dege-l-e   i   o ke+di̲a=mokôu*
       1S come-NFUT=TOP 1S man eye blind do-IRR-FUT go.NFUT man that+3PL=LOC

       tobôu-ba,   die   diho̲ bolo̲ dege-i-ba
       say-PFV.IRR   3PL.POSS eye good do-NFUT-PFV.IRR

       *dugu-ma=b=**a**+do-môu.*
       see-DU/PL=TOP=SUBJ+PROV-PFV
       'I came **in order to** speak to blind people that their eyes may get well and they may see.'

1038) *O Herot=ha̲ Yesu=be fafeleya dege-di o   Jon=**ya**+**de**-i*
       man Herod=GEN Jesus=TOP baptism do-HAB man John=SUBJ+PROV-NFUT
       'Herod **thought that** Jesus was John the Baptist ...'

1039) *N̲a ke̲i dege-i=**ya**?*
       2S what do-NFUT=SUBJ
       'What are you doing**?**'

1040) *N̲a kil̲iya   i=**ya**?*
       2S where   go.NFUT=SUBJ
       'Where are you going**?**'

---

[152] Dialect variant of *-gi* 'delayed sequence'.

1041) *o   ke+di̱a̱=me   kili̱ya   yo-u=**ya?***
       man that+3PL=TOP where go.DU/PL-NFUT=SUBJ

       '... where are the men going**?**'

1042) *na̱ ka-ge-i-môu   goso-u=**ya?***
       2S how-VBR-NFUT-PFV cry-NFUT=SUBJ

       '... why are you crying**?**'

1043) *Kevin=ha̱ dihi   do   mala̱   i   ka-ge-i=**ya?***
       Kevin=GEN child sick get.FUT go.NFUT how-VBR-NFUT=SUBJ

       'How is Kevin's child (the one) taken away (to hospital)**?**'

1044) *na̱=me o   koyo=ha̱ hu̱+ya   ke̱   dabai dege-di=**ya?** de*
       2S=TOP man who=GEN name+road that work do-HAB=SUBJ PROV

       yodu-l-o   i.
       ask-*IRR*-FUT go.NFUT

       '"... in whose name do you work**?**" they asked.'

7.1.3.1 More about questions

There are two kinds of questions: content questions, containing a question word, and yes/no questions. These two types have different intonation contours and partly different verbal suffixation. Only the content question is marked for illocutionary force and then only in present tense.

7.1.3.1.1 Content questions

Content questions contain a question word (see 4.7 QUESTION WORDS). The intonation of a content question is the same as for a statement, i.e. it falls over the last couple of syllables.

   In such questions, if there is a verb, the suffixation is different from that in a statement for verbs in past tense. In present tense and habitual aspect the question is marked for illocutionary force with the subjunctive clitic =*(y)a*. In a question of this sort, the verb word is always last in the sentence.

- past tense   *-l-ou*   -IRR-PAST.Q   (does not follow rules of vowel harmony)

- present tense   *-V$^{[+high]}$=ya* -NFUT=SUBJ   (conjugated as a medial verb, so ...*ôu=ya* is the form for
  habitual aspect *-di=ya*   -HAB=SUBJ   type 6 verbs; habitual aspect: basic verb form as usual)

- future tense   *-l-V$^{[-high]}$* -IRR-FUT   (same as in statements)

The examples start with verbless clauses, which have no other marking than the question word.

1045) *Sasa̱i   **koyo?***
       woman who

       '**Who** (is the) woman?'

1046) *Kô̱u̱=me **koyo**=ha̱ moso̱?*
       this=TOP who=GEN house

       '**Whose** house is this?'

1047) *Mo̱u   kou?*
       grandfather where

       '**Where** (is) grandpa?'

1048) *Na̱ **kili̱ya** i=**ya?***
       2S where go.NFUT=SUBJ

       '**Where** are you going?'

1049) *Na̱ **ke̱i**-nale̱ do   dugu=**ya?***
       2S what-? sickness see.NFUT=SUBJ

       '**What** sickness do you have?'

1050) ***Ka-ge-môu**   kô̱u=ma=ha̱ t̲a   kôu-g(u)e   ke̱   tobôu=**ya?***
       how-VBR-PFV this=TOP=GEN talk this-VBR(BLTV) that say=SUBJ

       '**Why** does he say this like this?'

1051) *Na̱ ka+dege subulu   hou   sogo-di=ya?*
       2s how+do   sweet.potato seedling plant-HAB=SUBJ
       '**How** do you plant sweet potatoes?'

1052) *dihi=be   koboge   boḻo dege-l-ou?*
       child=TOP when.VBR good do-IRR-PAST.Q
       '... **when** did the child get well?'

1053) *Ke̱=nôu=si,   Godi=ha̱=ge   e̱=mokôu=be ka-ge   tobo-l-ou?*
       that=only=CNTR God=GEN=F.CNTR 3s=LOC=TOP   how-VBR say-IRR-PAST.Q
       'But **what** did God say to him?'

1054) *Na̱ koboge   boho-l-ôu+ma̱   hagua-l-e?*
       2s when.VBR turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT
       '**When** will you start to come back?'

1055) *Midiẖo ka=ha̱   hagua-l-e=be   ka-ge   hagua-l-e?*
       face   that=GEN come-IRR-FUT=TOP how-VBR come-IRR-FUT
       'That which will happen, **how** will it happen?'

A kinship word, or other form of address, may occur with the subjunctive clitic =*ya*, indicating that the addressee is going to be asked a question.

1056) *mogo=ya*
       friend=SUBJ
       'my friend (I have a) question'

7.1.3.1.2 Yes/No questions

Yes/no questions rise to a high tone on the last syllable of the clause/sentence. There is often no other marking than the rising intonation to distinguish it from a statement, but note the last two examples, where the word *de* 'good/well' precede the last word. This type of question is never marked for illocutionary force.

1057) *Battery   môu b'ḻo?*[153]
       battery get good
       'Is it OK to take the battery?'

1058) *A̱=me f'lo?*
       1s=TOP go.up.FUT
       'May I come in?'

1059) *Na̱ de   hagua-l-e?*
       2s good come-IRR-FUT
       'Are you coming?/Will you come **alright**?'

1060) *O   kôu+di̱a na̱ dege-ga-i   ke̱   tobo-l-ôu   i-l-i   ke̱=me de damale̱=do?*
       man this+3PL 2s do-DU/PL-NFUT that say-IRR-NPST go-IRR-NFUT that=TOP good true=INT
       'Is it true what the men say you have done?'

---

[153] The word *boḻo* is pronounced [b[b̥], i.e. as a one syllable word. In the next example *folo* 'will go up' is also pronounced as one syllable, i.e.[f[p].

7.2 Clause repetition

Clause repetition as a sentence type is common. It is used for emphasis and/or explanation. If there is a time factor involved, it shows simultaneous time. The structure consists of two clauses where the last clause is the same as, or similar to that of the first clause. The topic marker =*be* may occur between the clauses. Examples will show what kinds of meanings are conveyed.

1061) *A̱ boho-l-o͡u + m̱a   hagua-l-e,   a̱ boho-l-o͡u + m̱a   hagua-l-e.*
       1S turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT   1S turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT

       'I'll come back when I come back.'

1062) *ṯa = no͡u   bolo = f̱ei   ṯa = no͡u   bolo = f̱ei*
       INDF=only good=total INDF=only good=total

       'one is as good as another'

1063) *ei   sele   kefe + m̱a   dugu = be,   350.00 kina = no͡u dala-mo͡u   dugu.*
       1PL.EX money gather+put   see.NFUT=TOP 350.00 kina=only be/have-PFV see.NFUT

       '... we (excl.) collected (the) **money** and **saw that** there was only **K350** (we) **saw**.'

1064) *E̱   wo͡u + m̱a   i = be   Pita = bo͡u   Jems = bo͡u Jon = bo͡u + de*
       3S accompany+put   go.NFUT=TOP Peter=and James=and John=and+PROV

       wo͡u + m̱a   i.
       accompany+put go.NFUT

       'As he **took** (some unspecified people) with him **and went**, he **took** Peter, James and John **and went**.'

1065) *Ṉa̱ baha dala = be   huyade = no͡u = f̱ei   baha dala.*
       2S look be/have=TOP little=only=total look be/have

       'As you **watch**, you only **watch** a little.'

7.3 Complex sentences

A sentence consists of one or more clauses. In a narrative story, a sentence often ends with a verb in realis non-future form, i.e. past tense. Descriptive stories have many sentences consisting of one verbless clause or one clause, where the verb is stative. Narratives have many complex sentences, made up of event clauses. Sentences of up to twenty clauses have been observed. An average may be four or five. Embedding is common.

A basic switch-reference system is present in the language, monitoring the subject. There is also another system, which signals a change of scene. This change of scene may be a change of subject, but may just as well be a change of activity that the entity represented by the subject is involved in. Both these monitoring systems are of special importance in narratives, but works of course for any genre. They will be described in 7.3.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE AND SWITCH OF SCENE.

The "scenes" may actually be looked upon as a grammatical level between clause and sentence, being demarcated by a perfective suffix, in a narrative most commonly -*mo͡u* 'perfective **realis**'.

The connection between clauses in a sentence may be temporal, logical or complementary. Any genre may have some of each, but a narrative would have mostly sentences containing temporal linkage geared for realis mood and non-future tense, i.e. past tense, while e.g. a sermon would have many sentences containing logical and complementary linking, as well as temporal linking geared for what is future and/or hypothetic.

The end of a sentence is signalled by falling intonation, marked by a full stop, while the end of a non-final clause is signalled by level or rising intonation, marked by a comma. For use of semi-colon in the free translation, see (1068) last in this section.

The following example is a fairly typical sentence from a **narrative** text.

1066) *Ke-ge   wo + m̱a   mo͡u + m̱a   sa + m̱a   huli̱a.me   hagu-l-u-gi,*
       that-VBR attack+put get+put put.inside+put night.TOP come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       bogo   tage + to͡u   tofo-u = ye   fiye-i.
       white.rock   over+up   step-NFUT=INS   fall-NFUT
       nominalised clause
       CLAUSE

       'Like that (we two) killed (flying foxes) and collected (them), and put (them) inside (our stringbags) and came on in the night until (I) by stepping on a lime stone fell.'

The next example is from a bit into a **descriptive** story. The example starts with two one-clause sentences, where the verbs are stative, followed by a descriptive one-clause sentence. The last sentence in this example is a two-clause sentence, consisting of a stative-verb clause and a perceptive clause, which also is typical. Also note that in the three first sentences there are initial themes, two marked with the topic marker $=be$.

```
1067)  Sa        Ukarumpa=be  hebe  hafei         ke-le        tafala-gua      mei.
       land      Ukarumpa=TOP  tree  close.total   that-A.LOC   stand-DU/PL     NEG
       Theme                   CLAUSE

       Sa        oloûfei=be    mihi=ye=noû      dala.
       land      all.total=TOP  earth=INS=only    be/have
       Theme                   CLAUSE

       Hafei         ke-le        hebe  ta     mei.
       close.total   that-A.LOC   tree  INDF   NEG
       Theme                      CLAUSE

       Hebe   a+hu=do       tafala-gua-moû     dugu-l-u.
       tree   road+far=INT  stand-DU/PL-PFV    see-IRR-NFUT
       CLAUSE                                  CLAUSE
```

'**At the place Ukarumpa**, there are no trees close by. **The whole place** is bare ground. **Close-by**,

there are no trees. I see trees standing far off.' (around 1995)

In some stories the intonation does not fall at the end of the grammatical sentence. It seems that a **phonological sentence** may embrace several **grammatical sentences**. This is usually marked by a semi-colon in the free translation. One short example from another story follows here:

```
1068)  James=boû Asele=boû ei      so   ti-l-e        igiya-i
       James=and  Asele=and  1PL.EX  dog  call-IRR-FUT  go.DU/PL-NFUT
       CLAUSE (medial)                     CLAUSE (final)

       sulugua-l-i                    du ...
       walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT     hear.NFUT
       CLAUSE (medial)                CLAUSE (final)

       wai  oye   hiye=do ke    tigo-l-o      i-moû       dugu.
       pig  male  big=INT that  bark-IRR-FUT  go.NFUT-PFV  see.NFUT
       CLAUSE (medial)          CLAUSE (medial)    CLAUSE (sentence final)
                                (serial verb)
```

'... James, Asele and I called up the dog(s) and went**;** we walked around until (we) heard**;** ... (we) saw (the dogs) barking at that very big boar.'

In certain other sentence types, the discourse enclitics $=be$ 'topic marker' and $=si$ 'contrast' are also important. The proverb de also has important functions in sentence structure.

7.3.1 Switch of reference and switch of scene

Many Papuan languages have a phenomenon called switch-reference, referring to the fact that there is some grammatical marking to signal that the subject will change in the next clause. In a limited way that is the case also in Konai. There is also another grammatical marking that announces that a change of **scene**[154] will take place. This change may actually be a change of subject, but it may just as well be that the entity expressed by that subject will be involved in a different activity.

7.3.1.1 Switch of reference

The first three sections below will cover switch-reference for different types of verbs.[155] The fourth section will show what is included in **the same** subject. The last section is a statement of reservation, as the interplay between temporal relationships and switch-reference is complicated.

- the most common conjugation type comprising event verbs type 1-5, 7
- event verb type 6
- existential state verbs
- the meaning of a same subject
- a statement of reservation

---

[154] John Roberts (1988:106-109) has described a similar situation in Amele in Madang Province. He says Angaataha, Morobe Province, an unrelated language, has that same feauture.

[155] For complete paradigms see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS.

7.3.1.1.1 Switch-reference marking in most event verbs

The switch-reference marking in Konai, for most verb types, occurs in the last stem vowel of a medial verb. For **event verbs** of type 1-5, 7 this vowel may be low, *e, o* or *a*, signalling that the subject will be the same in the following clause, or it may be high, *i* or *u*, signalling that it will change. Apart from marking same or different subject in the following clause, this vowel also marks sequential or simultaneous time. Theoretically then, there are four possibilities, but only two of them show up in the medial verb. The other two possibilities need a final verb in the first clause as shown below. Strictly speaking then, they are not part of the medial switch-reference system, but will be described here anyway.

- same subject + sequential 'and'   last stem vowel of **medial verb** is low: *e, o* or *a* + new clause
- different subject + simultaneous '-ing'   last stem vowel of **medial verb** is high: *i* or *u*   + new clause
- same subject + simultaneous '-ing'   **final verb**: present tense   + new clause
- different subject +sequential   **final verb**: any tense   + new clause
                                         (applies to all verb types)

    Before showing all these details in many different examples, let us look at two short contrasting examples, considering only the same or different subject aspect. As an explanation the word *dogôugu*, when translated into English has two distinct meanings: 'help' and 'be together'.

1069) *dogôugu   dabai dege*
       help.NFUT work do
       '**help someone** do his/her work'

1070) *dogôugu-o dabai dege*
       help-FUT   work do
       '**work together** with someone'

- **same subject sequential: -(*l*)-V-high** (medial verb)[156] + new clause **'and'**

1071) *ei=ne   gusugu=do   ya,   Dahamo=kôu mu-l-o,   Thomas=bôu*
       1PL.EX=also morning=INT go.DU/PL.FUT Dahamo=LOC   go.down-IRR-FUT Thomas=and

       Domo=bôu dogogu-o fogôu-môu
       Domo=and put-FUT   leave.for-PFV

       '… **we also** went in the morning **and** went down in Dahamo **and** having put (off) **and** left
       Thomas & Domo ... '

1072) *fene   ka=ha   Kiunga=kôu i-l-e,   David sa-môu   hagua,*
       airplane that=GEN   Kiunga=LOC go-IRR-FUT David put.inside.FUT-PFV come.FUT

       Dahamo=kôu migi-l-e-môu,   o   kamadia ei   sa+ma   i.
       Dahamo=LOC   come.down-IRR-FUT-PFV man   three   1PL.EX put.inside+put go.NFUT

       '... **the plane** went to Kiunga, **and having** put onboard David (**it**) came **and having** come down in Dahamo (**it**)
       put onboard the three of us **and** went.'

1073) *bateli   bokisi bolou ke-ge   mala   hagua,   na dogogu-o dala-ba,*[157]
       battery   box   two   that-VBR   get.IRR.FUT come.FUT 2S put-FUT   be/have-PFV.IRR

       a   mu-l-o   dugu-o   mala   kuhe hagua-l-e.
       1S go.down-IRR-FUT look.FUT get.IRR.FUT so   come-IRR-FUT

       '… ((**you**) and the order)[158] will bring/get **and** come) two boxes of batteries **and you** will put (them) **and**
       having (them there), **I** will go down **and** see **and** get (them) **and** so (I) will come (back here).'

- **different subject simultaneous: -V[+high]-*môu*/-*ba*** (medial verb) + new clause **'-ing'**

If the subject changes in the following clause, there is **also** a change of scene. This may be expressed by marking the medial verb with the perfective marker -*môu* 'perfective' (past or present) or -*ba* 'perfective irrealis' (future or hypothetic).

1074) *Kôu=me o   gisiai. E hebe ha-i   wai=ye no-u-môu   dugu.*
       this=TOP man young 3S tree cut-NFUT pig=INS eat-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
       'This is a **young man**. **He** saw **a pig** eat**ing** from the garden.'

---

[156] -*l*- 'irrealis'; see 4.1.5.1.2 EPISTEMIC MOOD IN MEDIAL VERBS.

[157] The form *dala-ba* 'be/have-PFV.IRR' has as its root a stative verb, and this form signals a simultaneous state with the following verb, as well as a change of subject (see 7.3.1.1.3 SWITCH-REFERENCE MARKING IN EXISTENTIAL STATE VERBS).

[158] See 7.3.1.1.4 WHAT IS INCLUDED IN THE SAME SUBJECT?

1075)   **dilie yo-u-môu,**   **tie-i**   **sawisie-i**   **ei=ne**
        3DU   go.DU/PL-NFUT-PFV   sleep-NFUT   be.day-NFUT   1PL.EX=also

        gusugu=do   ya ...
        morning=INT   go.DU/PL.FUT

        '... **the two of them** hav**ing** gone, **at that time** (we) slept; the next day in the morning **we also** went and ...'

1076)   **Asika   ele   sio   mowi   ya-l-a-môu**   **dege-l-i-gi**   **dugu;   Mikael**
        Asika   1DU.EX bird   hunt   go.DU/PL-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   do-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   see.NFUT   Mikael

        yukuei   bigi   i-môu,   **haba**   **e=bôu+de   ya-i.**
        clothes   wash   go.NFUT-PFV   but.PFV.IRR   3S=and+PROV   go.DU/PL-NFUT

        '**Asika and I** planned to go bird hunting until we saw; **Mikael** going to wash clothes, **at which time** however, **we** went with him.'

1077)   **Ele   mowi sulugua-gi**[159]   **dugu=be,   so   ke+dia   tigi-l-o   i-môu**
        1DU.EX hunt walk.around.DU/PL-DSQ   see.NFUT=TOP   dog   that+3PL   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV

        i-l-e-môu   dugu;   wai   hiye=do tigi-l-o   i-môu   ele   taha   taha
        go-IRR-FUT-PFV   see.NFUT   pig   big=INT   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   1DU.EX shoot shoot

        i-l-i-gi,   wai to-l-o   i-môu,   ka-gi+ma   sa+ma   hagua-sie-i
        go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   pig die-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   cut-OF+put   put.inside+put   come-DU/PL-NFUT

        '**The two of us** walked around hunting, until we heard/ perceived **the dogs** barking, **at which time we** went and saw; **they** were barking at a very large pig, **at which time the two of us** started and kept on shooting until **the pig** died, **at which time**, **we** cut it up and packed it and came ...'

The above examples show a change **from minor** to major participant. The following example shows the reverse, **from major** to minor, using a totally different strategy with the final verb *dugu* 'see'. This strategy is also shown in two of the above examples, where the verb *dugu* 'see' is used in this way at least once in each of these two examples: (1076) and (1077). See also 8.7.6.1.2 MINOR PARTICIPANTS.

1078)   **a   taha-l-e=yode-ma   i-l-i-di**[160]   **dugu=be,   wai ka=ha**
        1S   shoot-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   see.NFUT=TOP   pig   that=GEN

        toto=nôu   hague-i
        quickly=only   come-NFUT

        '... after **I** had decided to shoot (I) went on until (I) **saw the pig** coming quickly ...'

• **same subject simultaneous: -l-V[+high] (final verb) + new clause '-ing; ...'** [161]

1079)   **Bei   ...   e o   dugu-l-u   gala-l-e.**
        snake ... 3S man see-IRR-NFUT   bite-IRR-FUT

        '(**The**) **snake** ... see**ing** a man will bite/... see**s** ...; (**it**) will bite.'

1080)   **O   gisiai e   gofôu   dege-l-i,   e   wai taha-l-e   sagai.**
        man young 3S hard/strong   do-IRR-NFUT   3S pig   shoot-IRR-FUT   likely

        '(**The**) **young man is** angry/becom**ing** angry**; he** wants to shoot the pig.'

• **different subject sequential: V any tense (final verb) + new clause**

1081)   **o   su=do   e=mokôu hagua-sige fele,   Jon=ha   ta   du-di.**
        man many=INT   3S=LOC   come-DU/PL come.up.FUT John=GEN speech   hear-HAB

        Jon=ha   tobo-u,   ni   du-ma
        John=GEN say-NFUT 2PL hear-DU/PL

        '... **many people** kept coming and arrived and heard John's talk**. John** said: "Hear, you all ..."'

---

[159] *-gi* 'delayed sequence', Foothill dialect; this verb is a stative verb and the Lowland dialect has *-l-i* 'IRR-NFUT' here.

[160] *-di* 'delayed sequence', Foothill dialect.

[161] As the first clause has a final verb, the subject in the next clause may be either same or different, but a same subject **requires the final verb** in the first clause. The same principle applies for the next possibility, where the final verb is required for a different subject in the next clause.

1082) ***Mala...   Yôu** =makôu fiyo-u-môu   dege-**i,***
       arrow... 3S.REFL=LOC fall-NFUT-PFV do-**NFUT**;**(final)**

       *haba   **wai ka** =**ha**   so   sese-l-e   hague-**i.***
       but.PFV.IRR pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT come-**NFUT.(final)**

       '**Arrows** ... **kept** falling (back) on himself; again **the pig came** chasing the dog(s).'[162]

       *A   tafala ke-le   hagua tafala-môu dege-**i,***
       1S stand that-A.LOC come   stand-PFV do-**NFUT**;**(final)**

       ***a**   taha-i,*
       1S shoot-NFUT;(final)

       *fefe   ke-le   fogo-**u** ,*
       waist that-A.LOCR hit.target-**NFUT**;**(final)**

       *do-l-ôu   i-ki-le   bi-l-o   fiyo-u-môu   dege-**i.***
       go.down.river-IRR-NPST downriver-DEMR.N-A.LOCR sit.up/down-IRR-FUT fall-NFUT-PFV do-**NFUT.**(final)

       '(**It**) came and **kept** trying to stand where I stood; **I shot** at it; hit the waist; (**it**) went downriver and sat down there and **kept** falling over.'

       ***De** =**ha**   taha-l-**e** +m**a**-môu ...*
       maternal.uncle=GEN shot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV

       'After **Uncle** had shot and killed (it), ...'

7.3.1.1.2 Switch-reference marking in type 6 verbs

Verb type 6 has only two medial basic forms due to its last stem vowel *ôu*, which is neither high nor low (see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS). Because of that, these verbs are not conjugated as the other verb types by raising or lowering the last stem vowel. In addition, the system is less regular. and less transparent.

- same subject + sequential 'and'   last nuclear syllable of **medial verb**: *-l-ôu* (IRR-NPST)
                                                 + new clause

- different **or** same subject + simultaneous 'ing'   last stem vowel of **medial verb**: *ôu(-môu/-ba)*[163]
                                                 + new clause

- different subject +sequential   **final verb**: any tense (applies to all verb types)
                                                 + new clause

- **same subject sequential: *-l-ôu*** (IRR-NPST) (medial verb) + new clause **'and'**

1083) *Yesu=**ha**   dugu=be,   **o   ilo   ke** +**dia**   o   ta,   duo   kasag**ai** =ye*
       Jesus=GEN see.NFUT=TOP man part that+3PL man INDF spirit bad=INS

       *to-u   ke   wo-**l-ôu**   hagua   fele-go-u-môu   dugu.*
       hold-NFUT that accompany-IRR-NPST come.FUT come.up-PL/DU-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       'Jesus saw **some men** bringing/accompany **and** come and arrive) a man, who was possessed by an evil spirit.'

1084) ***Ke** =n**ôu** =si   **Jona**   e   Godi=**ha**   ta   gobo-**l-ôu**   mu-gu-o   fogôu-môu,*
       that=only=CNTR Jonah 3S God=GEN talk break-IRR-NPST go.down-OF-FUT leave.for-PFV

       e   sa   ta   kama.fo-l-o   i-l-e ...
       3S land INDF run.away-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT

       'But **Jonah** disregarding/(having broken **and** put away and left) God's talk, ran away and went to another country and ...'

---

[162] This example consists of sentences 4, 5 and 6a in *Michael's Hunting Story* in Appendix 1V.

[163] A different subject in the following clause requires the suffix *-môu* 'perfective' (or *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'). If the subject is the same, this suffix may occur, but does not need to. This is true for all verbs (see 7.3.1.2 SWITCH OF SCENE).

1085)   **Na** *fi*   *boho-**l-ôu**-ba,*   *ne*   *midiho kasagai ke*   *tôufogôu-ba,*[164]
            2s soul   turn-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR   2s.POSS face   bad   that   leave-PFV.IRR

          Hiye O=kôu diho baga   *tobôu-ba=si,*   *e* ... *gebe.mei.yode-l-e sagai.*
            big   man=LOC eye close.eye say-PFV.IRR=CNTR 3s ... forgive-IRR-FUT   likely

          'But if **you** repent **and** leaving your bad way, pray to (the) Lord, he ... will perhaps forgive (you).'

- **different** or **same subject, simultaneous: *-ôu(-môu/-ba)*** (NPST-(PFV(IRR))) (medial verb) + new clause **'-ing'**

1086)   *Sogo-ma fogôu-môu,*   *yôu=nôu*   *sibige*   *ma-di.*
            sow-ISQ   leave.for-PFV 3s.EMP=only essence put-HAB

          'After (**he**) has sown, leav**ing** (it alone), (**the garden**) produces food by **itself**.' (different subject)

1087)   **Godi**=*ha miye hiye=do ke*   *tobôu-môu hagua-môu Jona gebe-l-e togu.*
            God=GEN   fish big=INT   that say-PFV   come.FUT-PFV Jonah ?-IRR-FUT swallow.NFUT

          '**God** having sent/**told that very big fish**, (**it**) **came** and swallowed Jonah.'
          (different subject: object to subject)

1088)   *Na-l-e=be*   *o=be*   *milôu-môu, na-l-e*   *kuhe tama*   *dege-di.*
            eat-IRR-FUT=TOP man=TOP work-PFV   eat-IRR-FUT so   appear   do-HAB

          'Concerning food, **people** are produc**ing** (it), (and) so **food** always comes up/appears.'
          (different subject: object to subject)

1089)   **Ta**   *uwo*   *Jon=ha tobôu-môu, sa*   *sa*   *olôufei=do*   *i.*
            talk   noise   John=GEN say-PFV   land land all.total-INT go.NFUT

          '**What** John was say**ing** travelled widely.' (different subject: object to subject)

1090)   **A**   *e=mokôu diho baga*   *tobôu-môu dugu;*   *haba*
            1s 3s=LOC   eye close.eye.FUT say-PFV   see.NFUT but.PFV.IRR

          e=ge ...   *a dogôugu-môu e=mokôu hoho*   *hiye=do dege-i.*
            3s=F.CNTR ... 1s help.NFUT-PFV 3s=LOC   light big=INT do-NFUT

          'Pray**ing** to him **I** saw that as he ... helped me, (I) rejoiced very much towards him.'
          (same subject)

1091)   **a**   *ma*   *eye*   *Paul=ha dege=yede-ma*   *fogôu-môu,*
            1s 1s.POSS older.brother Paul=GEN do=OQV-ISQ   leave.for-PFV

          a   *ma-sofei*   *hague-i*
            1s 1s.POSS-self come-NFUT

          'After **I** told my older brother Paul to do (it), leav**ing**, **I** came on by myself ...' (same subject)

1092)   **Jerusalem** *o*   *e*   *Jerusalem tôufogôu-môu, e*   *sa*   *hu*   *Jeriko=kôu hague-i.*
            Jerusalem man 3s Jerusalem leave-PFV   3s land name Jericho=LOC come-NFUT

          '**A man from Jerusalem** leav**ing** Jerusalem, came towards a place named Jericho.'
          (same subject)

    As a parenthetical comment, in the following example, the two last verbs form make a serial verb construction with the additional grammatical meaning of progressive aspect. (See 5.1.3.2 PROGRESSIVE ASPECT.)

1093)   *ise*   *ôu=bôu*   *dou=bôu sa-i*   *ke*   *ta-môu*   *ke-le*
            finally   sago=and   fire=and put.inside-NFUT that unpack-PFV   that-A.LOCR

          dogogu-o **fogôu-môu**   *i.*
            put-FUT leave.for-PFV go.NFUT

          '... and then having taken out the sago and the matches that (he) had packed, he put them there
          and **moved away**.'

---

[164] The verb *tôufogôu* 'leave' (and *fogôu* 'leave for') seldom occur with *-l-ôu* 'IRR-NPST'.

- **different subject sequential: V any tense** (**final** verb) + new clause (same as other event verbs)

1094)   *a i-l-e,   gamani   o   ta   tobo-u,*
         1s go-IRR-FUT government man INDF say-**NFUT;(final)**

         gamani   dia o   J.K.=ha sele   a 60 kina te-l-e   ne-i.
         government 3PL man J.K.=GEN money 1s 60 kina remove-IRR-FUT give-NFUT (final)

         '... **I** went and **talked** to a government official**; one of their government officials J.K.** removed and gave me 60 kina.'

7.3.1.1.3   Switch-reference marking in existential state verbs

Existential state verbs like *tafala* 'stand' have a different conjugation pattern compared to event verbs. Also, there is no "different subject + sequential" pattern, due to the nature of the stative meaning of existential state verbs.

• same subject + delayed sequence 'until'	last nuclear syllable of **medial verb**: *-l-i* (-IRR-NPST) + new clause
• different subject + simultaneous '-ing'	stem of **medial verb** with *-môu/-ba* (-PFV/-PFV.IRR) +new clause
• same subject simultaneous, e.g. 'stand V-ing'	any **medial event verb**: -IRR-FUT/NPST + new clause with existential **state** verb

- **same subject delayed sequence: *-l-i*** (IRR-NFUT) (medial verb) + new clause **'until'**

1095)   *A hoho   hiye=do dege   **tafala-l-i**   fogôu   i-l-e*
         1s light big=INT do.FUT stand-IRR-NFUT leave.for go-IRR-FUT

         hafei   dege-l-i.
         close.total do-IRR-NFUT

         '**I** am very happy being/**standing** (here) **until I** soon will be leaving.'

     In the following examples, the clauses in parenthesis have a different subject (the pig) than the two clauses before and after (Asele). In this kind of construction the same subject may occur later in the sentence than immediately following, as it does in the previous example.

1096)   ***Asele=ha hebe sugu+tôu tafala-l-i,   (**wai ka=ha   so   sese-l-e*
         Asele=GEN tree top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT

         *hagua   fogôu   i-môu**)**   taha-i=be*
         come.FUT leave.for go.NFUT-PFV shoot-NFUT=TOP

         '**Asele** was **standing** up in a tree top **until** (the pig came and chased the dog(s) and (as they were) passing by) (**he**) shot at (it) ...'

1097)   *A we   ôu   ha-i   ta folo-môu,*
         1s day.before.yesterday sago cut-NFUT INDF go.up.FUT-PFV

         *sio   kisi-ma   **duwo-l-i**   dugu=be,*
         bird make.a.wall-ISQ sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP

         e   ta=nôu   ta fe-l-i-môu   dugu.
         megapod.bird INDF=only INDF come.up-IRR-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

         'The day before yesterday **I** went up to a felled sago tree, and after I had built a bird hunting shelter **I sat** (there) **until I** saw one of the megapod birds coming ...'

1098)   *Huei to-u-môu   **duwo-l-i**,   (huei te-i   dio-u-môu,)*
         water wash-NFUT-PFV sit-IRR-NFUT water wash-NFUT stop-NFUT-PFV

         a mowi i.
         1s hunt go.NFUT

         'It was raining while (**I**) was waiting **until** (it stopped raining,) at which time **I** went hunting.'

- **different subject simultaneous: *-môu/-ba*** (-PFV/-PFV.IRR) (medial verb) **'-ing'**

1099)   *kueya   to-l-o   i.   **Tila-môu**   dugu, ke-ge-môu,*
         cassowary die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT lie.down-PFV see.NFUT that-VBR-PFV

         a hoho   hiye=do dege-i.
         1s light big=INT do-NFUT

         '... **the cassowary** died. (**I**) saw **it lying** (there); so I was very happy.'

1100) *na̲ ma̲   sele   ko�ûu   mala̲,   ne̲   sa   Ukarumpa=ko�û fai*
       2s 1s.POSS money prior get.IRR.FUT 2s.POSS land Ukarumpa=LOC file

       *mala̲   hagua-ma **dala̲=ba**,   a̲ i-l-e   mo-l-o�û̲u.*
       get.IRR.FUT come-ISQ be/have=PFV.IRR 1s go-IRR-FUT get-IRR-FUT

       '... **you** will first get my money and after having brought back (a) file from your place Ukarumpa (and) **having** (it), **I** will go and get (it).'

- **same subject simultaneous:** ***-l-V^-high/-l-o�û*** (-IRR-FUT/NPST) (medial **event** verb) + new clause with **existential state verb**, e.g. 'V and stand', i. e. **'stand V-ing'**

1101) *na̲ yoti   **tobo-l-o�û**   sia,   sa   sa   olo�ûfe̲i=do.*
       2s feast say-IRR-NPST walk.around land land all.total=INT

       '...**you** (must) go around everywhere and tell (people) about the feast./... **tell** (people) about the feast **and go around** everywhere!'

1102) ***Sasa̲i*** *dihi   **mohu-l-o**   **tafala**.*
       woman child hold-IRR-FUT stand

       '(The) **woman** is standing holding a child./... **holds** (a) child **and stands.**'

1103) *o   sasa̲i   ke+di̲a   **mase-l-e**   **tafala-gua-mo�û***
       man woman that+3PL look.at-IRR-FUT stand-DU/PL-PFV

       '... people stood watching/**watched and were standing** ...'

7.3.1.1.4 What is included in the same subject?

What is considered the same subject may vary with group affiliation. The subject may be exactly the same as in the previous examples. It may, however, come to include more or less members or components as the theme is developed in the clauses that follow. Below are a few examples. As said in previous sections the following signals the same subject in medial verbs:

- verb type 1-5,7   last verb stem vowel is low: *e, o, a*   (event verbs)
- verb type 6   last nuclear syllable is: *-lo�û* 'IRR.NPST' (event verbs)
- existential state verbs   last nuclear syllable is: *-li* 'IRR.NFUT'   'until'

  In addition, the following also signals same subject in medial verbs:

- event verbs   *-gi* 'until' (see 3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER VERBAL SUFFIXES)

- **One to one**

1104) ***Sosi=ha̲*** *sio isusu   mala̲   i-l-e,   e̲ moso̲=ko�û si-l-e   na̲-i.*
       Sosi=GEN bird pigeon get.IRR.FUT go-IRR-FUT 3s house=LOC cook-IRR-FUT eat-NFUT
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       '**Sosi** took the pigeon **and** went **and** cooked it in his house **and** ate it.'

- **One to two**

1105) ***Sasa̲i*** *e̲ o�û   ga-i.   O�û ga-i   mei dege-mo�û,*
       woman 3s sago gather-NFUT sago gather-NFUT NEG do.FUT-PFV
       CLAUSE (final)   CLAUSE

       dilie *o   ta   ta̲   tobo-u*
       3DU man INDF talk say-NFUT
       CLAUSE

       '**The woman** gathered the sago. **Having** finished gathering the sago, **the two of them** (the woman & her husband) said to another man ...'

- **One to many**

1106) ***David*** *e̲ Kiunga=ko�û=ge   fene=ye   Dahamo�û=ko�û   hagua,*
       David 3s Kiunga=LOC=F.CNTR airplane=INS Dahamo=LOC   come.FUT
       CLAUSE

       Thomas=bo�û, Domo=bo�û, a̲=bo�û+de *sa+ma̲,   Ukarumpa=ko�û ya-i.*
       Thomas=and Domo=and   1s=and+PROV put.inside+put Ukarumpa=LOC go.DU/PL-NFUT
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       '**David** came from Kiunga to Dahamo by plane **and Thomas, Domo & I** (were) put inside, **and we (all)** went to Ukarumpa.'

In the following example, however, there is a change of subject when Paul joins his companions again after an excursion on his own.

1107) **E** i-l-e, boho-l-ôu+m̲a hagu-môu,
3S go-IRR-FUT turn-IRR-NPST+put come.NFUT-PFV
CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE

eiyôu=f̲ei mosole foudu folo-ga-môu
1PL.EX.EMP=TOTAL ship inside go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV
CLAUSE

'**He** (**Paul**) went and having turned around com**ing** back, **all of us** having gone up into the ship, we ...'

- **Two to many**

1108) **Dilie** moso̲=kôu wai ka-gi+m̲a so-l-ôu-môu,
3DU house=LOC pig cut-OF+put cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST-PFV
CLAUSE CLAUSE

e sas̲ai=bôu **e** dihi olôuf̲ei kamadia ke-ge di̲a olôuf̲ei
3S woman=and 3S child all.total three that-VBR 3PL all.total
CLAUSE ...

n̲a-ma tia-sie-i
eat-ISQ sleep-DU/PL-NFUT
CLAUSE

'**The two of them** (a man and his wife) cut the pig up and **having** cooked it on hot stones, **with his wife and all of his three children** after eating **they** slept ...'

- **Part to whole**

1109) **N̲a m̲a** t̲a du ho fogôu-ba=be, **ne** mogo+u
2S 1S.POSS talk hear desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S.POSS jaw+hole
CLAUSE CLAUSE ...

a+ko-gu **dala-l-i,** (ne sas̲ai dihi mal̲a fel̲e-i-ba,)
road+hinder-OF be/have-IRR-NFUT 2S.POSS woman child get.IRR.FUT come.up-NFUT-PFV.IRR
(CLAUSE)

n̲a t̲a tobo-l-ôu=yode tobo-u.
2S talk say-IRR-NPST=IQV.FUT say-NFUT
CLAUSE CLAUSE

'"If you do not want to hear what I say, **your mouth** will be closed, **until** (your wife has born a child), at which time **you** will speak," he said.'

- **Two to one**

1110) **ele**... wo+m̲a m̲ôu+m̲a sa+m̲a huli̲a.me hagu-l-u-**gi,**
2S.EX attack+put get+put put.inside+put night.TOP come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE

bogo tage+tôu tofo-u=ye fiye-i.
white.rock over+up step-NFUT=INS fall-NFUT
CLAUSE

'... **we two** ... killed (flying foxes) and collected (them), and put (them) inside (our stringbags) and came on in the night **until** (**I**) by stepping on a lime stone fell.'

- **Many to one**

1111) **Ei** sa Miletus=kôu folo-ga-môu, **Pol=h̲a** sa Efesus
1PL.EX land Miletus=LOC go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV Paul-GEN land Ephesus
CLAUSE CLAUSE ...

damal̲e=yode-i o sas̲ai wo-l-ôu dala-di o ke+di̲a
true=IQV-NFUT man woman accompany-IRR-NPST be/have-HAB man that+3PL
...

hagua-sie-ma=be=ede-ma t̲a dogogu.
come-DU/PL-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-ISQ talk put.NFUT
CLAUSE

'**We** (excl.) **having** arrived at Miletus, **Paul** sent words for the pastors in Ephesus to come.'

7.3.1.1.5 A statement of reservation

The interplay between switch of subject and the temporal relationships sequential and simultaneous is complicated. Exceptions occur, or grammatical forms may be played with, whichever way you want to look at it. As an example, the following sentence may be grammatical but has not been observed in natural speech/text:[165]

1112) ***Aye**=**h_a_**   **wai** **k_e_**   *tah_o_-_u_-m_ôu_*   *to-l-o*   *i.*
         father=GEN pig that   shoot-NFUT-PFV die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

        '**My father** *shoot**ing** that pig (**it**) died **immediately**.'

   Variants of the following sentence occur in a couple of texts. A same subject is expected, following the verb *tah_a_-m_ôu_*. This gives a passive translation in English.

1113) *Aye*=*h_a_*   **wai** **k_e_**   *tah_a_-m_ôu_*   *to-l-o*   *i.*
         father=GEN pig that   shoot.FUT-PFV die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

        '**The pig was shot at** by my father **and** eventually died.'

   In the following example, with a non-mother-tongue speaker's perspective, you expect a same subject going to the places of Kiunga, Koroba and Suabi. However, the "go"-verbs indicate different subjects, which on closer consideration is natural, as in general there are different people groups going to all these places.

1114) *Di*   *gugue*=*do* *tewe, Kiunga* **i-ba,**   *Koloba* **i-ba** ...
         1PL.IN   all=INT   know Kiunga go.NFUT-PFV.IRR Koroba go.NFUT-PFV.IRR...

        Suabi   **i-ba,**   *na-l-_e_*   *hiye*=*do ko-l-ôu*
         Suabi   go.NFUT-PFV.IRR eat-IRR-FUT big=INT carry.on.head-IRR-NPST

        patolo   *i-di*
         patrol go-HAB

        'We all know (that) **when someone** is go**ing** to Kiunga, **when someone else** is go**ing** to Koroba ... **when another one** is go**ing** to Suabi, (they) carry a lot of food and go on (a) hike/patrol ...'

   In the next example, the high vowel *-u* does not indicate a change of subject, but rather that a piece of equipment is left at a certain place to stay there, ready for use. Note that the second verb is a stative one.

1115) *mil_ôu_-ma fogo-u*   *dala*
         work-ISQ leave.for-NFUT   be/have

        '... after making (it), left (it to) be (there – ready for use)'

   Also, the proverb *dege* 'do' may together with adjectives or abstract nouns function as an experiential state verb (see 4.4 ADJECTIVES: Verbalised adjectives). If a verbalised adjective in past tense is followed by a stative verb, as in the following example, the *-i* 'non-future' does not indicate a change of subject, but indicates that the quality expressed by the adjective is stable.

1116) *geh_e_ dege-i*   *dala*
         new do-NFUT be/have

        'be alive'

The above examples are explainable, but there are other examples that I cannot explain.

   In addition, grammatical verbs based on proverbs, like *kege dege* 'be like that', *kah_a_ dege* 'because of that', *kege* 'so/then/be like that', *de* 'proverb', *s_a_ dege* 'be like/likely' and *mei dege* 'finish', do not seem to indicate same or different subject by the last stem vowel. Therefore, if it is inherently low, *e* or *o*, it is not marked in the gloss, e.g. *ke-ge-m_ôu_* (that-VBR-PFV) **not** (that-VBR.**FUT**-PFV).

7.3.1.2 Switch of scene

A scene is defined as a level between the clause and the sentence. A scene centres around a new subject or a new activity in the following clause. There are two medial verb suffixes to mark this switch of scene:

- *-m_ôu_* 'perfective (realis)'   past and present events and states
- *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'   future and hypothetic events and states

---

[165] See 7.3.1.1.1 SWITCH-REFERENCE MARKING IN MOST EVENT VERBS.

These two medial suffixes, are just about obligatory on a medial verb form, when the subject changes, but they are not obligatory for a change of activity, as the speaker or writer may develop the scenes according to how he/she is telling the story. Also, if part of the new scene, following *-môu/-ba* involves a new subject, it is often a more important one.

These two perfective suffixes are called 'perfective', because they make a complete unit of the medial clause they occur in, including any other medial clauses preceding it and not marked by either of these two suffixes. Note that a medial clause in a sentence, where the final verb describes something that happened in the past, may still be *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'. That is due to embedding, e.g. quotes, marked in blue. Also note embedding on the main event line, marked in red.

Here are some examples. Each *-môu* or *-ba* indicates a change of scene. A scene may consist of several clauses. A final clause with any preceding non-perfective clauses is also a scene.

See the first four sections under 7.3.1.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE to see how same versus different subject is marked for all verb types, including what is included under "same subject".

Examples in past & present tense and habitual aspect:

1117) **ke-ge-*môu*,**   **di*a* so-l-ô*u*-*môu*,**   **nal*a*   i.**[166]
      that-VBR-PFV   3PL cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST-PFV   eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT
      SCENE: **SAME**   SCENE: **SAME**[167]   SCENE (final)

      '... hav**ing** acted like that, and hav**ing** cooked it, **they** ate (it).'

1118) **E̱ mos*o*=kôu folo-*môu*   dugu,   du   baha duwo-*môu* dugu-o-*môu*,**
      3S house=LOC go.up.FUT-PFV see.NFUT   inside look sit-PFV   see-FUT-PFV
      SCENE: **SAME**   SCENE (final) SCENE: **DIFFERENT**[168] SCENE: **SAME**

      ei   olôuf*ei*   ki-le   duwe-i.
      1PL.EX all.total   inside-A.LOCR sit-NFUT
      SCENE (final)

      '(**We two**) having gone to his house saw **him** sit inside and wait and **we all** sat inside there.'

1119) **Dou=*ye* wai towe si-*môu*,   ho   du-*l-o*   i-l-i.**
      fire=INS pig hair cook.NFUT-PFV   smell hear-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT
      SCENE: **DIFFERENT**   SCENE (final)

      Ho̱   du-l-o-*môu*,   na-l-e̱   s*a*   dege-*l-e* i-di.
      smell hear-IRR-FUT-PFV   eat-IRR-FUT likely do-IRR-FUT go-HAB
      SCENE: **SAME**   SCENE (final)

      'The **fire** singeing the hair on the pig, **they** smell (it). Having smelled (it), **they** want to eat.'

1120) ***a̱ fi̱ hiye m*a*-i=be   kôu-g(u)e   m*a*-i,   Yesu n*a*=ge *a* dogôugu-ba,***
      1S soul big put-NFUT=TOP this-VBR(BLTV)put-NFUT Jesus 2S=F.CNTR 1S help.NFUT-PFV.IRR
      SCENE (final)   SCENE (final)   SCENE: **DIFFERENT**

      *haba   a̱ tewe mo-l-ôu   de tawa-l-e-*môu*   a̱ e=mokôu diho̱ baga   tobo-u.*
      but.PFV.IRR 1S know get-IRR-NPSTPROV know-IRR-FUT-PFV 1S 3S=LOC eye close.e. say-NFUT
      SCENE (final)   SCENE: **SAME**   SCENE (final)

      '... while thinking deeply, **I** thought like this: "When you **Jesus** help me, then **I** will get knowledge," (and) having realized that, **I** closed (my) eyes and said (prayed) to him.'

1121) **Dahamo=be   1,466 kina k*e*=nôu=f*ei*   mal*a*   hagua-ba,**
      Dahamo=TOP   1,466 kina that=only=total get.IRR.FUT come.FUT-PFV.IRR
      Theme   SCENE: **SAME**

      *mola   mos*o* k*e* bologua-l-e̱   =yode   tobo-*l-ô*u   i.*
      medicine house that good.do-IRR-FUT =IQV.FUT say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT
      SCENE (final)   SCENE (final)

      'Concerning Dahamo, (they said), "**A total of only K1,466** will be coming and will fix up the aidpost building," **they** stated and said.'

1122) **ise   hagu-*môu*,   a̱ tah*a*-i.**
      finally come.NFUT-PFV   1S shoot-NFUT
      SCENE: **DIFFERENT**   SCENE (final)

      '... presto, coming (on; **a pig**), **I** shot at him.'

---

[166] *nal*a* i* is the plural form of *n*a*-i* (eat-NFUT) 'ate'. See 4.1.6.2.1 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL ON TRANSITIVE VERBS.

[167] Same subject as in the next scene; the subject is involved in a different but consequent activity.

[168] Different subject in the next scene.

1123)　*Mowi i-l-i-gi　　　　dugu,　**wai** sege-i　　na-ma-**môu** i-**môu**,　　　**a**　dugu.*
　　　hunt　go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT　pig　plant-NFUT　eat-ISQ-PFV go.NFUT-PFV　1S　see.NFUT
　　　SCENE (final)　　　　　　　　　SCENE: **SAME**　　　　　　　　SCENE: **DIFF.** SCENE (final)

　　　'(I) was hunting going along until I saw (something); **a pig** had been eating root crops (and then) gone, **I** saw.'

1124)　*sa　　　o　　mei bito̲u　　sa　　ko=ko̲u　tafala-**môu**,*
　　　land　man NEG mountain ground that=LOC　stand-PFV
　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**

　　　o　　su̲=do　　e̲=moko̲u hagua-sige　　fele̲
　　　man many=INT　3S=LOC　　come-DU/PL.FUT come.up.FUT
　　　SCENE ...

　　　'... while (**he**) stood/stayed on a mountain without people, **many people** were on their way coming to him and arrived and ...'

1125)　*mosole obo̲u=ko̲u sele　ne̲-i.　　　Ne-l-e̲-**môu**,*
　　　ship　owner=LOC money give-NFUT give-IRR-FUT-PFV
　　　SCENE (final)　　　　　　　　　SCENE: **SAME**

　　　*e̲　folo　　　duwo-**môu**　i.[169]*
　　　3S go.up.FUT sit-PFV　　go.NFUT
　　　SCENE: final)

　　　'... (he) gave money to the owner of the ship. Having given money, **he** went up (on the ship) and while sitting (**he**) went.'

1126)　***ele　　... so　ka̲=ha̲　tigo-u-môu　　du***
　　　1DU.EX ... dog that=GEN bark-NFUT-PFV hear.NFUT
　　　　　　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**　　　　SCENE (final)

　　　'...**we two** ... heard **the dog** barking ...'

Examples in future tense:

1127)　***Ne̲　　so　hiye dege-ba,　　**wai**　wo-l-o.***
　　　2S.POSS dog big do.FUT-PFV.IRR　pig　attack-IRR-FUT
　　　SCENE: **SAME**　　　　　　SCENE (final)

　　　'When **your dog** will have grown up, **she** will kill pig(s).'

1128)　***Soko̲ulo̲u sisigo̲　　ke+di̲a̲　kefe-gu-o　　dala-ba,　　　bo̲u=ha̲　　　poto***
　　　school　children that+3PL gather-OF-FUT be/have-PFV.IRR white.man=GEN photo
　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**　　　　　　　　　　　　　SCENE (final)

　　　to-l-o̲u.
　　　hold-IRR-NPST
　　　SCENE (final)

　　　'When **the school children** are gathered, **the white man** will take a picture.'

1129)　***Do　　　dala-ba　　i-l-e　　　mei.***
　　　sickness be/have-PFV.IRR go-IRR-FUT NEG
　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**　　SCENE (final)

　　　'Being sick/**Sickness** being (there), **I** will not go.'

1130)　***sawisie-i　kamadia mei dege-i-ba,　　**a**　hagu̲a-ma i-l-e=yode-i.***
　　　be.day-NFUT three　NEG do-NFUT-PFV.IRR 1S rise-ISQ go-IRR-FUT=IQV-NFUT
　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**　　　　　　　SCENE (final)

　　　'... after three days/as soon as **three days** are gone, **I** will rise and be alive, he said.'

7.3.1.2.1　Habitual aspect and marking of scenes

The following sentence has the final verb in habitual aspect. The preceding scene is marked by -*môu* 'perfective (realis)'.

1131)　*Ta=ye=ge　　　　wai　taho̲-u-**môu**,　　o　olo̲ufei　nala̲　　　i-di.*
　　　bow=INS=F.CNTR　　pig　shoot-NFUT-PFV　man all.total eat.IRR.FUT go-HAB
　　　SCENE: **DIFFERENT**　　　　　　　SCENE (final)

　　　'**As soon as** a pig has been shot **by the bow**, **everybody** eats (it).'

---

[169] Progressive aspect; see 4.1.5.4.2.

A perfective **realis** medial scene, like in the example above, may get an added dimension by using the topic marker =*be*. This enclitic sets the background for a habitual past or present event/state. This has consequences for the conjugation of the medial verb form used, namely that the same or different subject distinction is not in focus any more. The focus is rather on the temporal aspect of the form, i.e. a high vowel *i* or *u* means that the scene is simultaneous in time with the next scene, while a low vowel *e* or *o* means sequence. See 7.3.1.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE.

1132) *ma̠   mo̠u   Domo   e̠   mowi   i-môu=be,   gali   su̠=do   taha̠-di.*
1s.POSS grandfather Domo 3s hunt go.NFUT-PFV=TOP wild.animal many=INT shoot-HAB
SCENE: **SIMULTANEOUS**   SCENE (final)

'... my grandfather Domo, **when** he went hunt**ing** (he) **usually** shot a lot of game.'

1133) *Hou=ye=be   i-l-e-môu=be,   gabo   sa-môu*
thumb=INS=TOP go-IRR-FUT-PFV=TOP village pass.FUT-PFV
SCENE: **SEQUENTIAL**   SCENE (medial)

i-l-e,   Koloba=kôu folo   tia-di.
go-IRR-FUT Koloba=LOC go.up.FUT sleep-HAB
SCENE: (final)

'On the fifth day, **having** gone on, having passed a village (you) go on, and arrive at Koroba and **usually** sleep (there).' (Mountain dialect)

1134) *na-l-e̠   hiye=do sa+ma̠   i-l-i-gi   sa   nugu-môu=be,*
eat-IRR-FUT big=INT put.inside+put go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ land get.dark.NFUT-PFV=TOP
SCENE (final[170] continued on next line)   SCENE: **SIMULTANEOUS**

a̠   dibi   moso̠   fo-u-l-u.
1s forest house rise-BLTV-IRR-NFUT
SCENE (final cont.)

'... (I) pack a lot of food and go on until (it) get**s** dark, **when** I **go up**/into (a) bush shelter.' (in a story about how to survive in the bush)

1135) *O   ta=nôu=ye   nele̠   kusia-ma-môu,   moso̠   ke̠   dumu̠-môu=be,*
man INDF=only=INS strength struggle-ISQ-PFV house that finish-PFV=TOP
SCENE: (medial)   SCENE: **SIMULTANEOUS**

o   su̠=do   moso̠ ki-le   tia-sie-di
man many=INT house inside-A.LOC sleep-DU/PL-HAB
SCENE (final)

'**As soon as** someone has worked hard (and) finished building (his) house, a lot of people **usually** sleep in it ...'

1136) *Sa   kasaga̠i dege-môu=be,   e̠   ta̠-di=yo   mei.*
land bad do.FUT-PFV=TOP 3s speak-HAB=INDC NEG
SCENE: **SEQUENTIAL**   SCENE (final)

'**When** the weather is bad, he **usually** does not speak/make a sound.' (about a cicada)

See also 7.3.3.3 CONDITION for future/hypothetic use of =*be* 'topic marker' together with -*ba* 'perfective irrealis'.

7.3.2 Temporal linking

In natural speech of the narrative genre, sentences are long, consisting of 1-20+ clauses. This style of narration is carried over in writing as well. There are two types of clauses: medial and final. The medial clause usually occurs non-finally in the sentence and is marked to signal the temporal relationship to the next clause, as well as other information. The final clause carries final suffixation, mainly mood and tense or aspect, which applies to the whole sentence. A final clause may also occur in the middle of a sentence (see 6.1.4 MEDIAL AND FINAL CLAUSES IN LONG SENTENCES).

There are many ways of joining clauses in a string when telling a story. Apart from marking different types of linear temporal relationships, the different strategies of joining may also mark aspect, same or different subject, main versus minor participant, transitivity, purpose, condition and contrast. With the help of medial verb suffixes, tense & mood suffixes used in a relative way, enclitics, proverbs and cliticising quote verbs, numerous combinations are possible, giving different meanings and implications.

---

[170] The final scene is interrupted by the scene about it getting dark.

Temporal linking between clauses may signal the following relationships:

- **unspecified/sequential**
- **close/simultaneous**
- **immediate sequence**
- **delayed sequence**
- **simultaneous**

There is more than one strategy to express some of these temporal relationships.

Out-of-sequence order has no special verb forms, but is a matter of semantics and a couple of modifying adverbs.

7.3.2.1 Unspecified temporal/sequential linking – 'and ...'

The medial verbs, expressing an unspecified temporal/sequential relationship, are event verbs[171] with relative mood & tense suffixation **ending with a low vowel, *e*, *a* or *o***, or, for **type 6 verbs with *-l-ôu* 'IRR-NPST'**. This construction translates 'verb and ...'. It is used when the subject is the same in the following clause. An unspecified time is implied before the event expressed by the second verb starts. The verb may finish off with either of the perfective suffixes (*-môu* or *-ba*). In that case the translation is 'having verbed ...'. For details see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS.

- *-(l)-V*[-high]   event verbs, types 1-5, 7   'and ...', ('having ...')

- *-l-ôu*   type 6   'and ...', ('having ...')

1137) *Ôu   ke   ha-môu,   e   hagua   ŧie-i.   ...*
     sago that cut.**FUT**-PFV 3s come.**FUT** sleep-NFUT ...
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     Ke-le-ge-môu   e   i-l-e   dugu=be
     that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV 3s go-IRR-**FUT** see.NFUT=TOP
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     '**Having** cut the sago (palm), he came **and** slept. ... **Having** been like that there, he went **and** saw that ...'

1138) *Ele   folo   dôuwa   u   dobogôu kasugu-o-môu,*
     1DU.EX go.up.**FUT** hornbill hole hand   insert-**FUT**-PFV
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     dôuwa   ŧo-l-ôu+ma   wala   i.[172]
     hornbill hold-IRR-NPST+put.**FUT** attack.IRR.FUT go.NFUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'The two of us went up **and having** inserted our hands in the hole of the hornbill, we grabbed the hornbill **and** killed (it).'

1139) *Ne   so   hiye dege-ba   wai   wo-l-o.*
     2S.POSS dog big do.**FUT**-PFV.IRR pig   attack-IRR-FUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'Your dog **having** grown up will kill pigs.'

1140) *Yomogôu-môu=be awaki ŧo-l-ôu   i-l-e   nôu-di-l-i.*
     begin-PFV=TOP   knife hold-**IRR-NPST** go-IRR-**FUT** make.a.garden-HAB-IRR-NFUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'To start with, (you) hold a knife **and** go **and** make a garden as usual.'

7.3.2.2 Close temporal/simultaneous linking – 'as soon as/when/while'

The medial verbs expressing a close temporal/simultaneous relationship are event verbs[173] with relative mood & tense suffixation, **ending with a high vowel, *i* or *u***, or, for **type 6 verbs with *-ôu*** without **the irrealis marker *-l-***. This construction translates 'as soon as/when/while'. It is used when the subject is different in the following clause. The verb is finished off with either of the perfective suffixes (*-môu* or *-ba*), giving the translation '...-ing'.

Existential state verbs may appear in an irrealis form with a high vowel following, but with a slightly different meaning (see third bullet and (1146).

---

[171] Including experiential state verbs.

[172] Serial verb; see 4.1.6.2.1 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL ON TRANSITIVE VERBS. Most serial verbs will be marked in blue in the sections under temporal linking, as they affect clause structure.

[173] Including experiential state verbs.

- *-(l)-V*[+high]   event verbs, types 1-5, 7   'as soon as/when/while ...' ('-ing ...')
- *oû*   type 6 verbs   'as soon as/when/while ...' ('-ing ...')
- *-l-i*   existential state verbs   'until'

1141) *ke-ge   tia-sige-i;   sawisie-i   Monday gusugu=do   mou   dilie*
that-VBR sleep-DU/PL-NFUT be.day-NFUT Monday morning=INT grandpa 3DU
CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE(cont. next line)

 aboû   dilie igo-u-moû   dugu-o   fogoû
grandma 3DU go-**NFUT-PFV** see-FUT leave.for
                        CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'... we slept like that; (next) day Monday, early in the morning, (we) saw grandpa & grandma go**ing** and (we) left ...'

1142) *ma   ade   Ronny Rumginae mola   moso=koû=ge*
1s.POSS father Ronny Rumginae medicine house=LOC=F.CNTR
CLAUSE(cont. next line)

 to-l-o   i-moû   mala   hagua
die-IRR-FUT go.**NFUT-PFV** get.IRR.FUT come.FUT
                        CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'... my father Ronny dy**ing** at Rumginae hospital, (I) brought (him) ...'

1143) *o   oloûfei=do   kefe+ma, ...   Nege   ke+dia   sabe=koû*
man all.total=INT gather+put ... Nenge that+3PL home.ground=LOC
CLAUSE   CLAUSE(cont. next line)

 ya-i.   Nege ke+dia oloûfei=do   tia-sige-i-moû,
go.DU/PL-NFUT Nenge that+3PL all.total=INT sleep-DU/PL-**NFUT-PFV**
                  CLAUSE

 oloûfei=do   wo+ma   mei dege-i.
all.total=INT attack+put NEG do-NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'... all gathered and ... they went to the place where the Nenges lived. **While** all the Nenges slept, they killed them all.'

1144) *na a=mokoû ikoke a ko-u-ba   moso   togo-l-o.*
2s 1s=LOC   nail 1s look.for-**NFUT-PFV.IRR** house   build-IRR-FUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'... **when** you find nails for me, (I) will **immediately** build (a) house.'

1145) *e moso=koû toû-moû,   o sasai dulo   i.*
3s house=LOC hold.**NPST-PFV** man woman hear-IRR-FUT go.NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'...people heard that he was in the house.'

1146) *sio kisi-ma   duwo-l-i   dugu=be*
bird make.a.wall-ISQ sit-**IRR-NFUT** see.NFUT=TOP
CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

 e   ta=noû ta fe-l-i-moû   dugu.
megapod.bird INDF=only INDF come.up-IRR-**NFUT-PFV** see.NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'After building a bird hunting shelter, (I) sat there **until** I (I) saw one of the megapod birds com**ing**.'

7.3.2.3 Immediate sequence

Sequential temporal linking can be of different kinds. The unspecified temporal linking described in 7.3.2.1 is one kind. There are two other strategies for sequential linking. Immediate sequence is signalled by the medial suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence'. Its meaning is telic, i.e. the event expressed by a verb so marked is finished before the next event commences, which it does immediately. This contrasts with delayed sequence which will be described in the next section.

- immediate sequence *-ma*   (3.1.1.4 FOURTH ORDER ...: ... *-ma* 'immediate sequence')
- *de-ma* (PROV-ISQ) is used for stative verbs   (1150)

There is no change of subject following the suffix *-ma* 'immediate sequence'. It may co-occur with both *-môu* 'perfective' and *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'.

1147)   *Sasai̱=bôu   o=bôu   dilie   dou   tôu-ma   ôu   si+ma   no-l-u̱.*
            woman=and   man=and   3DU   fire   light-ISQ   sago   cook+put   eat-IRR-NFUT
            Theme   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          '**After** (the) man and the woman light (the) fire, (they) cook (the) sago and eat.'

1148)   *Bologu̱a-ma   hue̱i   ne̱-i.   Ne-l-e̱   bologu̱a-ma,*
            good.do-ISQ   water   give-NFUT   give-IRR-FUT   good.do-ISQ
            CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          e̱   do̱ki   tage+tôu   dogogu.
            3S   donkey   over+up   put.NFUT
            CLAUSE

          '**After** fixing (him) up, (he) gave (him) water. (He) gave (that) and **after** fixing (him) up, he put (him) up on top of (the) donkey. '

1149)   *Subulu   sô̱u-ma,   e̱   so-l-u.   Sa-ma-môu,   moso̱=kôu ya*
            sweet.potato   open-ISQ   3S   put.inside-IRR-NFUT   put.inside-ISQ-PFV   house=LOC   go.DU/PL.FUT
            CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          '**After** gathering the sweet potatoes, he put them in (his stringbag). **When** (he) **had** put them inside, (he) went home and ...'

1150)   *A̱   Megi   o̱=kôu   tafala **de-ma**   i-l-e,   Biangabip=kôu   folo*
            1S   Megi   mouth.of.river=LOC   stand   PROV-ISQ   go-IRR-FUT   Biangabip=LOC   go.up.FUT
            CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          '**After** staying at (the) mouth of (the river) Megi, I went (on) and went up to Biangabip and ...'

7.3.2.4 Delayed sequence

Delayed sequence contrasts with immediate sequence. There are two strategies:

- the medial verb suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence', i.e. 'until'

- a verb of movement followed by *=be de-môu*/*=be de-ba* =TOP#PROV-PFV(.IRR) 'delayed sequence', i.e. 'until'

-gi 'delayed sequence'

The suffix *-gi* is always preceded by irrealis non-future/non-past, i.e. present tense. It translates 'until'. The impression you get in a story is that the subject does not change in the following clause, but actually it may, along the lines explained in 7.3.1.1.4 WHAT IS INCLUDED IN THE SAME SUBJECT?. Someone included in a plural subject, for example, may continue on his own, like in (1154).

Also, the participant(s) in the following clause may be lower on the animate scale, like in (1155) and (1156), or inanimate as in (1157). This intervening clause, with a subject lower on the animate scale, is then marked by *-môu* 'perfective', after which the main participant(s) continue(s).

Existential state verbs do not take the suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence'. In the Lowland dialect, the irrealis non-future form has the meaning of delayed sequence (1158).

The suffix *-gi* 'delayed sequence' has an allomorph *-di* used in the Mountain and Foothill dialects. See also 3.7.2 VARIANTS OF *gi* ...

1151)   *E̱   to̱   to-môu   su-l-u-gi,   kulio   dege-môu,*
            3S   river   wash-PFV   walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   coldness   do.FUT-PFV
            CLAUSE   (serial verb: progressive aspect)   CLAUSE

          dou   ha   duwo.
            fire   get.warm   sit
            CLAUSE

          'He is swimming around **until** having become cold, and (he) is warming himself by the fire and sits.'
          (i.e. ... .he is sitting there warming himself by the fire.)

1152)   *Ya̱me   dege-l-i-gi   win   dege-i.*
            try.hard   do-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   win   do-NFUT
            CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          'They tried hard **until** they won.'

1153) *a   mota=ye   mala   hagu-l-u-**gi**#hagu-l-u-**gi**#hagu-l-u-**gi**   fele*
```
1S  motor.canoe=INS get.IRR.FUT  (come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ)x3                       come.up.FUT
CLAUSE                            CLAUSEx3                                    CLAUSE
```
'... I came travelling by motor canoe (back towards the village) **until** (I) arrived and ...'

1154) *ise   to-ba   doû-**go-l-oû-gi**,   a miye soso-**l-oû-gi**,*
```
finally river-along go.downriver-DU/PL-IRR-NPST-DSQ  1s fish dive.for-IRR-NPST-DSQ
CLAUSE                                               CLAUSE
```
   gibe   ta   taha-l-e   hebe-l-e   fila-moû
```
fish.sp. INDF  shoot-IRR-FUT  carry-IRR-FUT   throw.FUT-PFV
CLAUSE                        CLAUSE          CLAUSE
```
'... finally **we** went along down the river, **until I** (started) diving for fish (and) continued **until** (I) had shot a "gibe" fish and carried (it) and having thrown (it up on the bank) ...'

1155) *Wai hiye=do tigo-l-o   i-moû   ele   taha   taha   i-**l-i-gi**,*
```
pig big=INT   bark-IRR-FUT  go.NFUT-PFV 1DU.EX shoot   shoot   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
CLAUSE        (serial verb)              CLAUSE (serial verb)
```
   wai   to-l-o   i-moû,   ka-gi+ma   sa+ma   hagua-sie-i
```
pig        die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV  cut-OF+put   put.inside+put come-DU/PL-NFUT
CLAUSE     (serial verb)            CLAUSE       CLAUSE         CLAUSE
```
'... When (the dogs) barked at (this) very big pig, we two immediately (started) shooting repeatedly and went on **until** the pig died, whereupon we cut (it) up and packed (the pieces) and came (back) ...'

1156) *aduoû=boû,   aye=boû   dilie mowi ya-i.   Yo-**l-u-gi**,*
```
1s.mother=and  father=and 3DU  hunt go.DU/PL-NFUT go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
Theme                     CLAUSE               CLAUSE
```
   so   ke+dia   wai ta   tigo-l-o   i-moû   dugu.
```
dog that+3PL pig  INDF bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
CLAUSE            (serial verb)              CLAUSE
```
'... mother and father went hunting. They went along until they saw/heard the dogs barking at a pig.'

1157) *to-ba   miye susua-moû   fe-**l-i-gi**,   habi   dege-i-moû,*
```
river-along fish dive.for.FUT-PFV come.up-IRR-NFUT-DSQ afternoon do-NFUT-PFV
CLAUSE           (serial verb)                         CLAUSE
```
   oû=boû   dou=boû ma-i   ke-le   fele-moû
```
sago=and fire=and put-NFUT that-A.LOCR come.up.FUT-PFV
CLAUSE
```
'... (he) came on diving for fish **until** becoming afternoon, having arrived where (he) had put his sago and his matches ...'

1158) *Isaac=ha   afu   Temifen=koû tefele-i.   Tafala-**l-i**,*
```
Isaac=GEN earlier Temifen=LOC stand-NFUT   stand-IRR-NFUT
CLAUSE                                    CLAUSE
```
   ta   sabiye-i   so   oye ta=noû=fei   wo-l-oû   mowi i.
```
INDF be.morning-NFUT dog  male INDF=only=total accompany-IRR-NPST hunt go.NFUT
CLAUSE               CLAUSE                                      CLAUSE
```
'Isaac was before staying at Temifen. (He) stayed (there) **until** one day (he) took one male dog only and went hunting.'

1159) *diloû   dilie moso=koû fo-fo-l-oû   dala-**l-i**,*
```
3DU.EMP 3DU  house=LOC RED.PL-run-IRR-NPST be/have-IRR-NFUT
CLAUSE                                   CLAUSE
```
   oguo kamadia ke-ge   mei dege-i.
```
moon three   that-VBR NEG do-NFUT
```
'... the two of them looked after (the child) for three months/**until** three months were gone.'
```
CLAUSE
```

Verb[movement]**=*be demôu*/=*be deba* 'delayed sequence'** (=TOP#PROV-PFV(.IRR) 'go on until')

This is another delayed sequence construction. It is less common.

1160)   *miye   ka=ha   Jona   mala   **i=be   de-môu,** to   biya=kôu dogogu.*

        fish that=GEN Jonah get.IRR.FUT   go=TOP PROV-PFV river   beach=LOC put.NFUT

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        '... that fish got Jonah and went on **until** (she) put him on the shore.'

1161)   *Dogogu-o-môu   mala   **i=be de-môu,***

        put-FUT-PFV   get.IRR.FUT   go=TOP PROV-PFV

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        gaba-l-e   tia-di   moso=kôu folo   dogogu.

        pass-IRR-FUT sleep-HAB house=LOC go.up.FUT put.NFUT

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        'Having put him (up on a donkey), (he) took (him) and went on **until** (he) arrived at (a) guest house and put (him there).'

1162)   *kuolôu ta   Moses=ha nala-i   ke=bôu+de   olôufei=be   o=e*

        law   talk Moses=GEN write-NFUT that=and+PROV all.total=TOP man=INS

        CLAUSE (cont. next line)

        *he-hegi-e   tobôu-môu **hagua=be de-môu,** Jon   e   tama   dege-i.*

        RED.PL-show-RED.PL say-PFV   come=TOP   PROV-PFV John=GEN 3S appeardo-NFUT

                              CLAUSE (serial verb)   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        '... also the law that Moses wrote, all of it was taught and preached by men **until** John appeared.'

1163)   *a midiho kasagai ke   milôu-môu **hagua=be de-môu,**   sawisie-i   e*

        1S face bad   that work-PFV   come=TOP PROV-PFV   be.day-NFUT   3S

        CLAUSE   (serial verb)   Theme (cont. next line)

        maka+ma-i   ke-le-ge   Godi=ha a habagugue-gu-o-môu   haguisa-i.

        mark+put-NFUT   that-A.LOCR-VBR GOD=GEN 1S give.grace-OF-FUT-PFV call-NFUT

                                    CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        '... I was a sinner **until** on the day he had appointed, God having given me grace, called (out to me).'

1164)   *Ifi   yo-ma   **i=be de-ba**   sa+bi+ta=bôu   ke-le-ge*

        today   begin-ISQ   go=TOP PROV-PFV.IRR land+sit+INDF=and that-A.LOCR-VBR

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE   Theme

        'From today **going on into** the future ...' (literally: 'After starting today ...')

1165)   *O   olôufei   dabai dege-di **i=be de-môu,** habi   4:30   fogôu   i-di.*

        man all.total   work do-HAB go=TOP PROV-PFV afternoon 4:30 leave.for go-HAB

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE   (serial verb)

        (embedded clause within the **proverb clause**)[174]

        'Everybody habitually worked **until** 4.30 in (the) afternoon, when they usually left.'

1166)   *e=me yôu   ke-ge=nôu   dele-i   **hagua=be de-môu** ifi=ne   ku-he.*

        3S=TOP 3S.EMP that-VBR=only be/have-NFUT come=TOP   PROV-PFV today=also this-P.LOCR

        CLAUSE   CLAUSE

        (embedded clause within the **proverb clause**)

        '... he has eternal life **since** before, continuing into the present.'

---

[174] If the clause preceding this construction is in habitual aspect or past tense, the clause is interpreted as embedded. In all other cases it is possible to see the preceding clause as a regular part of the medial verb system.

In the following example *i* 'go' in *i = be deba* 'will go on until' is plural **ya 'go (du./pl.)'** and functions in the sequence *sesele ya* 'follow (du./pl.)'.

1167)   *Godi = ha̱ ... e̱ kuolôu t̯a̱   nala̱-i   ke̱   du-l-o   sese-l-e*
           God=GEN ... 3S law talk write-NFUT that hear-IRR-FUT follow-IRR-FUT
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           ya = be   de-ba,   ise,   Abraham = ha̱   sosôu   o,   ...
           go.DU/PL=TOP PROV-PFV.IRR finally Abraham=GEN family man ...
           CLAUSE   Theme

           kuhe   hagua-l-e = yode   t̯awa-i.
           so   come-IRR-FUT=IQV   know-NFUT
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           'God ... knew/thought that **people would go on** listening and following his written law **until** finally (a) man of Abraham's family ... would come.'

7.3.2.5 Simultaneous time

There are a number of ways to express simultaneous time:

- with existential state verbs
- the close temporal/simultaneous relationship (see 7.3.2.2)
- complementation with verbs of perception (see 7.3.4.1)
- clause repetition (see 7.2)
- two final clauses, where the verb of the first one is in present tense.

Existential state verbs and simultaneous temporal linking

Existential state verbs are not conjugated as other verbs. In their basic form, they end in a low vowel, **a** or **o**. In medial form (perfective), this indicates simultaneous time and a different subject. In final form they express present tense (1170). Some examples will show what is involved.

1168)   *sa   o   mei bit̯o̱u   sa   ko = kôu **t̯afala-môu,***
           land   man NEG mountain land that=LOC stand-PFV
           CLAUSE

           o   su̱ = do   e̱ = mokôu hagua-sige   fele̱
           man many=INT 3S=LOC come-DU/PL come.up.FUT
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           '... **while** (he) was/**stood** on the mountain without people, many people were on their way coming to him and arrived and ...'

1169)   *wai ku + dege-i   môu-gu-le   **t̯ila-môu,**   a̱   ga-dugu-o*
           pig downwards+do-NFUT down-DEMR.D-A.LOCR lie.down-PFV 1S downwards-see-FUT
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           t̯aha̱-i.
           shoot-NFUT
           CLAUSE

           '... **while** the pig **was lying down** there on the slope, I looked down and shot.'

1170)   *Fofa-i   hiye = do **dala,**   ha   ke̱ = nôu = si   sugua-i = bôu   mei.*
           swell-NFUT big=INT be/have but that=only=CNTR have.fever-NFUT=and NEG
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           '(He) **has** (a) very big swelling; but even so, (there **is**) no fever **with** (it).'

As for (1171), see 7.3.1.1.3 Sᴡɪᴛᴄʜ-ʀᴇꜰᴇʀᴇɴᴄᴇ ᴍᴀʀᴋɪɴɢ ɪɴ ᴇxɪsᴛᴇɴᴛɪᴀʟ sᴛᴀᴛᴇ ᴠᴇʀʙs: sᴀᴍᴇ sᴜʙᴊᴇᴄᴛ sɪᴍᴜʟᴛᴀɴᴇᴏᴜs.

1171)   *so   ka = ha̱   gali   na̱-ma,   yomôu = bôu*
           dog that=GEN wild.animal eat-ISQ mother's.milk=and
           CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

           *gali = bôu + de   ne-l-e̱   **t̯afala-gi**   kuhe hiye dege-i.*
           wild.animal=and+PROV give-IRR-FUT stand-DSQ so big do-NFUT
                                                CLAUSE   CLAUSE

           '... the dog after eating meat **stood** (there) nursing (her puppies) and giv**ing** (them) meat until (they) were grown up.'

A close temporal relationship as simultaneous temporal linking, an example

1172)   *ni̱=mokôu   tefe-l-e   dugu   hagu-ba   ni̱   fiye-i=ye.*
     2PL=LOC   measure-IRR-FUT see   come.**NFUT**-PFV.IRR 2PL fall-NFUT=OPT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   (serial verb)   CLAUSE

     '... lest (someone) will be com**ing** to try you, (mak**ing**) you fall.'

Verbs of perception and simultaneous temporal linking, an example

1173)   *Yo-l-u-gi,   so   ke+di̱a wai ta   tigo-l-o   i-môu   dugu.*
     go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ dog that+3PL pig INDF bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   (serial verb)   CLAUSE

     'We went on until (we) **saw** the dog**s** bark**ing** at a pig.'

Clause repetition and simultaneous temporal linking

1174)   *A̱ boho-l-ôu+ma̱   hagua-l-e,   a̱ boho-l-ôu+ma̱   hagua-l-e.*
     1s turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT 1s turn-IRR-NPST+put come-IRR-FUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'I'll come back when I come back.'

1175)   *A̱ sabiye-i   ta ma̱ aye   ele   duwo-gi dugu=be,*
     1s be.morning-NFUT   INDF 1s.POSS father 1DU.EX sit-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP
     Theme   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     gamani   o   ke+di̱a bokisi tigi-gi+ma̱ hebe+ma̱ hagua-sie-i-môu   dugu.
     government man that+3PL box   tie-OF+put carry+put come-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
     CLAUSE   that+3PL   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'One day my father and I sat (there) until (we) **saw** government officers com**ing**, carrying tied up boxes, (we) **saw**.' (Foothill dialect)

The following example has the same structure as a repeated clause sentence may have, but the semantic content in the two halves is different. This sentence, too, shows simultaneous time.

1176)   *haba   tage   taha̱-i=be,   mala   tuga̱-ma   hebe-l-e*
     but.PFV.IRR over   shoot-NFUT=TOP arrow   bounce-ISQ carry-IRR-FUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     fele̱-i.
     come.up-NFUT
     CLAUSE

     '... **when** (he) **shot** again above (it), the arrow after bouncing, **came** (back) **towards** him.'

Two final clauses and simultaneous temporal linking

As described elsewhere, e.g. at the beginning of 6.1.4 MEDIAL AND FINAL CLAUSES IN LONG SENTENCES, final clauses may appear in the middle of a string of medial clauses in a sentence. Similar to that, two short final clauses, where the first one is in actual present tense, may be used together to express simultaneous time.

1177)   *Ke̱=no̱u=si   wi   hiye=do fe-l-i̱,   moso̱ bila-l-e   hafe̱i.*
     that=only=CNTR   wind big=INT come.up-IRR-NFUT house be.felled-IRR-FUT close.to
                            CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'But **when** a big wind come**s**; the collapse of the house is not far away.'

1178)   *Haba=ge   a̱ tawa-l-i̱   tobo-l-ôu.*
     but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR 1s know-IRR-NFUT say-IRR-NPST
                             CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     'Later, **when** I kn**ow**; I will tell (you).'

1179)   *E̱ o   dugu-l-u,   gofo̱u   hiye=do, o   gala-l-e.*
     3s man see-IRR-NFUT   hard/strong big=INT   man bite-IRR-FUT
     CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

     '**When** he see**s** (a) man; (he) get**s** very angry; (he) will bite (the) man.'

7.3.2.6 Out of sequence

To signal out of sequence events is a matter of semantics and a couple of adverbial particles, *kôu* 'prior' and *you* 'not yet'.

1180) *A̱ Rumginae kose **hafe̱i dege-i**, ma̱ sasa̱i=bôu a̱=bôu i-l-e*
      1s Rumginae course close.total do-NFUT 1s.POSS woman=and 1s=and go-IRR-FUT

      '**Shortly before** I went to the course in Rumginae, my wife and I went and ...'

1181) ***Afu=do, i-l-i mei**, a̱ duwo*
      earlier=INT go-IRR-NFUT NEG 1s sit

      '**Earlier before I went**, I was/sat ...'

1182) *Yo kama+dia ke-ge ṱafala-gua. Yo bolo̱u=be*
      banana middle.finger+3PL that-VBR stand-DU/PL banana two=TOP

      ***kôu** mu-gu duwo.*
      prior go.down-OF sit

      'There are three banana trees. Concerning two of the bananas, (fruit) has **already** come down; it is there.'
      (a picture)

1183) *sio ayomôu **you** ṱa-l-e̱ dala-ba,*
      bird fowl not.yet talk-IRR-FUT be/have-PFV.IRR

      na̱ kama+dia ke-ge ṱobo-l-ôu, a̱ Yesu ṱewe mei=yode-l-e.
      2s middle.finger+3PL that-VBR say-IRR-NPST 1s Jesus know NEG=IQV-IRR-FUT

      '**Before** the rooster makes a sound, you will three times say and state, "I do not know Jesus."'

7.3.2.7 Starting a new sentence in a sequence

When do you start a new sentence in a story? Here are a few observations:

- introducing and putting the spotlight on a **main participant** (following a sentence final clause)
- change from main participant to **minor** (following a final clause in mid-sentence)[175]
- shift in location
- shift in type of event

The following example consists of the six first sentences in Michael's hunting story (see APPENDIX IV for the whole story). The sentences are somewhat shortened. The **main** character is *I*. At the shift to two other important participants, *Asele*, sentence 2, and *uncle*, sentence 6 (**bold** in story), there are **sentence final verbs** preceding these introductions. Also, where the story teller, calling himself *I*, comes back in sentence 5, we find a sentence final verb just before that pronoun.

However, in this example there are a number of final verbs even in the middle of long sentences. Following several of them are the actions of <u>minor</u> participants (<u>underlined</u> in story). As has been said about the use of *-môu* 'perfective', ONE of the things it marks is a new subject coming up, representing an actor, usually of more importance to the story than the previous one. Well, if, from the story teller's point of view, a following actor is **less** important for the story than the previous one, one strategy is to finish off with a final verb, and tell what the less important character does in a new mid-sentence clause.

There is also a shift in location in between the first and the second sentence, and between the third and the fourth sentence, there involving a H-T linking. Sentence 3 focuses in on a special repeated event.

1184) *... **James** = bôu **Asele** = bôu ei*   *so   ti-l-e   igiya-i   sulugua-l-i*
James=and   Asele=and 1PL.EX dog call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

<u>*du,*   *so   tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*   *foukua igiya-i*   *folo-ga-môu*   *dugu,*</u>
hear.NFUT dog bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV   run   go.DU/PL-NFUT go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV see.NFUT

<u>*wai oye hiye = do ke   tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*</u>   ***dugu.***
pig male big=INT   that bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

'… **James, Asele and I** called up the dogs and went; we walked around until (we) <u>heard the dogs barking</u>, (and) immediately we ran on; having arrived (we) <u>saw that they were barking at that very big boar</u>.' (**Sentence 1**)

***Asele* = ha** *hebe sugu + tôu tafala-l-i,*   *... <u>taha-i = be,</u>   mala   tugа-ma   fele-i.*
Asele=GEN tree top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT ... shoot-NFUT=TOP arrow bounce-ISQ come.up-NFUT

'**Asele** was standing up in a tree top until ... when (he) <u>shot at (it), the arrow after bouncing came (back)</u> towards him.' (**Sentence 2**)

Yôu = makôu fiyo-u-môu   haba   tage   <u>taha-i = be</u>   mala   tuga-ma
3S.EMP=LOC   fall-NFUT-PFV but.PFV.IRR over   shoot-NFUT=TOP   arrow   bounce-ISQ

<u>*hebe-l-e*   *fele-i.*</u>
carry-IRR-FUT   come.up-NFUT

'While (it) fell (back) on himself (Asele), <u>when (he) shot</u> again above (it), <u>the arrow after bouncing came (back)</u> towards him.' (**Sentence 3**)

*Yôu = makôu fiyo-u-môu   dege-i   haba   wai ka = ha   so   sese-l-e   **hague-i.***
3S.EMP=LOC fall-NFUT-PFV do-NFUT but.PFV.IRR pig that=GEN dog follow-IRR-FUT come-NFUT

'(Arrows) kept falling (back) on himself (Asele); again the pig came chasing the dog(s).' (**Sentence 4**)

<u>A</u>   tafala ke-le   hagua tafala-môu dege-i, <u>a</u>   <u>taha-i   ... (wai)</u>
1S stand that-A.LOC come stand-PFV do-NFUT 1S shoot-NFUT ...(pig)

*bi-l-o   fiyo-u-môu   **dege-i.***
sit.up/down-IRR-FUT fall-NFUT-PFV do-NFUT

'(The pig) came and kept trying to stand where **I** stood; <u>**I** shot it</u>; ... (the pig) <u>sat</u> and was in the process of falling over.'(**Sentence 5**)

***De* = ha**   *taha-l-e + ma-môu*
maternal.uncle=GEN shot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV

'**Uncle** having shot and killed (it), (we) ...' (**Sentence 6**)

---

[175] A final verb in mid-sentence has different intonation from a sentence final verb. In the free English translation, the mid-sentence final verb is followed by a semi-colon.

The following example, from another story, has three consecutive sentences with three specific locations, each starting by repeating the main participants as subject.

> **Sentence 1** unspecified location (on the road back from the river)
>
> **Sentence 2** at the base of a tree
>
> **Sentence 3** up in the tree

1185) ***Ma̱***   ***mogo*** *=ha̱*   *dugu*   *tobo-l-o̱u,*   *da*   *do̱uwa*
       1s.POSS friend=GEN see.NFUT say-IRR-NPST   1DU.IN hornbill

        wa-l-a-ba   *i-me=be=ede-i.*
        attack-IRR-SUBJ-PFV.IRR go-HORT=TOP=OQV-NFUT

        '... **My friend** saw (it); (he) said, "Let us two go for the purpose of killing the hornbill," (he) suggested.'

        Ele   *hebe* *ha-gi+ma̱*   *tigi* *ka-gi+ma̱-mo̱u*   *digi-gi-l-e*   *folo-ga-i.*
        1DU.EX tree   cut-OF+put vine   cut-OF+put-PFV   tie-OF-IRR-FUT   go.up-DU/PL-NFUT

        '**We two** cut piece**s** of wood and having cut some vines, tied it (made a ladder) and went up (the tree).'

        Ele   *folo,*   *do̱uwa*   *u*   *dobogo̱u* *kasugu-o-mo̱u*
        1DU.EX go.up.FUT hornbill hole hand   insert-FUT-PFV

        '**We two** went up and having inserted our hands in the hole (where) the hornbill (sat) …'

7.3.3 Logical linking

Under logical linking I will describe reason-result/result-reason, purpose, condition, contrast, alternative, comparison and warning. It should be noted that the same medial and final suffixation as have been described at different levels through-out this grammar, and not least in the previous section, is at work here, too, but sometimes with additional features.

7.3.3.1 Reason-result/Result-reason

The relationship of reason-result may have the reason or the result expressed first. It is more common among Papuan languages to have the reason expressed first. That may be true also for Konai, but it is fully possible and not unusual to express the result before the reason. There is nothing to suggest that the reason is emphasized by putting the result first. Compare (1187) and (1188), both with the reason first, with (1191) and (1192), both with the result first, all with compelling reasons.

Reason-result may be expressed by the demonstrative *kaha̱* 'that in control' and/or the proverb *dege* 'do' (7.3.3.1.1). This structure mostly occurs within the medial verb system, and it is the *reason* that is marked.

There are also two conjunction-like words, *kegemo̱u* 'having become like that/so/then', a proverb in medial form (7.3.3.1.2), and *yobe* 'the reason being ...', a noun followed by the topic marker (7.3.3.1.3), where one forces the reason first and the other the result.

7.3.3.1.1 Reason-result in the medial verb system

There are three related ways to express reason-result within the medial verb system. The reason is marked in one of the following ways, and it may follow or precede the result (see above).

- *ka=ha̱ dege-mo̱u*   'because'   (that=GEN#do-PFV) (most common; more emphatic)
- *ka=ha̱*   'because'   (that=GEN)   (emphatic)
- *dege-mo̱u*   'having done/because' (do.FUT-PFV)   (less emphatic, no control)
- other variations on the same theme (1190), (1192)

Structure I – Reason-result/Result-reason

REASON ... *(kaha̱) (degemo̱u)* → RESULT **or** vice versa

In the two first examples the reason is marked only by the verb form *degemo̱u* 'because'. That being the case, there is no control involved in the reason. The first example just illustrates the way of lizards.

1186) *Sabi*   *e̱* *kulio* *hiye=do* ***dege-mo̱u,*** *e̱* *aso̱* *difi* *ha*   *tila.*
       lizard 3s coldness big=INT do.FUT-PFV   3s sun   heat get.warm lie.down
       REASON   RESULT

        'The lizard, **because** she is very cold, is lying in the sun to get warm.'

In the next example, there is no control involved in the wife being sick. The controlling reason, marked by ***kaha̱*** (that=GEN), for the letter writer's problem is that the men carried her to the aidpost, which resulted in a debt, which needed to be paid.

1187)   *sasai*   *e*   *do*   *hiye=do*   **dege-i-moû,**   *o*   *ke+dia*
         woman   3s   sickness   big=INT   do-NFUT-PFV   man   that+3PL
         REASON   RESULT + further REASON (cont. next line)

         hebe+ma   *Dahamo*   *i*   **ka=ha**   *hagi*   *a=boû+de*   *dala.*
         carry+put   Dahamo   go   that=GEN   heavy   1s=and+PROV   be/have
                                             RESULT

         '... **because** when (my) wife was very sick, the men carried (her) and went to Dahamo, (and) **because of that** I have (a) problem.'

1188)   *ifi*   *moso*   *e*   *bila-ma*   *i-l-e*   **ka=ha**   **dege-moû,**   *a*   *moso*   *taga-l-a-moû*
         today   house   3s   fell-ISQ   go-IRR-FUT   that=GEN   do-PFV   1s   house   make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
         REASON   RESULT (cont. next line)

         na=mokôu yodu,   *na a=mokôu ikoke a ko-u-ba*   *moso togo-l-o.*
         2s=LOC   ask.NFUT   2s   1s=LOC   nail   1s   look.for-NFUT-PFV.IRR   house   build-IRR-FUT

         '... **because** (my) house is going to be felled (by the wind) any day, I asked you for the purpose of building (a new) house; when you find nails for me, (I) will immediately build (a) house.'

1189)   *A*   *ma*   *dabai dala*   **ka=ha**   **dege-i-moû,**[176]   *a*   *ne*   *dabai dege-l-e*   *mei.*
         1s   1s.POSS   work   be/have   that=GEN   do-NFUT-PFV   1s   2s.POSS   work   do-IRR-FUT   NEG
         REASON   RESULT

         '**Because** I have my (own) work to do, I will not do your work.'

1190)   *Tabubil=be*   *o*   *su=do,*   *kalo*   *su=do,*   **kege-i**   **ka=ha**   *uwo=be*   *hiye=do.*
         Tabubil=TOP   man   many=INT   car   many=INT   that-VBR-NFUT   that=GEN   noise=TOP   big=INT
                       REASON   RESULT

         'Concerning Tabubil, there are lots of people and cars; **because of** (it) being likethat, there is a lot of noise.'

1191)   *Haba*   *ta=be*   *kôu-g(u)e,*   *transpot*   *tiket=boû+de*
         but.PFV.IRR   INDF=TOP   this-VBR(BLTV)   transport   ticket=and+PROV
                                       RESULT

         mala   *hagua-l-e=ne*   *de.*   *A*   *kôu-le*   *sokôulôu*   *duwo-gi*   *6*   *mei dege-ba,*
         get.IRR.FUT   come-IRR-FUT=also   good   1s   this-A.LOCR   school   sit-DSQ   6   NEG   do-PFV.IRR
                                     REASON (cont. next line)

         grade   *7=be*   *Kuala=kôu*   *i-l-e*   **ka=ha**   **dege-moû.**
         grade   7=TOP   Kuala=LOC   go-IRR-FUT   that=GEN   do-PFV

         'Another thing is this, to bring a ticket for travelling, too, would be good, too. **Because** I am here until I finish grade 6, when I will go to Kuala for grade 7.'

1192)   *Yona=ha*   *tobo-u,*   *kôu=me a kasagai.*
         Jonah=GEN   say-NFUT   this=TOP 1s   bad
         RESULT

         A   *Godi=ha*   *ta*   *du-l-i*   *mei*   **ka=ha**   **dege-l-i.**
         1s   God=GEN   talk   hear-IRR-NFUT   NEG   that=GEN   do-IRR-NFUT
         REASON

         'Jonah said, "this is my fault. **Because** I did not obey/hear God's talk."'

   In the next example the result is stated twice, before and after the reason.

1193)   *A*   *solôu=do*   *dege-i=be,*   *ele=be*   *mogo=do*   **ka=ha**   **dege-moû,**
         1s   heart=INT   do-NFUT=TOP   1DU.EX=TOP   friend=INT   that=GEN   do-PFV
         RESULT   REASON

         a   *solôu=do*   *hiye=do kuhe dege-i.*
         1s   heart=INT   big=INT   so   do-NFUT
         RESULT

         'I am very sad/concerned, because we were friends, so I am very concerned.'

---

[176] The form for the medial verb is usually *dege-moû* (do.FUT-PFV), indicating an unspecified temporal relationship between the reason and the result. But when I asked for an example of a close relationship this is what I got.

7.3.3.1.2 Reason-result with *kegemôu* 'so'

Using the conjunction-like demonstrative verb *kegemôu* 'having become like that/so/then' (see 4.8.4 DEMONSTRATIVE VERBS and 4.9 CONJUNCTIONS), triggers the reason to come before the result. This medial verb form usually occurs first in a sentence and indicates a new paragraph (see 8.2.1.3 MORE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRO-VERB LINKAGE. This being part of the medial verb system, a low vowel at the end of the verb indicates an unspecified time[177] between the events, while a high vowel indicates a close temporal relationship. The unspecified time is by far the most common.

- *Kege-môu*...   'so/then/because of that/having become like that'   (that.VBR-PFV)
- *Kege-i-môu*...   'so/then/because of that/being like that'   (that.VBR-NFUT-PFV)

Structure II – Reason-result

REASON(.)   →   ***Kegemôu*** RESULT

1194)   *Tila-môu   dugu.   **Ke-ge-môu,**   a hoho   hiye=do dege-i.*
    lie.down-PFV see.NFUT that-VBR-PFV 1s light big=INT do-NFUT
    REASON   RESULT

    'I saw it lying (there). **So/having become like that** I was very happy.'

1195)   *Wai dia   hiye=do dege-i.   **Ke-ge-môu**   dilie moso tege-i.*
    pig watch.over big=INT do-NFUT that-VBR-PFV 3DU house make-NFUT
    REASON   RESULT

    '(The two of them) raised the pig and (it) grew. **So/having become like that** the two of them built a house. (a covered platform to put the pig meat on when they had killed it)'

1196)   *hagi   a=bôu+de   dala.   **Ke-ge-i-môu,**   a fi+ma   dugu=be*
    heavy 1s=and+PROV be/have that-VBR-NFUT-PFV 1s soul+put see.NFUT=TOP
    REASON   RESULT

    '... I have (a) problem. **Because of that/being like that** I thought and saw that ...'

The next example is different in that *kegeimôu* does not start a new paragraph or even a new sentence.

1197)   *a=me hegie   dege-i-môu   dugu. A **ke-ge-i-môu**   kiyei*
    1s=TOP hunger do-NFUT-PFV see 1s that-VBR-NFUT-PFV pandanus
    REASON   RESULT (cont. next line)

    ka   i-l-e-môu   dugu
    look.for go-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT

    '... I realized that I was hungry. **So/being like that** having gone to look for pandana, I saw ...'
    (Mountain dialect)

7.3.3.1.3 Result-reason with *yobe* 'the reason'

If the conjunction *yobe* 'the reason is/because' is used to express the reason, it starts a new sentence. The construction *(kaha) (degemôu)* 'because' works together with this conjunction but is not obligatory.

- *Yobe ... (kaha) (degemôu)*   'the reason ... (because)'   base.TOP ... (that=GEN#do-PFV)

Structure III – Result-reason

RESULT. ***Yobe***   →   REASON ... *(kaha) (degemôu)*

1198)   *Ke=nôu   ke=si   a   hoho   mei.   **Yo=be**   e   o   gala-di.*
    that=only that=CNTR 1s light NEG base=TOP 3s man bite-HAB
    RESULT   REASON

    'But I do not like (it). **The reason is** that it bites people.' (about a snake)

1199)   *E adiôu   hoho   hiye=do.   **Yo=be**   dihi   e   adiôu=ha   ta*
    3s mother light big=INT base=TOP child 3s mother=GEN talk
    RESULT   REASON (cont. next line)

    du-l-o   milo-u.
    hear-IRR-FUT work-NFUT

    'His mother (is) very pleased. **The reason** is that the child heard and did what his mother said.'

---

[177] Not marked when glossing the examples.

1200) *Siya=be*   *o   olôûfei   taga-l-e   i-di.*
       sugar.cane=TOP man all.total like-IRR-FUT go-HAB
       RESULT

       Yo=be *e=me sebe   bolofei   ka=ha.*
       base=TOP 3S=TOP good.taste good.total that=GEN
                   REASON

       'All people like sugar cane. **The reason is** that it has a very good taste.'

1201) *Ke=nôû=si*   *ng sosou   ng-ba=be,*   *ng ogue dege-l-e.*
       that=only=CNTR   2S unripe eat.FUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S itch do-IRR-FUT
                        (CONDITION)   (CONSEQUENCE)/RESULT

       Yo=be *e=me sosou   ka=ha   dege-môû.*
       base=TOP 3S=TOP unripe that=gen do-PFV
               REASON

       'But if you eat it unripe (pineapple) you will get itchy. **The reason** is (**because**) it is unripe.'

1202) *Godi=kôû hoho   hiye=do.* ***Yo=be*** *Godi=ha   a=bôû kansole   Soti=bôû ele*
       God=LOC   light big=INT base=TOP God=GEN 1S=and councillor Soti=and 1DU.EX
       RESULT   REASON (cont. next line)

       bologua=do wo-l-ôû   dala   dege-i-môû.
       good.do=INT accompany-IRR-NPST be/have do-NFUT-PFV

       '... (I) am very happy (with) God. **The reason** is (**because**) God looks after me and councillor Soti
       very well.'

The following example is different in that *yobe* comes in the middle of the sentence.

1203) *sokôûlôû duwo-di=ha e* ***yo=be*** *tewe   môû-l-a-môû.*
       school   sit-HAB=GEN 3S base=TOP know   get-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
       RESULT   REASON

       '... being in school its **reason** (is) to get knowledge.'

In the Mountain dialect the corresponding conjunction is *beibe* where *bei* means 'meaning'.

1204) *Dia e   ta   du-l-o-môû   kesi-gi.*   ***Bei=be***   *e   tawa-gi-l-i=be...*
       3PL 3S talk hear-IRR-FUT-PFV rouse-OF.NFUT meaning=TOP 3S know-OF-IRR-NFUT=TOP
       RESULT   REASON

       'Having heard his talk they were surprised. **The reason was** that his teaching ...'

7.3.3.2 Purpose

To express purpose there are three possible constructions:

- simple purpose   same subject
- deliberate purpose   same subject
- imposed purpose   different subjec

7.3.3.2.1 Simple purpose

Simple purpose is mostly used with verbs of motion.

- a bare verb in a serial verb construction

Structure I - Simple purpose
                CLAUSE[178]
Purpose$_I$ →   V$_{Basic}$ V

There are two verbs in a serial construction. The first verb, in its basic form, is the purpose of the second verb.

1205) *A   to   to   i-l-i.*
       1S river wash   go-IRR-NFUT
          PURPOSE |

       'I am going **to** (have a) **swim**.'

---

[178] In the sections dealing with purpose, condition and also complementary linking, in introductory formulas like this one, it may look like
the verbal phrase has been eliminated; it has not, but as that level does not add anything to the understanding of these functions, it is not
mentioned here.

1206) *Ei   mȍu   i-l-e.*
     1PL.EX get   go-IRR-FUT
         PURPOSE|

     'We will go **in order to get** (it).'

1207) *sa   ne*
     put.inside give
     PURPOSE|

     'Give (it to me) **to put in** (my stringbag).'

7.3.3.2.2 Deliberate purpose or "purposing"

A more pronounced purpose is expressed with the illocutionary force enclitic =*a* 'subjunctive', which in this construction functions as a suffix -*a* (see 7.1.3 SUBJUNCTIVE (in purpose constructions, opinion statements and content questions).

- *-lamȏu* 'purposing to'   *-l-a-mȏu* -IRR-SUBJ-PFV

Structure II – "Purposing"

	(CLAUSE)	CLAUSE	(CLAUSE)
Purpose_{II} →	(V)	V-IRR=SUBJ-PFV	(V)

Purpose$_{II}$ → (V) V-IRR=SUBJ-PFV (V)

Only the purpose clause is obligatory. The verb in irrealis is followed by the subjunctive suffix -*a,* which is followed by the perfective medial suffix -*mȏu*. The purpose clause may be followed or preceded by another clause expressing what is being done towards the expressed purpose. In conversation, the most common form for "purposing" is just the purpose clause.

1208) *Sasai   e   fiye   so-l-u,   ye   togo-l-a-mȏu.*
     woman 3S thread twine-IRR-NFUT stringbag make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
                            PURPOSE

     'The woman is twining a thread **in order to** make a stringbag.'

1209) *Ei   sogo   si-l-a-mȏu.*
     1PL.EX breadfruit cook-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
         PURPOSE

     'We are **preparing to** cook breadfruit.'

This construction is also used to convey the meaning "trying to do something".

1210) *A sogo   ga-l-a-mȏu   dege-l-i.*
     1S breadfruit gather-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT
       PURPOSE |

     'I am **trying to** pick a breadfruit.'

The "purposing" verb form may be found in a regular narrative string as described in ... 7.3.2 TEMPORAL LINKING.

1211) *Beye   kȍu=me mihi+ya   i-l-i.*
     possum this=TOP earth+road go-IRR-NFUT

     E hebe sugu fa-l-a-mȏu   i-l-i.
     3S tree top go.up-IRR-SUBJ-PFV go-IRR-NFUT
        PURPOSE |

     'This possum is going away on the ground. He **is planning to** go up into the tree top. ' (a picture)

7.3.3.2.3 Imposed purpose

Imposed purpose is when the actor has a purpose for someone else. This is expressed with the illocutionary force enclitic =*a* 'subjunctive'. In this case the enclitic is followed by the proverb *de*, forming the cliticising subjunctive quote verb =***ade*** in its medial **perfective** verb form =*(y)adomȏu*. This is the singular form, which may also be used as a group plural (compare 4.1.6.3).

There are several other forms, involving number, person and negative. The verb that the subjunctive quote verb cliticises to is usually in its basic form.

If the final verb of the sentence is in future tense, the subjunctive quote verb is in its medial perfective **irrealis** form. See (1222).

The plural forms include the topic marker =**be**, but the vowel has been deleted.[179] That being the case, we have chosen to write all of these forms as macro forms. The following chart presents the whole as well as the (proposed) parts.

- *-**ado**môu*   'in order to ...'/'in order for (**sg.**) ...'   *= (y)ado-môu*   (=SQV-PFV)

- *-mab**ado**môu*   'in order for **you (du./pl.)/them** to ...'   *-ma = b(e) = ado-môu*   (-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV)

- *-meb**ado**môu*   'in order for **us** to ...'   *-me = b(e) = ado-môu*   (-HORT=TOP=SQV-PFV)

- *-day**ado**môu*   'in order for (**sg.**) **not** to ...'   *-da = (y)ado-môu*   (-PROH=SQV-PFV)

- *-damab**ado**môu* 'in order for **you (du./pl.)/them not** to...'   *-da-ma = b(e) = ado-môu*   (-PROH-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV)

- *-dameb**ado**môu* 'in order for **us not** to...'   *-da-me = b(e) = ado-môu*   (-PROH-HORT=TOP=SQV-PFV)[180]

Structure III - Imposed purpose

	(CLAUSE)	CLAUSE		(CLAUSE)
Purpose$_{III}$ →	(V)	V(negative, number/person)=SQV-PFV/PFV.IRR		(V)

The purpose clause is preceded or followed by another clause, expressing what is being done towards the expressed purpose. The verb in the purpose clause is usually in its basic form, but not always. See (1220) and (1221).

1212) *Godi=ha̲ a̲ maka-i=be, o sasa̲i di̲a̲=moko̲û ke-ge-i   ke̲*
        God=GEN 1s mark-NFUT=TOP man woman 3PL=LOC   that-VBR-NFUT that
                             PURPOSE (cont. next line)

       *he-hegi-e=**yado-mo̲û**.*
       RED.PL-show-RED.PL=SQV-PFV
       'God has marked me **to** teach these things to people.'

If a preceding clause, which is included in the purpose, is in perfective form, the marker is *-ba* 'perfective irrealis' as a purpose is future/hypothetic in nature.

1213) *o=be kama̲i   dou mi-gi-mo̲û=be,   ... tama̲=ko̲û=no̲û   dogogu-**ba**,*
        man=TOP lantern fire light-OF.NFUT-PFV=TOP ... appear=LOC=only put.NFUT-PFV.IRR

       *o   moso̲=ko̲û dala-gua   ke+di̲a̲ kama̲i   hoho̲ ke̲   dugu=**yado-mo̲û**.*
       man house=LOC be/have-DU/PL that+3PL lantern light that see=SQV-PFV
       PURPOSE
       '... when people light (a) lantern, (they) put it in the open, **in order that** people in the house should see the light (from the) lantern.'

Here are some examples of **plural forms**:

1214) *Pailat̲=ha̲ ise   Yesu hebe fufuguo+ma̲-i=ko̲û   ikoke dege-**ma**=**b**=**ado-mo̲û**,*
        Pilate=GEN finally Jesus tree put.across+put-NFUT=LOC nail do-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV
                         PURPOSE

       ami o   ke+di̲a̲=moko̲û sese-gu-mo̲û   wo-l-o̲û   ya-i.
       army man that+3PL=LOC   follow-OF.NFUT-PFV accompany-IRR-NPST go.DU/PL-NFUT
       '...**in order for them** to crucify Jesus, Pilate finally handed him over to the soldiers, (and) they led him away.'

1215) *Ta̲   uwo bolo=fe̲i   ke̲=me damale̲=do ta̲, ei   defe̲i=do*
        talk   noise good=total that=TOP true=INT talk 1PL.EX careful=INT

       *dia   dala-di,   ni̲=me ta̲ bolo̲=do ke̲=no̲û sese-**ma**=**b**=**ado-mo̲û**.*
       watch.over   be/have-HAB 2PL=TOP talk good=INT that=only follow-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV
                                 PURPOSE
       'The Gospel is true talk; we (excl.) watch over it carefully, **in order for you (pl.)** to follow only that good talk.'

---

[179] This interpretation is based on the fact that these forms are related to the deontic mood suffixes, of which at least two may be followed by the topic marker =**be** (see 4.1.5.5 DEONTIC MOOD).

[180] This form has actually not been observed in natural texts. None of the negative forms are common.

1216) *A=ge   di=be   Aye   Godi=bôu, e   Dihi Yesu Kelesu=bôu+de*
       1S=F.CNTR 1PL.IN=TOP   father God=and   3s child Jesus Christ=and+PROV
                  PURPOSE(cont. next line)

       fi   ta=nôu   dege dala-me-b+ado-môu   kuhe tobo-l-ôu.
       soul INDF=only do   be/have-HORT-TOP+SQV-PFV   so   say-IRR-NPST
                                            |

       '(And) so I am speaking **in order for us** to be of one mind with Father God and his Son Jesus Christ.'

Here are some examples of **negative forms**:

1217) *na   a   toto   sese-l-e   i-da=yado-môu ka-ge-môu   tobôu=ya?*
       2S   1s quickly follow-IRR-FUT go-PROH=SQV-PFV how-VBR-PFV say=SUBJ
             PURPOSE |

       '... why do you talk **so I will not** follow you quickly?'

1218) *mosole ke   wi=ye   mala   hebe-l-e   i-da=yado-môu.*
       ship   that wind=INS get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT go-PROH=SQV-PFV
       PURPOSE

       '... **so that** the wind **would not** carry the ship away.'

1219) *E dobogôu=ye ta-da-ma=b=ado-môu   a+ko-gu-o-môu   dia=mokôu ... tobo-u*
       3s hand=INS   talk-PROH-DU/PL-TOP=SQV-PFV road+cut-OF-FUT-PFV 3PL=LOC   ... say-NFUT
                       PURPOSE |

       'Having hindered them with his hand, **in order for them not** to speak, he said to them, ...'

Here are two examples, where the verb that the assertive quote verb cliticises to, is **not in its basic form, but in future tense**. This is the only form, apart from the common basic form, found in the data.

1220) *ho   o   ke+dia=ge   ei=be   wo-u-ba*
       enemy man that+3PL=F.CNTR 1PL.EX=TOP attack-NFUT-PFV.IRR
       PURPOSE (cont. next line)

       tofigi-l-e=yado-môu   dege-l-e   i-di.
       die.DU/PL-IRR-FUT=SQV-PFV do-IRR-FUT   go-HAB
                       |

       '... the enemies work towards killing us **in order for** us to die.'

1221) *A môu   yôuwa=be   a   du=yo   mei dege-môu,*
       1s nothing without.purpose=TOP 1s hear=INDC NEG do-PFV

       Godi=ha ta   kôu   a   tawa-l-e=yado-môu.
       God=GEN talk prior 1s know-IRR-FUT=SQV-PFV
       PURPOSE

       'Because while I (do) nothing, I do not hear/understand, (so) **in order for** someone to first teach me God's Word, (I am here in this course).' (Mountain dialect)

If the final verb is in future tense, the quote verb *=ade* is in its medial perfective **irrealis** form *=yadeba*.

1222) *Hiye o=ha=ge   e bi+ma-i   olôufei=be   o   ke-ge-i*
       big   man=GEN=F.CNTR 3s thing+put-NFUT all.total=TOP man that-VBR-NFUT
                         PURPOSE (cont. next line)

       ka=ha   dia   dala=yade-ba   maka-l-e.
       that=GEN watch.over   be/have=SQV-IRR.PFV mark-IRR-FUT
                                        |

       'The master will mark a man like that to look after all his belongings.'

7.3.3.3 Condition

There are four kinds of conditions: possible, contrastive, hypothetic (which includes contrary-to-fact) and negative.

7.3.3.3.1 Possible condition

Possible conditions are formed by adding the perfect irrealis medial verb suffix *-ba* and the topic marker enclitic = *be* to the antecedent/background/conditioning clause. Apart from the addition of the topic marker, these constructions are part of the medial verb system, so the same rules apply and the same kinds of meanings are the result. See 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS. However, with =*be* 'topic marker' following the medial *-ba* 'perfective irrealis', the temporal meaning of the preceding medial verb form overrides the switch-reference meaning (compare 7.3.1.2.1 HABITUAL ASPECT AND MARKING OF SCENES).

There is no real difference between 'if' and 'when'. Both are covered when using this combined ending. Just *-ba* 'perfective irrealis', would often do as well (1228).

- *-ba* = *be*   (PFV.IRR=TOP)   'if/when'

Structure I - Possible condition

	CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Condition₁ →	V-PFV.IRR=TOP	V

1223) *N**a** **a**=mokôu yodu-**ba**=**be**,*   *a ng=mokôu ne-l-e.*
2S 1S.LOC   ask.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 1S 2S=LOC   give-IRR-FUT
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'**If** you ask me, I will immediately give (it) to you./As soon as you ask me I will give (it to) you.'

1224) *Bei   ... **E** o dugu-**ba**=**be**   gofôu   hiye=do gala-l-e.*
snake ... 3S man see.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP hard/strong big=INT bite-IRR-FUT
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'A snake, ... **if** he sees a man, he will immediately bite in great anger.'

1225) *ng aso ke ha   **duwo-ba**=**be**,   ng difi ta dugu-l-o   mei=do,*
2S sun that get.warm sit-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S heat INDF see-IRR-FUT NEG=INT
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE (cont. next line)

kulio=ye=nôu   hiye=do.
coldness=INS=only big=INT

'... **if** you sit in the sun to get warm, you will not feel any heat at all; the cold is terrible.'

1226) *ikoke mei deg**e-ba**=**be**,   ng toto   oda   dege*
nail NEG do.FUT-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S quickly order do
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'... **if** there are no nails, hurry up and make an order ...'

1227) *Bi   olôufei   kôu=me stoa=kôu dugu-**ba**=**be**,*
thing all.total this=TOP store=LOC see.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP
CONDITION
*ng   olôufei   môu   fogôu-**da**.*
2S   all.total nothing leave.for-PROH
CONSEQUENCE

'**When/if** you see all these things in the store, do not just leave them (there) (without buying).'

Sometimes the topic marker is omitted, leaving only *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'.

1228) *Di   gugue=do tewe, Kiunga **i-ba**,   Koloba   **i-ba**   ...*
1PL.IN all=INT   know Kiunga go.NFUT-PFV.IRR Koroba   go.NFUT-PFV.IRR ...
                     CONDITION   CONDITION

na-l-e   hiye=do ko-l-ôu   patolo i-di
eat-IRR-FUT big=INT carry.on.head-IRR-NPST patrol go-HAB
CONSEQUENCE

'We all know (that) **when** someone is going to Kiunga, **when** someone else is going to Koroba ... (they) carry a lot of food and go on (a) hike/patrol ...'

1229) *Haba*   *d̠o̠u̠+susu,*   *a̠*   *tobo-u*   *kasaga̠i*   *dege-ba.*
but.PFV.IRR straight+tell   1s   say-NFUT   bad   do.FUT-PFV.IRR
CONSEQUENCE   CONDITION

'But correct me, **when** I have said (something) wrong!'

7.3.3.3.2 Contrastive condition

When one alternative among several options seems better than any of the others, we have contrastive condition. It is expressed with the medial suffix *-ba* 'perfective irrealis' and the enclitic *=si* 'contrastive'. As with possible condition, the temporal relationship between the antecedent and the consequence may be close or unspecified.

- *-ba=si*   (PFV.IRR=CNTR)   'if/when'

Structure II - Contrastive condition

		CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Condition_II	→	V-PFV.IRR=CNTR	V

1230) *di*   *damal̠e=yode-me.*   *... Ke-g̠e-ba=si*   *di*   *fi̠*   *mo-l-ô̠u.*
1PL.IN true=IQV-HORT   *...* that-VBR-PFV.IRR=CNTR   1PL.IN soul get-IRR-NPST
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'... let us believe. ... **In that way in contrast to other ways,** we will get life.'

1231) *Sa*   *sibig̠e*   *kuo=kô̠u=be*
land   essence this=LOC=TOP

na-l-e̠=bô̠u   *yukuei=bô̠u+de=nô̠u*   **dala-ba=si,**   *di*   *hoh̠o-bô̠u-me.*
eat-IRR-FUT=and cloth=and+PROV=only   be/have-PFV.IRR=CNTR 1PL.IN light-rejoice-HORT
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'**But if** in this world we have food and clothes, let us rejoice.'

1232) *A̠ du-di=be,*   *sokô̠ulô̠u duwo de-ma*   *tewe*   *mô̠u-ba=si,*
1s hear-HAB=TOP school sit   PROV-ISQ know   get-PFV=CNTR
                   CONDITION

sele   *dabai* *to-l-ô̠u=yode*   *tobo-l-ô̠u*   *i-mô̠u*   *du-di.*
money work hold-IRR-NPST=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT-PFV hear-HAB
CONSEQUENCE |

'I hear them state and say that after finishing school and getting knowledge, **in contrast to other ways**, (that) will get (you) a money (earning) job.'

1233) *O*   *ta=h̠a*   *Tabubil=kô̠u* *e̠*   *mogo*   *dala-ba*   ***i-ba=si,***
man INDF=GEN Tabubil=LOC 3s friend be/have-PFV.IRR   go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR
CONDITION

e̠   *mogo=h̠a* *moso̠=kô̠u* *tia-l-e*
3s friend=GENhouse=LOC sleep-IRR-FUT
CONSEQUENCE

'But if somebody having a friend in Tabubil goes (there), (he) will sleep in his friend's house ...'

7.3.3.3.3 Hypothetic condition

A hypothetic condition is more theoretic or unlikely than a possible condition; it may even be contrary-to-fact.

In the hypothetic condition, the verb in the conditioning clause is followed by the pro-verb *de*, which will be conjugated for condition. The conditioning clause may also be verbless, in that a noun or an adjective would be followed by the proverb conjugated for condition.

If the verb preceding the proverb is in past or present tense, or the proverb is preceded by a verbless clause, this kind of condition may be interpreted as a contrary-to-fact condition ((1236). and following examples).

- *de-ba=be*   (PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP)   'if would (have) ..., would ...'

Structure III- Hypothetic condition

		CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Condition$_{III}$	→	V#PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP	V
		N/ADJ#PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP	V (1239)

The form *de-ba=be* (PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP) is the most common, but *de-ba=si* (PROV-PFV.IRR=CNTR) and *de-ba* (PROV-PFV.IRR) are also possible.

1234) *a̱ Godi=ko̱û tobo-u,   na̱ ma̱   fi̱   mo-l-o̱û   de-ba=be,*
       1s God=LOC   say-NFUT 2s 1s.POSS soul get-IRR-NPST PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP
                                CONDITION

       ma̱   fi̱   mo̱û-ba   dugu-l-o.
       1s.POSS soul get-PFV.IRR see-IRR-FUT
       CONSEQUENCE

       '… I said to God, **if** you **would** take my life, (I) would see you take it.'

1235) *Aso̱ fe-i   hiye=do dala,   ke=no̱û=si   na̱ difi ke=bo̱û **du-l-o**   **de-ba**,*
       sun rise-NFUT big=INT be/have that=only=CNTR 2s heat that=and hear-IRR-FUT PROV-PFV.IRR
                                                                 CONDITION (hypothetic)

       *na̱   aso̱ ke̱ ha   **duwo-ba=be**,   na̱ difi   ta̱   dugu-l-o*
       2s   sun that get.warm sit-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s heat   INDF see-IRR-FUT
       CONDITION: (possible)   CONSEQUENCE (cont. next line)

       mei=do, kulio=ye=no̱û   hiye=do.
       NEG=INT coldness=INS=only big=INT

       'The sun comes up; (it) is very big, but **if** you sit in the sun to get warm, (and) **when** you **ought to have** felt the heat, you do not feel any heat at all; it is only very cold.'

1236) *ni̱ ma̱   ta̱ du-l-o   sese-l-e-ba,   di   to̱   tibi   sa   Krit*
       2PL 1s.POSS talk hear-IRR-FUT follow-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR 1PL.IN river island land Crete
       CONDITION (cont. next line)

       *to̱ufogo̱û-l-i   mei **de-ba=be**   hagi̱ ko̱û ta̱ dugu-l-o   i=yo   mei,*
       leave-IRR-NFUT NEG PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP heavy this INDF see-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=INDC NEG
                                              CONSEQUENCE (cont. next line)

       di   bi+sa-i=be   ta̱   mei dege-l-i   mei.
       1PL.IN thing+put.inside-NFUT=TOP INDF NEG do-IRR-NFUT NEG

       '... **if** you **would have** heard and followed my advice, and we **had** not left the island of Crete; we **would** not have any of these problems; none of our cargo **would** be lost.'

1237) *A̱=ge   midiho̱ kasaga̱i ... ta̱ milo-u   **de-ba=si**,*
       1s=F.CNTR face   bad   ... INDF work-NFUT PROV-PFV.IRR=CNTR
       CONDITION

       a̱   to-l-o   i-l-e   ke=me   ta̱=bo̱û   mei.
       1s die-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT that=TOP talk=and NEG
       CONSEQUENCE

       '**If** I **had** comitted a ... sin, I **would** die without a word '

1238) *Kulio   moso̱ dala   **de-ba**   ...*
       coldness   house be/have PROV-PFV.IRR
       CONDITION

       '**If** there **was** a refrigerator ...'

1239) *O   ko̱û=me ... Kelesu **de-ba=be**,*
       man this=TOP ... Christ PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP
       CONDITION

       e̱ hebe fufuguo+ma̱-i   to̱ufogo̱û migi-ba   dugu-o-ba   di
       3s tree put.across+put-NFUT leave   come.down.NFUT-PFV.IRR see-FUT-PFV.IRR 1PL.IN
       CONSEQUENCE

       '**If** this man **would** be the Christ, he **would** leave (the) cross and coming down (we) **would** see and we (incl.) ...'

7.3.3.3.4 Negative condition

There are two kinds of negative conditions.

- *ho fogôu-ba = be* (desire#leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP) 'if not' a certain amount of control
- *mei de-ba = be* (NEG#PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP) 'if not' no focus on control; may be used for contrary-to-fact conditions

The difference between these two constructions is one of control. In the first one, the entity represented by the subject has control over the result, even though it may not be animate (1245). In the second one, control is not in focus. It is this construction, which may be used as a contrary-to-fact condition (1247) - (1249).

Structure IVa - Negative condition

		CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Condition$_{IVa}$	→	V$_{Basic}$#desire#leave-PFV.IRR=TOP	V

In the above structure the main verb in the first clause is in its basic form, while the verb of the second clause may be in any form, or it may be a verbless clause.

Structure IVb - Negative condition

		CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Condition$_{IVb}$	→	V#NEG#PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP	V
		N/ADJ# PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP	

The main verb of the second structure is a final verb in any negative "tense" conjugation, or the clause may be a verbless one. The second clause may have a verb in any form, or it may be a verbless clause.

1240) *o   ta   dugu   ho   fogôu-ba = be,   a pasta dogôugu-l-o bolo = fei.*
man INDF see   desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 1s pastor help-IRR-FUT good=total
CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

'... **if** another man **does not want to** look (at it), (it is) OK (for) me to help the pastor.'

OR '…**if** another man **will not** look (at it), ...' (both kind of translations are possible for most *ho fogôubabe*)

1241) *Na   ma   ta   du   ho   fogôu-ba = be,*
2s   1s.POSS talk hear desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP
CONDITION

ne   mogo+u   a+ko-gu   dala-l-i,   ne   sasai dihi
2s.POSS jaw+hole road+cut-OF.NFUT be/have-IRR-NFUT 2s.POSS woman child
CONSEQUENCE (cont. next line)

mala   fele-i-ba,   na ta   tobo-l-ôu = yode   tobo-u.
get.IRR.FUT come.up-NFUT-PFV.IRR 2s talk say-IRR-NPST=IQV say-NFUT

'"**If** you **do not** (**want to**) hear/believe my talk, your mouth will be shut until your wife will have (the) child, at which time you will talk (again)," he stated and said.'

1242) *midiho kasagai dia milo-l-ôu   i-di   ke   fogôu-ba   boho-l-ôu + ma*
face   bad   3PL work-IRR-NPST go-HAB that leave.for-PFV.IRR turn-IRR-NPST+put
CONDITION (cont. next line)

hagua ho   fogôu-ba = be,   dia tofigi-l-e   fila-l-e   olôufei.
come   desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 3PL die.DU/PL-IRR-FUT throw-IRR-FUT all.total
CONSEQUENCE

'... **if** they **do not** (**want to**) leave their sinful ways and come back, they will die and be wasted.'

1243) *Bi   ta   ne-ba[181]   a haba = ge   boho-l-ôu   ne*
thing INDF give.FUT-PFV.IRR 1s but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR turn-IRR-NPST give
CONDITION (cont. next line)

ho   fogôu-ba = be   na = me   koyo = ha taga-l-e?
desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s=TOP   who=GEN like-IRR-FUT
CONSEQUENCE

'**If** later I do **not** (**want to**) give back something that I was given, who will like you?'
(a saying)

---

[181] I would have expected *ne-i-ba* (give-NFUT-PFV.IRR), a different subject in next clause: '**somebody** gave (**me**) something' here. As it is, only a passive translation into English meets the case.

1244) *Sibige   ma   ho   fogôu-ba=be,   na   kuhe   ha=yede   tobou.*
      essence put desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S   so   cut=OQV   say-NFUT
      CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE |

      '"**If** (the tree) does **not** bear fruit, go ahead and cut it down," (he) instructed and said.'

1245) *Idiba   huei   to   ho   fogôu-ba=be,   a=me yukuei bigi-l-e.*
      tomorrow water wash desire leave.for-PFV.IRR=TOP 1S=TOP cloth wash-IRR-FUT
      CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE

      '**If** it will **not** rain tomorrow, I will wash clothes.'

1246) *a   dabai ta   mei de-ba=be,   a na kuhe hagua=yede   tobo-u.*
      1S work INDF NEG PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP 1S 2S so   come=OQV   say-NFUT
      CONDITION   CONSEQUENCE |

      '... "**If** I do **not** have any other work, then I will tell you to come," he said.'

1247) *Godi=ha yôu   e sisigo   olôufei   egele.wo-môu i-l-i.*
      God=GEN 3S.EMP 3S children all.total punish.FUT-PFV go-IRR-NFUT

      Ke-ge-môu,   ni=me e ta egele.wo-u=yo   mei de-ba=be,
      that-VBR-PFV 2PL=TOP 3S INDF punish-NFUT=INDC NEG PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP
            CONDITION |

      damale=do, ni=me e sisigo   mei.
      true=INT   2PL=TOP 3S children NEG
            CONSEQUENCE

      'God keeps punishing all his children. So concerning you, **if** he **does not** punish (you), really, you (are) not his children.'

1248) *Ni o hu=bôu mei ta   dogôugu-l-i   mei de-ba=be,*
      2PL man name=and NEG INDF help-IRR-NFUT NEG PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP
      CONDITION

      ni a=ne   ta dogôugu-l-i   mei.
      2PL 1S=also INDF help-IRR-NFUT NEG
      CONSEQUENCE

      '**If** you **did not** help someone of low status, you **did not** help me either.'

1249) *ni ki-le   o koyo=ha midiho kasagai ta   milôu-l-i*
      2PL inside-A.LOCR man who=GEN face   bad   INDF work-IRR-NPST
      CONDITION (cont. next line)

      mei de-ba=be   sasai ke=me o ka=ha   e-bukôu=do igi
      NEG PROV-PFV.IRR=TOP woman that=TOP man that=GEN 3S-first=INT stone
               CONSEQUENCE (cont. next line)

      mala   fa=yede tobo-u.
      get.IRR.FUT   hit+OQV say-NFUT
          |

      '... "**If** whoever among you **did not** sin, that man must be the very first to pick up (a) stone and hit that woman," (he) instructed and said.'

7.3.3.4 Contrast

There are several different ways to signal contrast.

neutral	=*si*	'but'	(CNTR)	any part of speech
	ke=nôu=si	'but'	(that=only=CNTR)	between clauses or sentences
appraisal	=*ye*	'may/might ... but'	(OPT)	between clauses
	=*ye, kenôusi*	'even though ... may'	(OPT#that.only.CNTR)	between clauses
strong contrast	*ha*	'(... so it is) **but**'	(a conjunction)[182]	between clauses or sentences
	=*ye, ha*	'may ... but even so'	(OPT#but)	between clauses
	ha kenôusi	'but even so'	(but#that.only.CNTR)	between clauses

---

[182] The conjunction *ha* 'but' also means 'or/again/instead'. Actually, the basic meaning is probably 'change'.

Neutral: =*si* and ***kenôusi*** 'but'

One way to signal contrast is to use the discourse enclitic =***si*** 'contrast'. This enclitic may occur on any part of speech, (except particles), thus contrasting that particular part with another similar part of speech. Though this contrast in itself is neutral, the form -*ba*=*si* (-PFV.IRR=CNTR) adds an extra component of meaning (see introduction to (1253) and (1254).

1250) *O   olôufei=be   bolo   ta   dala   mei, Godi **e**=**nôu**=**si**   bolo=do.*
          man all.total=TOP good INDF be/have NEG God   3s=only=CNTR good=INT

          'Concerning people, no one is good, **but** only God **he** (is) very good..'

1251) *O   Kiunga=kôu i   ke=me   fula   ta   **ka**=**ha**=**si**   hagua-l-e.*
          man Kiunga=LOC go that=TOP week   INDF that=GEN=CNTR come-IRR-FUT

          'The man who went to Kiunga is, **however**, coming back next week.'

When =*si* occurs with the demonstrative *ke* 'that', the most common form is the conjunction ***kenôusi***, which functions much as the English 'but' and has the same meaning. This construction with ***kenôusi*** 'but' may, on the other hand, be seen as a relative clause giving the background for the second clause (see 6.5 THE RELATIVE CLAUSE). But possibly under the influence of Tok Pisin and English, *kenôusi* may also start a new sentence, so in the following example I cannot really say if *kenôusi* is the end of the first clause or the beginning of the second.

1252) *A   ma   sio   ayomôu dihi su=do   **ke**=**nôu**=**si**   sagatai=ye wo+ma*
          1s 1s.POSS bird fowl   child many=INT that=only=CNTR hawk=INS   attack+put
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          no-l-u-gi   mei dege-i.
          eat-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   NEG do-NFUT
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          'I had many chickens, **but** (a) hawk killed them and ate (them) until (they) were (all) gone.'

The form ***-basi*** has been described in 7.3.3.3.2 CONTRASTIVE CONDITION. As said there, this form is used to describe an alternative action that under the circumstances is better than any other.

1253) *e   kuhe hagu-**ba**=**si**,   di   ... nele=do   dege tafala-gua-l-e.*
          3s so   come.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR 1PL.IN   ... strong=INT do   stand-DU/PL-IRR-FUT
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          '**But** when he so comes, we ... will stand strong.'

1254) *Jona=ha   tobo-u,   ni   a=nôu mala   ta-le=kôu   hebe fila-ma.*
          Jonah=GEN say-NFUT   2PL 1s=only get.IRR.FUT river-A.LOCR=LOC carry throw-DU/PL
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          *Kege-**ba**=**si**,   bolo=fei   dege-l-e=yode   tobo-u*
          that-VBR=CNTR   good=total   do-IRR-FUT=IQV   say-NFUT
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

          'Jonah said, "Just take me and carry me and throw me into (the) water. **In that way, contrasting with other ways**, (it) will be alright," (he) stated and said ...'

Appraisal: =***ye*** '... may/might ... but' and =***ye, kenôusi*** 'even though ... may ...'

When the optative =*ye* is used with the meaning of 'but', it has a falling tone and precedes a contrasting clause. The actual meaning seems to be something like: 'it may be that ..., but ...'.

1255) *Sele 100 ke-ge   diafo-u=**ye**,   sele   ke=me   diafo-u=ye*[183]
          money 100 that-VBR cut.off-NFUT=OPT money that=TOP cut.off-NFUT=INS
          CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

          nala   i.
          eat.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

          '(They) **might** have divided K100, **but** that money was lost/eaten by (how) they
          divided (it).'

---

[183] The enclitic =*ye* 'instrumental' is said on a rising tone.

1256) *Ke̲=no̲û=si   e̲ kôu   sokôulôu bologua duwe-i=ye,*
       that=only=CNTR 3S prior   school   good.do sit-NFUT=OPT
               CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       sadebe e̲ haba   bolo̲u ke-ge   mei dege-l-i   mei.
       year   3S but.PFV.IRR two   that-VBR NEG do-IRR-NFUT NEG
       CLAUSE

       'But he **might** have done/sat OK in school earlier, **but** (the) year he did again two (times), he did not finish.'

1257) *Di̲a e̲ tobo-l-ôu   kôu   du-l-o   i=ye,   damale̲=yode-l-e i-l-i   mei.*
       3PL 3S say-IRR-NPST prior   hear-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=OPT true=IQV-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT NEG
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

       'They **might** have heard (what) she said, **but** they did not believe (her/it) ...'

   The form *=ye, ke̲nôûsi* means 'even though ... may ...'.

1258) *Sa   Ukarumpa aso̲ hiye=do dala=ye,   ke̲=no̲û=si   difi=be mei=do.*
       land   Ukarumpa sun big=INT be/have=OPT that=only=CNTR heat=TOP NEG=INT
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       '**Even though** there **may** be a lot of sun at Ukarumpa, (it) really (is) not warm at all.'

1259) *Dou=be e̲=me bolo=fe̲i=do=ye,   ke̲=no̲û=si   e̲ o   gala-di.*
       fire=TOP 3S=TOP good=total=INT=OPT that=only=CNTR 3S man bite-HAB
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       '**Even though** (the) fire **may** be good, it stings/burns people.'

Strong contrast: *ha* '(... so it is) but', *=ye, ha* '... may ..., but even so', *ha ke̲nôûsi* 'but even so'

The conjunction *ha* 'but/or/again/instead', has a basic component of 'change' in its meaning. It may be used by itself, but may also be used together with *=ye* 'optative' or *ke̲nôûsi* 'but'.

1260) *Figi ilo   left side=kôu=be bolo=fe̲i   dala,*
       side part left side=LOC=TOP good=total be/have
       CLAUSE

       ha   figi right side=kôu=be do   hiye=do.
       but side right side=LOC=TOP sickness big=INT
            CLAUSE

       'On (his) left side (he) is fine, **so it is, but** on (his) right side (he is in) great pain/(has a) terrible sickness.'

1261) *sege-i   hou   ka=ha̲ folo,   sibige   mo̲-u̲-môu,*
       plant-NFUT seedling that=GEN go.up   essence   put-NFUT-PFV
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       ha   kogou=ne   fele-i.
       but weeds=also go.up-NFUT
            CLAUSE

       '... the seedlings came up and carried fruit, **so it was, but** weeds too came up.'

   The form *ye, ha* means '... may ... but even so'.

1262) *e̲=ge   o   ilo ke-le=be   dogôugu-di=ye, ha yo̲û-sie   ta*
       3S=F.CNTR man part that-A.LOCR=TOP help-HAB=OPT   but 3S.EMP-REFL INDF
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

       dogôugu-l-o   saga̲i   mei.
       help-IRR-FUT likely NEG

       '...he **may** have helped some others, **but even so** (he) is not likely to help himself.'

   The form *ha ke̲nôûsi* means 'but even so'.

1263) *Fofai   hiye=do dala,   ha ke̲=no̲û=si   sugua-i=bo̲û   mei.*
       swelling big=INT be/have but that=only=CNTR have.fever-NFUT=and NEG
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE

       '(He) has (a) very big swelling, **but even so**, there is no fever with (it).'

In the Mountain dialect *ha* 'but' is **he**.

1264) *A̱ ke-ge-i-mô̱u*   *kiyei   ka*   *i-l-e-mô̱u*   *dugu,*   **he** *mei.*
       1s that-VBR-NFUT-PFV   pandanus look.for   go-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT   or   NEG
       CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'Being like that, I having gone to look for pandana fruit, **but** (I) saw (there was) none.'
(Mountain dialect)

7.3.3.5 Alternative

In Konai, alternative sentences often consist of two clauses or phrases with a conjunction between, indicating the alternatives. Another way to express alternatives involves proverbs.

7.3.3.5.1 Alternatives with conjunctions

There are two conjunctions that may be used to express alternatives.

- *o*   'or'   true alternatives (possibly a loanword, but widely used)

- *ha*   'but/**or**/again'   the last alternative is the correct one

In a question of this type: "Is it this one or that one?"– if *ha* is used, the last choice gets falling intonation, indicating it is a statement, saying "but that one it is." In other words, this is the construction for rhetorical questions, and the last option stated is taken to be true.

1265) *Ta̱   kasaga̱i,*   **ha**   *bolof̱ei?*
       talk bad   but   good=total

'Is it bad **or** good talk?' (It is good.)

In asking the following question a real choice is implied.

1266) *Tem̱e*   *hiye* **o** *huyadef̱ei?*
       sago.leaves big   or   little.total

'(Do you want) a lot of sago leaves **or** a little?'

The two following examples are used as questions with the second clause/phrase replaced by an implied or explicit *mei* 'negative'.

1267) *Na̱ sugua-i=bô̱u*   **o?**
       2s fever-NFUT=and or

'Do you have a fever **or** (not)?'

1268) *Sô̱u*   *na-l-e̱*   *bolo̱*   **o** *mei?*
       edible leaf.sp. eat-IRR-FUT   good   or   NEG

'Do you eat "*sô̱u*" leaves **or** not?'

1269) *Sisig̱o*   *sugua-i*   **o** *malalia   mola*
       children have.fever-NFUT or   malaria medicine

'Fever **or** malaria medicine for children' (from a list of medicines)

1270) *Na̱ na-l-e̱*   **o** *sele   na̱ ka-ge=f̱ei*   *dege-i,* *a̱=ne*   *na̱ ke-ge=f̱ei*
       2s eat-IRR-FUTor   money 2s how-VBR=total do-NFUT 1s=also 2s that-VBR=total

dege-l-e.
do-IRR-FUT

'The total of what you spend in food **or** money, I, too, will spend exactly like that (on you).'

1271) *Siya̱=si*   *dugu-l-i*   *mei. Mei* **o** *dala,*   *a̱ tewe*   *mei.*
       sugarcane=CNTR see-IRR-NFUT NEG   NEG   or   be/have 1s know   NEG

'But I haven't seen any sugarcane. I don't know if there is any **or** not.'

1272) *Nele hagua-l-e̱=be*   *date 3* **o** *4 ka̱=ha̱=ge*   *... hagua-ma.*
       2DU come-IRR-FUT=TOP date 3 or 4 that=GEN=F.CNTR ... come-DU/PL

'Concerning that you two will come, come ... on the third **or** the fourth ...'

1273) **ha** *mô̱u-l-i̱*   *mei*
       or get-IRR-NFUT   NEG

'... **or** didn't (he) get it?' (He got it, but the person saying it may have thought he did not.)

1274) *Jon=ha̱ fafeleya tofôu-di=be koyo=ha̱ bi? O ke+dia bi?*
     John=GEN baptize step-HAB=TOP who=GEN thing man that+3PL thing

     ***Ha,** hebeni=ha̱ bi?*
     or heaven=GEN thing

     'Concerning John's Baptism, whose business (was) that? People's business? **Or**, heaven's business?' (It was heaven's.)

1275) *O=be hebe kolo ma̱-di ke̱ dugu-di=be, hebe bolo=fe̱i,*
     man=TOP tree fruit put-HAB that see-HAB=TOP tree good=total

     ***ha,** hebe kasaga̱i*
     or tree bad

     'When you look at the fruit (a) tree produces, (is the) tree good **or** (is the) tree bad ...?' (It is bad.)

In the Mountain dialect the choices of conjunctions are *o*, *ôuhe* and *he* 'or'.

1276) *Yesu=be to **ôuhe** te-l-i mei?*
     Jesus=TOP die or die-IRR-NFUT NEG

     'Is Jesus dead or not?' (Mountain dialect)

1277) *Di moni kefe+ma̱=ba, o hiye Sisar=kôu de ne-l-e̱?*
     1PL.IN money gather+put=PFV.IRR man big Caesar=LOC good give-IRR-FUT

     ***He** ne-l-e̱ mei?*
     or give-IRR-FUT NEG

     'Having collected (the tax) money, (is it) OK for us to give (it) to Caesar, or (should we) not give? (Mountain dialect)

7.3.3.5.2 Alternatives expressed without conjunctions

Another way to express alternatives involves using proverbs or the adverb *saga̱i* 'likely.

1278) *o ta=ha̱ asôu kolo **saga̱i,** moso **saga̱i** **kege-i** ta*
     man INDF=GEN ground skin likely house likely that-VBR-NFUT INDF

     dala-môu=be
     be/have-PFV=TOP

     '... when a certain man had a (piece of) land **or** a house ...'

1279) *aso̱ diho̱ sasa **de-ba**=ne, to̱u **de-ba**=ne ta̱=bôu mei.*
     sun eye long/tall PROV-PFV.IRR=also short PROV-PFV.IRR=also talk=and NEG

     '... a long time **or** a short does not matter.'

1280) *o midiho̱ bolo̱ ta milo-u **de-ba,** haba ta milôu-l-i*
     man face good INDF work-NFUT PROV-PFV.IRR but.PFV.IRR INDF work-IRR-NFUT

     *mei **de-ba,** Godi=kôu damale̱=yode-i-ba=si, Godi=ha̱ o ke̱=me*
     NEG PROV-PFV.IRR God=LOC true=IQV-NFUT-PFV.IRR-CNTR God=GEN man that=TOP

     do̱u=do o=yode tobo-l-ôu.
     straight=INT man=IQV say-IRR-NPST

     '... if a man does good **or** not, but if he believes in God, God will state and say that man is righteous.'

The following example is not a question but a rhetorical device to state parallel alternatives.

1281) *hagi **dege-ba,** ka-ge **dege-ba***
     heavy do-PFV.IRR how-VBR do-PFV.IRR

     'problems **or** whatever'

7.3.3.6 Comparison

There are no grammatical forms of adjectival words to use for comparison of the type *big*, *bigger*, *biggest*. Rather it is a matter of semantics. A couple of examples will show how a comparison may be worded.

1282) *Sa ke̱=me Ukarumpa=be hiye mei=yode tobo-l-ôu i-môu du.*
     land that=GEN Ukarumpa=TOP big NEG=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT-PFV hear.NFUT

     'That place (Kainantu) (is) **bigger than** Ukarumpa, (I) heard them state and say.'

1283) *Moso̱ ke̱=me   ta̱=bo̱ûu   mei. Haba,   moso̱ ko̱u̱=ne   bolo=fe̱i.*
      house that=TOP talk=and NEG but.PFV.IRR house this=also good=total

'(I have) nothing against that house. But this house too (is) very good/a little **better**.'

7.3.3.7 Warning

The warning construction is done by using the clitic =*ye* 'optative', preceded by a high vowel.
See 7.1 ILLOCUTIONARY FORCE: Optative.

    Warnings may be preceded by:

- *ni̱o̱û tawaibo̱û*   'you (pl.) look out!'

- *kegeligi*   'going on like that until ...'

- *kegeiye*   'lest (it) be like that ...' (a literal translation of Tok Pisin 'nogut'; no natural examples)

1284) *Mo̱û   o=ye   i-l-e=be   ko̱u   bolo=fe̱i=ye   ya-ba*
      nothing man=INS go-IRR-FUT=TOP prior good=total=OPT   go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV.IRR
                                WARNING(cont. next line)

      ta=fe̱i   toto̱û   dege-i=ye   do-mo̱û
      INDF=total forgetfulness do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV

'When men without (knowledge) would go, (thinking) beforehand (it) would be OK, **it would not do**, if they having gone would be a bit stupid ...'

1285) ***ni̱o̱û   tawa-i=bo̱û, o   ta=e   ni̱=moko̱û ogo̱û-ga   tobo̱û-ba***
      2PL.EMP know-NFUT=and man INDF=INS 2PL=LOC lie-DU/PL say-PFV.IRR
      WARNING (cont. next line)

      du-l-o   i=ye.
      hear-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=OPT

'… you better look out **lest** you obey/hear someone speaking lies.'

1286) *a̱ ... na̱ do   dege-i=ye   do-mo̱û=ne,*
      1s ... 2s sickness do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV=also
           WARNING |

      diho̱ baga̱   tobo-l-o̱û.
      eye close.eye say-IRR-NPST

'... **so** you **won't** get sick/**lest** you get sick, (for that) too, I pray.'

1287) *Hiye O,   na̱ toto=do   a̱=bo̱û+de   i-me,*
      big man 2s quickly=INT 1s=and+PROV go-HORT

      ke-ge-l-i-gi   *ma̱   dihi   to-l-o   i=ye.*
      that-VBR-IRR-NFUT-DSQ 1s.POSS child die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=OPT
      WARNING

'... Lord, let us hurry up (and) go, **so** my child **won't** die.'

The following example is from a song and seems to have a double warning, the -*da* 'prohibitive' replacing the high vowel to get the "lest" meaning of the optative = *ye*.

1288) *Godi=ha̱ sosi   moso̱ mako-da=ye.*
      God=GEN church house destroy-PROH=OPT
      WARNING

'**So** you **won't**/**Lest** you destroy God's house.'

7.3.4 Complementary linking

As far as this grammar is concerned, verbs that may take complementation are verbs of perception, cognition and speaking, such as hear, see; know, like, believe; say, ask, teach. Different structures are used to join the complements to the verbs requiring them. The meanings conveyed are 'hear that ... '; 'know that ...', 'like ...'; 'say that ...' etc.

7.3.4.1 Complementation with verbs of perception

The structures used for the complements of the verbs *du* 'hear' and *dugu* 'see' are part of the regular medial verb system. These two verbs cover the five senses: sight, hearing, taste, smell and feeling.[184] Another verb, where this complement structure occurs, is *dusug* 'listen'.

Structure I – Complementation with verbs of perception

		CLAUSE	CLAUSE	CLAUSE
Verbs of Perception	→	V$_{PERCEPTION}$(=TOP)	V(-PFV)	V$_{PERCEPTION}$
			NPo	
		↑_____one or both_____↑		

Complementation with verbs of perception occurs in sentences with at least two or three clauses. Complements are **object**s of these verbs. A complement may occur before and/or after a verb of perception and comprises what is being perceived. If this clause **precedes** the verb of perception, the verb is usually marked by the enclitic *-môu* 'perfective', which is conjugated in such a way as to indicate a close temporal relationship and a different subject.[185] If the main predication is future or hypothetical, the perfective suffix is the irrealis *-ba*. If the complement **follows** the verb of perception,[186] that verb is a final verb, which may be marked by the topic marker *=be*. See (1291) for a straight forward example with both possibilities in the same sentence. As can be seen in (1290), as well, the verb of perception could come either before or after its argument.

1289) *(ele) so kaha tigo-u-môu du.*
    1DU.EX dog that=GEN bark-NFUT-PFV hear.NFUT
    CLAUSE   CLAUSE

    '... (we two) **heard** the dog bark**ing**.'

1290) *Hebe kôu=ma=ha fu=kôu dugu, dôuwa duwo.*
    tree this=TOP=GEN hole=LOC see.NFUT hornbill sit
    CLAUSE   CLAUSE

    Duwo-môu dugu-o fogôu-ma i.
    sit-PFV see.FUT leave.for-ISQ go.NFUT
    CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE

    '(We two) **saw** in(side) a hole in this tree**;** a hornbill sat (there).
    (We) **saw** (it) **sitting** (there) and after leaving (we) went on.'

1291) *E su-l-u-di   dugu=be wai i-môu dugu.*
    3S walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP pig go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT
    CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

    'He walked around until he **saw** a pig going (away from him).' (Mountain dialect)

1292) *Dig dugu=be Maria=bôu Josef=bôu dilie duwo-môu dugu.*
    3PL see.NFUT=TOP Mary=and Joseph=and 3DU sit-PFV see.NFUT
    CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

    'They **saw** Mary and Joseph **sitting** (there).'

---

[184] Actually, there is probably only one verb *du* 'perceive', which most commonly applies to hearing, but may also mean 'smell'. The verb that mostly applies to seeing is *du-gu* (perceive-OF), i.e. it is more transitive (see 4.1.7 OBJECT FOCUS). It also means 'taste'.For the fifth sense 'feeling' *du* or *dugu* may be used (1393).

[185] For event verbs, this means a high or mid vowel, and for existential state verbs, like *duwo* 'sit' it means a low vowel.

[186] The verb of perception, in final form, precedes the complement to signal anticipation. It is a case in point, when a final verb form is used in the middle of a sentence.

The verb *dusug* 'listen' is the same kind of verb as *du*, having the same complement structure.

1293) *midiho gehe gehe milôu-go-u-môu   dig dugu-o kesi-gi-l-e   i   ke*
face new new work-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV 3PL see-FUT rouse-OF-IRR-FUT go.NFUT that
RELATIVE CLAUSE
CLAUSE (cont. next line)

tobo-l-ôu   i-môu   dusug   duwe-gue-i.
say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT-PFV listen sit-DU/PL-NFUT
(serial verb)   CLAUSE CLAUSE

'... while they talked about the miracles they had seen and been amazed about, (the people) **sat listening**.'

1294) *Dig ei   tobôu-môu   dusue-i   ki-le=be*
3PL 1PL.EX say-PFV   listen-NFUT inside-A.LOCR=TOP
      CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'Among those, who **listened** to us speak**ing** ...'

The verb *baha* 'look', however, seemingly means "stare vaguely into space" and is more intransitive than transitive. The verb pair *baha duwo* (look#sit) means 'wait'.

1295) *E moso=kôu folo-môu   dugu,   du   baha duwo-môu   dugu-o-môu*
3S house=LOC go.up.FUT-PFV see   inside look sit-PFV   see-FUT-PFV
CLAUSE   CLAUSE CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'(We two) having gone up to his house **saw** him sit inside and wait and ...'

Note in the above example that *folo-môu dugu* does not mean *'they saw him go up', because the last vowel in the verb *folo* 'go up' is low. The contrast can be seen in the next example.

1296) *folo-môu   dugu   folo-u-môu   dugu*
go.up.**FUT**-PFV see.NFUT   go.up-**NFUT**-PFV see.NFUT
'having gone up (he) saw'   '(he) saw someone go up'

The verb *mase* 'look at' is also more intransitive than transitive.

1297) *dilie diho ko=kôu   kugu-môu,   bolo dege-i-môu   mase-ma,*
3DU eye that=LOC touch.NFUT-PFV good do-NFUT-PFV look.at-ISQ
CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

Yesu   sese-l-e   ya-i.
Jesus follow-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'... as he touched their eyes, they immediately got well (and) after being **able to see** followed Jesus.'

7.3.4.2 Complementation with the verbs *taga* 'like' and *damaleyode* 'believe'

The complementation structure for the verbs *taga* 'like' and *damaleyode* 'believe', is that of a transitive verb taking an object. The object may be one or more clauses. In that case it/they may occur last in the sentence (1300).The topic marker *=be* may act as a bridge between *taga* 'like' and its object. For the verb meaning 'believe' the locative case marker is obligatory, if the object is high on the animate scale.

1298) *Ke-ge-môu,   o   olôufei=do=be   sawisie-i   olôufei*
that-VBR-PFV man all.total=INT=TOP be.day-NFUT all.total
CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

mola   taga-l-e-môu   mala   i-di.
medicine like-IRR-FUT-PFV get.IRR.FUT go-HAB
                        CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'Having become like that, all people, at all times, **having liked** medicine keep getting it.'

1299) *Gita   a   taga-l-i=be   Yamaha ke   taga-l-i.*
guitar 1s like-IRR-NFUT=TOP Yamaha that like-IRR-NFUT
CLAUSE   CLAUSE

'The guitar I **like is** the Yamaha.'

1300) *A   taga-l-i=be,   dihi do   mala   Dahamo=kôu i-l-e*
      1s   like-IRR-NFUT=TOP   child sickness get.IRR.FUT Dahamo=LOC   go-IRR-FUT
      CLAUSE   CLAUSE   CLAUSE

   'I **want** the sick child to be taken to Dahamo.'

1301) *Niniba   o   sasai   ke+dig=me   Godi=kôu damale=yode-l-e   mei=yode-i.*
      Nineveh man woman   that+3PL=TOP God=LOC   true=IQV-IRR-FUT NEG=IQV-NFUT
      (clause embedded in quote |)
      CLAUSE

   '"The people of Nineveh **will** not **believe in** God/**will** not **say true to/about** God)," (he) said.'

1302) *Juda   o   ke+dig=ge   o   diho du   dege-i   ke*
      Judah man that+3PL=F.CNTR man eye blind do-NFUT-PFV that
      CLAUSE (next line too)   (two RCs, one embedded in the other; cont. next line)

      bologuo-u-môu   bolo dege-i   ke=me   ta   damale=yode-l-e   i-l-i   mei.
      good.do-NFUT-PFV good do-NFUT   that=TOP INDF true=IQV-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT   NEG
                                          |

   '**Concerning** the blind man being healed (and) becoming well, the Jews **did not believe** (it).'

7.3.4.3 Quotes

This section has three parts. The first part is about the cliticising quote verbs (7.3.4.3.1). The next one is about the structure of a sentence containing a quote (7.3.4.3.2). The last one is about special uses of the quote verbs (7.3.4.3.3).

   Quotes may be direct or indirect. There is no specific grammatical feature to distinguish between a direct and an indirect quote. It may be distinguished from the quote verb and/or from the forms, with which the participants are referred to, not least the forms of the pronouns. Compare (1312) – indirect with (1313) – direct.

7.3.4.3.1 Quotes with cliticising quote verbs

There are three cliticising quote verbs in Konai. Using one of them is the most common way to express a quote, though they are not obligatory. The quote verbs are repeated here from 4.1.1.3 QUOTE VERBS, where they are described in more detail. A singular form may also be used as a group plural form (compare 4.1.6.3).

=ode[187]	indicative quote verb	'state/say'	---	---
singular object			**2&3 dual/plural object**	**1 dual/plural object**
=ede	optative quote verb	'direct/instruct'	*(-da)-ma=be=ede*	*(-da)-me=be=ede*
			(-PROH)-DU/PL=TOP=OQV	(-PROH)-HORT=TOP=OQV
=ade	subjunctive quote verb	'assert'	*(-da)-ma=b=ade*	*(-da)-me=b=ade*
			(-PROH)-DU/PL=TOP=SQV	(-PROH)-HORT=TOP=SQV
=d=ade	emphasized subjunctive	'strongly assert'	---	---
=INT=SQV	quote verb			

   As can be seen above, the plural forms have negative counter parts, but so has the singular optative form *=ede*, which also may be used with the prohibitive suffix *-da*. Assertive medial forms are the forms used for imposed purpose described in 7.3.3.2.3.

1303) *E   tewe mei=yodi-l-i*
      3s know NEG=IQV-IRR-NFUT

   'She **says** that (she) does not know./(She) does not know, she **says**.'

1304) *o   sasai   ke+dig   e=me moso=kôu duwo=yode-i-môu du-l-o   i.*
      man woman   that+3PL 3s=TOP house=LOC sit=IQV-NFUT-PFV hear-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

   '... the people heard (other people) **saying** that he was at home/in the house'

_____

1305) *Aye   Godi, na Eye   Yesu migi=yede   tobo-u.*
      father God   2s older.brother Jesus come.down=OQV say-NFUT

   'Father God, you **told** Big Brother Jesus to come down.'

_____

[187] The indicative quote verb *=ode* is not conjugated as the two other quote verbs are.

The following two examples show a negative instruction with =*ede* 'direct/instruct'.

1306) *o   ta=kôu   tobôu-**da**=**yede** tobo-u .*
      man INDF=LOC say-PROH=OQV   say-NFUT

      '"... **do not** tell anybody," (he) **instructed** and said.'

1307) *o   ilo   ke+di̱a̱   midiho̱ kasaga̱i̱ dege-di ke̱   ni̱ fi-**da-ma**=**be**=**ede-i***
      man part that+3PL face   bad   do-HAB that 2PL distribute-PROH-**DU/PL**=TOP=OQV-NFUT

      '... "**Do not** judge other people's bad behaviour," (he) **instructed** ...'

———

The following long example has three subjunctive quote verbs, translating 'assert', though the assertion may very well be false.

1308) *O   sasa̱i̱ ilo   ke+di̱a̱=ge   e̱ dobogôu̱=be fofa-l-e=**yade-l-e**   i.*
      man woman part that+3PL=F.CNTR 3S hand=TOP   swell-IRR-FUT=SQV-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

      'Some people **said** his hand **would** swell.'

      Haba   ilo   ke+di̱a̱=ge   e̱=me ke-le=ge=nôu
      but.PFV.IRR part that+3PL=F.CNTR 3S=TOP that-A.LOCR=F.CNTR=only

      *to-l-o   i-l-e=**yade**   tawa-l-e   i.*
      die-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT=SQV know-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

      'But some **said and thought** he **would** suddenly die.'

      ... hagi̱   ta   tama̱   dege-i-môu dugu-l-o   i-l-i   mei.
      ... heavy INDF appear do-NFUT-PFV see-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT NEG

      '... they did not see anything bad happen.'

      *Ke-ge-i-môu,   di̱a̱=ge   e̱=me godi ta=**yade** tawa-l-e   i.*
      that-VBR-NFUT-PFV 3PL=F.CNTR 3S=TOP god   INDF=SQV know-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

      'So they **said and thought** he **must be** a god.'

The following sentence has a particle *wa* 'false assumption' showing that the assertion is definitely false.

1309) *Na̱=me gisiai ka=ha̱,   di̱a̱=ge   **wa**,*
      2S=TOP young that=GEN 3PL=F.CNTR false.assumption

      *na̱=me   môu   o=**yade**   tawa-l-e   i=ye.*
      2S=TOP nothing man=SQV   know-IRR-FUT go.NFUT=OPT

      'Because you are young, they **might think mistakenly** that you are of no consequence.'

The next example shows a quote with =*ade* 'assert', which translates into a purpose.

1310) *A̱ ikoke ka   i-l-e   ke-ge=be,   na̱ sisigo̱   ke+di̱a̱*
      1S nail look.for go-IRR-FUT that-VBR=TOP 2S children that+3PL

      *sokôulôu fi sele ta de   ne̱-ba   solôu=d=**ade-ba**   i-l-e.*
      school fee money INDF good give.FUT-PFV.IRR heart=INT=SQV-PFV.IRR go-IRR-FUT

      'When I go to look for nails like that, I also go **in order for** you to be truly sorry and give school fees to the children.'

7.3.4.3.2 Three structures of a quote sentence

There are several optional parts to a quote. Usually there is at least one verb to indicate that there is a quote, but a quote may sometimes occur on its own.

If there is only one verb to signal the quote, that one verb is often a cliticising quote verb.

1311) *Sobôu   sasa̱i̱ o=bôu   ke̱   hiyou dege-da=**yede-i**.*
      married.woman woman man=and that steal do-PROH=OQV-NFUT

      '"Don't (you sg.) steal a married woman," (he) **instructed**.'

1312) *A̱ afu   kôu-le-ge   a̱=bôu Yogu=bôu*
      1S earlier this-A.LOCR-VBR 1S=and Yogu=and

      *ele   to̱   to-l-o=**yode-ma**   i.*
      1DU.EX river wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ go.NFUT

      '(When) I (was) here some time ago, I and Yogu, **after** we two **had said** that (we) were going swimming, (we) went.'

There are three basic patterns for a sentence containing a quote. Which structure is chosen depends on the semantic properties of the non-cliticising speech verbs. These include:

tobôu	'say'
tawa	'know/understand'
yodu	'ask'
ta	'speak'
hehegie	'teach'
sima tobôu	'answer/disagree'
fima	'think'
nala	'write'

_____

Of these speech verbs, only **tobôu** '**say**' and **tawa** '**know**' may **follow a cliticising quote verb** in natural spontaneous speech or writing. These verbs occur in the following structure, the most common one.

Structure I - Quotes

		(CLAUSE)	SENTENCE	(=CLAUSE)	(CLAUSE)
Quote Sentence$_I$	→	(V$_{SPEECH}$(=TOP))	QUOTE	(=V$_{IQV/OQV/SQV}$)	(V$_{SPEECH}$)

For an example with almost all parts included see (1313).

Some of the other speech verbs have to appear in the first speech verb slot. The final speech verb, however, is often *tobôu* 'say', regardless of what the first speech verb is. If the word *fima* 'think' occurs before the quote, if there is a second speech verb following the quote verb, it would be *tawa* 'know/understand'. These two verbs are very similar in meaning, more so than the English glosses would suggest.

Also, *tobôu* 'say' may follow any cliticising quote verb, but *tawa* 'know' has not be found after =*ede* 'direct/instruct', which makes sense considering its meaning.

Examples with *tobôu* 'say'

1313) *Ta   sawisie-i   Molebe=ha **tobo-u,**   da   ta   to   i-me=be=ede   tobo-u.*
INDF be.day-NFUT Molebe=GEN say-NFUT 1DU.IN river wash go-HORT=TOP=OQV say-NFUT
'One day Molebe **said**, "**Let us** two go swimming," (he) **suggested and said**.'

1314) *E   o   ta   **tobo-u,**   ni   olôufei   hagua-ma.*
3s man talk say-NFUT 2PL all.total come-DU/PL
'He **said** to (a) man, "You all come!"'

1315) *ta   **tobo-l-ôu=be***
talk say-IRR-NPST=TOP
'(it) **says that** .../(we) **are saying that** ...'

1316) *Sa   ke=me   Ukarumpa=be hiye mei=**yode** tobo-l-ôu   i-môu   du.*
land that=GEN Ukarumpa=TOP big NEG=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT-PFV hear.NFUT
'That place (Kainantu) (is) bigger than Ukarumpa, (I) heard **them state and say**.'

1317) ***tobo-u,** damale=do, o   kôu=me Godi=ha Dihi=d=ade   **tobo-l-ôu**   i.*
say-NFUT true=INT   man this=TOP God=GEN child=INT=SQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT
'... (they) **said**, "Truly, this man **must for sure** be God's son," they **said**.'

The following example is in the Mountain dialect. The initial *tobôu* 'say' is marked for delayed sequence with -*gi*. This is typical of that dialect. It is as if they were saying, "speaking until 'quote', (he) said."

1318) *Ôumemi kansole   ka=ha   **tobo-l-ôu-gi,**   Dahamo gisiai=bôu,   Sesenabi*
Oumemi councillor that=GEN say-IRR-NPST-DSQ Dahamo young.men=and Sesenabi

gisiai=bôu+de   iga,   Oumemi=kôu ya-ma=be=ede-môu,   dia iga-i.
young.men=and+PROV go.DU/PL.FUT Oumemi=LOC play-DU/PL=TOP=OQV-PFV 3PL go.DU/PL-NFUT
'The councillor of Oumemi (village) **speaking until having told** (the) young men of Dahamo and (the) young men of Sesenabi to go and play (soccer) at Oumemi, they went.' (Mountain dialect)

Examples with *ɫawa* 'know/understand'

1319) *Ke-ge-môu,   a   ɫawa-i=be,   Godi=be a=bôu+de   dala=d=ade   ɫawa-i.*
        that-VBR-PFV 1S know-NFUT=TOP God=TOP 1S=and+PROV be/have=INT=SQV know-NFUT

'So I **understood that** God **must for sure** be with me, (I) **understood**.'

1320) *E̲   ɫawa-i=be,   Yesu   e̲=me Godi=ha̲ dihi=d=ade   ɫawa-i.*
        3S know-NFUT=TOP Jesus 3S=TOP God=GEN child=INT=SQV know-NFUT

'He **understood that** Jesus **must for sure** be God's son, (he) **understood**.'

1321) *E̲   ɫawa-i=be,   Yesu=be Godi=ha̲ dihi=yode ɫawa-i.*
        3S know-NFUT=TOP Jesus=TOP God=GEN child=IQV know-NFUT

'He **understood that** Jesus was God's son, **as a fact** (he) **understood** (it).'

In the following example the last verb is the stative verb *ɫewe* 'know', preceded by the proverb *de* to connect it to the complement.

1322) *E̲   kôu-g(u)e   ɫawa-i,   Godi=ha̲ dia mako-l-o   mei de   ɫewe.*
        3S this-VBR(BLTV) know-NFUT God=GEN 3PL destroy-IRR-FUT NEG PROV know

'He (**has come to**) **understand** like this, God will not destroy them, (he) **knows**.'

See also two examples below under the heading of **Examples with *fīma̲* 'think'**, where *ɫawa* 'know' occurs in the last clause of each sentence.

_____

The second quote structure comprises the verbs ***yodu* 'ask'** and ***ɫa̲* 'speak'** and may utilize **the proverb *de*** instead of the quote verbs. The proverb is not obligatory, however, and these two verbs may just occur by themselves in the introductory clause.

Structure II - Quotes

		(CLAUSE)	SENTENCE	(CLAUSE)	(CLAUSE)
Quote Sentence$_{II}$	→	(V$_{SPEECH}$(=TOP))	QUOTE	(PROV)	(V$_{SPEECH}$)

Examples with *yodu* 'ask'
The first four of the following examples are from four different stories told by four different people about John the Baptist.

1323) *Di̲a Sekalaiya=kôu yodu,   na̲ dihi   hu̲=be   kei̲=yode-l-e.*
        3PL Zechariah=LOC ask.NFUT 2S child name=TOP what=IQV-IRR-FUT

'They **asked** Zechariah, "What will you say (your) child's name (will be)?"'

1324) *Di̲a Sekalaiya=kôu yodu, e̲ hu̲=be   koyo?*
        3PL Zechariah=LOC ask 3S name=TOP who

'They **asked** Zechariah, "What is his name?"'

1325) *O ke+di̲a   Sekalaya=kôu yodu,   na̲ ne̲   dihi   hu̲=be   kei*
        man that+3PL Zechariah=LOC ask.NFUT 2S 2S.POSS child name=TOP what

        de yodu-môu,   e̲ ɫobo-u,   Jon=yode ɫobôu-môu
        PROV ask.NFUT-PFV 3S say-NFUT John=IQV say-PFV

'The men **asked** Zechariah, "What is your child's name," **asking** (him that), he said, "John," stating and saying (that), (his) ...'

1326) *O   dia Sekaraia=kôu **yodu-l-o**   i,   na dihi kôu=ma=ha hu=be   ka-ge*
       man 3PL Zechariah=LOC ask-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT 2S child this=TOP=GEN name=TOP how-VBR

       ti-l-e   de   yodu-l-o   i-môu   Sekaraia e   tobo-u, dihi   kôu=ma=ha
       call-IRR-FUT PROV ask-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV Zechariah 3S say-NFUT child this=TOP=GEN

       e   hu=be   John de[188] tobo-u.
       3S name=TOP John PROV   say-NFUT

       'People **asked** Zechariah, "What will you call this child," **asking** (that) Zechariah said, "This child's name is
       John," (he) said.'

1327) *a   moso taga-l-a-môu   na=mokôu **yodu**;   na a=mokôu ikoke a*
       1s house make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV 2S=LOC   ask.NFUT 2S 1S=LOC   nail   1s

       ko-u-ba   moso   togo-l-o.
       look.for-NFUT-PFV.IRR house make-IRR-FUT

       '... I **asked** you about me planning to build a house; when you find nails for me, (I) will immediately build
       a house.'

1328) *Bi   ka-ge-i,   di   e=mokôu **yodu=be**,   e   di=mokôu ne-l-e.*
       thing how-VBR-NFUT 1PL.IN 3S=LOC   ask.NFUT=TOP 3S 1PL.IN=LOC give-IRR-FUT

       'Whatever we have **asked** him, he will give us.'

Examples with *ta* 'speak'

There is only one example of *ta* 'speak' in connection with a quote. This verb has to do with the ability of speaking and is
basically intransitive.

1329) *E   **ta-di=be**   kôu-g(u)e   **ta-di**,   u__lie.u__lie.u__lie   de   ta-di.*
       3S speak-HAB=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) speak-HAB (noise of a cicada) PROV speak-HAB

       'He (a cicada) **says** like this," Uunien, uunien, uunien," (he) **says**.'

_____

The verbs **hehegie** 'teach', **sima tobôu** 'answer/disagree', **fima** 'think' and **nala** 'write' cannot follow a quote,
without making a relative clause of the quote They may, however introduce a quote. For the two first verbs, if there is a coda
with a quote verb, normally =*ode* 'state/say', it is often followed by the verb *tobôu* 'say'. If *fima* 'think' introduces a quote
and there is a coda it would normally be =*ode* 'state/say' followed by *tawa* 'know'.

Structure III - Quotes

	(CLAUSE)[189]	SENTENCE(=CLAUSE)	(CLAUSE)
Quote Sentence$_{III}$ →	*hehegie (tobôu)*(=TOP)	QUOTE(=V$_{IQV}$)	(*tobôu* 'say')
	sima(môu) tobôu(=TOP)		
	fima(=TOP)	QUOTE(=V$_{IQV/SQV}$)	(*tawa* 'know')

A quote related to the verb *nala* 'write' would most naturally occur in a relative clause. See further on this section.

Examples with *hehegie* 'teach'

The first example is more full than it need to be, because it emphasizes the habitual in the teaching.

1330) *E   **he-hegi-e-di=be**,   kôu-g(u)e   **tobôu-di**,*
       3S RED.PL-show-RED.PL-HAB=TOP this-VBR(BLTV)   say-HAB

       ni   fi   bohôu-ma, ... Hiye O=ha   ni   wo-l-ôu
       2PL soul turn-ISQ ... big man=GEN 2PL accompany-IRR-NPST

       *dala-l-e=be   hafei=do   dege-l-i=**yode** tobôu-di.*
       be/have-IRR-FUT=TOP close.total=INT do-IRR-NFUT=IQV say-HAB

       'When he **taught**, he **habitually said** like this, "Repent; ... the Lord will very soon be here and look after you,"
       he **habitually stated and said**.'

_____

[188] Unusual construction with the proverb *de* and *tobôu* 'say'.

[189] The verbs in this formula are written in their basic form. In natural speech they are conjugated (see examples).

The following example is not a quote but illustrates a common use of this verb with two objects.

1331) *Niniba   sa   hiye=do Jona   e   i-l-e,   o   sasai   ke+dia=mokôu Godi=ha*
  Nineveh land   big=INT Jonah 3s go-IRR-FUTman woman that+3PL=LOC   God=GEN

  ta   he-hegi-e-i
  talk RED.PL-show-RED.PL-NFUT

  'It was to the big town of Nineveh (that) Jonah went and (he) **taught the people God's Word** ...'

Example with *sima tobôu* 'answer/disagree'

1332) *e   si-ma tobo-u,   Godi=ha kuguo=kôu=be kôu-g(u)e   nala-i   dala,*
  3s ?-ISQ say-NFUT God=GEN paper=LOC=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) write-NFUT be/have

  ... Godi=ha ta   ... ke   du-l-o   sese-l-e   i-l-i
  ... God=GEN talk ... that hear-IRR-FUT follow-IRR-FUT go-IRR-NFUT

  ka=ha=nôu=si   o   sasai   tofo-u+sogo   tofo-l-ôu   i-l-e=yode-i.
  that=GEN=only=CNTR man woman step-NFUT+long step-IRR-NPST go-IRR-FUT=IQV-NFUT

  '... he **answered**, "In God's Word (it) is written like this, ... but only by hearing and following God's ... word will people live a long life," (he) **said**.'

Examples with *fima* 'think'

1333) *Dia fi+ma-i   diôu-sie   dia dege-l-i   ke   kasagai=d=ade*
  3PL soul+put-NFUT 3PL.EMP-REFL 3PL do-IRR-NFUT that bad=INT=SQV

  tawa-l-e   i.
  know-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

  'They **thought** about themselves (that) what they were doing **must** be bad, **for sure** they **knew** (that).'

1334) *E   fi+ma-môu   dugu,   Godi=ha ta   gobo-u   ka=ha*
  3s soul+put.FUT-PFV see.NFUT God=GEN talk break.NFUT that=GEN

  Godi=ha   e=mokôu   falesi   ne-l-i=d=ade
  God=GEN   3s=LOC   punishment   give-IRR-NFUT=INT=SQV

  tawa-l-e-môu,   diho baga   tobo-u, Godi=kôu.
  know-IRR-FUT-PFV eye close.eye say-NFUT God=LOC

  '**Having thought** about (it), he saw (that) because (he) had disregarded God's Word, God **must for sure** be punishing him, (and) **having realized** (that) (he) closed (his) eyes and prayed/said to God.'

In the next example the quote is a relative clause connected to the last *fimai* 'thought'.

1335) *E   ko=kôu=ge   fi+ma-i=be,   o Niniba tie o   ke+dia=mokôu*
  3s that=LOC=F.CNTR   soul+put-NFUT=TOP man Nineveh sleep man that+3PL=LOC

  fi+ma-i,   Godi=ha dogôugu-môu dia ifi   bologua duwo ke   fi+ma-i.
  soul+put-NFUT God=GEN help.NFUT-PFV 3PL today good.do sit that soul+put-NFUT

  'From that he **thought** about the people of Nineveh, (he) **thought**; God was helping them, (they) now sit well, (he) **thought**.'

Examples with *nala* 'write'

How to finish off a quote connected to the verb *nala* 'write', has not been quite settled yet, as communicating by writing has slowly developed only over the last 25-30 years, and people are still working out how to express it. There have been several suggestions over the years, including the indicative quote verb =*ode*, the proverb *de*, or using the word *tobôu* 'say' as a bridge between the quote verb and the word *nala* write, i.e. finishing off by e.g. "he stated and wrote." The best option, however, and what seems to be the most natural for most people is to make **a relative clause of the quote** like in (1338). The first example shows what kind of verb *nala* is, i.e. the original meaning of the verb would be something like 'make a pattern/make lines'.

1336) *igi   dosogôu dege-i=bôu fo   dege-i=bôu+de nala-ga-i   ... ke*
  stone black   do-NFUT=and white do-NFUT=and+PROV write-DU/PL-NFUT   ... that

  'a stone that is **marbled**'

1337) *Kuguo   kôu=me   a   nala-i.*
      paper   this=TOP   1s   write-NFUT

      'I **wrote** this letter.'

1338) *Moses=ha e kuolôu ta   nala-ga-i   ko=kôu=be,   e   o   ta   ka=ha*
      Moses=GEN 3s law   talk write-DU/PL-NFUT that=LOC=TOP 3s man INDF that=GEN

      hagua-l-e   ke   nala-ga-i.
      come-IRR-FUT that write-DU/PL-NFUT

      'In the law that Moses **wrote**, he **wrote** that a certain man would come.'

1339) *e   kôu-g(u)e   nala-i,   e   hu=be   Jon   de   nalo-u-môu,*
      3s this-VBR(BLTV) write-NFUT 3s name=TOP John PROV write-NFUT-PFV

      fi   hiye=do ma   i.
      soul big=INT put go.NFUT

      '... he **wrote** like this, his name is John, (he) **writing** (like that). they were surprised.'

The following example with quote verb + *tobolôu nalai* 'stated and said and wrote' is not accepted by everyone.

1340) *o   ta=ha   ya-i=ye   bolo dege-i-môu,*
      man INDF=GEN play-NFUT=INS good do-NFUT-PFV

      e   mo-u=yode   tobo-l-ôu   nala-i.
      3s get-NFUT=IQV say-IRR-NPST write-NFUT

      '... "a man winning/by playing doing well), he got (something)," (he) **stated and said and wrote**.'

7.3.4.3.3 Special use of a quote verbs

Quote verbs may give some special meanings in combination with certain other words as the following examples show.

1341) *damale=yode*
      true=IQV

      '**believe**' (literally: 'say (something) is true')

1342) *damale=yode-i o/sasai*
      true=IQV-NFUT   man/woman

      'a **Christian**' (literally: 'a man/woman who says (something) is true'

1343) *o   e   ti-l-e=yode-ma   maka-i   o*
      man 3s call-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ mark-NFUT man

      'the man, who was engaged to her' (literally: 'the man of whom it **has been said**, "he will call her"')

1344) *(e)   fisi-ba   dabai   dege=yado-môu*
      (3s) force.NFUT-IRR.PFV work   do=SQV-PFV

      '... **in order for** him to do forced labour'

7.3.5 Negative and other scopes in a sentence

Negative scope refers to how much a negative word or affix affects the speech surrounding it. Does it refer only to the word or clause where it occurs? Does it spread to the whole sentence, or does it spread to a certain point? This question applies to other potentially spreading features, including prohibition, purpose and optative. There seem to be different barriers for different features.

Negatives, including prohibition

The negative effect of the word *mei* 'negative', when used as a negation in the verbal phrase with the proper suffixation, as well as that of the prohibitive suffix *-da*, spreads to the left until it comes to a perfective marker *-môu* (realis) or *-ba* (irrealis), which both act as barriers for negation, i.e. the "scene" is the scope of negation. A final verb also stops the negation, of course.

To make the negative influence spread past a perfective suffix the indefinite marker *ta* is used (1347) and (1348). The indefinite marker may also occur somewhere in the negative scene itself.

1345) *Hegie hiye a   i-l-e   sagai   dugu-l-o   mei.*
      hunger big 1s go-IRR-FUT likely see-IRR-FUT NEG
      NEGATIVE   NEGATIVE

      '(I) am **not** likely to go and taste hunger.'

1346) *Bolou mei dege-môu, e wini dege-l-i   mei.*
       two   NEG do-PFV   3S win do-IRR-NFUT NEG
                                       NEGATIVE

       'Having finished the two (years), **he did not pass his exams**.'

1347) *Yo=be,   dia dabai ke=me   ta   to-l-ôu-ba*
       base=TOP 3PL work that=TOP INDF hold-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR
                                       NEGATIVE

       tofo-u+sogo   ke-ge=nôu   dala-l-e   mei ka=ha   dege-môu.
       step-NFUT+long that-VBR=only be/have-IRR-FUT NEG that=GEN do-PFV
       NEGATIVE |

       'Because concerning the(ir) work, they **will not be holding on** (to it) **and live on forever**.'

1348) *Huei-le+môu   yôu   sagai ke   agudi-le+tôu   ke ta   dobogôu=ye*
       water-A.LOCR+down 3S.EMP likely that heaven-A.LOCR+up thatINDF hand=INS
       NEGATIVE (cont. next line)

       ta   dehega-ma-ba,   Gode Kau=do e hu   ta   sôu-da.
       INDF make-ISQ-PFV.IRR God big=INT 3S name INDF call-PROH
                                         NEGATIVE

       '**Do not** after making (something) like him with your hands (from) down in the water/river (or) (from) up in the sky, call it by Lord God's name.' (Mountain dialect)

  In the next three examples the barrier is a final verb or a verbless clause.

1349) *Ofesi   moso=kôu dabai hiye=do dege-l-e   tefele-gue-i,*
       office house=LOC work big=INT do-IRR-FUT stand-DU/PL-NFUT
       kasagai dege-i ta   dugu-l-i   mei.
       bad   do-NFUT INDF see-IRR-NFUT NEG
       NEGATIVE

       Bolo=fei=do   dele-gue-i,   hegie   mei.
       good=total=INT be/have-DU/PL-NFUT hunger NEG
                                         NEGATIVE

       '(People) were in offices and did a lot of work**;** (I) **did not see anything** (that) **was bad**. Everything was very good indeed**; no**body (was) **hungry**.'

1350) *Ke=nôu=si   e wai taha-i   fogôu-l-i   mei.*
       that=ONLY=CNTR 3S pig shoot-NFUT hit.target-IRR-NFUT   NEG
                                         NEGATIVE

       'He shot at the pig**;** (he) **did not hit** (it).'

1351) *Ke=nôu=si   e   e gue hiye=do, toto=do   taha-l-e   sagai mei.*
       that=only=CNTR megapod 3S fear big=INT quickly=INT shoot-IRR-FUT likely NEG
                                         NEGATIVE

       'But the megapod bird (is) very much afraid**;** (you are) **not likely to shoot** (it) **in a hurry.**'

  In the following example the topic marker =*be* finishes off a long relative clause and stops the effect of the prohibitive suffix -*da* from spreading.

1352) *Bi+ma-i   bolo=fei ta   dugu-o-ba,   fi=ye   môu de-ba*
       thing+put-NFUT good=total INDF see-FUT-PFV.IRR soul=INS get PROV-PFV.IRR

       mei de   tawa-l-e=be   taga-da.
       NEG PROV know-IRR-FUT=TOP like-PROH
                                  NEGATIVE

       'Having seen good (material) things, (and) knowing that you should not take any**, do not desire it.**' (Mountain dialect)

Purpose and optative

The barrier for purpose and optative is the topic marker =**be**, cliticised to a final verb.

1353) *Godi=ha̱ a̱ maka-i=**be**, o sas̱ai di̱a=mokôu ke-ge-i   ke̱*
       God=GEN 1s mark-NFUT=TOP man woman 3PL=LOC   that-VBR-NFUT that
                                          PURPOSE (cont. next line)

       *he-hegi-e=**yado-môu**.*
       RED.PL-show-RED.PL=SQV-PFV

       'God has marked me **to** teach these things to people.'

1354) *Môu   o=ye   i-l-e=**be**,   kôu   bolo=f̱ei=ye   ya-ba*
       nothing man=INS go-IRR-FUT=TOP prior good=total=OPT go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV.IRR
                                          OPTATIVE (cont. next line)

       *ta=f̱ei   totôu   dege-i=**ye** do-môu*
       INDF=total forgetfulness do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV

       'When men without (knowledge) would go, (thinking) beforehand (it) would be OK, **it would not do,** if they having gone would be a bit stupid ...'

       See also Topic marker: 8.3.16 FUNCTIONS AS A BARRIER.

8. DISCOURSE

The types of discourse that have been studied are narrative, procedural, descriptive, hortatory and letter. There will be a few comments on other discourse types as well.

Narratives: very **long sentences**, consisting of verbal clauses

Procedurals: heavy use of **head-tail linkage**

Descriptives: many **sentences consisting of short verbless clauses**

               the **theme slot** at the beginning of a clause, which in a narrative is used mostly for introduction, is working over-time in a descriptive story

Hortatory: **deontic** moods, **optative** quote verbs, final verbs in **future tense**, **conditionals**

Letters: many sentences in **deontic mood, e.g. imperative**

I have not found any differences between written and oral styles in syntax or information structure, except what is due to length. An oral story may be long with many details, while a written story or letter tends to be short and to the point. That being the case, the tendency would be to have more background information in an oral story.

8.1 Beginning and ending a discourse

The initial sentence in a story often consists of one clause. There will be one or more arguments in the initial theme slot of this clause (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOT). Main participant(s), time and/or location go in this slot (1355)-(1357). Examples (1358) and (1359) are from narratives explaining how something came about. Example (1360) is from a descriptive story. Some descriptives starts with a narrative sentence, or two, without anything in the theme slot (1361). Examples. (1362), (1363) are the introduction of letters.

Beginnings

Discourse initial theme slots marked as **bold**:

1355) ***A̱ afu   kôu-le-ge   a̱=bôu Yogu=bôu***
       1s earlier this-A.LOCR-VBR 1s=and Yogu=and

       ele   to̱   to-l-o=yode-ma   i
       1DU.EX river wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ go.NFUT

       '(When) **I** (was) **here some time ago**, **I and Yogu**, after we two had said that (we) were going swimming (we) went.'

1356) ***A̱ afu=do   1995 holiday a̱ Debele=kôu i.***
       1s earlier=INT1995 holiday 1s Debele=LOC go.NFUT

       '**A long time ago**, **I**, (during) **the holiday of 1995**, I went to Debele.'

1357) ***Afu   ma̱   aye=ha̱   ôu   ta   ha-i.***
       earlier 1s.POSS father=GEN sago INDF cut-NFUT

       '**Some time ago** my father cut down a sago (palm).'

Other typical introduction devices marked as **bold**:

1358) *S̲a̲bu*   *o*   *biye-i=**be***   *kôu-g(u)e*   *fua*   *fel̲e̲-i.*
       a.clan man sit.up/down-NFUT=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) break.open come.up-NFUT
       '**Concerning** the existence of the Sambu people, (they) originated **like this**.'

1359) *A̲*   *afu*   *1981-82*   *Sep̲e̲*   *o*   *fene*   *gabu*   *milo-u*   *t̲a̲.*
       1s earlier 1981-82 Smipen mouth.of.river airplane place work-NFUT talk
       'A **story** about when I earlier, in 1981-82, worked on the airstrip at the mouth of the Smipen
       river.'

1360) *Mola=**be***   *bolo=f̲e̲i=do,*   *e̲=**me***   *o*   *dog̲o̲ugu-di.*
       Medicine=TOP good=total=INT 3s=TOP man help-HAB
       'Medicine **is** very good; it helps people.'

1361) *A̲*   *sa*   *Dahamo t̲o̲ufog̲o̲u*   *fene+ya*   *hague-i.*   *Sa*   *Ukarumpa=k̲o̲u migi.*
       1s land Dahamo leave airplane+road come-NFUT land Ukarumpa=LOC come.down-NFUT
       'Leaving Dahamo I came by plane. (I) came down in Ukarumpa.'

1362) *A̲*   *n̲a̲=mok̲o̲u*   ***t̲awa-l-e***   *t̲a̲*   ***t̲obo̲u-l-a-m̲o̲u.***
       1s 2s=LOC know-IRR-FUT talk say-IRR-SUBJ-PFV
       'I **want to tell** you something/a **message** (so you) **will know**.'

1363) ***M̲a̲***   *mogo,*   *habi*   ***bolo=f̲e̲i=do.***
       1s.POSS friend afternoon good=total=INT
       '**My friend, a very good** afternoon.'

Endings

Many stories and letters **end** with *kenо̂uf̲e̲i* 'that's all'. In the Mountain dialect the corresponding word is *kehef̲e̲i.*

1364) *M̲a̲*   *t̲a̲*   ***ke=nо̂u=f̲e̲i.***
       1s.POSS talk that=only=total
       'That's the **whole** story.'

1365) *Ke-ge-m̲o̲u*   *S̲a̲bu*   *o*   *biye-i*   *t̲a̲=be*   ***ke=nо̂u=fei.***
       that-VBR-PFV a.clan man sit.up/down-NFUT talk=TOP that=only=total
       'So the story about the Sambu people is **all finished**.'

1366) *M̲a̲*   *t̲a̲*   ***ke-he=f̲e̲i.***
       1s.POSS talk that-P.LOCR=total
       'My story (is) **all finished right there**.'

8.2 Structures and linkage in discourse

Different types of discourse have partly different types of structures and linkage. In Konai, narratives are to a large extent made up of long sentences, made up of verbal clauses. The sentences are mostly linked by different kinds of temporal linkage. A descriptive story, on the other hand, may start off with a few narrative sentences, but then continue with many one-clause sentences, where the clauses may be verbless or the verb may be a stative one. There may also be complement sentences of different kinds. Instead of temporal linking there are lots of fronting to a theme slot and much marking of topic.

The following is an attempt to see what smaller parts a discourse may be divided into, and what structures link the different parts.

8.2.1 Narrative discourse: Introducing head-tail and other temporal linkage

Long sentences made up of verbal clauses are typical of a narrative discourse style. There are three types of basically time related linking:

- head-tail linkage   - the last clause of a sentence is repeated in part or whole in the first clause of the next sentence
- demonstrative pro-verb linkage   - the demonstrative pro-verb *kege* 'be like that' appears as the verb of the first clause in a sentence
- temporal verb linkage   - a temporal verb appears as the verb of the first clause in a sentence

Consider the following story, a clan legend, written by Pepson Uliti. **Head-tail linkage is marked in blue**, while the **pro-verb linkage is marked in red**. In the second story in this section, the **temporal verb** is also **marked in red**. So is the **temporal setting** in the initial theme slot in both stories.

1367)   *Dibiye   Hiyadibi   hu + ti   ke + dia   fua   fele-i   ta*
              Thunder   Hiyandibi   name+call that+3PL break.open come.up-NFUT   talk

              'The story about the origin of the Thunder Hiyandibi clan' (heading)

              Afu   afu=do   kôuguai   ke + dia   ***delei.***   ***Dala-l-i,***   *ta sabiye*
              earlier earlier=INT ancestors that+3PL be/have-NFUT be/have-IRR-NFUT INDF be.mornig

              habi   dege-i-môu,   ***huei=bôu,   dibiye=bôu   hiye=do dege-i. Dibiye***
              afternoon do-NFUT-PFV   water=and thunder=and big=INT do-NFUT thunder

              hiye=do fu-fuo-u-môu,   *dia baha duwo-gua-l-i   dugu=be,   hebe hiye=do*
              big=INT RED.PL-break.open-NFUT-PFV   3PL look sit-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT

              sasa=do,   e   hu=be   diogo   ka=ha   sugu + tôu=ge fiye   sa-i
              tall/long=INT 3S name=TOP tree.sp. that=GEN   top+up=F.CNTR thread twine-NFUT

              *sasa=do   ka=ha   * ***migi-môu   dugu.   Migi-môu   dugu=be,***
              tall/long=INT that=GEN come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP

              fiye   sa-i   ke=me   ye   dihi   gomogu=bôu migi-môu   dugu.
              thread twine-NFUT that=TOP stringbag child knot=and   come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

              '**A very long time ago,** the ancestors **lived. (They) lived until** one day in the afternoon, **there was a lot of rain and thunder. While the thunder kept crashing**, they sat (there) waiting until **(they) saw** that from the top of (a) very big, tall tree, its name is "diogo", that very long rope **came down. While seeing (it) come down**, (they) saw (a) small stringbag tied to the rope coming down with (it).'

              Ke-ge-môu,   *dia ye   dihi   ke   tu-l-o-môu   dugu=be,*
              that-VBR-PFV 3PL stringbag child that remove-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP

              dihi   ta   sa-l-a-môu   dugu.
              child   INDF put.inside-IRR-SUBJ-PFV see.NFUT

              '**Then/Having become like that,** they, having removed the small stringbag, saw that a child must have been put inside.'

              Ke-ge-môu,   *dia dihi   ke   fo-fo-l-ôu   dala-l-i,   * ***hiye dege-i.***
              that-VBR-PFV 3PL child that RED.PL-run-IRR-NPST be/have-IRR-NFUT big do-NFUT

              Hiye dege-môu,   *e   sasai   hu-l-o,   dihi   su=do   mo-u.*
              big do.NFUT-PFV 3S woman marry-IRR-FUT child many=INT get-NFUT

              '**Then/Having become like that,** they raised the child until **he was grown up. Having grown up,** he married and had many children.'

              Ke-ge-môu,   *dia   e   hu + ti=be   Dibiye   Hiyadibi=yode-i.*
              that-VBR-PFV   3PL 3s name+call=TOP Thunder   Hiyandibi=IQV-NFUT

              '**Then/Having become like that,** they called his clan Thunder Hiyandibi.'

              Dibiye   Hiyadibi   hu + ti   fua   fele-i   ta   ke=nôu=fei.
              Thunder Hiyandibi name+call break.open come.up-NFUT talk that=only=total

              'That is the whole story of the Thunder Hiyandibi clan.' (conclusion)

The following is a very short story that Gilbert Dabaga wrote for his elementary children.

1368) **Sawisie-i ta, a i-l-e-mo͡u go͡usi dogogu.**
be.day-NFUT INDF 1S go-IRR-FUT-PFV trap put.NFUT
'**One day,** I having gone, put a trap.'

Sabiyo-u-mo͡u, i-l-e-mo͡u dugu=be kueya to-u dugu.
be.morning-NFUT-PFV go-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP cassowary hold-NFUT see.NFUT
'**Next morning at dawn,** (I) having gone, saw that a cassowary was caught (there).'

Ke-ge-mo͡u, a kueya ke wala ... moso=ko͡u i.
that-VBR-PFV 1s cassowary that attack.IRR.FUT ... house=LOC go.NFUT

Moso=ko͡u folo-mo͡u, kueya so-l-o͡u na-i=be,
house=LOC go.up.FUT-PFV cassowary cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST eat-NFUT=TOP

sebe=be hiye=do.
good.taste=TOP big=INT
'**Then/Having become like that,** I killed the cassowary and ... **went home. Having come up to the house**, (I/we) cooked (the) cassowary on stones and when (we) ate (it), (it) was delicious.'

8.2.1.1 Structure of narratives

I am indebted to Tommy Logan and his *Kasua Grammar Sketch* (2008) for making me aware of the use of different types of temporal linkage in narrative discourse. The Kasua language is related to Konai (see 1 INTRODUCTION).

As in the Kasua language, Konai, too, uses different types of head-tail linkage to provide coherence in narrative discourse. Konai, too, uses verb recapitulation, i.e. head-tail linkage to tie a row of closely related sentences together, and a pro-verb is used at the beginning of a new line of sentences.

Referring back to the previous section and the two interlinearised stories, this is how it works in Konai.

- **head-tail linkage**: used within a paragraph to make it a coherent unit
- **pro-verb linkage**: used to demarcate and join paragraphs
- **temporal verb linkage**: also used to demarcate and join paragraphs

In addition, most narratives start off with a **temporal setting at the beginning of the story**. This may, for example, be expressed in a temporal adverb (first story above) or by a relativised temporal verb (second story).

8.2.1.2 More on head-tail linkage

The most common type of head-tail/H-T linkage makes use of the medial suffix *-mo͡u* 'perfective', but other verb endings are possible. In this kind of structure, the verb alone may be repeated, or other parts of speech may be included in the repetition. The H-T linkage may be an exact repetition or synonyms may be used. All these possibilities occur in the clan legend in 8.2.1, as can be seen from the extracts below.

... delei. Dalali, ...   '... **lived**. (They) **lived** until ...'

... hueibo͡u, dibiyebo͡u hiyedo degei. Dibiye hiyedo fufuoumo͡u, ...
'... **there was a lot of rain and thunder**. While (the) **thunder kept crashing**, ...'

... migimo͡u dugu. Migimo͡u dugube, ...   '... (they) **saw** ... **came down**. While **seeing it come down**, ...'

... hiye degei. Hiye degemo͡u, ...   '... (he) **was grown up**. Having **grown up**, ...'

Within the H-T linking unit the subject is always the same. In the clause following the H-T linkage, the subject may be the same or it may be different from the subject in the H-T linkage clauses, partly depending on the suffix of the tail part of the linkage.

In the clan legend, all sentences in a paragraph are joined by H-T linkage. That is not necessarily the case as shown in the following story about two boys killing a hornbill, written by Kevin Gibi. You could perhaps say that the H-T linking carries the story-line forward. The proverb *kegemo͡u* 'having become like that' occurs immediately after the climax of the story.

The story is written here with one sentence per line, except where there is H-T linkage between two sentences, when they are written together as a unit.[190]

A story about killing a hornbill

Paragraph 1

A̱ afu kôu̱lege a̱bôu̱ Yogubôu̱ ele to̱ toloyodema i. Ele kokôu̱ yai. Yolugi dugube, hebe hiyedo ta tafala. Hebe kumaha̱ fukôu̱ dugu, dôu̱wa duwo. Duwomôu̱ dugu fogôu̱môu̱ i.

'When I (was) here some time ago, **I and Yogu,** after we two (excl.) had said (we) were going swimming, (we) **went. We two went** towards there. **We went along until** (we) saw a big tree standing. In (a) hole of this tree (we) saw (a) hornbill sit. (We) saw (her) sitting (there); leaving (we) went.'

Ele Kolo̱u̱kôu̱ milôu̱môu̱ dugube, to̱ gihou. To gihou dugumôu̱,[191] haba boholôu̱ma haguasigei. Ma̱ mogoha̱ dugu tobolôu̱, da dôu̱wa walaba imebeedei.

'**We two** saw (the river) Koloun being busy, **(the) river was in flood. Seeing (the) river being in flood,** after completely turning around, we (started to) come back again. **My friend saw** (it); (he) said and suggested, "Let's go to kill the hornbill."'

Ele hebe hagima, tigi kagimamôu̱ digigile fologai. Ele folo, dôu̱wa u dobogôu̱ kasuguomôu̱, dôu̱wa tolôu̱ma wala i.

'After **we two** had cut sticks and cut vines, we tied them together and **went up** (the tree). **We two went up and** having inserted (our) hands in (the) hornbill hole, after grabbing (the) hornbill we killed it.'

Paragraph 2

Kegemôu̱, ele tobou, da ifi Godiha̱ solôu̱do damokôu̱ ne̱i kuhe̱yode tobou.

'**Then/Having become like that,** we two (excl.) said, "To the two of us (incl.) here today, God has given/gave (his) love," (we) stated and said.'

Godiha̱ elemokôu̱ solôu̱do ne̱i.

'God gave (his) love to us two (excl.).'

Ele Godikôu̱ hoho̱ hiyedo degei.

'We two (excl.) are very pleased with God.'

───────────────────

An interlinear translation of some of the occurrences of H-T linkage in the previous story is shown in the next four examples (underlined above).

1369)   ***Ele***   *...*   ***ya-i.***   *Yo-l-u-gi*
          1DU.EX   *...*   go.DU/PL-NFUT   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
          '**We two went ....** We **went along until** ...'

1370)   ***dugu***   ***dôu̱wa***   ***duwo.***   ***Duwo-môu̱***   ***dugu***
          see.NFUT   hornbill   sit   sit-PFV   see.NFUT
          '**... saw** (a) **hornbill sit**. (We) **saw** (her) **sitting** (there)...'

1371)   ***dugu=be,***   ***to̱***   ***giho-u.***   ***To***   ***giho̱-u***   ***dugu-môu̱***
          see.NFUT=TOP   river   be.in.flood-NFUT   river   be.in.flood-NFUT   see.NFUT-PFV
          '**... saw** ... (the) **river was in flood**. **Seeing** (the) **river being in flood** ...'

1372)   ***Ele***   *...*   ***folo-ga-i.***   ***Ele***   ***folo***
          1DU.EX   *...*   go.up-DU/PL-NFUT   1DU.EX   go.up.FUT
          '**We two** ... **went up**. **We two went up and** ...'

8.2.1.2.1 Different types of head-tail linkage

Even though the medial suffix *-môu̱* 'perfective' is the most common suffix in verb recapitulation in head-tail linkage, other suffixes do occur, as can be seen from the examples in the previous section.

───────────────────

[190] The H-T linkage is written in two alternating blue colours.

[191] The expected form for same subject is *dugu-o-môu̱* (see-FUT-PFV) 'we two having seen …, we two …'
(see 7.3.1.1.5 A STATEMENT OF RESERVATION).

In this section, I will show the structure of two types of head-tail linkage: Structure I and Structure II. The examples in the previous section were all of Structure I. Any medial verb suffixes may be used on the verb in the tail clause. The first example below is of Structure I. So is (1381) below, even though it may at first glance look otherwise. The rest of the examples are Structure II.

Structure II makes use of the expression *mei dege* 'be finished' (NEG#do). Formulas for both structures follow below.

Structure I - Head-tail linkage

H-T$_I$ → V$_{FINAL}$. V$_{MEDIAL}$ 'V-ed. V-ed and .../Having V-ed .../Having V-ed until ...'
                                                     etc. depending on the medial verb suffixes

Structure II - Head-tail linkage

H-T$_{II}$ → V$_{FINAL}$. (V-NFUT/V-ISQ)#NEG#do$_{MEDIAL}$ 'V-ed. Having finished (V-ing) ...'
                (V-*i*/*u*/V-*ma*) *mei dege-môu*

In both structures the final verb is often in realis non-future, i.e. past tense, but does not need to be. In Structure I, the repeated verb occurs in any medial form. In Structure II, the repeated verb form is either a final realis non-future form, or a form with the medial suffix -*ma* 'immediate sequence', or it may not be repeated at all (1379), (1380). The last part of this structure is the adverb incorporated verb *mei dege* 'be finished' in any form, even final (1376), (1380).

Structure II is much more common in **procedurals** than in narratives, because there it is **used to demarcate paragraphs** (see 8.2.2 PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE.) When used in a narrative it may have that function, too.

1373) *Afu   ma   aye=ha   ôu   ta   ha-i.*
       earlier 1s.POSS father=GEN sago   INDF   cut-NFUT

       Ôu   ke   ha-môu,   e   hagua tie-i.
       sago   that   cut.FUT-PFV 3s   come   sleep-NFUT

       'Some time ago my father **cut down a sago** (palm). **Having cut down the sago** (palm), he came and slept.'

1374) *John=ha   **Yesu   fafeleya   tofo-u.   Yesu   fafeleya   tofo-u   mei dege-môu,***
       John=GEN   Jesus   baptism   step-NFUT   Jesus   baptism   step-NFUT   NEG do-PFV

       Godi=ha Yesu=kôu   tobo-u
       God=GEN   Jesus=LOC say-NFUT

       'John **baptized Jesus**. (John) **having finished baptizing Jesus**, God said to Jesus, ...'

1375) *O   su=do   dia bolo ya-l-i.   O   su=do   bolo ya-i   mei dege-môu,*
       man   many=INT 3PL ball play-IRR-NFUT   man   many=INT ball play-NFUT NEG do-PFV

       to   to   yo-l-u.   O   dia to   to-ma   mei dege-môu, moso=kôu i-l-i.
       river wash   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT   man 3PL river   wash-ISQ   NEG do-PFV   house=LOC go-IRR-NFUT

       '**Many men are playing soccer. Many men having finished playing soccer**, they are going swimming. The men having finished swimming, (they) go home.' (pictures)

1376) *dilie **yo   sogo-u-l-u.   Sege-i   mei dege-i,**   dilie habi*
       3DU   banana   plant-BLTV-IRR-NFUT plant-NFUT   NEG do-NFUT   3DU   afternoon

       dege-i-môu,   dilie moso=kôu fogôu-ma   yo-l-u.
       do-NFUT-PFV   3DU   house=LOC leave.for-ISQ   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

       '... the two of them **are planting bananas**. (They) **finished planting**; in the afternoon, the two of them after leaving for home are going along.' (pictures)

1377) *sisigo   **prais   ne-me.   E   ne-ma   mei dege-ba,**   di   olôufei*
       children   prize   give-HORT 3s   give-ISQ   NEG do-PFV.IRR 1PL.INall.total

       Dahamo=kôu dihi   do   mala   i-me.
       Dahamo=LOC child   sickness   get.IRR.FUT go-HORT

       '… **let us give** the children (a) **prize**. **Having finished giving it**, let's all take the sick child and go to Dahamo.'

1378) *high sokôulôu i-di.   High sokôulôu duwo   de-ma   mei dege-i-môu=be,*
       high school go-HAB   high school sit   PROV-ISQ   NEG do-NFUT-PFV=TOP

       sokôulôu   hiye=do i-di.
       school   big=INT   go-HAB

       '... (children) **habitually go to highschool**. **Having finished highschool**, they immediately (and) habitually go to university.'

1379) *Ma̱-ma* ***ikoke ke-i.***   ***Mei dege-mo̱u,*** *sage*   *sa-i.*
      put-ISQ nail hammer-NFUT NEG do-PFV   rafter   put.inside-NFUT

      'After putting (the cross beams), (we) **nailed** (them) **down. Having finished**, (we) put in rafters.'

1380) *Tom ele*   ***kos***   *i.*   ***Kos***   ***mei dege-i*** *Friday.*
      Tom 1DU.EX course go.NFUT course NEG do-NFUT Friday

      'Tom and I **went** (to a) **course**. (The) **course finished** on Friday.'

1381) *taha̱*   *taha̱-mo̱u* *su-l-u-gi,*   ***mala*** ***mei dege-i.*** ***Mala*** ***mei dege-mo̱u,***
      shoot   shoot-PFV walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ arrow NEG do-NFUT arrow NEG do-PFV

      awaki dihi   ta   mala̱
      knife child INDF get.IRR.FUT

      '... walking around shooting, (the) **arrows** were **finished**. **Having finished** (the) **arrows**, (he) took a small knife and ...'

The Foothill dialect has another word *dumu̱* also meaning 'finished' which is used as well as *mei dege*.

1382) ***awa***   ***dio***   ***so***   ***igiya-i.***   *Kebe*   *ilo* *ke-le=bo̱u*
      black.palm bone remove go.DU/PL-NFUT a.people.group partthat-A.LOCR=and

      ei   *olo̱ufei* *folo-ga,*   ***awa***   ***dio*** ***so-ma*** ***dumu̱-mo̱u,***
      1PL.EX all.total go.up-DU/PL.FUT black.palm bone remove-ISQ finish.NFUT-PFV

      mo̱u+ma̱ hagua-sige   *fele̱-ga-i.*
      get+put come-DU/PL.FUT come.up-DU/PL-NFUT

      '... **we went to remove strips of black palm**. Some Kebe (people), too, we all went up, and **finishing removing strips of black palm**, we got it all and came and arrived (back).' (Foothill dialect)

8.2.1.3 More on demonstrative pro-verb linkage

Paragraphs are usually linked by the proverb *kege* 'be like that'. The overwhelmingly most common suffix, when this verb is used to demarcate and link paragraphs, is -*mo̱u* 'perfective'. A new paragraph is started when a chain of events is broken and a new starts, as in the following story about a school boy, written by Winta Diomono.

A story about Keta going to school.

Ketaha̱ soko̱ulo̱u duwei ta̱ susulamo̱u (heading)

'Wanting to tell a story about Keta going to school (heading).'

*Ketabe e̱me Debele dihi. **E̱** afudo 1991 kelege Dahamoko̱u **soko̱ulo̱u duwei. E̱ soko̱ulo̱u duwoli,** sadebe bolo̱u bolo̱u, bolo̱u de mei degemo̱u, ̱tewe hiyedo molo̱u wini degei.*

'Keta he is a Debele kid. In 1991 **he was in school** in Dahamo. **He was in school until** having finished six years, (when) he had got big knowledge and past (the exams).'

Kegemo̱u, *e̱ soko̱ulo̱u hiyedo Kiungako̱u biyo i, 1997 kelege.* ***Sadebe olo̱ufei bolo̱u. Bolo̱u me̱i degemo̱u,*** *e̱ wini degeli mei.*

'**Then/Having become like that,** he went to highschool in Kiunga in 1997. (He was there for) **a total of two years. When the two** years **had gone,** he did not pass (the exams).'

Kegemo̱u, *e̱ soko̱ulo̱u ko̱u duwei ke̱no̱u haba duwei. E̱ ke̱ degei kaha̱ ̱tewe hiyedo mo̱u. Sadebe 2007 ko̱umaha̱ge e̱me medigo soko̱ulo̱u ile. Kala̱i sa ko̱ulibe ̱tewe dihi ̱ta mei.*

'**Then/Having become like that,** he sat through the school (years) he had already done (once) again. Because he did that, he got big knowledge. In this year of 2007, he will go to medical (Community Health Worker) school. Here in the land of the Konai, there is no other kid with that much knowledge.'

Kegei degemo̱u, *dihi ko̱umaha̱ yomogo̱u a ̱tefei solo̱u bolofe̱ido.*

'**Because of being like that,** this kid is starting to open a closed door (and it is) good.'

Ketaha̱ soko̱ulo̱u duwei ̱ta̱ susube keno̱ufei. (conclusion)

'Telling the story about Kieta being in school is all finished (conclusion).'

See also the stories in 8.2.1 NARRATIVE DISCOURSE: INTRODUCING HEAD-TAIL AND OTHER TEMPORAL LINKAGE and onwards.

8.2.1.3.1 Different types of demonstrative pro-verb linkage

The most common forms of the pro-verb *kege* 'be like that' will be listed below. For example, it may be combined with another pro-verb *dege* 'do' as seen in the next to last sentence in the story in the last section. The form *kegeba* 'will have become like that' occurs in future and/or hypothetic cases. The form last in the list *kelegemôu* 'having become like that there' is common in the Mountain dialect.

Also, a rough translation of all of these forms is 'then' or 'so'. There is no real difference in Konai between 'then' (sequential) and 'so' (reason-result).

		approximate meaning	temp. rel. to next event/state
ke-ge-i-môu	(that-VBR-NFUT-PFV)	'being like that'	close, immediately
ke-ge-môu	(that-VBR-PFV)	'having become like that'	later unspecified
ke-ge dege-môu	(that-VBR#*do*-PFV)	'because of having become like that'	later unspecified
ke-ge-i dege-môu	(that-VBR-NFUT #*do*-PFV)	'because of being like that'	later unspecified
ke-ge-ba	(that- VBR-PFV.IRR)	'when (it) will have become like that'	later unspecified
ke-ge-ba=si	(that-VBR-PFV.IRR=CNTR)	'in that way, in contrast to other ways'	later unspecified
ke-ge-i-ba=si	(that-VBR-NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR)	'being like that, in contrast to other ways'	close, immediately
ke-le-ge-môu	(that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV)	'having become like that there'	later unspecified

This demonstrative pro-verb, is a type 2 verb and is conjugated as such, and when used to demarcate and link paragraphs it is conjugated as a medial verb. See 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS.

1383) *hagi   a̲=bôu+de   dala.*
heavy   1S=and+PROV   be/have

Ke-ge-i-môu,   a̲   fi+ma̲   dugu=be
that-VBR-NFUT-PFV   1S soul+put.FUT   see.NFUT=TOP

'... I have a problem.
Being like that, I thought and saw that ...'

1384) **Ke-ge-ba,   ni̲   a̲=mokôu   tobo-l-ôu**
that-VBR-PFV.IRR   2PL   1S=LOC   say-IRR-NPST

'... **When** (it) **will have become like that**, you will say to me ...'

1385) *na̲=ge   ama=fe̲i   he-hegi-e-môu   i.   **Ke-ge-i-ba=si,***
2S=F.CNTR quiet=total RED.PL-show-RED.PL-PFV go.NFUT that-VBR-NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR

Godi=ha̲ dege-i=ye, die   fi̲   boho-l-ôu-ba
God=GEN do-NFUT=INS 3PL.POSS soul turn-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR

'… you (must) continue to teach quietly. Being like that, in contrast to other ways, through God's doing, (people) will have repented and ...'

1386) *Afu   ma̲   aye=ha̲   ôu   ta   ha-i.   ...*
earlier   1S.POSS father=GEN sago INDF cut-NFUT ...

Ke-le-ge-môu   e   i-l-e   dugu=be   wai ôu   no-l-u̲.
that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV   3S go-IRR-FUT   see.NFUT=TOP pig sago eat-IRR-NFUT

Ke-le-ge-môu   e   kisi.
that-A.LOCR-VBR-PFV   3S make.a.wall.NFUT

'Some time ago my father cut down a sago (palm). ... **Then/Having become like that there**, he went and saw (a) pig eating sago (flakes). **Then/Having become like that there**, he built a hunting shelter.'
(Mountain dialect)

8.2.1.4 More on temporal verb linkage

Paragraphs may also be joined by a couple of temporal verbs meaning basically 'next day' or 'next morning', as in the short story in (1368), the two first sentences being repeated in (1387). As with any medial verb, if there is a high vowel preceding the perfective suffix, it expresses a close temporal relationship (relative present tense) with the following event/state, in this case 'at dawn'. If the preceding vowel is low, the temporal relationship is unspecified and the meaning is just 'in the morning' (1388).

1387) **Sawisie-i**   **ta**   **a̠** **i-l-e-mo̠û**   **go̠ûsi dogogu.**
       be.day-NFUT INDF 1S go-IRR-FUT-PFV trap put.NFUT

       '**One day** I having gone, put a trap.'

       Sabiyo-u-mo̠û,   **i-l-e-mo̠û**   **dugu=be**   **kueya**   **to-u dugu.**
       be.morning-**NFUT**-PFV go-IRR-FUT-TOP see.NFUT=TOP cassowaryhold-NFUT see.NFUT

       'Next morning at dawn/**As dawn was breaking,** (I) having gone, saw that a cassowary was caught (there).'

The following is an excerpt from a story about a hunting trip written by Michael Soti.

1388) **Moso̠=ko̠û folo-ga-mo̠û,**   **igi**   **si+ma̠-mo̠û**   **dege-i**
       house=LOC go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV stone cook+put-PFV do-NFUT

       wai so-l-o̠û   **na̠-ma**   **tie-i.**
       pig cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST eat-ISQ   sleep-NFUT

       '... Having gone up to (the) house, and having heated stones; (we) cooked (the) pig on (the) stones and after eating (we) slept.'

       Sabiya-mo̠û,   **Asele**   **dilie**   **e̠** **sasai Dasame dilie**
       be.morning.**FUT**-PFV Asele   3DU   3S woman Dasame 3DU

       Mali̠   **o̠=ko̠u**   **yo-u-mo̠û,**
       Malin mouth.of.river=LOC go.DU/PL-NFUT-PFV

       '**Next morning/**Dawn having broken, while Asele and his wife Dasame went to (the) mouth of the (river) Malin, ...'

8.2.2 Procedural discourse

Typical of a procedural text is:

- head-tail linkage, many of the type V-*i*/*u*/V-*ma mei dege* 'have finised V-ing' (H-T structure II)
- little interaction between participants

There are two kinds of head-tail linkage described in 8.2.1.2.1 DIFFERENT TYPES OF HEAD-TAIL LINKAGE. Both types may be used in both a narrative and in a procedural. Structure II, with the adverb incorporating verbal expression *mei dege* 'finish', however, is more likely to occur in a procedural story, than it is to occur in an exciting narrative.

In fact, this longer form of head-tail linkage is used much as the pro-verb *kege* 'be like that' is used in narratives to divide the discourse into chunks, for easier processing. In other words, it divides a text into paragraphs, while the shorter form of head-tail linkage (Structure I) is a cohesive device to give each paragraph internal coherence.

A story about a house being built follows. It is a transcribed story told by Hobert Gisabo. In this story, **blue** is used to mark head-tail linkage **within the paragraph**, while the **turquoise** and **green** colours are used to mark head-tail linkage **across paragraph boundaries.**

A story about building a house (see Appendix IV for a full transcribed version of this story)

Moso̠ tegei ta̠ (heading)

'(A) story about building (a) house' (heading)

A̠ afu 1995 kaha̠ Bobaho ele moso̠ togolamo̠û hebe mo̠u. **Mou diafigi. Mou diafigima̠** *mo̠ûma̠* *haguei. Moso̠ togolo sa koko̠û ma̠i.*

'I, before, in 1995, Bobaho and I, planning to build (a) house, got timber. (We) **cut posts.** (We) **cut posts** and **brought** (them). (We) put them where (we) were going to build (the) house.'

Hebe gubugi mo̠ûma̠ haguei mei degei, **ele aso̠û dai. Aso̠û dama,** *hebe ke̠ fofoguei.*

'(We) finished **bringing all** (the) posts (we) had cut; **the two of us dug holes. Having dug** (the) **holes,** (we) **raised** (the) **posts.**'

Hebe fofoguei mei degemo̠û, **ele hebe tageto̠û ma̠i. Ma̠ma** *ikoke wei.*

'Having finished **raising** (the) **posts, the two of us put cross beams on top. After putting** (them), (we) **nailed** (them) **down.**'

Mei degemo̠û, **sage sai.**

'Having finished, (we) **put on rafters.**'

Sage sam<u>a</u> <u>mei degemôu</u>, digo m<u>a</u>ma, *tem<u>e</u> gobou.*

'**Having finished putting on** (the) **rafters,** after putting on wild pandana strips, (we) **folded sago leaves** (over the pandana strips).'

Tem<u>e</u> gobou <u>mei degemôu</u>, awa dio f<u>a</u>i.

'**Having finished folding** (the) **sago leaves,** (we) **put on flooring of black palm strips.**'

Awa dio f<u>a</u>i <u>mei degemôu</u>, mos<u>o</u> duledu *tem<u>e</u>i f<u>a</u>i.*

'**Having finished putting on** (the) **flooring of black palm strips,** inside the house, (we) **put on smaller black palm strips.**'

Tem<u>e</u>i f<u>a</u>i <u>mei degemôu</u>, dou mos<u>o</u> bologu<u>a</u>i. Dou hebem<u>a</u> tôuma kuhe tiadi.

'**Having finished putting on** (the) **smaller black palm strips,** (we) fixed (a) fire place. (We) carried (in) firewood and after lighting (a fire) (we) now live there.'

M<u>a</u> t<u>a</u> k<u>e</u>nôuf<u>e</u>i. (conclusion)

'That (is) all of my talk.' (conclusion)'

_____

An interlinearised translation of part of this story follows in the next example. It shows two of the head-tail linkages with *mei dege* 'finish' between paragraphs.

1389)   *... ele   asôu   da-i.   Asôu   da+m<u>a</u>,   hebe k<u>e</u>   fo-fo-gu-e-i.*
        ... 1DU.EX ground dig-NFUT ground dig+put tree that RED.PL-rise-OF-RED.PL-NFUT

'...**the two of us dug holes.** (We) **dug holes and raised** (the) **posts.**'

<u>Hebe fo-fo-gu-e-i</u>   mei   dege-môu,   ele   hebe
tree RED.PL-rise-OF-RED.PL-NFUT NEG   do-PFV   1DU.EX tree

tage+tôu m<u>a</u>-i.   M<u>a</u>-ma, ikoke we-i.
over+up   put-NFUT put-ISQ nail   attack-NFUT

'**Having finished raising** (the) **posts, the two of us put crossbeams on top. After putting** (them), (we) **nailed** (them) **down.**'

<u>Mei   dege-môu</u>...
NEG   do-PFV

'**Having finished,** ...'

8.2.3 Descriptive discourse

It is a little harder to divide a descriptive story into paragraphs, than it was to do so with narratives and procedurals. We can, however, see what a descriptive discourse is characterised by:

- many sentences consisting of **short verbless and/or stative-verb clauses**
- clause initial **theme slots frequently used**, whereas in narratives they are mostly used for introductory purposes
- **frequent use of the topic marker -{*be*}**
- **frequent use of the habitual aspect *-di***

The following story is descriptive, even though it describes a process rather than a thing. It is written by Pastor Motousi Si. The **bold typing** is a **fronted argument** in a **theme** slot. **Red typing** stands for **pronoun copy** (see 8.7.3.7). These features seemingly signal a new subtopic/paragraph in this story. **Blue typing** stands for the **topic marker.** [192] **Green is the habitual suffix *-di*.**

A story about working on an airstrip (see Appendix III for a full transcribed version of this story)

Fele̲ gabu milou ta̲ (heading)

'(A) story about working (on an) airstrip' (heading)

A̲ afu 1981- 82 *Sepe̲ o̲ fele̲ gabu milou ta̲.* (introduction)

'(A) story about (when) **I earlier, in 1981-82**, worked on (the) airstrip at (the) mouth of (the) river Smipen.' (introduction)

To̲ e̲ *hu**be** Sepe̲ o̲.*

'(The) **river**, **its** name is the Mouth of the Smipen.'

Bo̲ûu e̲ *hu**be** Woodyard, Vance Woodyard, e̲bo̲ûu a̲bo̲ûu Dipaibo̲ûu fele̲ gabu miloló̲û i. Fele̲ gabu sa**be** fofo̲u hiyedo. Habiya o su̲do miloló̲û i.*

'(The) **white man**, **his** name is Woodyard, Vance Woodyard, he and I and Dipai worked (on the) airstrip. The ground of (the) airstrip was really muddy. Many Aekyom people worked (there).'

Medigo o, e̲ *hu**be** Someke. O hu̲ olo̲ûfe̲i nala̲i. E̲me bose.*

'(The) **medical orderly**, **his** name was Someke. (He) wrote (down) all (the) names of (the) people (working there). He was (the) boss.'

Kege miloló̲û i**be**, *gusubu 8:00 ilemo̲û 12:00. Mesiholo duwo**di**. 1:00 bala wo**di**. O olo̲ûfe̲i dabai dege**di** i**be** domo̲û, habi 4:30 fogo̲û i**di**. O olo̲ûfe̲i moso̲ko̲û i**di**.*

'**Like that** we **worked** from 8 o'clock in (the) morning until 12. (Then we) **habitually** rested. (At) 1 o'clock (they) **habitually** hit (a) bell. Everybody **habitually** worked until 4:30 in (the) afternoon, (when) leaving (they) **habitually** went. Everybody **habitually** went to (their) houses.'

Fele̲ gabu a̲ miloube, *hiya̲ olo̲ûfe̲i**be** 2 years.*

'**The work I (did) of building (the) airstrip** went on for all of two years.'

Mei degei, fele̲ fiyei.[193]

'(Then it) was finished; (a) plane landed.'

_____

The following examples (1390)-(1394) are part of longer descriptive stories about a place, Ukarumpa. Pastor Motousi Si and Councillor Soti Domo wrote these stories while there. Additional features in these two stories are:

- frequent use of *mei* 'negative'
- frequent use of the enclitic =*ne* 'also'[194]
- frequent use of *ta̲be* 'another thing'[195]

The introduction to the descriptive story written by Pastor Motousi, consists of a few short narrative sentences, including a head-tail linkage. He ends the introduction with a summing up statement using the pro-verb *kege* 'be like that'

_____

[192] The topic marker is untranslatable. The place for it is marked in the translation in blue, but not in bold. See 8.3 TOPIC.

[193] *Mei degei* 'finish' is the only formal feature to indicate that this after all is a description of a **procedure** (see 8.2.2 PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE).

[194] Only in Soti's story.

[195] Only in Motousi's story.

in its most common medial form, in this case best translated 'so'. This function is a different use of this conjunction than described for narratives, where its main use is to start a new line of events (see 8.2.1.1 STRUCTURE OF NARRATIVES) and where a short translation often results in 'then'.

1390) *A̱ sa Dahamo to̱u̱fogo̱u̱ fene+ya hague-i. **Sa Ukarumpa=ko̱u̱***
1s land Dahamo leave airplane+road come-NFUT land Ukarumpa=LOC

*migi. **Sasama ka=ha̱ Ukarumpa=ko̱u̱ migi-l-e-mo̱u̱,** tie-i moso̱*
come.down-NFUT ring.finger that=GEN Ukarumpa=LOC come.down-IRR-FUT-PFV sleep-NFUT house

*bolo=fe̱i=do=ko̱u̱ fele-i. **Ke-ge-mo̱u̱,** a̱ hoho̱ hiye=do dege-i.*
good=total=INT=LOC go.up-NFUT that-VBR-PFV 1s light big=INT do-NFUT

'I left Dahamo and came by plane. (I) **came down at Ukarumpa. Having come down at Ukarumpa on a Tuesday**, (I) entered an excellent sleeping house. **So** I was very happy.'

The above is Pastor Motousi's introduction. Councillor Soti's introduction consists of a similar narrative sentence given earlier as (75).

The three following examples are all from different parts of Soti's story. Each example is a complete paragraph according to his own spacing as he wrote.

1391) *E̱ sitoa=**ne** hiye=do ko̱u̱ **dala.** Kalo=**be** su̱=do **dala.***
3s store=also big=INT prior be/have car=TOP many=INT be/have

*Kalo a=**ne** su̱=do da tawa-ga tobo-l-o̱u̱ saga̱i **mei.***
car road=also many=INT 1DU.IN know-DU/PL.FUT say-IRR-NPST likely NEG

*E̱ wai sif.sif su̱=do **dala.** Bulumakou=**ne** su̱ **dala.***
3s pig sheep many=INT be/have cow=also many be/have

'**It** (Ukarumpa) **has** a big established store, **too**. There **are** very many cars.
There are **also** very many roads for cars, "**more** than you & I are likely to know and talk about."[196]
It has very many sheep. Cows **too** there **are** many.'

1392) *Hafe̱i ke-le hebe **dala mei,** mihi̱=ye=no̱u̱ **dala.***
close.total that-A.LOCR tree be/have NEG earth=INS=only be/have
Theme CLAUSE CLAUSE

*Hebe=**be** o ke+di̱a hou sege-i=ye=no̱u̱ **dala.***
tree=TOP man that+3PL seedling plant-NFUT=INS=only be/have
Theme CLAUSE

'**Close by**, there **are no** trees; (there) **is** only dirt/ground. **Concerning the trees**, (there) **are** only those planted by man from seedlings.'

1393) *Sa Ukarumpa aso̱ hiye=do **dala**=ye, ke̱=no̱u̱=si difi=**be mei**=**do.***
land Ukarumpa sun big=INT be/have=OPT that=only=CNTR heat=TOP NEG=INT
Theme CLAUSE CLAUSE

*Aso̱ fe-i hiye=do **dala,** ke̱=no̱u̱=si na̱ difi ke̱=bo̱u̱ du-l-o*
sun rise-NFUT big=INT be/have that=only=CNTR 2s heat that=and hear-IRR-FUT
CLAUSE CLAUSE CLAUSE (cont. next line)

*de-ba, na̱ aso̱ ke̱ ha **duwo**-ba=be, na̱ difi ta dugu-l-o*
PROV-PFV.IRR 2s sun that get.warm sit-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s heat INDF see-IRR-FUT
CLAUSE CLAUSE (cont. next line)

***mei**=**do,** kulio=ye=no̱u̱ hiye=do.*
NEG=INT coldness=INS=only big=INT
CLAUSE

'Even though **Ukarumpa** may **have** a lot of sun, there **is no** warmth **at all**. (The) sun comes up; (it) **is** very big, but if you **sit** in the sun to get warm, (and) when you ought to have felt the heat, you do **not** feel any heat **at all**; it is only very cold.'

_____

[196] A comparative saying; *mei* 'negative' is translated 'more' in the free translation.

The next example is a paragraph of Pastor Motousi's descriptive story. The word *kegemôu* 'having become like that' starts a new paragraph, according to the spacing of his own writing. It is followed by a theme slot. Within the paragraph he then starts each following sentence with a filled theme slot: *Tabe* 'another'.

1394) ***Ke-ge-môu,***   ***sa***   ***Ukarumpa=be*** sa   hiye=do sa.   *Kalo* su=do
       that-VBR-PFV   land Ukarumpa=TOP land   big=INT ground car   many=INT
       CLAUSE   **Theme**   CLAUSE   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

       dala-môu   *a*   dugu-l-u.
       be/have-PFV   1S   see-IRR-NFUT
                       CLAUSE

       Ta=be   *SIL* fene   su=do   dugu-l-u.
       INDF=TOP   SIL airplane many=INT   see-IRR-NFUT
       Theme   CLAUSE

       Ta=be   bôu   o   sasai   su=do   ***duwo.***
       INDF=TOP   white.man   man   woman   many=INT   sit
       Theme   CLAUSE

       Ta=be o   kolo   dosogo dege-i   o   su=do   Godi=ha   ta
       INDF=TOP man   skin   black do-NFUTman   many=INT God=GEN   talk
       Theme   CLAUSE (cont. next line)

       die   ta=ye   bohôu-l-a-môu   su=do   hagua-si-l-i.
       3PL.POSS talk=INS   turn-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   many=INT   come-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT
                                               CLAUSE

       '**So/Having become like that**, **Ukarumpa is** a very big place. I see
       (there) **are** very many cars.

       Another thing, (I) see very many SIL planes.

       Another thing, very many white people **live** (here).

       Another thing, very many dark skinned men come to translate God's Word into their own
       languages.'

8.2.4 Hortatory discourse

A hortatory discourse is a discourse type where the speaker/writer tries to get the addressee to do something.

8.2.4.1 Typical moods and speech forms in a hortatory discourse

The one whole text of a hortatory nature I have is a free interpretation of the Ten Commandments in the Mountain dialect. That is the first example below (1395). It is characterised by the prohibitive suffix *-da* and the quote verb *=ede* 'optative quote verb'. There is no plain imperative in this example but see (1399) and (1402). In (1401) there are hortative verbs.

In the available texts, there are also a number of hortatory fragments from conversations and stories. The second example (1396) is such a fragment with an optative quote verb. However, other forms are also possible, see (1397), with an imbedded clause where the verb is in future tense.

Especially common in sermons are conditions with a desirable or an undesirable action in the condition and either outcome in the consequence; see (1405), even if not from a sermon).

1395) *Di*   *Kau=do=be* *Gode=nôu.*
       1PL.IN big=INT=TOP God=only
       'Our Big (One is) God only.'

       Huei-le+môu   *yôu*   *sagai*   *ke*   *agudi-le+tôu*   *ke*   *ta*   *dobogôu=ye* *ta*
       water-A.LOCR+down 3S.EMP   likely   that   sky-A.LOCR+up   that   INDF hand=INS   INDF

       dehega-ma-ba,   *Gode* *Kau=do* *e*   *hu*   *ta*   ***sôu-da.***
       make-ISQ-PFV.IRR God   big=INT 3S   name   INDF   call-PROH

       '**Do not** make (something) like him with your hands (from) down in the water/river (or) (from) up in the sky,
       (and then) call it by the Lord God's name.'

       Gode=ha *Howo* *kôu*   *de* *mei=yode* *tobo-l-ôu-ba,*   *Gode=ha* *hu*   ***sôu-da.***
       God=GEN   child prior PROV NEG=IQV   say-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR God=GEN   name call-PROH

       'Having previously rejected/stated and said no about) God's Son, **do not** call (out) God's name.'

Dio   aso̲=ye   Gode e̲=mokóu fi̲   ne-l-e̲-ba,
bone/lower.arm sun=INS   God 3S=LOC   soul give-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR

*hoho̲+bo-l-óu-ba   duwo=**yede-i**.*[197]
light+rejoice-IRR-NPST-PFV.IRR sit=OQV-NFUT

'"On Sunday, having believed in God, having (started to) rejoice, (you) **must** sit down," (he) **instructed**.'

*Sisigo̲   ni̲=ne   adióu   aye   ke+di̲a   ta̲   du   susu-ma=**yede-i**.*
children 2PL=also mother father that+3PL talk hear go.on-DU/PL=OQV-NFUT

'"Children, **you (pl.)** too **must** continue to hear the talk of (your) parents," (he) **instructed**.'

Sasa̲i o   to=yade-ba   wala   to-da.
woman man die=SQV-PFV.IRR attack.IRR.FUT die-PROH

'**Do not** attack people in order for them to die.'

*Sobóu   sasa̲i   o=bóu   ke̲   hiyou   dege-**da**=**yede-i**.*
married.woman woman man=and that   steal do-PROH=OQV-NFUT

'"**Do not** steal a married woman," (he) **instructed**.'

*Hiyou mô̲u-**da**=**yede-i**.*
steal get-PROH=OQV-NFUT

'"**Do not** steal," (he) **instructed**.'

*Ta̲   sigo̲   wo-**da**=**yede-i**.*
talk lying attack-PROH=OQV-NFUT

'"**Do not** kill by lying," (he) **instructed**.'

Bi+ma̲-i̲   bolo=fe̲i   ta   dugu-o-ba,   fi̲=ye   mô̲u de-ba
thing+put-NFUT good=total INDF see-FUT-PFV.IRR soul=INS   get PROV-PFV.IRR

*mei de tawa-l-e=be   taga-**da**.*
NEG PROV know-IRR-FUT=TOP like-PROH

'Having seen a good (material) thing, (and) knowing that (you) should not take it, **do not** desire it.'
(Mountain dialect)

1396)   *Dihi   kô̲u=me e̲ adióu=ha̲ hue̲i dóu   i=**yede-mô̲u**,*
child this=TOP 3s mother=GEN water draw go=OQV-PFV

hue̲i dóu i,   e̲   haba   moso̲=kô̲u boho-l-óu+ma̲   i-l-i.
water draw go 3s but.PFV.IRR house=LOC turn-IRR-NPST+put go-IRR-NFUT

E̲ adióu hoho̲ hiye=do. Yo=be, dihi e̲ adióu=ha̲ ta̲ du-l-o   milo-u.
3s mother light big=INT base=TOP child 3s mother=GEN talk hear-IRR-FUT work-NFUT

'This child his mother **having told** him to go and get water, (he) went to get water; he is going back to the house again. His mother (is) very glad. The reason (is that the) child heard what his mother said and did (it).'
(a picture)

1397)   *dingi=bô̲u   mota=bô̲u,   a̲ mo-**l-óu**   **bolo=fe̲i**=yode tobô̲u-mô̲u*
dinghy=and outboard.motor=and 1s get-IRR-NPST good=total=IQV say-PFV

'... (I) having stated and said, that I **would be pleased to** get (the) dinghy and (the)
outboard motor...'

8.2.4.2 Composition of a hortatory text

The basic order of arguments in a hortatory, based on the examples in this section, is something like this:

- reason
- appeal (may be stated many times in different terms
- desired outcome
- appeal
- undesired outcome

---

[197] If there are no other clues, this form of the verb, as far as the addressee goes, may be second or third person, as well as singular or group-plural.

The first example is a letter, consisting of (1398) - (1403), which are consecutive sentences. The letter writer asks us to combine a previously arranged prep-school visit with the urgent need to get a sick child out from the village for much needed medical attention. The verbs of the appeal and the desired outcome are in red.

1398) *Tawa-l-e   ţa   ke=me   kôu-g(u)e,   a=me   hagi   hiye=do dege dala.*
      know-IRR-FUT talk that=TOP this-VBR(BLTV) 1S=TOP heavy big=INT do   be/have
                                                 Reason |

   Kege-i   dege-môu, a   nele=mokôu tobo-l-ôu.
   that-VBR-NFUT do-PFV   1S 2DU=LOC   say-IRR-NPST

   '... That message is like this: **I have a very big problem.** Because of being like that I am telling you two.'

1399) *Nele hagua-l-e=be   date 3 o 4 ka=ha=ge,   nele Edolo=kôu hagua-ma.*
      2DU come-IRR-FUT=TOP date 3 or 4 that=GEN=F.CONTR 2DU Edolo=LOC come-DU/PL
                       Appeal

   'Concerning (that) you two will come, **come to Edolo** on the third or the fourth.' (imperative)

1400) *Yo=be   a=me hagi   hiye=do dala   ka=ha   dege-i-môu.*
      base=TOP 1S=TOP heavy big=INT be/have that=GEN do-NFUT-PFV
               Reason |

   'The reason (is) that **I have (a) very big problem.**'

1401) **Na** *date 3-4 Edolo=kôu hagua-l-e.*
      2S date 3-4 Edolo=LOC come-IRR-FUT
      Appeal

   'On (the) third (or the) fourth **you** (sg.) **will come to Edolo.**'

   Friday 5 ka=ha=ge   sisigo   prais ne-me.
   Friday 5 that=GEN=F.CNTR children prize give-HORT
   Appeal (minor)

   'On Friday the fifth, **let's give** (the) **prizes (**to the school) **children.**'

   E   ne-ma   mei dege-ba,
   3S give-ISQ NEG do-PFV.IRR

   'After having given it (the prizes), ...'

   di   olôufei   Dahamo=kôu dihi   do   mala   i-me.
   1PL.IN all.total Dahamo=LOC   child sickness get.IRR.FUT go-HORT
   Desired outcome

   '... **let** all of us **take** the **sick child and go** to Dahamo.'

   Saturday 6 ka=ha   di   olôufei   Dahamo i-l-e.
   Saturday 6 that=GEN 1PL.IN all.total Dahamo go-IRR-FUT
   Desired outcome

   'On Saturday the sixth, **we (incl.) will all go** to Dahamo.'

1402) *Wednesday 3 ka=ha   nele Edolo=kôu hagua-ma.*
      Wednesday 3 that=GEN 2DU Edolo=LOC come-DU/PL
      Appeal

   'On Wednesday the third, **you two, come to Edolo**.' (imperative)

1403) *A   taga-l-i=be,   dihi   do   mala   Dahamo=kôu i-l-e,*
      1S like-IRR-NFUT child sickness get.IRR.FUT Dahamo=LOC   go-IRR-FUT
                   Desired outcome (cont. next line)

   Saturday 6 ka=ha=ge.
   Saturday 6 that=GEN-F.CNTR

   'I want to **take** the **sick child and go** to Dahamo on Saturday the sixth.'

In the above examples, the appeal is preceded by the reason for the appeal, and then repeated. After that the appeal and the desired outcome are repeated with variations several times.

The next example (from another source) starts with an appeal followed by a desired outcome. The last part states a more basic reason before another appeal, with the desired outcome implied.

1404) *Dugu-o-môu, dig tobo-u, ng ne   Godi=kôu gulu gulu   tobôu-ba,*
      see-FUT-PFV 3PL say-NFUT 2S 2S.POSS God=LOC close.eye x2 say-PFV.IRR
                      Appeal

      ei   maka-l-adi   ke fogo-l-ôu.
      1PL.EX destroy-IRR-PROS that leave.for-IRR-NPST
      Desired outcome

      ...

      Jona=hg e dig=mokôu tobo-u, kôu=me g kasaggi. Ni g malg,
      Jonah=GEN 3S 3PL=LOC   say-NFUT this=TOP 1S bad   2PL 1S get.IRR.FUT
                  Reason   **Appeal** (cont. next line)

      tg-le=kôu   hebe-l-e   filg-ma=be+ede tobo-u.
      river-A.LOCR=TOP carry-IRR-FUT throw-DU/PL=TOP+OQV say-NFUT

      'Having seen, they said, "**When you** (sg.) **pray to your God**, **our** (excl.) **immediate destruction will** go away/**leave**."
      ... Jonah said to them, "**This (is) my fault**. **You** (pl.) **get me and carry me and throw** me in the river," (he) **instructed** and said.'

    The next example adds a possible **undesired outcome** of a wrong action. This example is not a direct address, but a typical way of addressing a desired change in e.g. a sermon[198]. The wrong action with its undesired outcome is stated last in the sentence.

1405) *Godi=hg tg=be   tawa-ga-i   o ka=hg=nôu i-ba=si   bolo=fei.*
      God=GEN talk=TOP know-DU/PL-NFUT man that=GEN=only go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR good=total
      Desired action   **Desired outcome**

      Môu   o=ye   i-l-e=be   kôu   bolo=fei=ye   ya-ba
      nothing man=INS go-IRR-FUT=TOP prior good=total=OPT go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV.IRR
      Undesired action

      ta=fei   totôu   dege-i=ye do-môu ko=kôu=ge=nôu=fei.
      INDF=total forgetfulness do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV that=LOC=F.CNTR=only=total
      Undesired outcome

      '**But in contrast to** (other people going), **if** (a) **man who knows God's Word would go**, (it would be) **good**. **When men without** (knowledge) go, (thinking) beforehand (it) would be OK, **it would not do**, if from that circumstance, **they having gone would be a bit stupid**.'

8.2.5 Letters

Letters are as any conversation, varied in style. The only thing that stands out grammatically as being different from other written styles, is that deontic moods are used frequently, e.g. imperative, and that second person pronouns are used to some extent. In fact, many letters have a hortatory style with a personal touch.

    Letters are different from conversation in that they quickly come to the point. In conversations, there is often a lot of introductory talking. I imagine that would be a difference between written and oral style.

    The only letters we have are letters written to us. Some are very short, just a sentence or two right to the point. Some are longer with a more involved argumentation. Common to them all is that there usually is the name or kinship term of the addressee in the beginning and the name of the writer at the end.

    A few examples will follow. **Typical features are bold**. The first letter/note is to me from the elementary teacher, brought by one of his small students in need of a little first-aid.

1406) *Mogo,   ng dihi kôu tiga.   /Gilbert*
      friend   2S child this tie.IMP Gilbert
      '"**My friend**, dress (the wound) of this child**!**" /Gilbert'

---

[198] This example is not from a sermon, though.

This example is also from the elementary school teacher.

1407) **Sawisie-i**   *28/04/2008*   **Ma**   *mogo*   *gusugu*   *bolo=fei=do.*
be.day-NFUT   28/4/2008   1s.POSS   friend   morning   good=total=INT

Na *pesole*   *de*   *dala?*   *Dala-ba=be,*   **na** *a=mokôu* *8* *ke-ge*   **ne.**
2s pencil   good be/have be/have-PFV.IRR=TOP 2s 1s=LOC   8 that-VBR give.**IMP**

Ta   **ke=nôu=fei.**   *Gilbert=ha* *nala-i.*   **Gilbert**
talk that=only=total Gilbert=GEN write-NFUT Gilbert

'(The) **day** of 28/04/2008; **My friend**, (a) very **good morning**. Do **you** have (any) pencils? If (you) have, **give** 8 to **me!** That (is) **all** (I have) to say. **Gilbert** wrote (this). (Signed) **Gilbert**.'

The next example is the **introduction and final greeting** from the letter illustrating the composition of a hortatory text presented in the consecutive sentences (1398)-(1403). The bulk of the letter, repeated here, says that the writer's son is very sick. As we were shortly going to go to the writer's village for a prep-school graduation, he told us to come sooner on a certain day for the ceremony. Then we would all return to the airstrip village, where we live, taking the sick child along for urgently needed medical attention.

1408) *Solon, Britten,* **a** *nele=mokôu* *tawa-l-e*   **ta**   *tobôu-l-a-môu.* *Tawa-l-e*
Sören Britten 1s 2DU=LOC   know-IRR-FUT talk say-IRR-SUBJ-PFV know-IRR-FUT

ta   *ke=me* *kôu-g(u)-e,*   **a**=me *hagi* *hiye=do* *dege* *dala.*
talk that=TOP this-VBR(BLTV)   1s=TOP heavy big=INT do be/have

'Sören, Britten, **I want to tell you two a message.** That message is like this: I have (a) very big problem.'

...

Mogo,   *ta=be*   *ke=nôu=fei.*
friend   talk=TOP   that=only=total

'**My friend**, **that's all** (I have to) **say**.

8.2.6 Other discourse types

Some other discourse types, partly overlapping with the ones already described, are conversations, sermons, songs and prayers. I will present one or more typical sentences from each type after saying a few words about it.

Conversations

As for conversational discourse, a lot has already been said in 7.3.4.3 QUOTES. The first part in this example is a short relativised quote with *ta* 'talk'. The second part says to report what has been said and heard to the addressee.

1409) *CHW training* **ta** **ke** *dokta=ha* **tobôu-ba**   **du-l-o-ba,**
CHW training talk that doctor=GEN say-PFV.IRR hear-IRR-FUT-PFV.IRR

na *Morobert* *e=mokôu* **tobôu.**
2s Morobert 3s=LOC   say.**IMP**

'... when (you) **have heard** (the) doctor **talk about** the Community Health Workers' Training Program, **tell** Morobert**!**'

It is worth noting that it is important to explicitly state that what is said is also heard. If you remove **duloba** '(will) have heard' from the previous Konai sentence, it is semantically unacceptable.

The second example has three imbedded reported direct quotes. In this example too, the verb **du** 'hear' follows on the reported direct quotes as well as on the speech clause, where the boy talks in vain to his people.

Another interesting thing in this letter is that this boy **talks about himself in third person** but about his people as '**our (excl.)** people'.

1410) ***Edolo dihi   ta*** ... *holode dege-i-môu, **e** fogôu   hagua-l-a-môu   dege-i,*
Edolo child INDF ... holiday do-NFUT-PFV 3S leave.for come-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-NFUT

e *tisa=ha   **tobo-u, na** i-l-e,   **ne**   o   dia=**mokôu tobôu,***
3S teacher=GEN say-NFUT 2S go-IRR-FUT 2S.POSS man 3PL=LOC say.**IMP**

*ma   tisa=ha   a=**mokôu tobo-u**=be, **na** sadebe gehe sokôulôu fi*
1S.POSS teacher=GEN 1S=LOC say-NFUT=TOP 2S year new school fee

ma-l-e=be,   sele 500.00 kina ma-l-e.
put-IRR-FUT=TOP money 500.00 kina put-IRR-FUT

E *ke   **du-l-o-môu**   hagua, **e** o   ei   môu   **tobo-u.***
3S that hear-IRR-FUT-PFV come.FUT 3S man 1PL.EX nothing say-NFUT

Ei *o   ei   ta   ke   **du-l-o-môu***
1PL.EX man 1PL.EX talk that hear-IRR-FUT-PFV

'**An Edolo child** ... because of (the) holiday, **he** was planning to leave for (home and) come; **his** teacher said, "**You** (sg.) go and **say to your people,** '**My teacher said (this) to me,** "When **you** (sg.) put (the) school fee (for the) new year (you) will put K500.'" **Having heard** that **he** came, and **he** told **our (excl.) people** in vain. **Our people having heard** that, ...'

_____

The third example is a report on a council meeting, where the indicative quote verb =**ode** is frequently used, but there is no "hearing" involved, perhaps because this is not an actual conversation but a formal meeting.

1411) ***Miti*** *   **tobo-u, ta** ilo ke-le   **tobo-u,** gamani   ke+dia*
meeting say-NFUT talk part that-A.LOCR say-NFUT government that+3PL

*sele mei=**yode tobo-l-ôu**   i.*
money NEG=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.NFUT

Bi   su=do mo-l-ôu=be,   huei tank, sasai ke+dia yukuei gofo-l-ôu
thing many=INT get-IRR-NPST=TOP water tank woman that+3PL cloth sew-IRR-NPST

bi+ma-i   masin=bôu, haba   mota dingi mo-l-ôu=be,   sele
thing+put-NFUT machine=and but.PFV.IRR motor dinghy get-IRR-NPST=TOP money

*hiye=do mo-l-ôu   sagai mei=**yode tobo-l-ôu**   i-môu,   a   tobôu*
big=INT get-IRR-NPST likely NEG=IQV say-IRR-NPST go.IRR-PFV 1s say

ke-ge-l-i   ke=me, dingi=bôu mota=bôu   a mo-l-ôu
that-VBR-IRR-NFUT that=TOP dinghy=and outboard.motor=and 1s get-IRR-NPST

*bolo=fei=**yode**   **tobôu-môu,** gamani   ke+dia ke=si   bolo=fei=**yode-ma***
good=total=IQV say-PFV government that+3PL that=CNTR good=total=IQV-ISQ

we-i.
attack-NFUT

'(At the) **meeting** (they) **said**; something that (they) **said**, "The government has no money," **they stated and said**.'

'Getting a lot of things, (that is) getting (a) water tank, sewing machine(s), as well as (a) motor dinghy, **they having stated and said** that (I) was not likely to get a lot of money, (and) when (I) **stated and said** concerning that kind of talk, that I would be pleased to get (the) dinghy and (the) outboard motor, the government officials after **saying** alright, actually **made that decision**.'

Sermons

Sermons are interactive in that the preacher would interact with the people listening, first by a greeting. Usually on a Sunday morning that would be:

>   *gusugu bolo=f̲ei* 'good morning' (morning#good=total)

The preacher, as he talks, may ask questions or seek confirmation on what he has to say. At the end, he may ask if anybody has a question. All types of discourse may occur in a sermon.

A grammatical/cultural feature of a sermon is that the preacher often addresses the congregation as *da* 'first person **dual inclusive**', i.e. 'you (sg.) and I', making his speech very personal.

I have no written or recorded sermons, but an example from a booklet of testimonies may illustrate the use of *da* 'we two inclusive'. The second example is an idiom.

1412) *Yesu=h̲a*   **da**   *ka-ge*   *hag̲i*   *hiye=do* *dege-l-i=be*   *e̲=mokôu* *tobôu-ba,*
        Jesus=GEN   1DU.IN   how-VBR   heavy   big=INT   do-IRR-NFUT=TOP 3S=LOC   say-PFV

        e̲=ge   *haba*   **da**   *hag̲i*   *hiye=do* *dege-l-i*   *ke̲=me*   *e̲=ge*
        3S=F.CNTR but.PFV.IRR   1DU.IN   heavy   big=INT   do-IRR-NFUT   that=TOP   3S=F.CNTR

        huyaf̲ei *dege-ma*   *fogo-l-ôu=yode*   *tobo-u,*   *a̲*   *dugu.*
        small   do-ISQ   leave.for-IRR-NPST=IQV   say-NFUT   1S   saw.NFUT

   '... I saw that (it) stated and said (in the Bible) that whatever big problem **you & I** have, when (we) tell him, Jesus he will instead make that big problem **you & I** have, disappear after making (it) small.'
   (Mountain dialect)

The following example is not from a sermon but the idiom is widely used also in church.

1413) *Kalo* *a=ne*   *su̲=do*   **da**   *tawa-ga*   *tobo-l-ôu*   *saga̲i*   *mei.*
        car   road=also   many=INT   1DU.IN know-DU/PL.FUT say-IRR-NPST   likely   NEG

   'Roads too, there are many, more than **you & I** are likely to know and talk about.'

Songs

All songs that we hear are Christian songs. Older ones are translated from Tok Pisin, often in a very literal way (1414), which follows Tok Pisin word order. There are also many more recent songs written in Konai. They are often short, reiterative and to the point.

1414) *A̲* *taga-l-i*   *n̲a* *Yesu* *x3;*   *n̲a*   *hiye=do* *a̲=mokôu*
        1S like-IRR-NFUT 2S   Jesus   x3   2S   big=INT   1S=LOC

   'I like you Jesus. x3; you are big to me.' (translated from Tok Pisin)

1415) *Aye,*   *Aye*   *Godi,* *n̲e*   *Dihi*   *Yesu*   *Kelesu* *ei*   *ne̲-i=be,*
        father   father   God   2S.POSS   child   Jesus   Christ   1PL.EX   give-NFUT=TOP

        ei   *ne̲-i=be,*   *f̲i*   *ne̲=yado-môu* *e̲* *ne̲-i.*
        1PL.EX   give-NFUT=TOP   soul   give=SQV-PFV   3S   give-NFUT

   'Father, Father God, when (you) gave us your Son Jesus Christ, when (you) gave (him to) us, (you) gave him in order for (us) to believe.'

1416) *Yesu=be*   *hagua-l-adi+y+o,*   *x3* *sa*   *sibige=kôu=be.*
        Jesus=TOP   come-IRR-PROS+TRSV+V   x3   land   essence=LOC=TOP

        Di   *damal̲e=yode-ba=si*   *x3* *hebeni*   *hoh̲o*   *di*   *dugu-l-o.*
        1PL.IN   true=IQV-PFV.IRR=CNTR   x3   heaven   light   1PL.IN   see-IRR-FUT

   'Jesus is just about to come x3, to the world.'

   'But if we believe x3, we (incl.) will see heaven's joy/light.'

1417) *Yesu*   *m̲a* *ey̲e*   *n̲a* *hebeni=kôu* *duwo.*
        Jesus   1S   big.brother   2S   heaven=LOC   sit

   'Jesus, my big brother, you sit in heaven. ...'

Prayers

Prayers are personal. God is addressed as a father, Jesus sometimes as an older brother. A prayer may start with a 'thank you' or with the Konai equivalent of "Good morning/afternoon God." The Holy Spirit is often addressed in Tok Pisin. A prayer is often finished by "Amen".

An example follows. This prayer was recorded as Soti Domo prayed before starting translation work one morning in 2009.

1418)   ***Tenkyu   Aye   Godi,   ng̲=me*** *hebeni   king.*
        Thank.you father God   2S=TOP   heaven king

   Afu=do   afu=do=no̭u   ke-ge   dele-i.
   earlier=INT earlier=INT=only that-VBR be/have-NFUT

   Ifi=ne   ke-ge   dala.
   today=also that-VBR be/have

   Haba=ge=ne   ke-ge   dala-l-e.
   but.PFV.IRR=F.CNTR=also   that-VBR be/have-IRR-FUT

   '**Thank you Father God**, **you** are (the) King of Heaven.'

   '(You) existed like that a very, very long time ago.'

   'Now, too, (you) exist like that.'

   'Later, too, (you) will exist like that.'

   *Godi, **Yesu, Holi.Spirit**   O   Kama+dia   ni̲ mei dege-di tewe mei.*
   God   Jesus Holy.Spirit man middle.finger+3PL 2PL NEG   do-HAB   know NEG

   *Ke-ge-i   dege-mo̭u **a** ifi   gusugu   ng̲=moko̭u **tenkyu**=di-l-i.*
   that-VBR-NFUT do-PFV   1S today morning 2S=LOC   thank.you+IQV-IRR-NFUT

   'God, **Jesus**, **Holy Spirit**, you Three Men (Trinity), know no end.'

   'Because of being like that, I now (this) morning say **thank you to you (sg.)**.'

   Aye   Godi, *Yesu, Holi Spirit **Duo   Bolo**=fe̲i.*
   father God   Jesus Holy Spirit spirit good=total

   '**Father God**, Jesus, Holy Spirit **Totally Good Spirit**.'

   *Ifi   gusugu, **a**=bo̭u, mo̲u   abo̭u, **ei   ne̲   ta̲   ko̭u, ne̲   ta̲   Godi,*** ...
   today morning 1S=and grandpagrandma1PL.EX 2S.POSS talk this 2S.POSS talk God ...

   ne̲ *kuguo=ko̭u dogogu ko̭u **ei**   ... Kala̲i ta̲=e   boho-l-o̭u*
   2S.POSS paper=LOC put   this 1PL.EX ... Konai talk=INS turn-IRR-NPST

   *nala-l-a̲-mo̭u,   **ei**   **ng̲=moko̭u** yodu-l-u   dugu-ba,   Godi ... **ng̲** tewe*
   write-IRR-SUBJ-PFV 1PL.EX 2S=LOC   ask-IRR-NFUT see-PFV.IRR God ... 2S know

   *nele̲   olo̭ufe̲i   **ei**=moko̭u ne̲-ba,   **ei**   kuhe **ne̲**   ta̲*
   strength all.total 1PL.EX=LOC give-PFV.IRR 1PL.EX so   2S.POSS talk

   *boho̭u-l-a-mo̭u   **ng̲=moko̭u** yodu-l-u.*
   turn-IRR-SUBJ-PFV 2S=LOC   ask-IRR-NFUT

   'Now (this) morning, **I** and grandpa (&) grandma, **we (excl.)** as **we** ... are planning to translate this talk **of yours** into Konai and write this **your** talk God ... that is put (down) in **your** book, **we (excl.)** ask **you** and seeing God ... that **you** will give **us** all the power of knowledge, so **we (excl.)**, planning to translate **your** word, ask **you** (that).'

   ...

   *Ne̲   hu̲   damale̲=do Godi, Yesu. **Amen**.*
   2S.POSS name true=INT   God   Jesus amen

   'Your name is true God, Jesus. **Amen**.'

8.3 Topic

I am using the term 'topic' as meaning **given or known information**, contrasting with 'focus', referring to new or assertive information. In addition, in this grammar and applied to the Konai language, the term 'topic' only refers to a constituent marked by the topicalising enclitic ={*be*}.

The word 'topic' is a pragmatic term, which means that marking something as topic is "optional"; you have a choice how you want to tell something. For example, in Konai, it is not like marking tense on a final clause. If something has happened in the past, it is marked realis non-future (past tense), and if it is going to happen later, it is marked irrealis future (future tense). Any other marking is incorrect language. That is not the case with topic marking. Adding the topic marker, or taking it out does not necessarily result in incorrect language, but it will affect how the expression fits into the story as a whole.

The topic marker in Konai is ={*be*}, an enclitic that may occur on almost any word, of any word class, except particles/interjections. It has four allomorphs.

- =*me* - phonological variant of =*be,* occurring following nasal personal and demonstrative pronouns
- =*b* - occurs before the subjunctive quote verb =*ade* in forms with plural object
- =*ma* - occurs preceding =*hạ* 'genitive'
- =*be* - occurs elsewhere

Note that =*be* is used following nasal words, **except** nasal pronouns.

The topic marker functions on phrase, clause or sentence level, but is to a large degree used for organising information within the discourse. Certain discourse types have much more marking of topic, e.g. a descriptive. A narrative has less. It is a back-grounding and generalising device. As such, it has a wide range of usage, some of them on a lower level than discourse, e.g. as an optional marking of the topic in a verbless clause and as part of the marking in the antecedent in a conditional sentence.

Another way of describing what the topic marker does, is to say that the topic marker is used when the construction, it is used on, refers to something previously mentioned, something seen, heard or assumed, or even something the speaker/writer wants the addressee to keep in mind. Often it may be translated as 'concerning ...'. It sometimes gives an expression a generic flavour. Often, even most of the time, it is untranslatable. In a condition it is translated 'if'.

The topic marker **sometimes** occurs with the following:

- topic in a topic-comment clause
- subject
- object
- time
- location
- certain demonstratives
- initial theme slot in the clause/sentence
- main verb in a complement sentence
- antecedent of a conditional sentence, together with -*ba* 'perfective irrealis'
- general ground under which a certain statement is true, together with -*môu* 'perfective realis'
- a delayed sequence construction meaning 'until'
- the conjunction *yobe* 'reason'
- the indefinite article as it is used for listing purposes
- quote verbs
   - verbs in imperative and hortative mood
   - quotes
   - question words
- afterthoughts
- as a barrier to stop e.g. purpose spreading leftwards in complex sentences

More than one constituent in any clause may be marked as a topic (see e.g. (1424), (1426)).

8.3.1 Marking the topic in a topic-comment clause

The topic marker **may** occur on the topic in a topic comment clause. Either topic or comment may consist of a phrase or a clause. Clause repetition (see 7.2), like in (1423), is an expression of this strategy. See also 6.2 VERBLESS CLAUSES.

1419) *Ne̱   hu̱   koyo?* **Ma̱   hu̱=be**   Jems.
      2s.POSS name who   1s.POSS name=TOP James
      'What (is) your name?' '**My name is** James.'

1420) *Aso̱   ko̱û=ma=ha̱=ge   e̱ hoho̱   dege-l-i.   **E̱   hoho̱=be** hiye=do.*
      sun   this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR 3s light do-IRR-NFUT 3s light=TOP big=INT
      'This sun is shining. **Its light is** very bright.' (a picture)

1421) *So bolo̱u ko̱û=me mihi̱=ko̱u   ya-l-i̱.   Ke̱=no̱û=si   **dilie=be** dihi=no̱û*
      dog two   this=TOP earth=LOC   play-IRR-NFUT that=only=CNTR 3DU=TOP   child=only
      'These two dogs are playing on the ground. But **they are** only puppies, ...' (a picture)

1422) ***Moso̱ ŧogo-di=be**   dabai hiye=do.*
      house build-HAB=TOP work big=INT
      '**Building a house is** a lot of work.'

1423) *Sio miye   e̱ na̱-di=be   hebe kolo   na̱-di.*
      bird Victoria.pigeon 3s eat-HAB=TOP tree fruit   eat-HAB
      'The Victoria pigeon, **its habitual eating is** eating fruit from trees.'

1424) ***wi   hiye=do ko̱û hagu-l-u=be**   yo=be   a̱=moko̱û.*
      wind big=INT   this come-IRR-NFUT=TOP base=TOP   1s=LOC
      '... **this big wind is coming** because of me.'

1425) ***E̱=me** o   hiye=do.*
      3s=TOP man   big=INT
      '**He is** (a) big man.'

1426) *Sio   isusu=be   e̱ **hu̱i=be** bolo=fe̱i=do,   o   olo̱ûfe̱i ŧaga-l-e   i-di.*
      bird pigeon=TOP 3s meat=TOP good=total=INT man all   like-IRR-FUT go-HAB
      'Concerning the pigeon, **its meat is** very good, all people love (it).'

1427) ***Ko̱û=me** ke̱i?*
      this=TOP what
      'What **is this**?'

8.3.2 Marking the subject

The subject may be marked as topic. It gives a generic flavour to the subject, especially when the predicate is in the habitual aspect. Sometimes a topicalised subject translates 'concerning ...'.

1428) *Ko̱û=me sio   miye.   **Dia̱=me** su̱=do   sulugua-di.*
      this=TOP bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP   many=INT walk.around.DU/PL-HAB
      'These (are) Victoria pigeons. **They** walk around in a big flock.' (a picture)

1429) *So   ko̱û=me hiye=do. **So   ko̱û=me** gali   su̱=do   wo-di.*
      dog this=TOP big=INT dog this=TOP wild.animal many=INT attack-HAB
      'This dog (is) big. **This dog** habitually kills many wild animals.' (a picture)

1430) *Sio   miye   **dia̱=me** hoho̱ hiye=do dege-mo̱û,*
      bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP   light big=INT do.FUT-PFV

      *yo̱û+we=ko̱û   ya-l-e̱   i-**di**.*
      stone+sand=LOC play-IRR-FUT go-HAB
      'Victoria pigeons, because **they are** very happy, they play on the stony river bed.'

1431) ***O   Kiunga=ko̱û i   ke̱=me** fula   ŧa   ka=ha̱=si   hagua-l-e.*
      man Kiunga=LOC go that=TOP week INDF that=GEN=CNTR come-IRR-FUT
      '**The man who went to Kiunga** is coming back already next week.'

1432) *Bobasi=bo̱û   haba   e̱ ma̱=bo̱û+de   mowi   yo-l-u,*
      younger.sister=and but.PFV.IRR 3s husband=and+PROV hunt   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

      e̱ ma̱=be   bo̱û   ŧa i-l-i   ŧo̱û hebe-i.
      3s husband=TOP white.man bow go-IRR-NFUT hold carry-NFUT
      '(My) younger sister together with her husband also, when they went hunting, **her husband** carried a shotgun.'

1433) *Na-l-e̱=be*   *o=be*   *milôu-môu, na-l-e̱*   *kuhe ṭama̱ dege-di.*
       eat-IRR-FUT=TOP man=TOP work-PFV eat-IRR-FUT so   appear do-HAB

       'Concerning food, **man** produces (it), so food habitually appears.'

In this last example *o=be* 'man' has a strong generic flavour. In fact it functions as an indefinite pronoun. See
4.3.5 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. Compare *o=ye* (man=INS) in (1435) in the next section, where only the object is topicalised.

8.3.3 Marking the object

The object may be marked as topic. Many topicalised objects are fronted and may be translated as 'concerning ...'. In all of the examples here, the topicalised object is generic and the final verb is in habitual aspect.

1434) *O   sasa̱i   olôufei di̱a̱ dou=be* hoho̱   dege-di.*
       man woman all   3PL   fire=TOP light do-HAB

       'People like **the fire**.'

1435) *Ke̱=nôu=si   sio   miye=be*   *nele̱   hiye=do.*
       that=only=CNTR bird Victoria.pigeon=TOP strong big=INT

       Di̱a̱=me o=ye   ṭaha-l-i̱,   mala   gobo-l-ôu+ma̱   fogôu   i-di.
       3PL=TOP man=INS shoot-IRR-NFUT arrow break-IRR-NPST+put leave.for go-HAB

       'But Victoria pigeons (are) very strong. When man shoot **them**, (they) break off (the) arrow and leaving (they) go.'

1436) *Wai=be o   su̱=do   na̱-di   bolo=fei=do.*
       pig=TOP man many=INT eat-HAB good=total=INT

       'Lots of people eat **the pig**; (it is) very good.'

1437) *O   sasa̱i   olôufei=do=be   disope=be*   ṭaga-l-e   nala̱   i-di.*
       man   woman all.total=INT=TOP pineapple=TOP like-IRR-FUT   eat.IRR.FUT go-HAB

       'All people like and eat **the pineapple**.'

8.3.4 Marking the time

A temporal setting may be marked as topic. This seems to be used for more general settings of times. Exact times are usually expressed in a nominal phrase in the genitive case (see 5.2.3.2.1 THE GENITIVE CASE: Genitive of Time Expressions).

1438) *Dia   di̱a̱=me huli̱a̱.me=be* ṭia-di=yo   mei*
       crayfish 3PL=TOP night.TOP=TOP sleep-HAB=INDC   NEG

       'Crayfish, they do not sleep **at night**, ...'

1439) *Ke̱=nôu=si   ifi   goso-di fogo-u.*   *Ifi=be*   hoho̱   hiye=do dege-l-i.*
       that=only=CNTR today cry-HAB leave.for-NFUT today=TOP light big=INT do-IRR-NFUT

       'But today (he) doesn't cry anymore. **Today** (he) is very happy.'

1440) *Sasafe̱i=ye=ge   ... sasama=ye=ge   ... sabiya-l-i*
       little.finger=INS=F.CNTR   … ring.finger=INS=F.CNTR   … be.morning-IRR-NFUT

       Dosôu=ye=ge   ... Hou=ye=be...
       index.finger=INS=F.CNTR   … thumb=INS=TOP

       'On Monday ... on Tuesday ... next day ... On Thursday ... **On (that) Friday** ...'
       (a story about how to do a five day long hike in the bush; Friday is expected to be the last day)
       (Mountain dialect)

1441) *ni̱=ge   habi,   agudio   we̱i dege-i-môu dugu-o-môu=be,*
       2PL=F.CNTR afternoon sky=TOP red do-NFUT-PFV see-FUT-PFV=TOP

       idiba=be   sa   bolo̱ dege-l-e=yode ṭobo-l-ôu   i-di.
       tomorrow=TOP land good do-IRR-FUT=IQV say-IRR-NPST go-HAB

       '... in the afternoon, when you see the sky being red, you say, "**Tomorrow**, (the) weather will be nice," you habitually state and say.'

8.3.5 Marking the location

A locative setting may be marked as topic. Again, it is a general and habitual kind of setting.

1442) *Ke̲=no̲ûu=si   sio miye   dia̲=me **die   moso̲=be***
      that=only=CNTR bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP 3PL.POSS house=TOP

  *hebe sugu̲+lu   tia-sie-**di**.*
  tree top+inside sleep-DU/PL-HAB

  'But Victoria pigeons they habitually sleep (in) **their homes** in (the) tree tops.'

1443) *Wai oye=bo̲ûu osobo̲ûu=bo̲ûu+de ... **Dilie moso̲=be** hebe yo   tia-sie-**di**.*
      pig male=and female=and+PROV ... 3DU   house=TOP tree base sleep-DU/PL-HAB

  '(A) boar and (a) sow ... The two of them habitually sleep (in) **their home** at (the) base of (a) tree.'

1444) *Ulie̲   ko̲ûu=ma=ha̲ dege-di=be e̲ sa   bolo ke-le=be*
      cicada   this=TOP=GEN do-HAB=TOP 3s land   good that-A.LOCR=TOP

  *e̲ ta̲ hiye=do dege-**di**.*
  3s talk big=INT do-HAB

  '(What) this cicada usually does, (when) **there is nice weather**[199], is to make (a) very loud noise.'

8.3.6 Marking part of certain demonstratives

Certain demonstratives in the genitive case has an allomorph =*ma* of the topic marker as part of their structure. The meaning seems to be 'this/that particular ...'. In the second example the more common allomorph =*me* occurs, in harmony with the last suffix.

1445) *Ta ko̲ûu=ma=ha̲ wai taha̲-**di**.*
      bow this=TOP=GEN pig shoot-HAB

  '**This particular** bow shoots pigs.'

1446) *Sasa̲i sobo̲ûude   ko̲ûu=ma=ha̲ e̲ ma̲=be   ko̲ûu=me-he̲.*
      woman old.woman this=TOP=GEN 3s husband=TOP this=TOP-P.LOCR

  'The husband of **this particular** old woman is **right here** (**pointing**).'

1447) *sele   300.00 kina sibi-l-e   saga̲i dala. **Ka**=ma=ha̲ e̲ sibige̲=be*
      money 300   kina pay.debt-IRR-FUT likely be/have that=TOP=GEN 3s essence=TOP

  '... (I) probably (have) to pay a debt of K300. The reason for **that** is ...'

8.3.7 Marking the initial theme slot in the clause/sentence

The initial slot in a clause/sentence (see 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOT) is used for prominent, often new information. However, a topic, i.e. known information, of one kind or another, marked by the topic marker, may occur in this slot.

1448) ***Sio   isusu=be** e **hui=be** olo̲ûfe̲i=do o   olo̲ûfei   taga-l-e   i-**di**.*
      bird pigeon=TOP 3s meat=TOP all.total=INT man   all.total like-IRR-FUT go-HAB

  '**Concerning the pigeon, concerning its meat**, all people like (it).'

1449) ***Na-l-e̲=be**   o=be   milo̲û-mo̲û*
      eat-IRR-FUT=TOP man=TOP work-PFV

  '**Concerning food**, people producing it. ...'

1450) ***Dihi   ko̲ûu=me** e̲ adio̲û to-l-o   i-mou,   e-sofe̲i   tia-**di**.*
      child   this=TOP 3s mother die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV 3s-self.alone sleep-HAB

  '**This child**, his mother having died, sleeps alone.'

8.3.8 Marking the main verb in a complement sentence

A verb of perception or cognition in a complement sentence may be marked as topic.

1451) *a̲ taha-l-e̲=yode-ma   i-l-i-di[200]   **dugu=be,***
      1s shoot-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP

  wai ka=ha̲ toto=no̲û   hague-i
  pig that=GEN quickly=only come-NFUT

  'After I had said I was going to shoot (it), I went until I **saw that** (the) pig came quickly; ...'

---

[199] Literally: '(when) the **land** (is) **good** there.'

[200] Foothill dialect; the Lowland dialect is -*gi*.

1452)   *A   taga-l-i=be   dihi   do   mala   Dahamo=kôu i-l-e,*
        1s like-IRR-NFUT=TOP child sickness get.IRR.FUT Dahamo=LOC   go-IRR-FUT

         Saturday 6   ka=ha=ge.
         Saturday 6   that=GEN=F.CNTR

         'I **want to** take (the) sick child and go to Dahamo on Saturday the sixth.'

1453)   *Ke-ge-môu,   a   tawa-i=be   Godi=be   a=bôu+de   dala=d=ade   tawa-i*
        that-VBR-PFV 1s know-NFUT=TOP God=TOP   1s=and+PROV be/have=INT=SQV know-NFUT

         'So/Having become like that, I **knew that** God must for sure be with me.'

8.3.9 Marking the antecedent of a conditional sentence

The antecedent of a conditional sentence may be marked as topic, preceded by *-ba* 'perfective irrealis'.

1454)   *Bei   e   gofôu   hiye=do.   E   o   dugu-ba=be   taha-l-e.*
        snake 3s hard/strong big=INT   3s   man see.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP shoot-IRR-FUT

         '(The) snake, he is very dangerous. **If he sees** (a) **man** (he (the snake)) will immediately bite. '

1455)   *Moso   kôu=me **wi**   **hiye=do** ta   feli-ba=be,   bila-ma   i-l-e.*
        house   this=TOP wind big=INT   INDF come.up.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP fell-ISQ go-IRR-NFUT

         'Concerning this house, **if a big wind appears**, (it) will immediately be felled.'

1456)   *o   ta   e   mogo   mei ka=ha   i-ba=be   e=me   moso=kôu*
        man INDF 3s friend   NEG that=GEN go.NFUT=PFV.IRR=TOP 3s=TOP   house=LOC

         tia-l-e   mei.
         sleep-IRR-FUT NEG

         '... **if** a man who does not have (a) friend (there) **goes**, he will not be sleeping
         in (a) house.'

1457)   ***ikoke mei dege-ba=be,***   *na toto   oda   dege*
        nail NEG do-PFV.IRR=TOP   2s quickly order do

         '... **if** (the) **nails are finished**, quickly make (an) order ...'

8.3.10 Marking the general ground under which a certain statement is true

The topic marker may be used to mark the general ground under which a certain statement is true. In the most common case it occurs together with the perfective realis marker *-môu*. (This is actually the realis version of the conditional, described in the previous section.) In most cases, the verb of the consequence is in the habitual aspect, though verbless, and present and even past tense have been observed.[201]

1458)   ***Sa   kasagai dege-môu=be***   *e   ta-di=yo   mei.*
        land bad   do.FUT-PFV=TOP 3s talk-HAB=INDC   NEG

         '**When** (the) **weather has become bad**, he does not make (any) noise.'

1459)   ***Huei   to-u-môu=be***   *moso=kôu toto=nôu   ya-di.*
        water wash-NFUT-PFV=TOP house=LOC quickly=only go.DU/PL-HAB

         Toto=nôu   *i-l-e*   ***folo-u-môu=be***   *huei   nogo-di=yo   mei.*
        quickly=only go-IRR-FUT go.up-NFUT-PFV=TOP water make.wet-HAB=INDC   NEG

         '**As soon as it rains** you (pl.) hurriedly go to the house. **When** (you) **hurriedly go and go up** (into the house), (the) rain does not make (you) wet.'

1460)   *Dou=be ... **O**   **galo-u-môu=be,**   do   hiye=do dege-di.*
        fire=TOP ... man bite-NFUT-PFV=TOP sickness big=INT do-HAB

         'Concerning fire ... **Burning** (a) **man**, (it) is always very painful.'

1461)   *Na-l-e=be*   *o=be   milôu-môu...* ***Yomogo-u-môu=be,*** *awaki*
        eat-IRR-FUT=TOP man=TOP work-NFUT   start-NFUT-PFV=TOP knife

         tolôu   i-l-e   nôu-di-l-i.
        hold-IRR-NPST go-IRR-FUT make.garden-HAB-IRR-NFUT

         'Concerning food, man producing (it) ... **To start with**, (he) takes a knife and goes and makes (a) garden in the usual way.' (Foothill dialect)

---

[201] Habitual aspect is mutually exclusive with tense marking in the **Lowland dialect** of Konai.

1462) *Sio   miye   **dia o   dugu-o-môu = be** gue   hiye = do.*
bird   Victoria.pigeon 3s   man see-FUT-PFV=TOP fear   big=INT

'Victoria pigeons, **they having seen** (a) man are very afraid.'

1463) *Sasafei = ye = ge,   a **i-l-a-môu = be**   ...   na-l-e   hiye = do*
little.finger=INS=F.CNTR 1s   go—IRR-SUBJ-PFV=TOP ...   eat-IRR-FUT big=INT

*sa + ma   i-l-i-gi   **sa nugu-môu = be,**   a dibi   moso*
put.inside+put go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ land become.dark.NFUT-PFV=TOP 1s forest house

*fo-u-**l-u.***
go.up-BLTV-IRR-NFUT

'The first day/Monday **when I plan to go**, ... (I) pack a lot of food and go on until (it) **gets dark**, when I go up into a bush shelter.

1464) *Sele   dabai dege-i   **mei dege-môu = be,** e moso tege-**i.**   E moso*
money   work do-NFUT NEG do-PFV=TOP   3s house build-NFUT 3s house

*tege-i   **mei dege-môu = be,** sosi   moso   tege-**i.***
build-NFUT   NEG do-PFV=TOP   church house build-NFUT

'**When** (we) **had finished** working (on the airstrip) for money, (we) built his house. **When** (we) **had finished** building his house, (we) built (the) church.'

The last example (1465) is an example where *kenôusi* 'but' is topicalised, giving the same feeling of generic and habitual.

1465) *Beye   kôu = me hebe go + ya   su-l-u.   E na-l-e*
possum this=TOP tree branch+road walk.around-IRR-NFUT 3s eat-IRR-FUT

*na-l-a-môu   su-l-u   ku-he.   **Ke = nôu = si = be***
eat-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   walk.around-IRR-NFUT this-P.LOCR that=only=CNTR=TOP

sisigo = ye   wo-l-o   sagai   mei.
children=INS   attack-IRR-FUT   likely   NEG

'This possum is walking around on the branches of a tree. Here he is walking around for the purpose of eating. **But** children are not likely to kill him.'

8.3.11 Part of a delayed sequence construction - 'until'

See 7.3.2.4 DELAYED SEQUENCE: second construction. Here are two examples.

1466) *miye ka = ha   Jona mala   **i = be de-môu,** to   biya = kôu dogogu.*
fish that=GEN Jonah get.IRR.FUT go=TOP PROV-PFV river beach=LOC put.NFUT

'... that fish took Jonah and **went on until** (she) put him on (the) beach.'

1467) *ni = me a = bôu + de   yo-ma   dabai dege-môu **hagua = be de-môu,***
2PL=TOP 1s=and+PROV begin-ISQ work do-PFV   come=TOP   PROV-PFV

ifi = ne   ke-ge = nôu   dala
today=also that-VBR=only be/have

'... you after starting have worked with me **until** now ...'

8.3.12 Part of the conjunction *yobe* 'reason'

The topic marker is part of the conjunction *yo = be* 'reason' (base=TOP). The Mountain dialect version is *bei = be* (meaning=TOP).

1468) *Moso   e gofôu   mei.   **Yo = be**   o   moso ke tege-i*
house 3s hard/strong   NEG   reason=TOP man   house that build-NFUT

o   ka = ha   hebe tatabai dege-i   môu + ma tege-i.
man that=GEN tree weak   do-NFUT get+put build-NFUT

'The house is not strong. **The reason** (is that) the man who built the house, that man got weak timber and built.'

1469) *O   sasai   olôufei   dia dou=be hoho   dege-di. Yo=be   dou   ko=kôu*
       man   woman   all.total   3PL fire=TOP light do-HAB   reason=TOP fire that=LOC

       na-l-e   si-l-e
       eat-IRR-FUT   cook-IRR-FUT

       'All people like (the) fire. **The reason** (is that) on the fire they cook food and ...'

1470) *Dia   e   ta   du-l-o-môu   kesi-gi.   Bei=be   e   tawa-gi-l-i=be*
       3PL   3S   talk hear-IRR-FUT-PFV   rouse-OF.NFUT meaning=TOP   3S   know-OF-IRR-NFUT=TOP

       'Having heard his talk, they were surprised. **The reason** was the way he taught (was) ...' (Mountain dialect)

8.3.13 Marking the indefinite article as it is used for listing purposes

The topic marker is part of the word *ta=be* 'another' (INDF=TOP) used for listing purposes.

1471) *Agu   e   dabai sogo   ga-di.   Ta=be   kiyei   gobo-di.*
       bamboo 3S   work breadfruit gather-HAB INDF=TOP pandanus scrape.out-HAB

       'The bamboo is used to pick breadfruit (with). **Another** (use) is to scrape out pandana.'

1472) *Dia   e   na-di=be,   hebe kolo na-di.   Ta=be   hebe guo na-di.*
       prawn 3S   eat-HAB=TOP tree fruit eat-HAB INDF=TOP tree leaf eat-HAB

       'The prawn, its food, (it) habitually eats fruit. **Another** (thing), he habitually eats leaves.'

8.3.14 Marking a quote

There are three related uses of the topic marker having to do with quotes.

- verbs in imperative and hortative mood
- quote verbs
- question words

Verbs in imperative and hortative mood

A verb with plural subject in imperative or hortative mood may occur with the topic marker. Supposedly this is a politer form.

1473) *I-ma=be.*
       go-DU/PL=TOP

       'You two **better** go now.' (a polite request to leave)

1474) *I-me=be.*
       go-HORT=TOP

       'I think we **should** go now.' (often heard when people are leaving)

Quote verbs

The topic marker may occur with a quote verb. This is rare with the indicative one. I think it is actually part of the quote, rather than the quote verb in this example.

1475) *Yesu=ha   hagua-l-e=be=yodi-l-i.*
       Jesus=GEN come-IRR-FUT=TOP=IQV-IRR-NFUT

       '(He) is **of course talking about** Jesus coming back.'

   The topic marker is obligatory as part of the deontic and subjunctive quote verbs *=ede* and *=ade*, in non-singular forms.

1476) *O   ta=nôu   ta=nôu   3 kina 3 kina de-ma=be=ede   tobo-l-ôu   i.*
       man INDF=only INDF=only 3 kina 3 kina PROV-DU/PL=TOP=OQV say-IRR-NPST   go-NFUT

       '"Each man **must** pay K3," they **instructed and** said.'

1477) *da   to   to   i-me=be=ede   tobo-u.*
       1DU.IN river wash go-HORT=TOP=OQV say-NFUT

       '... "**Let the two of** us go swimming," (he) **suggested and** said.'

1478) *dilie Godi=ha dabai dege-ma=b=ado-môu   maka+ma-i*
       3DU God=GEN work do-DU/PL=TOP=SQV-PFV mark+put-NFUT

       '... (they) marked the two of them **in order for them to** do God's work.'

Question words

The topic marker occurs on a question word or even at the end of a question, if the speaker is unsure of what is being said.

1479) *Tom idiba   hagua-l-e.   **Koyo**=**be?***
       Tom tomorrow come-IRR-FUT who=TOP

       '"Tom is coming tomorrow." "**Who** did you say?"'

8.3.15 Marking a clarifying afterthought

A clarification given as an after-thought after the main clause/sentence often occurs with the topic marker.

1480) *M<u>a</u>   dihi   Beny   n<u>e</u>,   **ikoke**=**be.***
       1s.POSS child Benny   give.IMP nail=TOP

       'Give (them) to my son Benny, **the nails that is**.'

1481) *O   sas<u>ai</u> olôuf<u>ei</u>   hoh<u>o</u>,   **sio   miye**=**be.***
       man woman all.total light bird Victoria.pigeon=TOP

       'Everybody loves (them), **the Victoria pigeons that is**.'

1482) *K<u>e</u>=nôu=f<u>ei</u>,   m<u>a</u>   t<u>a</u>=**be.***
       that=only=total 1s.POSS talk=TOP

       'That is all, **my story that is**.'

8.3.16 Functions as a barrier

The topic marker may also be used as a barrier, to hinder certain features spreading leftward in a sentence, **e.g. purpose and optative**. See also 7.3.5 NEGATIVE AND OTHER SCOPES IN A SENTENCE.

1483) *Godi=h<u>a</u> e   Dihi=kôu   tobôu-môu migi=**be**,   sa   sibig<u>e</u>   o   sas<u>ai</u>*
       God=GEN 3s   child=LOC say-PFV   come.down.NFUT=TOP land essence man woman

       *di=mokôu hebe   kasag<u>ai</u> n<u>e</u>=**yado-môu**   tobôu-l-i   **mei**.*
       1PL.IN=LOC exchange bad   give-SQV-PFV   say-IRR-NFUT NEG

       '**When** God₁ sent his Son₂ (and) (he₂) came down, (he₁) did **not** send (him₂) **in order to** punish us, the people of the world.'

1484) *O   ka=h<u>a</u> do   k<u>e</u>   tila=**be**, o   sas<u>ai</u> ke+di<u>a</u> Godi=h<u>a</u> nel<u>e</u>   k<u>e</u>*
       man that=GEN sickness that lie=TOP man woman that+3PL God=GEN   strength that

       dugu-o-ba,   Godi=h<u>a</u> Dihi   <u>e</u>   h<u>u</u>   hebe-l-e
       see-FUT-PFV.IRR God=GEN child 3s name carry-IRR-FUT

       *fo-gu-l-o   i=**yado-môu** kuhe do   tila.*
       go.up-OF-IRR-FUT go=SQV-PFV so   sickness lie

       '**That** this man is sick, **is in order for** people to see God's strength and to praise the name of God's Son, (and) so (he) is sick.'

1485) *Godi=h<u>a</u> t<u>a</u>=be   tawa-ga-i   o   ka=h<u>a</u>=nôu   i-ba=si   bolo=f<u>ei</u>.*
       God=GEN talk=TOP know-DU/PL-NFUT man that=GEN=only go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR good=total

       *Môu   o=ye   i-l-e=**be**   kôu   bolo=f<u>ei</u>=ye   ya-ba*
       nothing man=INS go-IRR-FUT=TOP prior   good=total=OPT   go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV.IRR

       *t<u>a</u>=f<u>ei</u>   totôu   dege-i=**ye   do-môu** ko=kôu=ge=nôu=f<u>ei</u>.*
       INDF=total forgetfulness do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV that=LOC=F.CNTR=only=total

       'But in contrast to (other people going), if (a) man who knows God's Word would go, it would be good. **When** men without (knowledge) would go, (thinking) beforehand (it) would be OK, **it would not do**, if from that circumstance, they having gone would be a bit stupid.'

8.4 Focus of contrast

I am using the term 'focus' as meaning new or **assertive information**. In this grammar and applied to the Konai language, the expression 'focus of contrast' only refers to a constituent marked by the enclitic =**ge**.[202]

The contrasting focus marker =*ge* may occur on nominal phrases functioning as subject and on nominal and modifier phrases expressing time or location. The form *ko=kôu=**ge*** (that=LOC=F.CNTR), occurring on its own, may mean 'because' or 'under the circumstances'. See the last heading under this section: 'Because', ...

---

[202] Another kind of focus is the object focus, which functions in the clause only (see 4.1.7).

The meaning of the contrastive focus is to single someone or something out as being of special importance in the context. The most common function in the Lowland dialect is for =*ge* to appear on temporal phrases, indicating the importance of certain times.

There is also another discourse marker which indicates contrastiveness: =*si* 'contrast'. Its function is to single out a phrase or clause as referring to the best (or possibly worst) alternative among other possible alternatives. This enclitic was described under 7.3.3.4 CONTRAST.

Subject marking

The two first examples of the contrastive focus marker =*ge* on a nominal phrase functioning as subject are from Big Book stories illustrated with pictures. The 'sun' and the 'fire' contrast with other pictures of suns and fires in the book.

1486)   **Asọ kôu̯=ma=hạ=ge**   *e   hohọ   dege-l-i.*
        sun this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR   3S light do-IRR-NFUT

        '**This** sun, it is shining.' (a picture)

1487)   **Dou   kôu̯=ma=hạ=ge**   *wai si-di*
        fire this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR   pig cook-HAB

        '**This** fire habitually cooks pig (meat) …' (a picture)

In the three next examples, God and Jesus are singled out as the ones being able to cope with the situation.

1488)   **Godi=hạ=ge** *di=be   ta   totôu   dege-i=ya   mei,*
        God=GEN=F.CNTR   1PL.IN=TOP INDF forgetfulness do-NFUT=SUBJ   NEG

        e=me di=bôu=nôu   dala.
        3S=TOP 1PL.IN=and=only be/have

        '**God** (**he**) does not ever forget about us, he is just with us.' (Foothill dialect)

1489)   *Jona e o ke+diạ=mokôu gofôu   dege-i. Godi, **nạ=ge** o sasại kôu̯+diạ*
        Jonah 3S man that+3PL=LOC   hard/strong do-NFUT God 2S=F.CNTR man woman this+3PL

        wo=yede   tobo-u.
        attack=OQV say-NFUT

        'Jonah he was very angry at the men/people, "God **you** must kill these people,"
        (he) directed and said.'

1490)   *Yesu **nạ=ge** ạ dogôugu-ba,   haba   ạ tewe mo-l-ôu̯   de*
        Jesus 2S=F.CNTR 1S help.NFUT-PFV.IRR but.PFV.IRR 1S know get-IRR-NPST PROV

        tawa-l-e-môu,   ạ e=mokôu dihọ bagạ   tobo-u.
        know-IRR-FUT-PFV 1S 3S=LOC   eye close.eye say-NFUT

        '... "When **you** Jesus help me, then I will get knowledge," and having realized that, I closed (my) eyes and prayed/said to him.' (Mountain dialect)

The next example is also from the Mountain dialect and illustrates how =*ge* picks up a non-subject in the previous clause and turns it into a subject.

1491)   *Yesu=hạ da   ka-ge   hagị hiye=do dege-l-i=be   **e=mokôu** tobôu-ba,*
        Jesus=GEN 1DU.IN   how-VBR heavy big=INT do-IRR-NFUT=TOP 3S=LOC   say-PFV

        e=ge**   haba   da   hagị hiye=do dege-l-i   ke=me   **e=ge
        3S=F.CNTR but.PFV.IRR 1DU.IN heavy big=INT do-IRR-NFUT that=TOP 3S=F.CNTR

        huyafẹi dege-ma fogo-l-ôu̯=yode   tobo-u,   ạ dugu.
        small do-ISQ leave.for-IRR-NPST=IQV say-NFUT 1S see.NFUT

        '... I saw that (it) stated and said (in the Bible) that whatever big problem you & I have, when (we) tell **him**, Jesus **he** will instead make that big problem you & I have disappear after making (it) small.'
        (Mountain dialect)

Temporal marking

Temporal marking with =*ge*, if occurring together with the genitive case marker =*hạ*, is used to emphasize an exact time.

In the first example =*ge* appears on its own, and the time is not exact. In the second example, it looks like we have a word with =*ge* 'contrastive focus', but actually, it could as well be the homophone -*ge* 'verbaliser'.[203] In the next few examples, due to the inclusion of the genitive case marker =*hạ*, an exact time is given as new information.

---

[203] See 3.7 HOMOPHONES AND VARIANTS AMONG SUFFIXES AND ENCLITICS.

1492) ***Haba=ge***   *dugu-l-o.*
     but.PFV=F.CNTR   see-IRR-FUT
     'See you **later**.' (lexicalised use)

1493) *N̲e̲*   *fene,*   *Des*   *21* **ke-le-/=ge**   *hagu-ba=be*
     2S.POSS   airplane Dec. 21 that-A.LOCR-VBR/=F.CNTR   come.NFUT-PFV=TOP
     'If/when your plane comes **on** Dec. 21, ...'

1494) *Sadebe 2007* **ko̲û=ma=ha̲=ge**   *e̲=me medigo*   *soko̲ûlo̲û*   *i-l-e.*
     year   2007 this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR   3S=TOP medical.worker   school   go-IRR-FUT
     '**This** year 2007 he will go to CHW[204] school.'

1495) *Sadebe 1997* **ka̲=ha̲=ge**   *fo̲û*   *hiye=do* *biye-i.*
     year   1997 that=GEN=F.CNTR   dryness big=INT   sit.up/down-NFUT
     '**In** 1997 there was (a) big draught.'

1496) *A̲=me ifi̲=be*   *lesson*   *14,.p.32=bo̲û, haba*   *kuguo hiye=be lesson*   *6*
     1S=TOP today=TOP   lesson 14,p.32=and but.PFV.IRR paper big=TOP lesson 6

     Uli̲e̲   *Ta̲* *ke-ge*   *he-hegi-e-l-i.*   *Ifi̲=be*   *a̲=me ke-le*   *dala,*
     cicada   talk that-VBR RED.PL-show-RED.PL-IRR-NFUT today=TOP 1S=TOP that-A.LOCR   be/have

     haba   *fula* *ta* **ka̲=ha̲=ge**   *lesson*   *15 ke̲*   *he-hegi-e-l-i*
     but.PFV.IRR week INDF that=GEN=F.CNTR lesson 15 that RED.PL-show-RED.PL-IRR-NFUT
     'Now I am teaching lesson 14, p. 32, as well as Big Book lesson 6 "The story about the Cicada". Now I am there, but next week **at that time** (I) am teaching lesson 15 ...'

1497) *Nele hagua-l-e=be*   *date 3o* *4* **ka̲=ha̲=ge**   *nele Edolo=ko̲û hagua-ma. ...*
     2DU come-IRR-FUT=TOP date 3 or 4 that=GEN=F.CNTR 2DU Edolo=LOC come-DU/PL ...

     Friday   *5* **ka̲=ha̲=ge**   *sisigo̲*   *prais*   *n̲e̲-me.*   *... A̲* *taga-l-i=be,*
     Friday 5 that=GEN=F.CNTR children prize give-HORT ... 1S like-IRR-NFUT=TOP

     dihi   *do*   *mala̲*   *Dahamo=ko̲û i-l-e,*   *Saturday*   *6* **ka̲=ha̲=ge.**
     child sickness get.IRR.FUT Dahamo=LOC go-IRR-FUT Saturday 6 that=GEN=F.CNTR
     'Concerning that you two will come, come to Edolo **on** the third or the fourth. ... **On** Friday the fifth let's give (the) prizes (to the school) children. ... I want to take the sick child and go to Dahamo **on** Saturday the sixth.'

  See also other sections about how to express time:

     5.2.3 FUNCTION OF THE NOMINAL PHRASE
     5.2.3.2.1 THE GENITIVE CASE: Genitive of time expressions
     5.2.3.2.2 THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE: Time

Locative marking

In its use as focusing in on a locative phrase, *=ge* works together with the locative adverb roots or with the locative case marker *=ko̲û*. The compound enclitic *=ko̲ûge* means 'from' in some contexts, but often it just means a general 'point of departure' for a certain story or conversation (see 5.2.3.2.4 THE PSEUDO ABLATIVE CASE).

1498) *hebe ... e̲ hu̲=be* **diogo**   *ka̲=ha̲*   *sugu̲+to̲û=ge*
     tree ... 3S name=TOP tree.sp. that=GEN top+up=F.CNTR

     fiye   *sa̲-i*   *sasa=do*   *ka̲=ha̲*   *migi-mo̲û*   *dugu.*
     thread twine-NFUT long/tall=INT that=GEN come.down.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT
     '... (a) tree ... its name (is) "**diogo**", **from its top** (they) saw that very long rope come down.'

1499) *Ei*   **Dulo**   *o̲*   *ko=ko̲û=ge,*   *James=bo̲û Asele=bo̲û ei*
     1PL.EX   Dulo   mouth.of.river   that=LOC=F.CNTR James=and Asele=and 1PL.EX

     so *ti-l-e*   *igiya-i*   *sulugua-l-i*   *du*
     dog call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT walk.around-IRR-NFUT   hear.NFUT
     'We (excl.), **at the mouth of the river Dulo**, (i.e.) James, Asele and I called up (the) dogs and went; we walked around until (we) heard ...'

---

[204] Community Health Worker.

1500) ***Sa*** *hu̱* ***Huo***   ***sou=kôu=ge***   *to̱*   *ka=ha̱* *e̱*   *sou=kôu=be*
       land name Huo   source=LOC=F.CNTR   river that=GEN 3s   source=LOC=TOP

       de̱i   *hiye ke-le*   *mufoko=bôu*   *duwo.*
       old.man big that-A.LOCR white.hair=and sit

       '**At** (the) **place named the** "**Source of Huo**", that is the source of that river, there (an) important old man with white hair lives.'

1501) *sa*   *e̱* *hu̱=be* *Towala=kôu,* *ôu*   *ha-i*   *ko=kôu=ge*
       land 3s name=TOP Towala=LOC   sago cut-NFUT   that=LOC=F.CNTR

       wai *ta* *so* *ka=ha̱* *tigo-u-môu*   *du.*
       pig INDF dog that=GEN bark-NFUT-PFV   hear-NFUT

       '... at (a) place called Towala, **at that** (place of the) **cut down sago** (palm), (I) heard the dog bark at a pig. '

1502) *Afu=do*   ***Tinahai=kôu=ge***   *duwo-l-i*   *dugu=be,*
       today=INT Tinahai=LOC=F.CNTR sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP

       a̱=me hegie   *dege-i-môu dugu.*
       1s=TOP hungry do-NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       'Earlier, (I) was **in Tinahai** until (I) realised I was hungry.' (Mountain dialect)

1503) *Dilie* ***sosi***   ***moso̱=kôu=ge***   *e̱sol*   *dugu.*
       3DU church house=LOC=F.CNTR   angel see.NFUT

       'The two of them saw (an) angel **in** (the) **church**.'

'Because', 'under the circumstances'

The conjunction-like use of *ko=kôu=ge* (that=LOC=F.CNTR) is definitely related to the locative use of *=kôu=ge* described in 5.2.3.2.4. The first example may in fact just as well be locative.

The conjunctive meaning of this word may be 'because' or 'under the circumstances'.

1504) *Jona* *aso̱ difi+ya*   *diogu.*   *E* ***ko=kôu=ge***   *fi+ma̱-i=be,*
       Jonah sun heat+road shade.NFUT 3s that=LOC=F.CNTR   soul+put-NFUT=TOP

       o *Niniba*   *tie*   *o*   *ke+dia̱=mokôu fi+ma̱-i*   *Godi=ha̱ dogôugu-môu dia̱*
       man Nineveh sleep man that+3PL=LOC   soul+put-NFUT God=GEN help.NFUT-PFV 3PL

       ifi   *bologua̱ duwo ke̱*   *fi+ma̱-i.*
       today good.do sit   that soul+put-NFUT

       'Jonah was shaded from (the) heat of (the) sun. **From that** (**circumstance**) he thought about the people living in Nineveh; (he) thought, while God is helping (them), they now do/sit well, (he) thought.'

1505) *Godi=ha̱ ta̱=be*   *tawa-ga-i*   *o* *ka=ha̱=nôu* *i-ba=si*   *bolo=fe̱i.*
       God=GEN talk=TOP know-DU/PL-NFUT man that=GEN=only go.NFUT-PFV.IRR=CNTR good=total

       Môu   *o=ye* *i-l-e=be*   *kôu*   *bolo=fe̱i=ye*   *ya-ba*
       nothing man=INS go-IRR-FUT=TOP prior good=total=OPT go.DU/PL.FUT-PFV.IRR

       ta=fe̱i   *totôu*   *dege-i=ye do-môu* ***ko=kôu=ge***=*nôu=fe̱i.*
       INDF=total   forgetfulness   do-NFUT=OPT PROV-PFV that=LOC=F.CNTR=only=total

       'But in contrast to (other people going), if (a) man who knows God's Word would go, it would be good. When men without (knowledge) would go, (thinking) beforehand (it) would be OK, it would not do, if **from that circumstance**, they having gone would be a bit stupid.'

8.5 Theme

In this grammar and applied to the Konai language, the term 'theme' only refers to arguments that are fronted. This means that in the clause, such an argument precedes another argument that it usually follows. This strategy is used to give background to a story that is just about to be told, and, on a lower level, give local prominence to certain arguments. See also 6.3 CLAUSES WITH THEME SLOTS.

Basic word order in Konai is SOV. However, there is a slot, preceding the subject, where any argument may go, including the subject (which in that case is repeated in one form or another in its proper place). In fact, this slot may be filled by several arguments, especially at the beginning of a discourse.

There is also a slot clause medially, to the right of the subject, to which the object may be fronted.

CLAUSE$_V$ →   (THEME)   (NPs)   (THEME)   (NP$_{INSTR}$/TEMP/LOC/MP)   (NPo)   VP ((NP/MP))

CLAUSE$_{NV}$ →   (THEME)   NP$_T$ NP$_C$

The theme slots are used for prominent, often new information, but sometimes you find known or given information there, marked by the topic marker =*be*.

Information that may go in the initial theme slot is main participant, time, location and the topic of that, which is going to be told. As said above, the first clause of any discourse often has one or more arguments in the initial theme slot (1513), (1514).

In examples (1509) and (1513), note that a fronted argument does not need to be in the same case or have the same number as when it occurs later in the clause.

Examples (1507), (1508) and (1509) have had their objects moved leftwards. The second of these three examples also has an initial theme slot, as pronoun copy is looked upon as a theme slot with an NP, followed by a pronoun, functioning as subject. The rest of the examples also show clauses with initial theme slots. The first example has a fronted object.

1506) **Oû**   o   hei=ye   ha-l-adi.
       sago   man   axe=INS   cut-IRR-PROS
       Theme   NPs   NP$_{INSTR}$ VP
       NPo

       '(The) **sago** (palm), (a) man is just about to cut (it) down with (an) axe.'

1507) **N̲a**   **kuguo**   Bimin=kôu   sa-gi-l-e.
       2S   paper   Bimin=LOC   put.inside-OF-IRR-FUT
       NPs   **Theme**   NP$_{LOC}$ VP
               NPo

       'You will send (a) **letter** to Bimin.' (implied: put inside (a mailbag to go on an airplane))

1508) **O**   e̲   **dabai**   di=mokôu   n̲e-i.
       man   3S   work   1PL.IN=LOC   give-NFUT
       Theme NPs   **Theme**   NP$_{LOC}$ VP
       NP   NPo

       '(A) certain **man** he gave **work** to us.'

1509) **da**   ifi   Godi=h̲a   **solôu=do**   da=mokôu   n̲e-i   ku-h̲e=yode   tobo-u.
       1DU.IN   today   God=GEN   heart=INT   1DU.IN=LOC give-NFUT   this-P.LOCR=IQV   say-NFUT
       Theme   NPs   **Theme**   NP$_{LOC}$ VP   MP=...
       NP +   MP$_{TEMP}$ NPo

       '..."(To) **us** (incl.) **today**, God has shown (his) **love** to us (incl.) here," (we) stated and said.'
       (a summary of a story)

1510) **Sio**   **isusu=be**   e̲   **hui=be**   **olôufei=do**   o   olôufei   taga-l-e   i-di.
       bird   pigeon=TOP   3S   meat=TOP   all.total=INT   man   all.total   like-IRR-FUT   go-HAB
       Theme   NPs   VP
       NP +   NPo

       '**Concerning the pigeon**, **regarding all its meat**, all people like (it).'

1511) **Na-l-e̲=be**   o=be   milôu-môu
       eat-IRR-FUT=TOP   man=TOP   work-PFV
       Theme   NPs   VP
       NPo

       '**Concerning food**, people are producing (it), ...'

1512)　**_Na-l-e_**　　　**_kôu_**=**_me_**　_e_　_hu_=_be_　　_subulu_=_bôu_　　　_wai_=_bôu_
　　　　eat-IRR-FUT this=TOP 3s　name=TOP　sweet.potato=and　pig=and
　　　　Theme　　　　　　　　NP_T　　　　NPc
　　　　NP

　　　'**Concerning this food**, its names are sweet potato and pig and ...'

1513)　**_A_**　　　**_afu_**　　　**_kôu-le_**=**_ge_**,　　　**_a_**=**_bôu_**　**_Yogu_**=**_bôu_**　_ele_
　　　　1s　　　earlier　this-A.LOCR=F.CNTR　1s=and　Yogu=and　　1DU.EX
　　　　Theme　　　　　　　　　　　　**Theme**　　　　　NPs
　　　　NP +　MP_TEMP +　MP_LOC +　　　　NP

　　　　_to_　　　_to-l-o_=_yode-ma_　　　　_i._
　　　　river　wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ　go.NFUT
　　　　NPo　VP=...　　　　　　　　VP

　　　'(When) **I** (was) **here some time ago**, **I and Yogu**, after we two had said that (we) were going swimming, (we) went.'

1514)　**_A_**　　　**_afu_**=**_do_**　　**_1995_**　**_holiday,_**　_a_　　_Debele_=_kôu_　_i._
　　　　1s　　　earlier=INT 1995　holiday　1s　　Debele=LOC　go.NFUT
　　　　Theme　　　　　　　　　　　　　NPs　NP_LOC　　　VP
　　　　NP +　MP_TEMP +　　NP_TEMP

　　　'**I, a long time ago, (during) the holiday of 1995**, I went to Debele.'

8.6 Background, foreground, peak and coda

These are the definitions of the four concepts described under this section:

- Foreground　- story line
　　　　　　　- what makes a story/discourse/text move forward

- Background　- what is needed to put the foreground material into a context
　　　　　　　- what is needed for what is being told or written to make sense

- **Peak**　　- highlight/climax of the story (part of the foreground; may be more than one)

- Coda　　　- what follows the peak

　Using the main story from each of the sections 8.2.1.2 MORE ON HEAD-TAIL LINKAGE and 8.2.3 DESCRIPTIVE DISCOURSE, I will show how the different parts of a discourse are signalled in a narrative and a descriptive story.

　In the last section under this heading, I will show how more background information may be added in a narrative and how to switch between background and foreground using an additional feature to what is presented in the first section below.

8.6.1 A narrative discourse example

In addition to the story presented in whole in this section, see also _Michael's hunting story_ in APPENDIX IV.[205]

Background information in a narrative is characterised by:

- the initial theme slot of the clause at the beginning of the discours　　8.5 THEME
　to introduce main participants and set the time and location of the story

- head-tail linkage (doubly underlined)　　　　　　　　　　　8.2.1 ... HEAD-TAIL ... LINKAGE

Foreground is characterised by:

- many individuated plural forms of the verb　　　　　　　　4.1.6.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL

- many clauses with final verb forms in the middle of a sentence　　6.1.4 ... FINAL CLAUSES ...
　otherwise made up of medial clauses

　A **peak** is usually not preceded by head-tail linkage. The **coda** follows immediately on the peak and usually starts a new paragraph, in many cases with _kegemôu_ 'then/having become like that'.

　Foreground information, presented as one sentence followed by another, is as a rule preceded by background information in the form of the tail-end of a head-tail linkage starting each new sentence. There are three places in this story where a sentence is not started that way. The last of this is what I have called the peak, partly based on all the action oriented verbs. Perhaps the two previous places may be called mini-peaks.

---

[205] That story has very little H-T linkage and to my non-native speaker's ears/eyes gives the impression of extreme excitement.

A narrative: A story about killing a hornbill, by Kevin Gibi

A afu kôulege aboû Yogueboû ...   BACKGROUND
'When I was here some time ago, I and Yogu, ...'   initial theme slot of clause
                                                                     used for introduction

... ele to toloyodema i.   FOREGROUND
'... after we two had said (we) were going swimming (we) went.'   last verb is H in H-T

Ele kokoû yai. Yolugi ...   BACKGROUND
'We two went towards there. We went along until (we) …'   head-tail linkage

... dugube, hebe hiyedo ta tafala.   FOREGROUND
'... saw a big tree standing.'

Hebe kumaha fukoû dugu, dôuwa duwo.   PEAK (important lead)
'In (a) hole of this tree (we) saw; (a) hornbill sit.'

Duwomôu dugu ...   BACKGROUND
'(We) saw (her) sitting (there); ...'   head-tail linkage

... fogoûmôu i.   FOREGROUND
'... leaving (we) went.'

Ele Koloukoû milôumôu dugube, to gihou.   PEAK (turning point in story)
'We two saw (the river) Konoun being busy, (the) river was in flood.'

To gihou dugumôu, ...   BACKGROUND
'Seeing (the) river being in flood, …'   head-tail linkage

... haba boholôuma haguasigei.   FOREGROUND
'... we after completely turning around (started to) come back again.'

Ma mogoha dugu ...   BACKGROUND
'My friend saw (it); ...'   head-tail linkage

... tobolôu, da dôuwa walaba imebeedei.   FOREGROUND
'... (he) said, "Let us two go for the purpose of killing (the) hornbill," (he) suggested.'

Ele hebe hagima, tigi kagimamôu digigile fologai.   PEAK
'After we two had cut sticks and cut vines, we tied them together
and went up (the) tree).'

Ele folo,   BACKGROUND
'We two went up and ...'   head-tail linkage

... dôuwa u dobogôu kasuguomôu, dôuwa tolôuma wala i.   PEAK (continued perhaps)
'... having inserted (our) hands (in the) hornbill hole, after
grabbing (the) hornbill we killed it.'

Kegemôu, *ele tobou, da ifi Godiha solôudo damokoû nei **kuhe**yode tobou.*   CODA
'**Having become like that**,[206] the two of us (excl.) said, "(To) us two (incl.) today,   H-T with **proverb** linking
God has shown (his) love to the two of us (incl.) **here**," (we) stated and said.'   adverb: **kuhe** 'here'

Godiha elemokôu solôudo nei.   CODA (continued)
'God gave (his) love to us two (excl.)'

Ele Godikôu hoho hiyedo degei.   CODA (continued)
'We two (excl.) are very pleased with God.'

---

[206] *Kegemôu* 'then/having become like that' is also a kind of H-T linking device, referring back to a longer passage and used to link
paragraphs in narratives (see 8.2.1.1 STRUCTURE OF NARRATIVES).

In the last sentence of another narrative, the adverb *kuhe* 'so' appears in the last clause. This is also typical towards the end of a narrative.

1515)   *Wai kama.fóu-móu,* <u>*a*</u>   *igi*   *to-l-óu,*   *igi=ye*   *wo-u-l-u-gi,*
         pig run.away-PFV 1s stone   hold-IRR-NPST stone=INS attack-BLTV-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

        wai *wala*   *dogogu-o* <u>*a*</u>   *mos<u>o</u>=kóu*   **kuhe**   *mal<u>a</u>*   *i.*
        pig attack.IRR.FUT put-FUT 1s house=LOC   so   get.IRR.FUT   go.NFUT

        '(The) pig running away, I grabbed (some) stones and attacked (the) pig with (the) stones until (I) attacked and put (it down), and **so** I took (it) and went home.'

8.6.2 A descriptive discourse example

Also in a descriptive discourse, there are two strategies, especially, that are used to mark background information:

- the **initial theme slot** of the clause is used throughout the discourse, often followed by pronoun copy of the subject
- the topic marker ={**be**}

Foreground information is characterised by:

- appearing in the comment slot of a topic comment clause
- short one-clause sentences

A descriptive discourse may start with presenting main participants, time and location in the first theme slot at the beginning of the story, as in the example below. However, it may also start with a few narrative sentences as in the examples at the end of this section, which are each the beginning of a descriptive story.

In the following story, as in any descriptive story, background information is fairly consistently marked by the topic marker ={**be**}. This particular descriptive story is divided into seven paragraphs, based on semantics. This includes the heading/introduction. Three of these paragraphs start with a noun with pronoun copy, all being part of a topicalised nominal phrase. The topic marker also occurs within the paragraph. Other descriptive stories have the same profusion of topic markers but not necessarily the pronoun copying.

If there is a **peak**, it may occur last, as in the story below, but it seems that a descriptive usually has no peak and no coda.

A descriptive: A story about building an airstrip, by Pastor Motousi Si[207]

A afu 1981- 82 Sepe o fele gabu milou ta.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'**Earlier (in) 1981-82, (at the) mouth of (the) river Smipen, I** worked (on the) airstrip, (a) story (about that)	**initial theme slot** of clause used for introduction

_____

To e hube Sepe o.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'**The river**, its name **is** (the) Mouth of Smipen.'	**initial theme slot**
	pronoun copy
__(paragraph break)_____	={**be**} 'topic marker'

Boû e hube Woodyard, Vance Woodyard,	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
eboû aboû Dipaiboû fele gabu milolôû i.	**initial theme slot**
'**The white man**, his name **is** Woodyard, Vance Woodyard,	pronoun copy
he and I and Dipai worked (on the) airstrip.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

Fele gabu sabe fofou hiyedo.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'The ground of (the) airstrip **was** really muddy.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

Habiya o sudo milolôû i.	FOREGROUND
'Many Aekyom people worked (there).'	

_____

Medigo o, e hube Someke.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'**The medical orderly**, his name **was** Someke.'	**initial theme slot**
	pronoun copy
	={**be**} 'topic marker'

O hu olôûfei nalai.	FOREGROUND
'(He) wrote (down) all (the) names of people (working there).'	

Eme bose.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'He **was** (the) boss.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

_____

Kege milolôû ibe, gusubu 8:00 ilemôû 12:00.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'We worked like that from 8 o'clock in (the) morning until 12.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

Mesiholo duwodi.	FOREGROUND
'(We) habitually rested.'	

1:00 bala wodi.	FOREGROUND
'(At) 1 o'clock (they) habitually hit (the) bell.'	

O olôûfei dabai degedi ibe domôû, habi 4:30 fogôû idi.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'Everybody worked until 4:30 in (the) afternoon, (when) leaving (they) habitually went.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

O olôûfei mosokôû idi.	FOREGROUND
'Everybody habitually went to (their) houses.'	

_____

Fele gabu a miloube, hiya olôûfeibe 2 years.	BACKGROUND/FOREGROUND
'The work I (did) building (the) airstrip went on for all of two years.'	={**be**} 'topic marker'

_____

Mei degei,[208] *fele fiyei.*	BACKGROUND/**PEAK** (perhaps)
'(Then it) was finished, (a) plane landed.'	

_____

[207] The story can be found interlinearised in APPENDIX III.

[208] *Mei dege* 'be finished' is a typical H-T link between paragraphs in procedural texts (see 8.2.2 PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE), even though the rest of this story is descriptive.

The two following examples show the first few sentences of two longer descriptive stories that both have narrative introductions.

1516)   *Pasta*   *Motosi=bôu*   *a̠=bôu+de*   *sa*   *Dahamo*   *tôufogôu*   *yo-l-u-gi,*
          pastor   Motousi=and   1s=and+PROV   land   Dahamo   leave   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

          Mende=kôu duwo de-ma,   *haba*   *hagu̠a-ma yo-l-u-gi,*   *sa*   *e*   *hu̠=be*
          Mende=LOC   sit   PROV-ISQ   but.PFV.IRR   rise-ISQ   go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   land   3s   name=TOP

          Ukarumpa=kôu   *mu-gua-i.*
          Ukarumpa=LOC   go.down-DU/PL-NFUT

          'Pastor Motousi and I left Dahamo, going on until Mende, after sitting down (there and) going up again, we went on until we went down at (a) place called Ukarumpa.'

First sentence following the above introduction:

          *Sawisie-i=**be***   *Tuesday*   *ka=ha̠*   *ko=kôu*   *fula*   *olôufei*   *kama+dia*
          be.day-NFUT=TOP   Tuesday   that=GEN   that=LOC   week   all.total   middle.finger+3PL

          ke-ge   *ko=kôu*   *duwe-i.*
          that-VBR   that=LOC   sit-NFUT

          'That day **was** (a) Tuesday, then (we) were there three weeks.'

1517)   *A̠*   *sa*   *Dahamo*   *tôufogôu*   *fene+ya*   *hague-i.*   *Sa*   *Ukarumpa=kôu*
          1s   land   Dahamo   leave   airplane+road   come-NFUT   land   Ukarumpa=LOC

          migi.   *Sasama*   *ka=ha̠*   *Ukarumpa=kôu*   *migi-l-e-môu,*   *tie-i*   *moso̠*
          come.down-NFUT   ring.finger   that=GEN   Ukarumpa=LOC   come-IRR-FUT-PFV   sleep-NFUT   house

          bolo=fei=do=kôu   *fele-i.*   *Ke-ge-môu*   *a̠*   *hoho̠*   *hiye=do*   *dege-i.*
          good=total=INT=LOC   go.up-NFUT   that-VBR-PFV   1s   light   big=INT   do-NFUT

          'I left Dahamo and came by plane. I came down at Ukarumpa. Having come down at Ukarumpa on (a) Tuesday, (I) entered (an) excellent sleeping house. So I was very happy.'

First sentence following introduction:

          Sa   *Ukarumpa=**be***   *sa*   *bolo=fei=do*   *sa.*
          land   Ukarumpa=TOP   land   good=total=INT   land

          'Ukarumpa **is** (a) very good place.'

8.6.3   A short summary of information structure in discourse

To summarize, we can see from the above two stories that background and foreground are not expressed the same in different types of discourse. I will present the differences in a chart and include procedural discourse as well even, if it has not been talked about in this section, but see 8.2.2 PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE.

	Background	**Foreground**	**Peak**	**Coda**
Narrative	discourse initial theme slot; frequent H-T linkage, breaking up storyline/foreground information	individuated plural; sent. medial FV; long sentences	less H-T linkage; many action verbs	follows peak; may start a new paragraph; *kuhe̠* 'here' *kuhe* 'so'
Procedural	discourse initial theme slot; regular H-T linkage and H-T linkage with *mei dege* 'finish'	short sentences	occurs last; semantic content	*kuhe* 'so'
Descriptive	discourse initial theme slot/ discourse initial group of narrative sentences; paragraph initial theme slot with =*be* (+pronoun copy); frequent use of ={*be*}	comment in topic comment clause; short one-clause sentences	none/ may occur last	none

8.6.4   Adding more background information in a narrative

The following story by Kevin Gibi has as much background as foreground information. Still it shows one way of switching between the two.

The background information here is different from what was described in the previous section. This story shows how to add explanatory background information and then switch back to foreground information again. The key phrase is the adverbial phrase *kelege* 'at that time'. That adverbial phrase is the "switch" between an explanation and the story line and vice versa. Starting the two pieces of explanatory background information *kelege* is marked by *=be* 'topic marker'. A suitable expression followed by the same adverbial phrase *kelege* 'at that time' starts the story and twice gets back to the story line.

Kôume ma̱ stori.
'This is my story.'

A̱ afudo huyadef̱ei kelege
'A long time ago, at the time I was little ...'

dagado gamani o kedi̱a hu̱ sôu̱ hagumôu dugu kaẖa stori.	FOREGROUND
'... I saw officials from another kind of governmen come to take a cencus; a story about that.'	

A̱ sabiyei ṯa
'I, one morning ...'

ma̱ aye ele duwogi dugube,	FOREGROUND
'my father and I, the two of us were (there) until (we) saw ...'	

gamani o kedi̱a bokisi ṯigigima hebema haguasieimôu dugu.
'... government officials coming carrying tied boxes.'

Kelegebe, *ifi dege kansolebôu komitibôude dala mei.*	EXPLANATORY BACKGROUND
'At that time, there were no councillors and committee men like (we) have today.'	

Mamosiyenôu dalamôu degei.
'There were only "tultul" officials.'

Gamani kedi̱a haguei sabiyei kelegenôube,
'On that morning (and) at the time when those government officials came, ...'

igiyogone haguei. Ḵenôusi a̱ gu̱e hiyedo degei.	FOREGROUND
'... a helicopter too came. But I was very afraid.'	

Kelegebe, *mamosi kedi̱ame kansole sag̱ai kege delei.*	EXPLANATORY BACKGROUND
'At that time, the "tultuls" officials were like councillors.'	

Godiẖa ṯa̱be hagueli mei kelege
'Before the word of God arrived, at the time, ...'

gamani o kedi̱a degei storibe keẖe.	FOREGROUND
'... those government officials did (this); that is the story there it is.'	

Ma̱ ṯabe ḵenôufei.
'My talk is enough.'

8.7 Participant reference

Participant[209] reference is a large part of discourse analysis and an important one. It has too easily been assumed that the way participant are referred to and tracked through a discourse is in some way universal. That is not true, as several studies of languages spoken in Papua New Guinea have shown. See for example Callister 1996 and Fast 1997 for two Austronesian examples and Årsjö 1994 and Feldpausch 1998 for two Papuan examples.

I am indebted to Robert Conrad (1984) and William Staley (2007/1995) for their pioneering in this field in SIL, PNG and for their support in studies of this kind.

Dooley and Levinsohn (2001) have given us a tool to analyse participant reference. I have used their method as a starting point in my study of participant reference. However, it proved to be insufficient to account for the Konai data in a straight forward way. They say themselves in the introduction of their book:

... our aim is introductory rather than comprehensive ... (ibid.:vii).

---

[209] In the term 'participant' I include non-humans, as well as inanimate things.

8.7.1 Dooley and Levinsohn's method of analysing participant reference

Dooley and Levinsohn's method (2001) of analysing participant reference in discourse may be outlined in seven steps:

- (1) draw up an inventory of referring devices in the language studied

- (2) make a chart of participant encoding (how participants are referred to) in a text

- (3) give each participant a number and track it through the text, making a note of each referring device used

- (4) identify the different contexts of every reference used for each participant; do subjects and non-subjects separately

- (5) list the contexts with their default referring devices

- (6) list where the referring device is more or less than default

- (7) identify a strategy of reference

As for what Dooley & Levinsohn means, by 'context' a longer quote follows. The contexts they define here, I will adapt to fit the Konai language in 8.7.4 CONTEXTS OF REFERRING DEVICES IN KONAI. The bolding of S1-S4, N1-N4 below is mine, as is the bolding of 'each clause or sentence'.

First of all, identify the context for each activated *subject* in the text. For **each clause or sentence**, identify which of the following contexts is applicable:

S1 the subject is the same as in the previous clause or sentence

S2 the subject was the addressee of a speech reported in the previous sentence (in a closed conversation ...)

S3 the subject was involved in the previous sentence in a non-subject role other than in closed conversation

S4 other changes of subject than those covered by S2 and S3

These four contexts are illustrated (below) ... The subject reference that fits the context concerned is bolded.

S1 The stranger entered the kitchen. **He** stole the foot.
S2 The boys asked the stranger, "Are you a thief?" **He** replied ...
S3 Hunger afflicted the stranger. **He** went to look for food.
S4 Then shame filled them. **The stranger** said to them ...

...

Now, identify the context for each activated *non-subject* in the text. For **each clause or sentence**, identify which of the following contexts is applicable:

N1 the referent occupies the same non-subject role as in the previous clause or sentence

N2 the addressee of a reported speech was the subject (speaker) of a speech reported in the previous sentence

N3 the referent was involved in the previous sentence in a different role than that covered by N2

N4 other non-subject references than those covered by N1–N3

The four contexts ... are illustrated (below) ... The reference that fits the context concerned is (bolded).

N1 he stole the foot. When he stole **the foot** ...
N2 he said to them ... The children answered **him** ...
N3 then shame filled them. The stranger said to **them** ...
N4 the stranger said, "Give me the foot!" The woman said to **her husband** ... (ibid:130-132).

8.7.2 Dooley and Levinsohn's method applied to Konai

In this grammar I will only account for steps 1, 5, 6 and 7 presented in the last section.

- (1) draw up an inventory of referring devices in the language studied
  (8.7.3 REFERRING DEVICES).

- (5) list the contexts with their default referring device
  (8.7.5 THE DEFAULT REFERRING DEVICE FOR EACH CONTEXT)

- (6) list where the referring device is more or less than default
  8.7.6.1 CATEGORIES OF PARTICIPANTS (see also 8.7.6.2 THE FAULTY DEFAULTS)

- (7) identify a strategy of reference
  (8.7.7 A STRATEGY OF REFERENCE FOR KONAI)

Step 2-4 were done on five stories, and the result will be presented as step 5. However, this step did not work well for Konai, which I will show below. That made step 6 superfluous, and it was replaced as indicated by the reference under (6) in the above list.

The most helpful step was the first one, making a list of all referring devices used in Konai. For each form I was able to add how these forms were used and that gave me most of the answers I was looking for in analysing participant reference.

I have also been able to identify a strategy of reference (step 7) in the above list.

8.7.3 Referring devices in Konai

The referring devices Dooley and Levinsohn (ibid:127-128) list are:

- nominal phrase (a noun with or without qualifiers)

- a free pronoun

- verbal affix

- zero

In Konai, it is better to be more detailed from the start.

Different kinds of participants
There are different kinds of participants. I am not talking about that a participant may be human, animate or inanimate. That is of course true, too. Regardless of animacy or lack of it, some participants are main participants, some are minor in a certain discourse. Some are even perceived to be negligible, but they are still part of the story; we call them props. In Konai some participants are important in themselves, regardless of their status in a certain discourse, and they are grammatically marked for their controlling power. God, government officials and fathers are in that category.

In Dooley and Levinsohn's method the different types of participants may be discovered when you get to analyse the reasons for a certain referent being marked as being more or less than the default marking in a certain context. However, if there are totally different strategies for major and minor participants, for example, the default will be skewed.

Here are the parameters that are important, when analysing participant reference in Konai. The two first ones are not in themselves important in tracing participants in a Konai narrative, but I include them here anyway, as, having decided how participant reference works, they do fit into the same system.

- referential/non-referential   the speaker has a **specific** entity in mind/
  the speaker has **any** of a certain class in mind

- generic/non-generic   reference to a **class** of entities/
  reference to a **specific** entity **within that class**

- known/unknown   **known in context** of discourse/**not known in context** of
  discourse

- indefinite/definite   ... an entity ... which is **not capable of specific identification**/
  a **specific identifiable** entity ... (Crystal 1985)

- major/minor/prop   **relative importance** of participants within the discourse
  in the discourse   see 8.7.6.1 CATEGORIES OF PARTICIPANTS

- important/unimportant   **importance in real life**,
  to the speaker/author   see 8.7.3.1 NP WITH THE CONTROLLING CASE MARKER $=hq$ 'GENITIVE'

Devices for tracing participants

With the different types of participants in mind, I have two lists of referring devices for Konai, one headed **Unit/Feature** and one headed **Marking on the nominal phrase**. Do **not** read across. **The two columns are separate.** The markings interact with the nominal phrase. In addition, the verbal suffixation interacts with the nominal phrase or with the lack of an explicit NP. A section on some of the major combination follows below.

In analysing participant reference, and making a note of a certain device of reference in a certain spot in the story, **it is the larger one that is noted**.

Also, in Konai, verbal suffixation for participants is not grammatically obligatory. It is very much a pragmatic feature, which the speaker/author uses to tell his story in a certain way. To trace participants is not its main function, but it can still give clues as to participant reference.

Unit/Feature		Marking on the nominal phrase[210]		
NP with a noun as head +/- modifiers	|	*=h̲a*	'control'	(=GEN)
NP with a pronoun as head	|	*ka=h̲a*	'the/that (agent)'	(that=GEN)
pronoun copy (NP$_{noun}$ +NP$_{pronoun}$)	|	*k̲e//kok̂ou*	'the/that//(to) the/that'	(that/that=LOC)
zero (no NP)	|	*ke+di̲a/dilie*	'those (two)'	(that+3PL/3DU)
verbal suffix:	|	*=ye*	'instrumental'	(=INS)
plural subject	|		'non-controlling agent'	
plural object	|	*=ge*	'contrastive focus'	(=F.CNTR)
zero: singular/neutral as to participant	|	*t̲a*	'a'	(INDF)
switch-reference & switch of scene	|	zero	according to context	(no marking on NP)
(see 7.3.1)	|			

8.7.3.1 NP with the controlling case marker *=h̲a* 'genitive'

A participant functioning as agent and being perceived as being in control, is marked by the genitive case marker *=h̲a*, attached directly to the proper name or kinship term referring to that agent. (See 5.2.3.2.1 THE GENITIVE CASE.) This is how God and Jesus as agents are always referred to. There are three points pertinent to this case marker:

- the agent being referred to needs to be **known by all** in the speech situation
- does **not** occur on a **pronoun**
- only occurs with a **singular subject**

Participants often referred to with this case marker are the Trinity, fathers, older brothers and maternal uncles. They may or may not be main participants in the stories, where they are referred to in this way, but they are perceived as having a major influence on the proceedings.

Also, main participants referred to by a proper name quite often occur in this case. It would seem that this case marker increases the transitivity of a story (see the connection to ergativity, towards the last part of the section on the genitive case referred to above).

In the following example a teenage boy tells how he went hunting with two of his maternal uncles.

1518)   *James=b̂ou Asele=b̂ou ei   so t̲i-l-e   igiya-i   ... **Asele=h̲a** hebe*
         James=and   Asele=and   1PL.EX dog call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT ... Asele=GEN tree

         *sug̲u+t̂ou tafala-l-i,   ... **De=h̲a**   t̲aha-l-e̲+m̲a-m̂ou*
         top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT... maternal.uncle=GEN shoot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV

         '... James, Asele and I called up (the) dogs and went; ... **Asele** was standing up in (a) tree top until ... **Uncle** (James) having shot and killed (it) ... '

---

[210] The meanings of the different enclitics and words stated here are the meanings applicable to participant reference.

The next example involves a community health worker.

1519) *Mola=be*   *o*   *olôufei*   *do*   *dege-i-môu=be*   *i-l-e,*
       medicine=TOP man   all.total   sickness   do-NFUT-PFV=TOP   go-IRR-FUT

       ... medigo=ha   *mola*   *ne̱-i-môu*   *no̱-u-môu=be,*
       ... medical.worker=GEN medicine give-NFUT-PFV   eat-NFUT-PFV=TOP

       o   *ke̱=me*   *do*   *bolo̱*   *dege-di.*
       man   that=TOP sickness   good   do-HAB

       'Concerning medicine, all people, when (they) are sick, ... **the medical worker** gives medicine, (and) when (the sick person) eats (it), that person gets well (from his) sickness.'

The following example is part of the conclusion of a story about a successful hunt.

1520) *Ke-ge-môu,*   *ele*   *tobo-u,*
       that-VBR-PFV   1DU.EX   say-NFUT

       Da   *ifi*   **Godi=ha**   *solôu=do*   *da=mokôu*   *ne̱-i*   *ku-he̱=yode*   *tobo-u.*
       1DU.IN   today   God=GEN   heart=INT   1DU.IN=LOC   give-NFUTthis-P.LOCR=IQV   say-NFUT

       'Having become like that, the two of us (excl.) said, "(To) us (incl.), today, **God** has shown his love to us here," (we) stated and said.'

8.7.3.2 NP with different forms of the demonstrative pronoun *ke̱* 'that'

There are four forms of the demonstrative pronoun *ke̱* that is used within the nominal phrase to refer to participants:

- *ka=ha*   'that (agent)'   (that=GEN)   minor participants in agent position without a proper name
- *ke̱/kokôu*   'that/(to) that' (that/that=LOC) minor participants in non-agent positions without a proper name
- *ke+dia̱*   'those'   (that+3PL)   plural major and minor participants in agent and non-agent position
- *ke̱+dilie*   'those two'   (that+3DU)   dual major and minor participants in agent and non-agent position

1521) *Rumginae=kôu*   *Tom*   *ele*   *kos*   *i.*   *Kos*   *mei* *dege-i*   *Friday.*
       Rumginae=LOC   Tom   1DU.EX   course   go.NFUT   course   NEG   do-NFUT   Friday

       Saturday   *kalo*   *sa+ma̱,*   *Kiunga=kôu*   *ya-i.*
       Saturday   car   put.inside+put   Kiunga=LOC   go.DU/PL-NFUT

       Kalo dalawa   *ka=ha*   *tobo-u*
       car driver   that=GEN   say-NFUT

       'Tom and I went to (a) course in Rumginae. The course finished on Friday. On Saturday we got into (a) car and went to Kiunga. **The car driver** said, ...'

1522) *ei*   *... du,*   *so*   *tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*   *fo̱ukua* *igiya-i*   *folo-ga-môu*
       1PL.EX ... hear.NFUT dog bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   run   go.DU/PL-NFUT go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV

       dugu,   **wai oye hiye=do ke̱**   *tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*   *dugu.*
       see.NFUT   pig male big=INT that   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT

       'We (excl.) … heard (the) dogs barking (and) immediately we ran on; having arrived (we) saw that they were barking at **that very big boar**.'

1523) **Sokôulôu sisigo̱**   *ke+dia̱*   *kefegu-o*   *dala-ba,*
       school   children   that+3PL gather-FUT   be/have-PFV.IRR

       bôu=ha   *poto*   *to-l-ôu.*
       white.man=GEN   photo   hold-IRR-NPST

       'When **the school children** will have gathered and are (there), (the) white man will take/grab (a) photo.'

1524) **Dabai dege-di o   bolo̱u ke̱+dilie ta̱   ke̱**   *du-l-o-môu,*
       work   do-HAB man two   that+3DU talk that   hear-IRR-FUT-PFV

       dilie=ne   *Yesu*   *sese-l-e*   *ya-i.*
       3DU=also   Jesus   follow-IRR-FUT   go.DU/PL-NFUT

       '**The two disciples** having heard **that talk**, the two of them, too, followed Jesus.'

More rare are the (almost) same kind of forms using the pronoun *kôu* 'this'. They would not be used in tracing participants in a discourse, but more in face to face conversations and in looking at pictures.

- *kôu=ma=ha*   'this (agent)'   (this=TOP=GEN)   for more information on these forms see:
- *kôu/kuo=kôu*   'this/(to) this'   (this//this=LOC)   4.8.2.1 THE DEM. PRON. *kôu* 'this' and *ke* 'that'
- *kôu+dia*   'these'   (this+3PL)
- *kôu+dilie*   'these two'   (that+3DU)

1525)   **Aso**   **kôu=ma=ha=ge**   *e*   *hoho*   *dege-l-i.*
         sun   this=TOP=GEN=F.CNTR 3S   light do-IRR-NFUT

         '**This particular sun** is shining.'(one of several pictures of suns)

1526)   *Jona=ha*   *mosole obôu*   *o*   *ke+dia*   **huei**   **wi**   *hiye=do* **kôu**   *hagu-l-u=be*
         Jonah=GEN ship   owner man that+3PL water wind   big=INT   this   come-IRR-NFUT=TOP

         yo=be   *a=mokôu.*
         base=TOP 1S=LOC

         'Jonah (said to) to the ship owners, "The reason for **this rain** (and) **wind** coming is because of me."'

1527)   **Moso**   **kôu**   *tege-i*   *o=be*   *Kiunga=kôu*   *i*   *dala.*
         house this build-NFUT man=TOP Kiunga=LOC   go.NFUT be/have

         'The builder of **this house** went to Kiunga; (he) lives (there).'

8.7.3.3 NP with the instrumental case marker =ye

The instrumental case marker is used to refer to an agent functioning as a prop in a discourse. A hunting dog is sometimes perceived as a prop. The husband in the expression 'a married woman' is a prop. Both are considered to be of no great importance but still necessary parts of the context: no hunting without a dog, and no married state without a husband.

1528)   *ma*   *abogôu ke-le*   **ôu**   **aye=ye**   *wo-môu*   *toto=nôu*
         1S.POSS foot   that-A.LOCR sago thorn=INS attack.FUT-PFV quickly=only

         fogôu   *igiya-i.*
         leave.for go.DU/PL-NFUT

         '... (a) **sago thorn** having got into my foot, leaving quickly we went.'

1529)   *dube,*   *kueya*   *dihi*   *susa-l-e*   *i-môu,*   *Asele ele*   *... bolou*
         hear=TOP cassowary child whistle.for-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV Asele 1DU.EX   ... two

         ke-ge   *to-l-ôu-môu,*   *ta*   **so=ye**   *sese-l-e*   *i-l-e*   *wala*
         that-VBR hold-IRR-NPST-PFV   INDF dog=INS   follow-IRR-FUT go-IRR-FUT attack.IRR.FUT

         no-u-môu   *dugu-o fogôu*   *igiya-i.*
         eat-NFUT-PFV   see-FUT leave.for go.DU/PL-NFUT

         '...(we) heard cassowary chickens whistle, (whereupon) Asele and I ... having got hold of two, (we) saw (the) **dog**s pursue and kill and eat one and leaving we went.'

1530)   *A*   *ma*   *sio*   *ayomôu dihi*   *su=do*   *ke=nôu=si*   **sagatai=ye**
         1S 1S.POSS bird fowl   child many=INT that=only=CNTR   hawk=INS

         wo+ma   *no-l-u-gi*   *mei dege-i.*
         attack+put eat-IRR-NFUT-DSQ NEG do-NFUT

         'I had many chickens, but (a) **hawk** killed them and ate (them) until (they) were (all) gone.'

1531)   *Sasai*   *... e=me* **o=ye**   **hu-l-o-môu**   *dele-i=be,*   *sadebe olôufei*
         woman ... 3S=TOP man=INS marry-IRR-FUT-PFV be/have-NFUT=TOP year   all.total

         dio-yosi   *ke-ge*   *mei dege-i.*
         bone/lower.arm-NUMR that-VBR NEG do-NFUT

         '(A) woman ... she had been **married** for seven years.'

1532)   **Sa**   *ta*   *o*   **sasai=ye**   *ni*   *sabe=kôu*   *folo-go-u-ba=be,*
         land INDF man woman=INS 2PL home.ground=LOC go.up-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP

         ni   *bologua=do*   *dia*   *dala-ma.*
         2PL good.do=INT watch.over be/have-DU/PL

         'If **people from another place** arrive at your place, look after them well.'

8.7.3.4 NP with the contrastive focus marker =*ge*

The general purpose of the contrastive focus marker =*ge* is to distinguish a certain actor from other actors. Sometimes this has a bearing on participant reference but not in the first example here, where these "other actors" are not part of the song text.

1533) *Yesu=ha̱   hagu-ba=be,   o   damale̱=yodi-l-i   mei ke+di̱a=ge*
       Jesus=GEN   come.NFUT-PFV.IRR=TOP man   true=IQV-IRR-NFUT NEG that+3PL=F.CNTR

       gese-i=be   hiye=do
       cry-NFUT=TOP big=INT

       '... when Jesus comes back, **the people who have not believed** will cry a whole lot...' (contrasted with the people who have believed)

However, =*ge* 'contrastive focus' has a special function in participant reference, in that it can pick up a pronominal reference functioning in a non-subject role and make it the subject in a following clause (1534), (1535).

1534) *A̱   e̱=moko̱u diho̱ baga̱   to̱bo̱u-mo̱u dugu,   haba   e̱=ge   a̱=me*[211]
       1s 3s=LOC   eye close.eye say-PFV   see.NFUT but.PFV.IRR 3s=F.CNTR 1s=TOP

       huyafe̱i dogo̱ugu-mo̱u
       little help.NFUT-PFV

       'As I closed (my) eyes and prayed/said **to him**, (I) saw, instead that **he** was helping me a little, ...' (Mountain dialect)

In the following example the object of the first sentence is implied.

1535) *A̱   diho̱ baga̱   to̱bo̱u-mo̱u=ne bolo̱=do. E̱=ge   igi-l-e*
       1s eye close.eye say-PFV=also good=INT 3s=F.CNTR remove-IRR-FUT

       fogo-u   sa̱   dege-mo̱u dugu-l-u.
       leave.for-NFUT likely do-PFV   see-IRR-NFUT

       'Also when I close (my) eyes and pray/say, it is good. I see that **He** may solve/throw out (problems).' (Mountain dialect)

For a more general description of how the contrastive focus marker =*ge* is used, see 8.4 FOCUS OF CONTRAST.

8.7.3.5 NP with the indefinite article *ta*

A referential, but non-specific, participant is introduced with the indefinite numeral *ta*, corresponding to the English indefinite article.

1536) *O   ta   e̱ sasa̱i dilie wai dia   dala.*
       man INDF 3s woman 3DU pig watch.over be/have

       '**A** man and his wife raised (a) pig.'

1537) *dilie o   ta   ta̱   tobo-u,*
       3DU   man INDF talk say-NFUT

       'the two of them said (to) **a** man, ...'

1538) *Afu   ma̱   aye=ha̱   o̱u   ta   ha-i.*
       earlier 1s.POSS father=GEN   sago INDF cut-NFUT

       'Some time ago my father cut down **a** sago (palm).'

1539) *Afu=do   ma̱   mo̱u   Domo   e̱ dibi=ko̱u   e̱ sasa̱i Semolo̱u=bo̱u,*
       earlier=INT   1s.POSS grandfather Domo   3s forest=LOC 3s woman Semoloun=and

       e̱ dihi ta̱ ma̱   odu o̱u=bo̱u, e̱ dihi ta   Pepson=ha̱   adio̱u=bo̱u,
       3s child INDF 1s.POSS father=and 3s child INDF Pepson=GEN   mother=and

       di̱a dibi=ko̱u   dele-i=be
       3PL forest=LOC be/have-NFUT=TOP

       'A long time ago in (the) bush, my grandfather Domo and his wife Semoloun and **a** child of his, my father, and **another** child of his, Pepson's mother, when (they all) stayed in (the) bush ...'

---

[211] Note the topic marker on the object; it was a subject in the previous clause.

1540)　*dugu, bei* **ta** **to** *ko=kôu ke-le* 　　　*duwo-môu ... Kama.fôu-môu*
　　　　saw　snake INDF river that=LOC that-A.LOCR sit-PFV　　…　run.away-PFV

　　　　dugu-o fogôu-môu 　　　*dugu, haba* 　　　*bei* **ta** *hebe*
　　　　see-FUT leave.for-PFV　see.NFUT but.PFV.IRR snake INDF tree

　　　　sugu tôu-gu-li=do 　　　　　*duwo-môu ... dia wala+ma-môu,* 　　　… *a miye*
　　　　top　up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR=INT sit-PFV 　… 　3PL attack.IRR.FUT+put-PFV … 1s fish

　　　　soso-l-ôu-gi, 　　　　*gibe* **ta** *taha-l-e* 　　　*hebe-l-e* 　　*fila-môu*
　　　　dive.for-IRR-NPST-DSQ fish.sp. INDF shoot-IRR-FUT carry-IRR-FUT throw.FUT-PFV

　　　　'... (we) saw **a** snake in the river there ... (We) saw it escape and leaving (we) also saw **another** snake being far up, right up there in (a) tree top ... when they had killed it ... I (started) diving for fish (and) continued until (I) had shot **a** "gibe" fish and carried (it) and having thrown (it) (up on the bank) ...'

Note, in the next example that *ta* 'indefinite' does not work with a relative clause.

1541)　*a dugu=be,* 　*mabi* 　*fo* 　*dege-i* **ke** 　*dugu.*
　　　　1s see.NFUT=TOP cloud white do-NFUT **that** see.NFUT

　　　　(*a dugu=be,* 　*mabi* 　*fo* 　*dege-i* ***ta*** *dugu.*)
　　　　(1s see.NFUT=TOP cloud white do-NFUT **INDF** see.NFUT)

　　　　'... I saw (a) white cloud. (literally: ... I saw (a) cloud **that** was white.)'

The indefinite article has another functions as well (see 4.4.2.4 THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE).

8.7.3.6 NP_Noun with zero marking

An unmarked nominal phrase with a noun as head is used a lot. Three important usages are:

- non-referential nouns, e.g. *miye* 'fish' in *miye susua* 'dive for fish'.
- "passive" minor participants
- non-subject props and some subject props

1542)　**miye bese** 　　　*i-l-i.*
　　　　fish angle.for go-IRR-NFUT

　　　　'... go **fishing**.' (non-referential)

1543)　*Hebe kôu=ma=ha fu=kôu* 　*dugu,* 　　**dôuwa** 　　*duwo. ... Ma* 　　　*mogo=ha*
　　　　tree this=TOP=GEN hole=LOC see.NFUT hornbill sit　… 1s.POSS friend=GEN

　　　　dugu 　*tobo-l-ôu,* 　　*da* 　**dôuwa** 　*wa-l-a-ba* 　　　　　　*i-me=be=ede-i.*
　　　　see.NFUT say-IRR-NPST 1DU.IN hornbill attack-IRR-SUBJ-PFV.IRR go-HORT=TOP=OQV-NFUT

　　　　Ele 　　… **dôuwa** 　*to-l-ôu+ma* 　　　*wala* 　　　　*i.*
　　　　1DU.EX … hornbill hold-IRR-NPST+put attack.IRR.FUT go.NFUT

　　　　'(We) saw a hole in this tree; (and there) sat (a) **hornbill**. ... My friend saw (it); (he) said, "Let us two go for the purpose of killing (the) **hornbill**," (he) suggested. The two of us (excl.) ... grabbed (the) **hornbill** and killed (it).' (passive minor participant)

1544)　*ei* 　**so** *ti-l-e* 　　　*igiya-i* 　　*sulugua-l-i* 　　　　*du,*
　　　　1PL.EX dog call-IRR-FUT go.DU/PL-NFUT walk.around-IRR-NFUT hear.NFUT

　　　　so *tigo-l-o* 　*i-môu* 　　*foukua igiya-i* 　　*folo-ga-môu* 　　　　*dugu,*
　　　　dog bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV run　go.DU/PL-NFUT come.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV see.NFUT

　　　　wai oye hiye=do ke tigo-l-o 　*i-môu* 　　*dugu.*
　　　　pig male big=INT that bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

　　　　'... we (excl.) called up (the) **dogs** and went; we walked around until (we) heard (the) **dogs** barking; (and) immediately we ran and went on; having arrived (we) saw that they were barking at that very big boar.'(prop)

1545)　*Huliame* 　　　**oguo** *hoho* 　*dege-l-i.* 　　*Hulia.me* 　*sasai dia*
　　　　darkness.TOP moon light do-IRR-NFUT darkness.TOP women 3PL

　　　　oguo *hoho* 　*dege-i-môu,* **miye bese** 　　　*i-l-i.*
　　　　moon light do-NFUT-PFV fish angle.for go-IRR-NFUT

　　　　'At night (the) **moon** is shining. At night, women, while enjoying (the) **moon**, go **fishing**.' (*oguo* 'moon': prop; *miye* 'fish': non-referential)

1546) ***O**=bôu* ***sasai**=bôu* *ôu* *ha* *i-l-i.*
      man=and woman=and sago cut go-IRR-FUT

'(A) **man and** (a) **woman** are going to cut down (a) sago (palm).' (first sentence of a procedural story;
o=bôu sasai=bôu '(a) man and (a) woman': probably non-referential; it could have been any man and his
wife; *ôu* 'sago (palm)': "passive" minor participant')

8.7.3.7 Pronoun copy

Pronoun copy is used for:

- introduction of main participant, but does not co-occur with a nominal marked by the controlling case marker
  =*ha* 'genitive

- reintroduction of main participant (1550), (1551), same limitation as above

As described earlier (8.5), there is an initial theme slot in the clause, which may among other things be used for
introduction of main participants. Pronoun copy is analysed with the help of this theme slot.

The use of pronoun copy cannot be illustrated by one or two examples but see the Gina text in APPENDIX III. In sentence
1, a certain unspecified man is introduced together with his wife as:

1547) ***O** **ta** **e** **sasai** **dilie** *wai* *dia* *dele-i*
      man INDF 3S woman 3DU pig watch.over be/have-NFUT
      Theme   **NPs** NPo VP   VP

'**A certain man and his wife**, **the two of them** raised pig(s).'

These people are the main participants of the story even though we never learn who they are. In sentence 5 the woman is
introduced alone as:

1548) ***Sasai** **e** *ôu* *ga-i*
      woman 3S sago gather-NFUT
      Theme **NP$_S$** NP$_O$ VP

'**The woman she** gathered sago.'

In sentence 6 another man is introduced in an indefinite object position. He is introduced again in the next sentence as a
subject with pronoun copy:

1549) *dilie* ***o** **ta** **ta** *tobo-u,* *...* ***O** **e** *o* *ka* *i.*
      3DU man INDF talk say-NFUT ... man 3S man look.for go.NFUT
      NPs NP$_O$ NP$_O$ VP   **Theme** **NP$_S$** NP$_O$ VP

'... the two of them told **another man$_2$** ... **The man$_2$ he$_2$** went to look for people.'

In the following example, from another story, grandfather Domo is introduced and re-introduced in the story with
pronoun copy.

1550) *Afu=do* ***ma** **mou** ***Domo** **e** *dibi=kôu* *... dele-i=be* *...*
      earlier=INT 1s.POSS grandfather Domo 3S forest=LOC ... be/have-NFUT=TOP ...
      Theme   **NP$_S$** NP$_{LOC}$ VP

      Dia *dibi=kôu* *dele-gua-l-i,* *ma* *mou* *Domo* *e* *mowi i-môu=be*
      3PL forest=LOC be/have-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT 1s.POSS grandfather Domo 3S hunt go.NFUT-PFV=TOP
      NP$_S$ NP$_{LOC}$ VP   **Theme**   **NP$_S$** NP$_O$ VP

'A long time ago, **my grandfather Domo he** was in the forest ... While they were in the forest, **my
grandfather Domo he** used to go hunting ...'

      Sawisie-i *ta,* *ma* *mou* *Domo* *e* *mowi* *i.*
      be.day-NFUT INDF 1s.POSS grandfather Domo 3S hunt go.NFUT
      Theme   **NP$_S$** NP$_O$ VP

'One day **my grandfather Domo he** went hunting. ...'

The following example is from a Big Book with drawn pictures with captions. It is a story describing the Victoria pigeon, i.e. it is generic. There are six pictures, and the text under each picture contains a pronoun copy just like a main participant would at any break in the story (see 8.7.6.1.4 REFERENTIAL & NON-REFERENTIAL AND GENERIC & NON-GENERIC).

1551)   *Kôu̲=me sio   miye.*
        this=TOP bird Victoria.pigeon
        'This is (a) Victoria pigeon. ...'

        Kôu̲=me sio   miye.
        this=TOPbird Victoria.pigeon
        'This is (a)Victoria pigeon. ...'

        Sio   miye   di̲a̲=me
        bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP
        '**Concerning the Victoria pigeons they** ...'

        Sio   miye   di̲a̲
        bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL
        '**Victoria pigeons they** ...'

        Ke̲=nôu̲=si   sio   miye   di̲a̲=me
        that=only=CNTR bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP
        'But **concerning the Victoria pigeons they** ...'

        Ke̲=nôu̲=si   sio   miye=be   ... Sio   miye   di̲a̲=me
        that=only=CNTR bird Victoria.pigeon=TOP ... bird Victoria.pigeon 3PL=TOP
        'But concerning the Victoria pigeons ... **Concerning the Victoria pigeons they** ...'

8.7.3.7.1 More about pronoun copy

The following sentence is the first sentence of a first person account. Note that the pronoun *a̲* 'I/me' occurs in both the initial theme slot and in the subject slot.

1552)   **A̲**   *afu=do   1995 holiday, **a̲** Debele=kôu i.*
        1s   earlier=INT1995 holiday 1s Debele=LOC go.NFUT
        Theme   **NPs** NP_LOC   VP
        '**I**, a long time ago, (during) the holiday of 1995, **I** went to Debele.'

In the next example, the pronoun in the first theme slot agree in person but not in number with the second theme slot and the subject slot.

1553)   **A**   *afu   kôu-le=ge   a̲=bôu   Yogu=bôu   ele*
        1s   earlier this-A.LOCR=F.CNTR   1s=and Yogu=and   1DU.EX
        Theme   **Theme**   **NPs**

        to̲   to-l-o=yode-ma   i.
        river wash-IRR-FUT=IQV-ISQ go.NFUT
        NPo   VP=...
        '(When) **I** (was) here some time ago, **I and Yogu**, after **we two** had said that (we) were going swimming (we) went.'

The next example is from a quote at the end of a story. There the pronoun in the theme slot does not agree in case with when the pronoun comes back later in the clause as a NP_LOC.

1554)   *Ke-ge-môu   ele   tobo-u,*
        that-VBR-PFV   1DU.EX   say-NFUT

        da   *ifi   Godi=ha̲ solôu=do **da̲=mokôu** ne̲-i̲   ku-he̲=yode   tobo-u.*
        1DU.IN today God=GEN heart=INT 1DU.IN=LOC give-NFUT this-P.LOCR=IQV say-NFUT
        Theme   NPs   Theme   **NP_Loc**   VP   MP=...
        'Having become like that, the two of us (excl.) said, "(To) **us** (incl.) today, God has shown his love **to us** here," (we) stated and said.'

A common way to introduce self and one or more persons is to mention the other person(s) by name or kinship term and then add a first person dual or plural pronoun, which also qualifies as pronoun copy.

1555) *Afu=fei*   ***Asika   ele***
        earlier=total Asika 1DU.EX
        'A long time ago, **Asika and I** ...'

1556) ***James=bôu Asele=bôu   ei***
        James=and Asele=and 1PL.EX
        '... **James, Asele and I** ...'

Rarely, you may also hear this kind of pronoun copy, where the pronoun functions as a co-ordinator.

1557) ***John   dilie Yesu   dilie***
        John 3DU   Jesus 3DU
        '... John **and** Jesus ...'

8.7.3.8 Free pronouns

Free pronouns are used:

- to trace main participants
- to trace those referred to by their proper names in the genitive/control case (see *The Ronny text* at the end of this section; see also 8.7.3.1 NP WITH ... =*ha*)
- clarifying additional information also for minor participants

Pepson's clan legend

To show that free pronouns are used to trace main participants, I will use the same story as I did in 8.2.1 NARRATIVE DISCOURSE: INTRODUCING HEAD-TAIL AND OTHER TEMPORAL LINKAGE, but instead show how free pronouns are used to trace main participants. There are two: the ancestors and a child. The ancestors are marked in red. The child is marked in blue. All reference are colour coded that way, but the free pronouns are bolded. (It may be argued that the child is a minor participant, but see the discussion under *the Gina Text* below in this section.)

Note that only the main participants are traced by pronouns. A minor participant (a tree) and props (rain & thunder, thread, small stringbag, wife, children) are traced by repeating the noun/NP.

Following this long example, I will repeat a bit from the fourth, fifth and sixth lines to show how additional information about a minor participant (a tree marked in brown) is added by using a pronoun with possessive meaning (1559).

1558) *Dibiye   Hiyadibi   hu+ti   ke+dia   fua   fele-i   ta*
        Thunder   Hiyandibi name+call that+3PL break.open come.up-NFUT talk
        'The story about the origin of the Thunder Hiyandibi Clan ' (heading)

       Afu   afu=do   kôuguai   ke+dia   dele-i.   Dala-l-i,   ta
        earlier earlier=INT ancestors   that+3PL be/have-NFUT be/have-IRR-NFUT INDF

       sabiye-i   habi   dege-i-môu,   huei=bôu,   dibiye=bôu   hiye=do dege-i.
        be.morning-NFUT afternoon do-NFUT-PFV   water=and   thunder=and big=INT do-NFUT

       Dibiye   hiye=do fu-fuo-u-môu,   dia baha duwo-gua-l-i   dugu=be,
        thunder big=INT   RED.PL-break.open-NFUT-PFV 3PL look sit-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP

       hebe hiye=do sasa=do,   e   hu=be   diogo   ka=ha   sugu+tôu=ge
        tree big=INT tall/long=INT   3S name=TOP tree.sp. that=GEN top+up=F.CNTR

       fiye   sa-i   sasa=do   ka=ha   migi-môu   dugu.
        thread twine-NFUT   tall/long=INT that=GEN come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       Migi-môu   dugu=be,   fiye   sa-i   ke=me   ye   dihi
        come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP thread twine-NFUT that=TOP stringbag child

       gomogu=bôu   migi-môu   dugu.
        knot=and   come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       'A very long time ago, the ancestors lived. (They) lived until one day in the afternoon, there was a lot of rain and thunder. While (the) thunder kept crashing, **they** sat (there) waiting until (they) saw that from the top of (a) very big, tall tree, **its** name is "diogo", that very long rope came down. While seeing (it) come down, (they) saw (a) small stringbag tied to the rope coming down with (it.)'

Ke-ge-mo͡u, **dia** *ye*   *dihi*   *ke*   *tu-l-o-mo͡u*   *dugu=be,*
that-VBR-PFV 3PL stringbag child that remove-IRR-FUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP

dihi   *ta*   *sa-l-a-mo͡u*   *dugu.*
child INDF put.inside-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   see.NFUT

'Having become like that, **they**, having removed the small stringbag, saw that a child must have been put inside.'

Ke-ge-mo͡u, **dia** *dihi*   *ke*   *fo-fo-l-o͡u*   *dala-l-i,*   *hiye dege-i. Hiye*
that-VBR-PFV 3PL child that RED.PL-run-IRR-NPST   be/have-IRR-NFUT big do-NFUT big

dege-mo͡u, *e* *sasai*   *hu-l-o,*   *dihi*   *su=do*   *mo-u.*
do.FUT-PFV 3S woman marry-IRR-FUT child many=INT get-NFUT

'Having become like that, **they** raised the child until (he) was grown up. Having grown up, **he** married and had many children.'

Ke-ge-mo͡u, **dia** *e* *hu+ti=be*   *Dibiye*   *Hiyadibi=yode-i.*
that-VBR-PFV 3PL 3S name+call=TOP Thunder   Hiyandibi=IQV-NFUT

'Having become like that, **they** called **his** clan Thunder Hiyandibi.'

Dibiye   *Hiyadibi*   *hu+ti*   *fua*   *fele-i*   *ta*   *ke=no͡u=fei.*
Thunder Hiyandibi name+call break.open come.up-NFUT talk that=only=total

'That is the whole story of (the) Thunder Hiyandibi clan.' (conclusion)

I am repeating a segment of the above example in the next example. Note the free pronoun with possessive meaning used to add additional information about a minor participant, the tree.

1559) *dia baha duwo-gua-l-i*   *dugu=be,*   *hebe hiye=do sasa=do,*
        3PL look sit-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT tall/long=INT

e *hu=be*   *diogo*   *ka=ha*   *sugu+to͡u=ge*   *fiye*   *sa-i*   *sasa=do*
3S name=TOP tree.sp. that=GEN top+up=F.CNTR   thread twine-NFUT tall/long=INT

ka=ha   *migi-mo͡u*   *dugu.*
that=GEN come.down.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT

'...they saw that from the top of (a) very big, tall tree, **its** name is "diogo", that very long rope came down.'

The Gina text
Looking again at *The Gina text* in APPENDIX III, the man and his wife are introduced with pronoun copy in sentence 1 and maintained by using the pronoun *dilie* '3DU' in sentence 3, 4, 6 and 10 even though other participants intervene, but none in dual form.

In sentence 9 *o sudo* 'many people' are introduced without pronoun copy which indicates that they are not main participants yet. In sentence 10 they come back as *o kedia*... 'people' After that a free pronoun *dia* '3PL' is used to refer to them.

Comparing *o sudo* 'many people', in the Gina text, with *dihi* in the clan legend above, I find that these two participants seemingly change status, starting out as minor participants (see 8.7.6.1.2 MINOR PARTICIPANTS) and ending up as major (see 8.7.6.1.1 MAIN PARTICIPANTS).

1560) *O*   *su=do*   *... o*   **ke+dia**=*moko͡u* ... **dia** *...* **dia** *...* **dia** *...* **dia** *...* **die**
        man many=INT ... man that+3PL=LOC   ... 3PL ... 3PL ... 3PL ... 3PL ... 3PL.POSS
        'Many people ... to the people ... they ... they ... they ... they ... their ...'

1561) *dihi*   *ta*   *... dihi*   **ke**   *...* *e*
        child INDF ... child that ... 3S
        '... a child ... that child ... he ...'

The Ronny text
From *The Ronny text* in APPENDIX III, we can learn that a participant in the genitive case (sentence 5) may be referred to with a pronoun (sentences 8 and 10). However, at the end of this story the speaker gives praise to God for his help. Using God's name, it occurs twice in the genitive case and three times in the locative case in one short paragraph (sentences 16-19). It is not replaced by a pronoun, and that seems typical. In the Lowland dialect, God is just not referred to by a pronoun. I found one pronominal reference to Jesus in another story, and that had a possessive meaning. In two Mountain dialect stories, I did find God's name replaced by pronouns.

8.7.3.8.1 More about the use of free pronouns

Free pronouns are used to trace main participants, but not every clause, where a main participant is the understood subject, has an explicit free pronoun. In many places there is zero (see 8.7.6 HOW PARTICIPANT REFERENCE WORKS IN KONAI).

A free pronoun tracing a main participant tends to occur in the following positions:

- at the change of a main participant
- at the start of a new paragraph
- following background information
- following a quote

_____

Another rule of thumb:

- the more exciting and action orientated a story, the less pronouns

8.7.3.9 Plural and singular verb forms

The use of singular versus plural verb forms is not primarily used to trace participants, though the one indicating a dual or plural subject may serve that purpose, too (1564). The possible forms are:

- **verb** indicating dual/plural subject   see 4.1.6.2 INDIVIDUATED PLURAL
- **verb** indicating plural object   see 4.1.6.4 PLURAL OBJECT
- verb singular/neutral as to participant   see 4.1.6.3 GROUP PLURAL

Verbs of perception seldom occur in plural form.

1562) *ei   ... du,   so tigo-l-o   i-moû   foukua igiya-i   folo-ga-moû*
       1PL.EX ... hear.NFUT dog bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV run   go.DU/PL-NFUT go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV

       dugu,   wai oye hiye=do ke tigo-l-o   i-moû   dugu.
       see.NFUT pig male big=INT that bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

       '…we (excl.) heard the dogs **barking** (and) immediately we ran and **went** on; **having arrived** (we) saw that they **were barking** at that very big boar.'

1563) *Wai gisiga   toû+ma igiya-i,   ta-le=koû   dogogu-o fogoû,*
       pig drag.DU/PL.FUT hold+put go.DU/PL-NFUT river-A.LOCR=LOC put-FUT   leave.for

       haba   bi   hebe-se-i   ka   sulugua-l-i
       but.PFV.IRR thing carry-DU/PL-NFUT look.for   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

       dugu-o-moû moû+ma hagua-sie-i
       see-FUT-PFV get+put   come-DU/PL-NFUT

       'We **dragged and held** (the four legs of the) pig **and went**; putting and leaving (it) in the river, we again **walked around** to look for (the) things (we) **had thrown** (aside) **until** having found/seen (them), we **got it all** and **came**; ...'

1564)   *A Megi o=kôu   tafala de-ma   i-l-e,   Biangabip=kôu folo*,
         1s Megi mouth.of.river=LOC stand PROV-ISQ go-IRR-FUT Biangabip=LOC go.up.FUT

         moso togo=yede-i-môu, moso ke   togo-l-o   dele-i.   Togo-ma
         house make=OQV-NFUT-PFV house that build-IRR-FUT be/have-NFUT make-ISQ

         awa   dio   so   igiya-i.   Kebe   ilo   ke-le=bôu
         black.palm bone remove go.DU/PL-NFUT a.people.group part that-A.LOCR=and

         ei   olôûfei   folo-ga,   awa   dio   so+ma   dumu-môu,   môu+ma
         1PL.EX all.total go.up-DU/PL.FUT black.palm bone remove+put finish.NFUT-PFV get+put

         hagua-sige   fele-ga-i.   Môu tu-l-a   tafala-gi dugu,   ma
         come-DU/PL.FUT come.up-DU/PL-NFUT get go.up.river-IRR-SUBJ stand-DSQ see.NFUT 1s.POSS

         yetou   kolo bili-gi-ma fogôu-môu,   a dabai dege-l-e   dafa=yode-i.
         shoulder skin peel-OF-ISQ leave.for-PFV 1s work do-IRR-FUT be.tired.of=IQV-NFUT

         'After staying at (the) mouth of (the river) Megi, I went (on) and arrived in Biangabip, and (they) telling (me) to (help) build (a) house, (I/we) kept on building the house. After building (i.e. putting up the frame), we **went** to remove strips of black palm. Some Kebe (people), too, we (excl.) all **went up/arrived**, and finishing **removing** strips of black palms, we **got it all** and **came and arrived** (back). (I was) standing for the purpose of going up-river to get (the black palm) until seeing (that) (the) skin (on) my shoulder after peeling was coming off, (and then I) said I was tired of doing work.'

8.7.3.10   Participant reference, switch-reference and switch of scene

In addition to the referring devices, and to a certain degree to the number marking on the verbs, there are the switch of reference and the switch of scene markings.

Part of the **switch-reference** system is marked by the last stem vowel in a medial verb. Event verbs are marked differently from existential state verbs. Simultaneous versus sequential time is marked in the same systems. Below are a few rules. For a full description see 7.3.1.1 SWITCH OF REFERENCE.

Event verbs

- same subject + sequential time   last stem vowel is low: *e, o* or *a* + new clause
- different subject + simultaneous time   last stem vowel is high: *i* or *u* + new clause

Existential state verbs

- different subject + simultaneous time   last stem vowel is low: *a* or *o* + new clause

Switch of scene (7.3.1.2), in a past tense discourse, is marked by the medial suffix -*môu* 'perfective'. It has two functions:

- marks a switch of subject in the next clause
- marks a switch of scene in the next clause, e.g. the beginning of a new series of events

This means that -*môu* does not necessarily signal a new subject; the subject may be the same, but a new scene is developing with the same subject.

In addition, a final verb may also indicate that a new subject will follow.

1565)   *a to   to-u-l-u-gi,   miye ta   dugu.   ... A dugu-**o-môu***
         1s river wash-BLTV-IRR-NFUT-DSQ fish INDF see.NFUT ... 1s see-FUT-PFV

         taha-i,   to-l-o   i-môu,   mala   hebe-l-e   fele,
         shoot-NFUT die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV get.IRR.FUT carry-IRR-FUT come.up.FUT

         diou-mi+du   sa-gi.
         canoe-place+inside put.inside-OF.NFUT

         '... I was swimming along until (I) saw a fish, ... Having seen (it), (**same subject**) I shot (it); (**different subject**) as soon as (it) died, (**different subject**) (I) took and carried (it) and came up and put it inside (the) canoe.'

1566) *kueya   hu̱e̱i   nala̱   ʈafala-mo͡u dugu.*
       cassowary water   eat.IRR.FUT stand-PFV see.NFUT

'... (a) cassowary standing drinking water (**different subject**) (I) saw.'

... dugu   kueya   ʈo-l-o   i.
... see.NFUT cassowary die-IRR-FUT go.NFUT

'... (I) saw (**different subject**); (the) cassowary had died.'

Tila-mo͡u   dugu,   ke-ge-mo͡u   a̱ hoho̱ hiye=do dege-i.
lie.down-PFV see.NFUT that-VBR-PFV 1s light big=INT do-NFUT

'... (The cassowary) lying down (**different subject**) I saw; then I was very happy.'

8.7.4 Contexts of referring devices in Konai

Applying the Dooley and Levinsohn method for participant reference (see 8.7.1) to Konai, it seems best to use the sentence as the basic unit for contexts. A sentence in Konai consists of one to several clauses and ends with a final clause **with falling intonation**. The longest sentence observed has about twenty clauses. An average number of clauses per sentence may be four or five.

The categories S2 and S3 are considered to be the same, as are N2 and N3. Six new categories have been added, as can be seen below: Sintro, S0, S03, Nintro, N0 and N03.

Subject roles:

Sintro	introduction of participant in subject position
S0	the subject is the same as in a **previous clause** within the same sentence
S03	the subject was involved in a previous clause within the same sentence in a non-subject role
S1	the subject is the same as in any clause in the **previous sentence**
S3	the subject was involved in any clause in the previous sentence in a non-subject role
S4	other changes of subject than those covered by S0, S03, S1 and S3

Non-subject roles:

Nintro	introduction of participant in non-subject position
N0	the referent occupies the same non-subject role as in a **previous clause** within the same sentence
N03	The referent was involved in a previous clause within the same sentence in a different role
N1	the referent occupies the same non-subject role as in any clause in the **previous sentence**
N3	the referent was involved in any clause in the previous sentence in a different role
N4	other non-subject references than those covered by N0, N03, N1 or N3.

8.7.5 The default referring device for each context

Having defined the context most suitable for the Konai language, I looked at five stories and saw what referring devices were used for each context.

Note that in this section of the grammar, nominal phrases with nouns and nominal phrases with a first or second person pronoun are counted as one group ($NP_{NOUN}/NP_{PRON1+2}$), while a nominal phrase with a third person pronoun (NP_{PRON3}) is a group by itself. The default for each context is bolded. Pronoun copy is listed under (NP+PRON).

Looking at the chart below, we see that a nominal phrase with a third person pronoun never came out as default. As this form has a definite use, as seen in 8.7.3.8 FREE PRONOUNS, this shows that this broad method of context analysis may not work very well for Konai.

The following are the defaults for each of the contexts defined in the last section:

Subject roles:

Context	verb only	NP_{PRON3}	$NP_{NOUN}/NP_{PRON1+2}$	NP+PRON
Sintro			**79%**	21%
S0	**80%**	3%	17%	
S03	**54%**		46%	
S1	**68%**	7%	25%	
S3			**100%**	
S4	9%	27%	**64%**	

Non-subject roles:

Nintro	13%		**87%**	
N0	**50%**		42%	8%
N03	24%		**76%**	
N1	43%	5%	**52%**	
N3	8%	23%	**69%**	
N4	14%		**86%**	

Part of the reason why this does not tell me much is, I'm sure, that I did not chart enough stories. The other part is, I am equally sure, that this method does not work well for Konai. I can, however, ask a few questions based on some of the above figures, before going on to the next section.

- who or what are the participants that get introduced with pronoun copy?

- how can a participant be introduced by zero, (i.e. a verb only (N_{intro}))?

- why are three of the contexts S03, N0, N1 about fifty-fifty between a verb and an NP as default?

I will go back to the list of referring devices and try to answer those and other questions (see also 8.7.6.2 THE FAULTY DEFAULTS.

8.7.6 How participant reference works in Konai
... or **reasons for more or less than default**

In this section I will show how participants are introduced and maintained, relying mostly on what I found out by listing the referring devices in all their different forms (see 8.7.3 REFERRING DEVICES IN KONAI). I will start with main participants and going on to minor participants and props.

8.7.6.1 Categories of participants

There are three categories of participants based on grammatical marking. In a story/text/conversation, the status of a participant may change as it progresses.

Grammatical features that are significant in deciding the importance of a certain participant are: personal pronouns, pronoun copy, the demonstrative pronoun *ke* 'that' and the case markers =*hg* 'genitive/control' and =*ye* 'instrumental/non-control'.

Nominal phrases work independently of verbal suffixes.

- main participant: refers to well defined participants, usually people, having an important role in a story

- minor participant: people or animals, even things like trees; not necessarily well defined, but having a fairly important role to play in part of the story

- prop: a thing or an animal considered by a speaker/author to be of no major importance to a story; may also be a person

Last under this heading I will talk about:

- referential versus non-referential
- generic versus non-generic

In stories about generic entities, these entities are treated as main participants. A non-referential entity is marked as a prop.

8.7.6.1.1 Main participants

These are the main referring devices for main participants being introduced and maintained. They are usually introduced in subject position in the first clause of a sentence.

	UNKNOWN	KNOWN	WELL KNOWN
INTRODUCTION:	(sg.) NP w. *ta* 'INDF'	NP	N=*ha* (GEN) (the Trinity, proper names, kinship terms)
	(du.) NP w. *bolou* 'two'	NP w. *ke* + *dilie* (that+3DU)	---
	(pl.) NP	NP w. *ke* + *dia* (that+3PL)	---
	+ pronoun copy or **pronoun close by**	**+ pronoun copy in singular**[212] or **pronoun close by**	---
MAINTENANCE:	pronouns (or verb form/zero)	pronouns (or verb form/zero)	persons: pronoun (or verb form/zero) the Trinity: N=*ha* (GEN)
CONCLUSION:	(NP w. pronoun copy)	(NP w. pronoun copy)	N=*ha* (GEN)

As for maintaining the activation status of a main participant, personal pronouns tend to occur in the following situations:

- at the change of a main participant
- at the start of a new paragraph
- following background information
- following a quote

In general, the more action oriented a story is the fewer pronouns. A slower narrative story, even with a single actor, has more pronouns, even up to one pronoun per sentence.

---

[212] As seen just above, the dual & plural forms come with attached pronoun copy: *ke* + *dilie* (that+3DU) and *ke* + *dia* (that+3PL).

Three short stories show the introduction, maintenance and concluding reference of main participants. The stories are here written with basically one sentence per line.

Code to stories:

<u>Long underline</u>	<u>H-T linkage</u>
Red	**dual/plural verb forms** (referring to subject)
green	**perfective suffix marking scenes**
bold &black	**main participants** (possessive and relative use not marked)

Winta's fishing story

The first story is written by Winta Diomono, and shows two main participants acting severally and together. This story is one paragraph, except for the conclusion.

Sawisiei Salale kege gusugudo, **Steve ele** *miye susua ileyodemamôû fima tugulo* **tobolôû i**.
'On Saturday, early in the morning, **Steve and I (Steve 1DU.EX)** after having stated that (we) were going to dive for fish **(new scene: same subject)** we thought and discussed and **talked** (about it).'

Ele *ye, howilidio, kalase, awakibôûde tôûma* **igai**.
'**The two of us** grabbed stringbag(s), diving spear(s), fishing glass(es) and a knife/(knives) and **went**.'

Ele **iga**, *e disope hebe haikôû* **fologa**, *disope olôûfei bolou kege gobolôû* **nala i**.
'**The two of us** **went** and **arrived** at his pineapple garden and broke off two pineapples and **ate** .'

Disope **nala i** *mei dege* **môû**, **ele** *Sesenabikôû igadi a toba* **tugamôû** *gobolôû, Koloukôû* **muguamôû**,
'Having finished **eating** the pineapples **(new scene: same subject)**, **the two of us** went along the river on the road (people) usually go to Sesenabi, (and so) having **gone upriver** **(new scene: same subject)** we crossed (it), and having **gone down** to (the river) Konoun **(new scene: partly same subject),** ...'

ebukôû <u>miye susua</u>, **e** *miye* <u>sudo tahai</u>.
'... **he was the first** to <u>dive for fish,</u> and **he** <u>shot many fish</u>.'

E <u>miye susua</u> *kulio dege i* **môû**, *haba* **a** <u>susuai</u>.
'**He** <u>dived for fish</u> and when (he) got cold **(new scene: different subject)**, **I** <u>dived</u> instead.'

A <u>susuane</u> *miye sudo e tahai sagai kegenôû tahai.*
'**I** <u>dived</u> and shot as many fish as he (had) shot.'

A <u>miye susua</u> *kulioye dio ko* **môû**, **ele** *miye sama, mosokôû boholôûma* **haguasigei**.
'**I** <u>dived for fish</u> and having (started) to shake from the cold **(new scene: partly same subject)**, **the two of us** put the fish inside (our stringbags) and turned around and **came** (back).'

Haguasige, *mosokôû* **felegamôû**, *miye sa sile, ôû sile demamôû* **nala i**.
'We **came** and having **arrived** at (the) house **(new scene: same subject)**, (we) put the fish in (a pan) and cooked (it) and after having cooked sago we **ate** .'

Steve ele *miye susua i ta susu kenôûfei.*
'The storytelling about **Steve and I (Steve 1DU.EX)** going to dive for fish, that's it.'

Winta's Óumemi story

The next story, also by Winta Diomono, has two plural main participants, marked in black & bold. The colour coding is the same as in the previous story. The councillor is a minor participant introduced by … *kaha* 'that … in control'. The story is one paragraph except for the conclusion.

Óumemikôû **Dahamo gisiai kedia** *ya* **igai**.
'**The young men from Dahamo** **went** to play (soccer) in Oumemi village.' (introduction/heading)

Óumemi kansole kaha tobolôûgi, **Dahamo gisiaibôû**, **Sesenabi gisiaibôûde** **iga**, *Óumemikôû* **yamabeedemôû**, *dia* **igai**.
'The councillor of Oumemi (village) speaking until having told (the) **young men of Dahamo and** (the) **young men of Sesenabi** to **go and play** (soccer) in Oumemi **(new scene: different subject)**, **they went**.'

Dia **iga**, *Óumemikôû* **fologai**.
'**They went** and **arrived** in Oumemi.'

Fologa**môû**, *yale* **deleguei**.
'**Having arrived** **(new scene: same subject)**, they **were** playing/played and **were**.'

*Dia **yale** ibe, O͡umemi o kediaboͦude **yale** i.*
'When **they played**, they **played** with **the men from Oumemi**.'

*Ke͜no͡usi **O͡umemi o kedia** yaibe, **diame** wini degeli meido.*
'But when **the Oumemi men** played, **they** really did not win.'

Dahamo gisiaibo͡u Sesenabi gisiai diano͡u** wini degema, sele mo͜umamo**u** fogo͡u **haguasigei.
'**The young men of Dahamo and the young men of Sesenabi**, after **only they** had won, after having got the money **(new scene: same subject)** leaving they **came** (back).'

*O͡umemi ya **igai** susu ke͜no͡ufe͜i.*
'Telling about **going** to play (soccer) (at) Oumemi, that's it.'

Pepson's pig hunting story
The next story is written by Pepson Uliti. It has one main participant and is action oriented, so there is only **one free pronoun** referring to the hero. The story has four paragraphs. (The verbs referring to the subject are bolded.)

Isaacha** afu Temifenko͡u **tefelei.
'**Isaac stayed** in Temifen before.'

***Tafalali**, ta sabiyei so oye tano͡ufe͜i **wolo͡u** mowi **i**.*
'(He) **stayed** (there) until one morning (he) **took** one male dog and **went** hunting.'

***Iligi**, so kaha wai tigoumo**u** **ile dugube**, wai oye hiyedo ke͜ tigoumo**u** **dugu**.*
'(He) **went unti**l the dog barked at (a) pig **(new scene: different subject)** when (he) immediately **went and saw (new scene: different subject);** (the dog) was barking at that very big boar (he) **saw**.'

*Kegemo**u**, **e** taha tahamo**u**[213] sulugi, mala mei degei.*
'Having become like that **(new scene)**, **he** moved around shooting again and again until (his) arrows were gone.'

*Mala mei degemo**u**, awaki dihi ta **mala**, hebe sasa degei ta **diafolo͡u**, kuoko͡u awaki dihi ke͜ **tigamamo͡u** kaha **tahale͜mai**.*
'Because the arrows were gone **(new scene)**, (he) **took** a small knife and **cut off** a long piece of wood and after having **tied** the small knife on it, **(new scene: same subject)** with that he **shot and killed** (the pig).'

*Kegemo**u**, wai ke͜ **kagima sama kolo͡u haguei. Moso͜ko͡u fele solo͡u nai.***
'Having become like that **(new scene)**, after **cutting** up the pig, (he) **packed and carried** (it) **and came**. (He) **arrived** at the house **and cooked** (it) **on stones and ate**.'

***Isaacha** wai **wei** ta kenο͡ufe͜i.*
'The story about **Isaac killing** the pig, that's it.'

More examples
Below follow short examples from other stories of introduction (and in a few cases maintenance) of main participants.

1567) *Afu=do   o   ta   e   mowi i.*
        earlier=INT man INDF 3S hunt go.NFUT
        'A long time ago **a certain man** went hunting.'

1568) ***Felix**   **e**=**me** Dahamo dihi.*
        Felix 3S=TOP Dahamo child
        '**Felix**, **he** is a child from Dahamo.'

1569) *Walai sawisie-i   ta   ke-le-ge,   **Satia**=ha miye susua*
        wrist be.day-NFUT INDF that-A.LOCR-VBR   Satia=GEN fish dive.for

        *i-l-a-mo͡u   dege-i. **E** kalase=bo͡u, howili+dio=bo͡u+de   mala,   ise*
        go-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-NFUT 3S glass=and fishing+bone=and+PROV get.IRR.FUT finally

        ye=ne   mala,   ο͡u=bo͡u dou=bo͡u ye+du   sa   i.
        stringbag=also get.IRR.FUT sago=and fire=and stringbag+inside put.inside go.NFUT
        'One Saturday, **Satia** wanted to go and dive for fish. (He) got **his** fishing glass and (his) fishing spear and finally got (his) stringbag and put sago and matches inside the stringbag and went.'

---

[213] In the expression *taha tahamo**u** sulugi* 'moved around shooting again and again until ...', the perfective suffix *-mo͡u* is part of the form signalling progressive aspect (see 4.1.5.4.2).

1570) **Bobasi**   **bolou dilie** bilika   tôu+ma hu̱ei   na̱   **yo-l-u.**
younger.sister two   3DU   saucepan hold+put water eat go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

'**(My) younger sister and her (friend)**, **the two of them,** hold saucepans and **go** to
(get and) drink water.'

1571) *Kolou*   *o=kôu*   *fele̱*   *dugu,*   **sokôulôu sisigo**   **dia̱**   *dugu*
Konoun mouth.of.river=LOC come.up see.NFUT school   children   3PL   see.NFUT

dia̱=bôu *a̱=bôu+de*   *na-l-e̱*   *môu+ma* *hague-i.*
3PL=and 1s=and+PROV eat-IRR-NFUT get+put come-NFUT

'... (I) arrived at (the) mouth of (the river) Konoun and saw; (I) saw (the) **school children**; **they and** I got hold
of all the food and came.'

1572) **Aso̱** *kôu=me* *bolo=fe̱i=do.*   **E̱** *dege-di=be dabai su̱=do.*
sun this=TOP good=total=INT 3s do-HAB=TOP work many=INT

E̱ *o*   *ke+dia̱*   *yukuei ha-di.*
3s man that+3PL cloth get.warm-HAB

'**This sun** is very good. **It** does many (kinds of) work. **It** habitually dries people's clothes' (picture caption)

1573) **Wai kôu̱=me** *gofôu*   *hiye=do.* **E̱** *o*   *wo-di.*   **E̱** *o*   *dugu-l-u,*
pig this=TOP hard/strong big=INT 3s man attack-HAB 3s man see-IRR-NFUT

o   *wo-l-o.*
man   attack-IRR-FUT

'**This pig** is very angry. **He** kills people. When **he** sees a man (he) will attack him.' (picture caption)

The participant in (1574) is not a main participant in the usual sense, but a controlling participant with a big impact on
the development of the story (see *The Ronny text* in Appendix III). This person comes back in one more sentence and is then
referred to with a personal pronoun, as if he was a main participant.

1574) *a̱* *i-l-e,*   **gamani**   *o*   *ta*   *tobo-u,* **gamani**   *dia̱* *o* *J.K.=ha̱*
1s go-IRR-FUT government man INDF say-NFUT government 3PL man J.K.=GEN

sele   *a̱* *60 kina*   *te-l-e*   *ne̱-i.*
money 1s 60 kina   remove-IRR-FUT give-NFUT

'... I went and talked to **a government official**; **one of their government officials J.K.** removed K60 and gave
(it to me).'

8.7.6.1.2 Minor participants

Below are the main referring devices for minor participants being introduced and maintained. Minor participants are often
introduced in object position (the dog and the pig in (1575)). They are typically introduced in a semantically dependent
clause, e.g. in (1577), where two minor participants are introduced in dependent clauses in subject position: '...**saw a big
tree** standing. ... **saw** (a) **hornbill** sitting.' Verbs of perception are typical in introducing minor participants.[214]

Structurally, introductions of minor participants are similar to that of main participants, but **pronoun copy is not part of
the introduction**. Minor participant are **not maintained by using pronouns**, but by using demonstrative nominal phrases.
Minor participants are **not recapitulated in the conclusion**.

A participant may have its status changed from minor to main as the story progresses (1579).

	UNKNOWN	KNOWN
INTRODUCTION:	(sg.) NP w. *ta* (INDF)	NP
	(du.) NP w. *bolou* 'two'	NP w. *ke̱+dilie* (that+3DU) (same as main participants)
	(pl.) NP	NP w. *ke̱+dia̱* (that+3PL) (same as main participants)
		zero (e.g. the pig in (1575))
MAINTENANCE:	(sg.) NP (w. *ke̱/ka=ha̱/ko=kôu* (that/...=GEN/...=LOC) [215] or verb form/zero (applies to both columns)	
	(du.) NP w. *ke̱+dilie* (that+3DU)	or verb form/zero
	(pl.) NP w. *ke̱+dia̱/ke̱+dilie* (that+3PL/DU)	or verb form/zero

---

[214] Note in (1571) that this strategy may also be used with major participants introduced with pronoun copy.
[215] DETAILS WITH **NP** IN SINGULAR:
  Subject (sg.): +event: NP (w. *ka=ha̱* (that=GEN)) (NP w. *kaha̱* is also possessive)
            +state: NP (w. *ke̱*) (that))
  Non-subject (sg.):   NP (w. *ke̱/ko=kôu*) (that/...=LOC))

A few examples follow to illustrate the different possibilities of introducing and maintaining minor participants, always keeping in mind that the lack of free personal pronouns and pronoun copying are the features that show us that these are minor participants.

1575) *ei*   **so**   **ti-l-e**   *igiya-i*   *sulugua-l-i*   **du**,
1DU.EX   dog   call-IRR-FUT   go.DU/PL-NFUT   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT   hear.NFUT

so   Ø   **tigo-l-o**   **i-mou**   *foukua* *igiya-i*   *folo-ga-mou*   **dugu**,
dog (pig) bark-IRR-FUT go.NFUT-PFV run   go.DU/PL-NFUT   go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV see.NFUT

Ø   **wai** *oye* *hiye=do ke*   **tigo-l-o**   **i-mou**   **dugu**.
(dog) pig male big=INT that   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

'… we (excl.) **called up** (the) **dogs** and went; we walked around until (we) **heard** (the) **dogs barking** at **(a pig)**, (and) immediately we ran on; (and) having arrived (we) **saw** that **they were barking** at **that very big boar**.'

Asele=ha *hebe* *sugu+tou* *tafala-l-i*,   … *taha-i=be*,   **mala** *tugga-ma*   *fele-i*.
Asele=GEN   tree top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT … shoot-NFUT=TOP arrow   bounce-ISQ come.up-NFUT

'Asele was standing up in (a) tree top until … (he) shot at (it and) (the) **arrow** after bouncing came (back) towards (him).'

You=makou Ø   *fiyo-u-mou*
3S.EMP=LOC   **(arrow)** fall-NFUT-PFV

'(**The arrows**) kept falling (back) on himself (Asele) …'

The next example continues the story a couple of clauses further on. (The whole of *Michael's hunting story* is interlinearised in APPENDIX IV.)

1576) *haba*   **wai ka=ha**   **so** *sese-l-e*   *hague-i*. *A* *tafala* *ke-le*   Ø
but.PFV.IRR   pig that=GEN   dog follow-IRR-FUT come.NFUT 1S stand that-A.LOCR **(pig)**

hagua *tafala-mou* *dege-i*,   *a* *taha-i*   *fefe* *ke-le*   *fogo-u*   … Ø
come   stand-PFV   do-NFUT 1S shoot-NFUT waist that-A.LOCR hit.target-NFUT … **(pig)**

…   *fiyo-u-mou*   *dege-i*.   *De=ha*   Ø   *taha-l-e+ma-mou*,
…   fall-NFUT-PFV   do-NFUT   maternal.uncle=GEN **(pig)** shoot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV

'… again **the pig** came chasing (the) **dog(s)**. **(It)** came trying to stand where I stood; I shot; hit the waist … **(it)** was in the process of falling over. Uncle having shot and killed **(it)** …'

The following examples are from other stories.

1577) *Yo-l-u-gi*   **dugu=be**   **hebe** **hiye=do ta**   *tafala*.
go.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT=TOP tree big=INT INDF stand

'We went until (we) **saw a big tree** standing.'

Hebe   **kou=ma=ha**   *fu=kou*   **dugu**, **douwa**   *duwo*.
tree   this=TOP=GEN   hole=LOC   see   hornbill sit

'In a hole of **this tree** (we) **saw** (a) **hornbill** sitting.'

Ø   *Duwo-mou*   *dugu-o*   *fogou-mou* *i*.
(hornbill) sit-PFV   see-FUT   leave.for-PFV go.NFUT

'Having seen **(it)** sitting (there), leaving (we) went.'

1578) **Niniba**   **tie**   *o*   **ke+dia=me**   *moso* *bolo=fei=do*.
Nineveh   sleep man that+3PL=TOP house good=total=INT

'**The people living in Nineveh** (had) good houses.'

A participant may change from a minor to a main participant.

1579) **Kalo dalawa ka=ha**   *tobo-u*,   *nele* *moni* *K2.00* *ne-l-e*.
car   driver that=GEN say-NFUT 2DU   money K2   give-IRR-FUT

O   *ta=nou*   *ta=nou*   *sele*   *K2.00* *ne-l-e*.
man INDF=only INDF=only money K2   give-IRR-FUT

A *tobo-u*,   *a=me* *sele*   *mei*.
1S say-NFUT 1S=TOP money NEG

Kalo *o*   *e*   *tobo-u*,   *sele*   *K2.00* *ne*.   *Toto=do*   *ne*.
car   man 3S say-NFUT money K2   give.IMP quickly=INT give

'**The car driver** said, "You two will pay K2. Each one will pay K2." I said, "I don't have any money." **The man with the car he** said, "Pay K2. Pay really quick."'

Finally, I will show how *the Lord* contrasts grammatically in subject position with ordinary big men and how, in the same way, *the Holy Spirit* contrasts with other good spirits.

1580)   *hiye o   ka=ha̱*   *Hiye O=ha̱*
       big man that=GEN   big man=GEN

       'the big man' (one of many)   'the Lord' (unique)

1581)   *duo   bolo=fei̱   ka=ha̱*   *Duo   Bolo=fei̱=ha̱*
       spirit good=total that=GEN   spirit good=total=GEN

       'the good spirit' (one of many)   'the Holy Spirit' (unique)

A participant marked by =*ha̱* 'genitive/control' has overall control, while a participant referred to by ... *ka=ha̱* (that=GEN) is a minor participant with only local control.

8.7.6.1.3 Props

A prop is a participant that the speaker/author considers to be of little importance. It would usually be **mentioned only once**. If it is in subject position, it is marked by the instrumental case marker =*ye*. If in non-subject position, it consists of a nominal phrase. A prop may also be introduced in a clause dependent on the verbs *dugu* 'see' (1582) or *du* 'hear'.

SUBJECT   NP=*ye* 'instrumental'

NON-SUBJECT   NP (depending on function in the clause occurs with or without the locative case marker)

1582)   *Ko̱u̱=me o   gisiai. E̱ hebe ha-i   wai=ye   no-l-u̱   dugu.*
       this=TOP man young 3s tree cut-NFUT pig=INS   eat-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT

       'This (is a) young man. He **saw** (a) **pig** eating (in his) garden.'

1583)   *Fiya-mo̱u̱,   bogo=ye   ma̱   abogo̱u̱ tofo̱-gu.*
       fall.FUT-PFV white.rock=INS 1s.POSS foot   trap-OF.NFUT

       'Having fallen, my foot was trapped by (a) **white rock**.'

1584)   *Dia̱ miye̱ si   hiyo-u-mo̱u̱   meleki=ko̱u̱ sa+ma̱*
       3PL fish cook be.cooked-NFUT-PFV plate=LOC   put.inside+put

       sea   tage+to̱u̱ duwo-l-i   nala̱   i-l-i.
       chair over+up sit-IRR-NFUT eat.IRR.FUT go-IRR-NFUT

       'As soon as (the) cooked fish is "ready", they put (it) **into bowls** and sit **on chairs** eating.'

8.7.6.1.4 Referential & non-referential and generic & non-generic

Two other notions are entwined with the above mentioned categories of participants:

CONCEPT	DEFINITION	KONAI
• non-referential	any member(s) of a set	marked as a prop with =*ye* 'instrumental' in subject position and a NP (+/-LOC) as non-subject
• referential	a certain entity/certain entities	any number of options
• generic	a class of entities	introduced as a main participant with pronoun copy in either singular or plural,[216] but often with a singular verb as it refers to the whole class; maintained with pronouns as a main participant
• non-generic	a certain entity/certain entities	any number of options

Non-referential examples

1585)   *o=ye   hu*
       man=INS   marry

       '**married**' (about a woman)

1586)   *Mo̱u̱   oye   i-l-e=be*
       nothing man=INS   go-IRR-FUT=TOP

       '... **A/Any) man without** (e.g. knowledge), if/when (he) goes ...'

---

[216] An inanimate generic noun is talked about in singular (see 4.3.1 PERSONAL PRONOUNS).

1587) **_Ta=ye=ge_**   **_wai_** _taho̲-u̲-mo̲û,_   _o_   _olo̲ûfe̲i_   _nala̲_   _i-di._
    bow=INS=F.CNTR   pig shoot-NFUT-PFV man all.total eat.IRR.FUT go-HAB

    'When **the bow** shoots (a) **pig**, everybody eats (it).'

In the following example the lizard is generic and treated like a main participant. What he eats is non-referential (perhaps).

1588) _Sabi_   _e̲_ _kulio_   _hiye=do_ _dege-mo̲û,_ _e̲_ _aso̲_ _difi_ _ha_   _tila._
    lizard   3S coldness   big=INT do-PFV   3S sun hot get.warm lie.down

    _E̲_ **_beye_**   _na̲-di._   _E̲_ **_miye̲_** _na̲-di,_   **_sio_**   _na̲-di._
    3S possum   eat-HAB   3S   fish   eat-HAB   bird   eat-HAB

    'The lizard, because she is cold, she lies in the heat of the sun to get warm. She eats **possum**. She eats **fish**; (she) eats **bird**.'

The following example may be open for discussion. The bold marking and the free translation is my interpretation.

1589) _a̲=me sok=be_   _mei dege-l-e._ _Kege-i_   _dege-mo̲û, na̲ a̲=moko̲û_
    1S=TOP chalk=TOP NEG do-IRR-FUT that-VBR-NFUT do-PFV   2S 1S=LOC

    sok   **_su̲=do_** _ne̲._   ... _Ta̲=be_ ... **_kuguo=bo̲û pencil=be_**   _mei._
    chalk many=INT give ... INDF=TOP ... paper=and pencil=TOP NEG

    Kege-i   _dege-mo̲û, na̲ a̲=moko̲û pepa=bo̲û_ _pencil=bo̲û+de_   _ne̲._
    that-VBR-NFUT do-PFV   2S 1S=LOC   paper=and pencil=and+PROV give

    '... I will finish the chalk. Because of that, give me **many pieces of chalk**. ... Another (thing), ... (I have) no (exercise) **books and pencils**. Because of that, give me **paper and pencils**.'

Generic examples

1590) **_Ulie̲_**   **_e̲=me_** _hebe_ _to̲u=ko̲û_   _duwo._ **_E̲_** _ta̲-di=be_   _uwo_   _hiye=do._
    cicada 3S=TOP tree stump=LOC sit   3S speak-HAB=TOP noise big=INT

    '**The cicada he** sits on a tree stump. **He** makes a lot of noise.'

1591) **_Kueya_**   _e̲_ _hebe kolo_   _no-l-u̲._   _Na̲-ma_ _mei dege-mo̲û fogo̲û-ma_
    cassowary 3S tree bark/fruit eat-IRR-NFUT eat-ISQ NEG do-PFV   leave.for-ISQ

    _i-l-e._   **_Kueya_**   _dia̲=me mihi̲=ko̲û_ **_tia-di._**   **_Dia̲=me_** _moso̲_   _mei._
    go-IRR-FUT cassowary 3PL=TOP earth=LOC sleep-HAB 3PL=TOP house NEG

    'The **cassowary she** eats fruit from trees. Having finished eating, leaving (she) will go (away). **Cassowaries they sleep (sg.)** on (the) ground. **They** have no house.'

1592) _Hulia̲me_   _oguo hoho̲_ _dege-l-i._   _Hulia̲.me_   **_sasa̲i_** **_dia̲_** _oguo hoho̲_   _dege-i-mo̲û,_
    darkness.TOP moon light do-IRR-NFUT darkness.TOP woman 3PL moon light do-NFUT-PFV

    miye̲ _bese_   _i-l-i._
    fish angle.for go-IRR-NFUT

    'At night (the) moon is shining. At night, **women**, while enjoying the moon, **go (sg.)** fishing.'
    (_miye̲_ 'fish': non-referential)

The following example is the last paragraph/sentence of a story about the importance of medicine. The medicine itself is the main participant, with the local CHW[217] being the powerful administrator, marked with =_ha̲_. This sentence concludes that all doctors and medical workers are doing a great job, referring to this generic class as main participants with pronoun copy and with a plural form of the verb.

1593) _Ke-ge-mo̲û,_   **_dokta=bo̲û_** **_medigo=bo̲û_**   **_dia̲=me_** _dabai_ _hiye=do_
    that-VBR-PFV   doctor=and medical.worker=and   3PL=TOP work   big=INT

    degele   **_idi._**
    do-IRR-FUT go-HAB

    'Having become like that, **doctors and medical workers they are** always **working (pl.)** very hard.'

---

[217] Community Health Worker.

8.7.6.2 The faulty defaults

Having looked at the default referring device for each proposed context in 8.7.5, there were three questions that needed answers, which I will try to answer here.

- who or what are the participants that get introduced with pronoun copy?
- how can a participant be introduced by zero?
- why are three of the contexts S03, N0, N1 about fifty-fifty between a verb and an NP as default?

The first and the third question have already been answered, but here are the answers to all three:

- The participants being introduced by pronoun copy are main participants (see 8.7.6.1.1).
- A participant, often a minor one, may be introduced by zero in object position to be properly introduced in a nominal phrase in subject or object position in the next dependent clause. We may call it delayed introduction (1594), (1595).
- The even distribution of referring devices in certain categories is explained by the fact that major and minor participants are not maintained in the same way. Main participants are traced by free pronouns or verb form/zero, while minor participants are traced by nominal phrases or verb form/zero) (see 8.7.6.1.1 and 8.7.6.1.2).

1594) *I-l-e*   *su-l-u-gi*   Ø   *dugu=be,*   *kueya*
       go-IRR-FUT   walk.around-IRR-NFUT-DSQ **(cassowary)** see.NFUT=TOP cassowary

       ŧi-l-e   *uwo*   *dege-i-môu*   *g̲*   *du.*
       call-IRR-FUT noise do-NFUT-PFV 1s hear.NFUT

       '(I) went and walked around until **(I) saw (something)**; I heard (a) **cassowary in the process of calling out**.'

1595) *i-l-e-môu*   Ø   *dugu-be*   *kueya*   *ŧo-u*   *dugu.*
       go-IRR-FUT-PFV   **(cassowary)** see.NFUT=TOP cassowary hold-NFUT see.NFUT

       '... (I) having gone **saw (something)**; (I) saw (a) **cassowary caught** (in the trap).'

8.7.7 A strategy of reference for Konai

Dooley and Levinsohn describe two strategies of reference for languages: a sequential strategy and a VIP strategy.

> In a **SEQUENTIAL STRATEGY**, "the reference of [other than a full noun phrase] is normally taken from the nearest candidate word before it" (Grimes 1978:viii). By "candidate word" or phrase is meant an antecedent that agrees with the reference in relevant categories (e.g., number, gender), that has an animacy category appropriate in that proposition, and that is plausible in terms of the current expectation structure.
>
> **SUBJECT-ORIENTED SEQUENTIAL STRATEGIES** typically work as follows: to find the referent of a main clause subject, look back to the subject of the preceding (main) clause (Dooley & Levinsohn 2001:59).
>
> In a **VIP (VERY IMPORTANT PARTICIPANT)**, "one referent is distinguished from the rest when introduced, and a special set of terms refer to it no matter how many other things have been mentioned more recently" (Grimes 1978:viii) ... (ibid.)
> _____

So what is the strategy of reference for Konai? Based on the above definitions, a VIP strategy is used but also a sequential strategy:

- **Main participants** are **introduced with pronoun copy** (or a pronoun in the near vicinity) and **maintained by pronouns** or verb form/zero. There are fewer pronouns in an action oriented story. There are also fewer pronouns in a story with little interference by other participants. See 8.7.6.1.1 for places where a pronoun is likely to occur.

   A participant introduced with =*hg̲* 'genitive/control' does not occur with pronoun copy, but is maintained by pronouns, if she/he continues in the story. There are different rules for the Trinity – see 8.7.6.1.1.

- **Minor participants** are usually **introduced by nominal phrases** and **maintained by nominal phrases** or verb form/zero (see 8.7.6.1.2).

- **Props** usually **occur only once**; in **subject position a prop is marked by the instrumental case marker**; in non-subject position it is usually a nominal phrase consisting of just a noun with or without the locative case marker depending on function in the clause (see 8.7.6.1.3).

- Konai has a **VIP strategy of reference** in that main participants are treated differently from minor participants and minor participants are treated differently from props. However, Konai also has a **subject oriented sequential strategy of reference in regards to main participants**. A pronoun refers back to the last mentioned main participant agreeing in number. This nominal phrase is usually in subject position. Referring back to an object may require a full nominal phrase, as I cannot find any clear examples of a personal pronoun referring back to an object.

A verb in plural form, in a clause without a nominal phrase, usually refers back to the last mentioned main participant in plural, but it may also refer back to a minor participant in plural (1599) (the second *ƚigolo i* 'they barked').

- A switch-of-scene medial verb marker monitors the different scenes, including **switch of reference**, usually going from minor to main; a final verb may be used to go from major to minor (see 8.7.3.10).

A pronoun refers back to a subject

1596) *Ke-ge-môu,* **John** *e* *hoho* *dege-i.* *E* *ƚawa-i,* *Yesu=be* *Godi=ha* *dihi=d=ade*
that-VBR-PFV John 3S light do-NFUT 3S know-NFUT Jesus=TOP God=GEN child=INT=SQV

ƚawa-i. *Ke-ge-môu,* *e* *i-l-e* *o* *sasai* *ilo* *ke+dia=mokôu* *ƚobo-u.*
know-NFUT that-VBR-PFV 3S go-IRR-FUT man woman part that+3PL=LOC say-NFUT

'Having become like that, **John he** was glad. **He** understood for sure that Jesus must be God's Son. Having become like that, **he** went and told some people.'

1597) *Afu=fei* *Asika* *ele* *sio* *mowi* *ya-l-a-môu* *dege-l-i-gi*
earlier=total Asika 1DU.EX bird hunt go.DU/PL-IRR-SUBJ-PFV do-IRR-NFUT-DSQ

dugu, **Mikael** *yukuei* *bigi* *i-môu,* *haba* *e=bôu+de* *ya-i.*
see.NFUT Mikael cloth wash go.NFUT-PFV but.PFV.IRR 3S=and+PROV go.DU/PL-NFUT

Miya=kôu *mu-gua-môu,* *e* *ke-le* *yukuei* *bigi-l-e* *duwo-môu,*
Miyan=LOC go.down-DU/PL.FUT-PFV 3S that-A.LOCR cloth wash-IRR-FUT sit-PFV

Asika *ele* *Miya-ba* *dugu-l-u-gi* *dugu*
Asika 1DU.EX Miyan-along see-IRR-NFUT-DSQ see.NFUT

'A long time ago Asika and I wanted to go bird hunting until we saw **Mikael** going to wash clothes, when, instead, we immediately went **together with him**. Having gone down to (the river) Miyan, **he** sat down there and washed clothes, while Asika and I looked along (the river) Miyan until (we) saw ...'

Interaction between third person participants

In this story, written by Pastor Motousi, Zechariah is the main participant and is introduced and re-introduced with pronoun copy and maintained by pronouns, until the interchange with another third person participant, the angle Gabriel. Gabriel is the controlling agent in this part of the story. After introduction in object position he comes back in the controlling genitive case. He is never referred to by a pronoun.

Note the third person pronoun following the angle Gabriel's introduction in object position, referring back not to him, but to Zechariah in subject position.

1598) *... **Sekeraia** e pris dabai dege-di o, ...*
… Zechariah 3S priest work do-HAB man …

'... **Zechariah he** was (a) priest ...'

... sawisie-i ƚa e sosi moso=kôu duwo-l-i dugu=be, hoho hiye=do ƚa
… be.day-NFUT INDF 3S church house=LOC sit-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP light big=INT INDF

*e=mokôu hagu-môu dugu. **Sekeraia** esol **Gebulu** dugu,*
3S-=LOC come.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT Zechariah angel Gabriel see.NFUT

*e gue hiye=do dege-i. Ke-ge-môu, esol **Gebulu=ha** ƚobo-u, ...*
3S fear big=INT do-NFUT that-VBR-PFV angle Gabriel=GEN say-NFUT

'... one day **he** was sitting in (the) church house until (he) saw a very big light coming **towards him**. **Zechariah** saw (the) **angle Gabriel**; **he** was very afraid. Having become like that, (the) **angle Gabriel** said ...'

Sekeraia e ƚobo-u, esol **Gebulu=kôu** ƚobo-u, ...
Zechariah 3S say-NFUT angle Gabriel=LOC say-NFUT

'**Zechariah he** said; (he) said **to** (the) **angel Gabriel** ...'

Esol Gebulu=ha **Sekeraia=kôu** ƚobo-u,
angle Gabriel=GEN Zechariah=LOC say-NFUT

'(The) **angle Gabriel** said **to Zechariah** ...'

See also Winta's *Ôumemi* story in 8.7.6.1.1 MAIN PARTICIPANTS and the two different third person plural groups. The full NP with pronoun copy, or similar, has to be restated to keep them apart.

Switch-reference and switch of scenes

In the following example, the explicitly stated **subjects** are marked in **bold** in both Konai and English. The **indicators of a change of subject** are also marked in **bold** in the Konai text, i.e. the perfective marker -***môu***, preceded by a verb stem ending in a **high vowel**. In addition **some final verbs**, especially ***dugu*** 'see' and ***du*** 'hear' also mark a change of subject. In this story the form ***taha̱-i̱***=***be*** 'shoot-NFUT=TOP' is also followed by a different subject. Red marks a non-singular verb.

The third line in the example states the actual subjects. On that line, the subject is the same until the next is given.

1599)   ***Ei***   *Dulo*   <u>*o*</u>   *ko=kôu=ge*
         1PL.EX   Dulo   mouth.of.river   that=LOC=F.CNTR
         James, Asele, Michael

         James=***bôu*** ***Asele***=***bôu*** *ei*   *so*   *ti-l-e*   *igiya-i*   *sulugua-l-i*
         James=and   Asele=and   1DU.EX   dog   call-IRR-FUT   go.DU/PL-NFUT   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

         du,   *so*   *tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*   *fo̱ukua* *igiya-i*   *folo-ga-môu*[218]   *dugu,*
         hear.NFUT   dog   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   run   go.DU/PL-NFUT   go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV   see.NFUT
                  dogs   **James, Asele, Michael**

         wai *oye*   *hiye*=*do* <u>*ke*</u>   *tigo-l-o*   *i-môu*   *dugu.*
         pig   male   big=INT   that   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT
         dogs   **James, Asele, Michael**

'**We** (excl.), at (the) mouth of (the river) Dulo, (i.e.) **James, Asele and I** called up (the) dogs and went; **we** walked around until (we) **heard** (the) **dogs** barking, when **we** immediately ran and went; having arrived (we) **saw** that **they** were barking at that very big boar.'

         Asele=***ha̱*** *hebe* *sugu̱+tôu* *tafala-l-i,*[219]   ***wai ka***=***ha̱***   *so* *sese-l-e*   *hagua*
         Asele=GEN   tree   top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT   pig   that=GEN   dog follow-IRR-FUT   come.FUT
         Asele   **pig**

         fogôu   *i-môu*   ***taha̱-i̱***=***be,***   *mala*   *tuga̱-ma*   *fele̱-i.*
         leave.for   go.NFUT-PFV   shoot-NFUT=TOP   arrow   bounce-ISQ   come.up-NFUT
                                  Asele   **arrow**

'**Asele** was standing up in (a) tree top until **the pig** came and chased (the) dog(s) and (as they were) passing by (**Asele**) shot at (it)**;** (the) **arrow** after bouncing came (back) towards (him).'

         Yôu=*makôu* *fiyo-u-môu*   *haba*   *tage*   ***taha̱-i̱***=***be***   ***mala***   *tuga̱-ma*
         3S.EMP=LOC   fall-NFUT-PFV   but.PFV.IRR   over   shoot-NFUT=TOP   arrow   bounce-ISQ
         arrow   **Asele**   **arrow** (another)

         hebe-l-e   *fele̱-i.*
         carry-IRR-FUT   come.up-NFUT

'While (**it**) fell (back) on himself, when (**he**) shot again above (it), (the) **arrow** after bouncing came (back) towards (him).'

---

[218] This switch of scene does not include switch of subject, which can be seen on the low vowel *a* in *fologa̱môu* '**we** having arrived **we** …'.

[219] The form ***tafala-l-i*** 'stand until' is a same subject form for existential state verbs like ***tafala*** 'stand'. This switch of subject indicates that the main participant will shortly be back.

REFERENCES

Barth, Fredrik. 1971. Tribes and intertribal relations in the Fly headwaters. *Oceania*, Vol. XLI, No. 3.

Berghäll, Liisa. 2010. Mauwake reference grammar (Ph. D. thesis). Helsinki: Helsinki University.

Bybee, Joan and Suzanne Fleischman (ed.). 1995. *Modality in grammar and discourse.* Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins.

Callister, William. 1996. Participant reference in the Misima language. ms: SIL PNG.

CECIL, (Win-), Version 2.1. 1995. (Computerized Extraction of Components of Intonation in Language). Waxhaw: SIL.

Chafe, Wallace. 1976. Givenness, contrastiveness, definiteness, subjects, topics, and point of view. In Charles Li, ed., 25-55. New York: Academic Press.

Chung, Sandra. and Alan Timberlake. 1985. Tense, aspect and mood. In Shopen, ed., *Language typology and syntactic description*, vol. III. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Comrie, Bernard. 1976. *Aspect*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

_____. **1985**. *Tense*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Conrad, Robert J. 1984. Kinds of information and participant identification in discourse. *Notes on Translation* 99:18-28.

Covington, Tom. 1993. Peak marking strategies in Kubo narrative. ms: Covington.

_____. **2007**. Kubo grammar notes. ms: Årsjö.

Covington, Tom and Vicky. 1995. Kubo grammar essentials. ms: Covington.

Crystal, David. 1985. *A dictionary of linguistics and phonetics.* Oxford/New York: Basil Blackwell.

Dooley, Robert A. and Stephen H. Levinsohn. 2001. *Analyzing discourse: A manual of basic concepts.* Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.

Dwyer, Peter D., Minnegal Monica and Vance Woodyard. 1993. Konai, Febi and Kubo: The north-west corner of the Bosavi language family. *Canberra Anthropology* 16(1).

Farr, Cynthia J. M. 1999. The interface between syntax and discourse in Korafe, a Papuan language of Papua New Guinea. *Pacific Linguistics*, C-148.

Fast, Lesley. 1997. Participant reference in Tungag narrative. ms: SIL PNG.

Feldpausch, Becky. 1998. Participant reference in Namia. ms: SIL PNG.

Feldpausch, Thomas. and Becky. 1992. Namia grammar essentials. In John R. Roberts, ed., *Namia and Amanab grammar essentials*, 1-97. [Data Papers on Papua New Guinea Languages, 39. Ukarumpa: Summer Institute of Linguistics]. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=34683

Foley, William A. 1986. *The Papuan languages of New Guinea.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Grimes, Joseph E. (ed.) 1978. *Papers on discourse*. SIL Publication No. 51. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.

Grosh, Andy and Sylvia. 2004. *Grammar essentials for the Kaluli language*. ms: SIL, PNG. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=51986

Handasyde, Len and Heather. 1990. Beliefs of the Konai. Project for MAF.

Hopper, Paul and Sandra Thompson. 1980. Transitivity in grammar and discourse. *Language* 56-2:251-299.

Hunt, Geoffrey. 1995. *Interpreting CECIL, gathering and interpreting acoustic phonetic data.* Waxhaw: SIL.

Hyman, Larry. 1975. *Phonology: Theory and analysis.* Forth Worth: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich College Publishers.

Katamba, Francis. 1989. *An introduction to phonology.* London/New York: Longman.

Konai New Testament. 2014. Bible League International.

Levinsohn, Stephen H. 2004. *Self-instruction materials on narrative discourse analysis*. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics. https://mail.jaars.org/~bt/narr.zip

Logan, Thomas. 2008. *Kasua grammar sketch*. ms: SIL, PNG. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=50999

McElhanon, Kenneth. and Clemens Lambertus Voorhoeve. 1970. The Trans-New Guinea phylum: Explorations in deep-level genetic relationships. *Pacific Linguistics* B-16.

Merriam-Webster. 2015. Dictionary. www.merriam-webster.com

Payne, Thomas. 1997. *Describing morphosyntax. A guide for field linguists*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Pappenhagen, Ronald W. 1981. Konai: A sociolinguistic survey. ms: SIL, PNG.

Prince, John and Moyra. 1991. *A church is born.* Australia: A.P.C.M.

Roberts, John. 1988. Switch-reference in Papuan languages: a syntactic or extrasyntactic device? *Australian Journal of Linguistics* 8:75-117.

Ross, Malcolm. 2005. Pronouns as a preliminary diagnostic for grouping Papuan languages. In Pawley, Andrew, Robert Attenborough, Jack Golson and Robin Hide, eds., *Papuan pasts. Cultural, linguistic and biological histories of Papuan-speaking peoples*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.

Rule, Murray and Joan, and Vance and Patty Woodyard. 1985. Konai language, statement of the phonology & alphabet. ms: ECPNG, PNG.

_____. **1990a.** Additional phonology statement of the Konai language. ms: ECPNG, Tari, Papua New Guinea.

_____. **1990b.** Statement of the grammar of the Konai language. ms: ECPNG, Tari, Papua New Guinea.

Shaw, Daniel. 1986. The Bosavi language family. *Pacific Linguistics*, A-70.

Simons, Gary F. 1987. Terms and abbreviations for use in text glossary. Dallas: SIL.

Smith, Clyde. 2007. Samo grammar notes. ms: Årsjö.

Speech Analyzer, Version 1.5 and 2.6. 1998, 2004. Waxhaw: SIL.

Staley, William. 2007. *Referent management in Olo: A cognitive perspective*. Ph. D. thesis (1995), University of Oregon. http://www.sil.org/silepubs/abstract.asp?id=48757

Woodyard, Vance. 1992. The Konai and related neighbours (A Konai history). ms: ECPNG, PNG.

Wurm, Stephen A. (ed.) 1975. *New Guinea area language and language study, 1: Papuan languages the New Guinea linguistic scene*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.

_____. **1982.** *Papuan languages of Oceania*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr Verlag.

Årsjö, Britten. 1994. Topic in Ama discourse. *Language and Linguistics in Melanesia.* 25:1-25.

_____. **1998.** Konai grammar essentials. ms: SIL, PNG.

_____. **1999.** Words in Ama. MA thesis. Uppsala: Uppsala universitet. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=52240

Årsjö, Sören. 1995-1997. WCKonaiU(tterances) (139 utterances). WinCECIL: Årsjö, SIL, PNG.

_____. **2005.** Speech analyzer waveforms (175 utterances). Speech analyzer: Årsjö, SIL, PNG.

Årsjö, Sören and Britten. 1991. The Strickland Plain sociolinguistic survey. ms: SIL, PNG.

_____. **1995.** Konai orthography – Results from orthography testing. ms: Årsjö, SIL, PNG.

_____. **2000.** Konai. In John Brownie, ed., *Sociolinguistic and literacy studies: South-West, Sepik and Morobe*, 26-81. Data papers on Papua New Guinea languages, 46. Ukarumpa: Summer Institute of Linguistics. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=41239

_____. **2003** Social organization paper. ms: SIL, PNG.

_____. **2004a**. A dialect survey report for the Konai language. ms: SIL, PNG.

_____. **2004b**. Konai orthography testing 1994-1998 – a summary. ms: Årsjö, SIL, PNG.

_____. **2005.** Phonology and orthography essentials: Konai (Kalai) language (Western Province Papua New Guinea). In Steve Parker, ed., *Phonological descriptions of PNG languages*, 211-260. [Data Papers on Papua New Guinea Languages, 47]. Ukarumpa, EHP, Papua New Guinea: Summer Institute of Linguistics. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=48165

_____. **2008.** Organized phonology data – Konai (Kalai) language. ms: SIL, PNG. http://www.sil.org/pacific/png/abstract.asp?id=51612

_____. **2011.** *Konai ta tanôu tanôu* 'Konai-English & English-Konai dictionary', 2447 entries. ms: Årsjö.

_____

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I: Rules of vowel harmony in verbs

APPENDIX II: Co-occurrence restrictions with clitics in the simple NP having a pronoun or question word as head

APPENDIX III: Interlinearised texts with five lines: vernacular surface form, underlying form, gloss, part of speech, free translation
    Gina text
    James text
    Motousi text
    Ronny text

APPENDIX IV: Interlinearised texts with three lines: vernacular surface form, gloss, free translation
    A Big-Book story by Gilbert
    Hobert's house building story
    Michael's hunting story
    Pepson's clan legend
    A letter
    Four very short letters

Appendix I

RULES OF VOWEL HARMONY IN VERBS

This appendix[1] is a supplement to 2.7 MORPHO-PHONEMIC PROCESSES in the main document.

There are seven types of verbs in Konai, based on the last root[2] vowel; and in the case of type 4 verbs, also on the vowel of the preceding syllable, which is a high vowel.

Rules of vowel harmony apply especially to verbs suffixed for tense. Based in most cases on the last root vowel, front vowels co-occur with front vowels and back vowels co-occur with back vowels. Roots ending in the phoneme /ɑ/ have a foot in each camp, when conjugated as a final verb. There are fewer options for medial verbs, as far as tense goes, but they follow the same basic principal of vowel harmony as their final counterparts.

Vowel harmony, when triggered by suffixation, affects the whole word. This is not always reflected in the spelling, however (in the main document, see 2.8.5 VOWEL HARMONY – SPELLING OF A FEW EXCEPTIONS).

There are eight rules of vowel harmony relating to verbs. I have chosen to base the rules on the final verbs: rule 1-7. Rules 1 and rule 5 also apply to medial verb conjugation. Rule 8 applies when the verb is suffixed with an aspect (final verb) or a purpose/subjunctive suffix (medial verb).

MORPHOPHONEMIC RULES OF VOWEL HARMONY IN FINAL VERBS

The following table gives the general picture for final verb forms.[3]

BASIC FORM	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB
	-i/-u	(-ḷ)-i/-u/-o	(-ḷ)-ɛ/-ɔ/-o[4]		
/migi/	/migi/	/migi-ḷ-i/	/migi-ḷ-ɛ/	'come down'	type 1
/bɛsɛ/	/bɛsɛ-i/	/bisi-ḷ-i/	/bɛsɛ-ḷ-ɛ/	'fish/angle'	type 2
/bahɑ/	/bahɑ-i/	/bɔhɔ-ḷ-u/	/bahɑ-ḷ-ɛ/	'look'	type 3a
/tagɑ/	/tagɑ-i/	/tagɑ-ḷ-i/	/tagɑ-ḷ-ɛ/	'like'	type 3c
/bijɑ/	/bijɛ-i/	/bijɔ-ḷ-u/	/bijɑ-ḷ-ɛ/	'fight'	type 4a
/tɑfɑlɑ/	/tɛfɛlɛ-i/	/ tɑfɑlɑ-ḷ-i/	/ tɑfɑlɑ-ḷ-ɛ/	'stand'	type 4d (irregular root)
/dugu/	/dugu/	/dugu-ḷ-u/	/dugu-ḷ-ɔ/	'see'	type 5
/sõ/	/sõ-ũ/	/sõ-ḷ-õ/	/sõ-ḷ-õ/	'open'	type 6
/wɔ/	/wɛ-i/	/wɔ-ḷ-u/	/wɔ-ḷ-ɔ/	'attack'	type 7

There are seven rules (VOWEL HARMONY RULES 1-7) governing the forms above.

There are two phonological shapes for each suffix indicating tense. Rules of vowel harmony determine which variant is chosen for each verbal root. The suffix vowel also affects the vowel(s) in the root in certain ways. We will deal with each rule in turn, starting with VOWEL HARMONY RULE 1.

---

[1] Taken from Årsjö 2005 and adapted.

[2] Actually based on the last **stem** vowel (see main document); in this appendix, I will keep to the verb root, if nothing else is said.

[3] Note that most sub-types are not included in this appendix; see 4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS in the main document. However, no other rules of vowel harmony than those described in this appendix show up in the conjugation of any of the sub-types.

[4] /-ḷ/   'IRR'

   /-i/, /-u/   'NFUT'

   /-ɛ/, /-ɔ/   'FUT'

   /-o/   'NPST'

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 1

VH RULE 1 applies to the present and future forms of verb types 1, 2, 5, 6 and 7, and also to the past tense of verb types 2 and 6. Consider the following examples, part of the table above, though different verbs have been used:

Type 1	/big**i**/	'wash'	*bigi*	
	/big**i**/	'washed'	*bigi*	(when the context so allows)[5]
	/bigi-ɭ-**i**/	'is washing'	*bigili*	
	/bigi-ɭ-**ɛ**/	'will wash'	*bigile*	
Type 2	/hɛb**ɛ**/	'carry'	*hebe*	
	/hɛbɛ-**i**/	'carried'	*hebei*	
	/hibi-ɭ-**i**/	'is carrying'	*hebeli*	
	/hɛbɛ-ɭ-**ɛ**/	'will carry'	*hebele*	
Type 5	/d̪**u**/	'hear'	*du*	
	/d̪**u**/	'heard'	*du*	(when the context so allows)
	/d̪u-ɭ-**u**/	'is hearing'	*dulu*	
	/d̪u-ɭ-**ɔ**/	'will hear'	*dulo*	
Type 6	/t̪ob**o**/	'speak'	*tobôu*	
	/t̪obo-**u**/	'spoke'	*tobou*	
	/t̪obo-ɭ-**o**/	'is speaking'	*tobolôu*	
	/t̪obo-ɭ-**o**/	'will speak'	*tobolôu*	
Type 7	/t̪ɔg**ɔ**/	'make'	*togo*	
	(/tɛgɛ-**i**/	'made'	*tegei*	(vowel harmony rule 7))
	/t̪ɔgɔ-ɭ-**u**/	'is making'	*togoulu*[6]	
	/t̪ɔgɔ-ɭ-**ɔ**/	'will make'	*togolo*	

Irrealis mood is signalled by /-ɭ/ and is, among other uses, used in expressing present and future tense. Non-future tense (NFUT) is signalled by a high vowel /-i/ or /-u/, which makes type 1 and type 5 verbs inherently oriented to past tense. Future tense (FUT) is signalled by /-ɛ/ or /-ɔ/. However, if a root ends in /-o/, and if it appears in irrealis mood, the vowel in the TAM suffix does not vary in highness, which means that the difference between present and future is neutralised. The only choice to contrast with past tense, is a non-past tense (NPST).

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 1:

$$ \text{(ɭ)V} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{(ɭ)V} \quad / \quad \text{V} + \underline{\quad} $$
$$ \text{[+TAM]} \qquad\quad \text{[αback]} \qquad \text{[αback]} $$

The vowel signalling tense in the TAM suffix /-(ɭ)V/ varies in backness in accordance with the last vowel of the verb root.

---

[5] Verb types 1 and 5 are considered to be inherently past in the context of tense marking. See main document 4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS (below the main table).

[6] togo-u-l-u (make-BLTV-IRR-NFUT)

VOWEL HARMONY RULES 2 AND 3

If the last root vowel is /ɑ/ VH RULES 2 & 3 generally apply for the present and future forms, respectively. These are the type 3 and 4 verbs, excluded under the first rule.

Type 3	/bahɑ/	'look'	baha
	/baha-**i**/	'looked'	bahai
	/bɔhɔ-ʅ-**u**/	'is looking'	baholu
	/baha-ʅ-**ɛ**/	'will look'	bahale

Type 4	/fijɑ/	'fall'	fiya	
	(/fijɛ-**i**/	'fell'	fiyei	(vowel harmony rule 6 also applies))
	/fijɔ-ʅ-**u**/	'is falling'	fiyolu	
	/fijɑ-ʅ-**ɛ**/	'will fall'	fiyale	

<u>VOWEL HARMONY RULE 2:</u>

    ʅV   →   ʅu   /   ɑ+__
     [+NFUT]

<u>VOWEL HARMONY RULE 3a:</u>

    ʅV   →   ʅɛ   /   ɑ+__
     [+FUT]

<u>VOWEL HARMONY RULE 3b:</u>

    V   →   i   /   ɑ+__
  [+PAST]

For verbal roots ending in /ɑ/ the present TAM-suffix is generally /-ʅu/ 'IRR.NFUT' and the future suffix is /-ʅɛ/ 'IRR.FUT'. In addition, the past TAM suffix is /-i/.

    VH RULE 3a and 3b may be generalised to cover the irregular type 3c verbs.

Type 3c	/tagɑ/	'like'	taga
	/tagɑ-**i**/	'liked'	tagai
	/tagɑ-ʅ-**i**/	'likes'	tagali
	/tagɑ-ʅ-**ɛ**/	'will like'	tagale

<u>VOWEL HARMONY RULE 3a & 3b GENERALISED:</u>

    (ʅ)V   →   (ʅ)V   /   ɑ+__
  [+TAM]   [-back]

The irregular type 3c verb roots end in /ɑ/ and the present TAM-suffix is /-ʅi/ 'IRR.NFUT' (rather than /-ʅu/). The future suffix is the regular /-ʅɛ/ 'IRR.FUT'. In addition, the past TAM suffix is also a front vowel /-i/, as for the regular type 3a verbs.

_____

    VH RULE 1 applies absolutely to all verbal roots ending in /i/, /u/, /e/ or /o/. In the case of a root ending in /ɔ/ the rule applies in 95% of the words. In words ending in /ɑ/, VH RULE 2 applies in about 93% of them (some of the exceptions are type 3c verbs). VH RULE 3b applies absolutely to all verb roots meeting the conditions. In the rest of the words (a few are stative verbs), the rules are in some way violated, giving rise to subtypes. See the main chart under 4.1.5.2.1 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR FINAL VERBS in the main document.

VOWEL HARMONY RULES 4 AND 5

As can be seen in the **present** forms of type 2, 3 and 4 verbs below, further rules are needed to explain the vowel changes in the root, caused by the influence of the vowel in the suffix. The three following rules affect the whole root. (In the main document, see 2.8.5 VOWEL HARMONY - SPELLING OF A FEW EXCEPTIONS to explain the discrepancies between phonemic writing and orthography.)

VH RULE 4

Type 2	/h**e**b**e**/	'carry'	*hebe*
	/h**i**b**i**-ʟ-i/	'is carrying'	*hebeli*

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 4:

$$(V)^n + \quad \rightarrow \quad V \qquad / \quad \underline{\quad} \quad \text{ʟi}$$
$$[\text{-high}] \qquad\qquad [\text{+high}] \qquad\qquad [\text{+TAM}]$$
$$[\text{-back}]$$

If the last vowel in a verbal root is /ɛ/, it and any preceding /ɛ/ will change to /i/ when followed by the TAM suffix /-ʟi/ 'IRR.NFUT'.

VH RULE 5

Type 3a	/b**ɑ**h**ɑ**/	'look'	*baha*
	/b**ɔ**h**ɔ**-ʟ-u/	'is looking'	*baholu*
Type 4	/fij**ɑ**/	'fall'	*fiya*
	/fij**ɔ**-ʟ-u/	'is falling'	*fiyolu*

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 5:

$$(V)^n + \quad \rightarrow \quad V \qquad / \quad \underline{\quad} \quad \text{ʟu}$$
$$[\text{+central}] \qquad\qquad [\text{+back}] \qquad\qquad [\text{+TAM}]$$

If the last vowel in a verbal root is /ɑ/, it and any preceding /ɑ/ will change to /ɔ/ when followed by the TAM suffix /-ʟu/ 'IRR.NFUT'.

    VH RULES 4 and 5 apply absolutely to all verbal roots meeting the above conditions.

_____

The next two vowel harmony rules apply also to negative past forms in the following way:

    All verbs may take /-ʟi mɛɪ/ as a negative marker in past tense. Even though the suffix /-ʟi/ in /-ʟi mɛɪ/ 'did not ...' is not itself susceptible to vowel harmony rules, the root vowels in type 4 and type 7 verbs change because of this suffix according to VH RULES 6 & 7, respectively.

/migi/	'come down'	/migi-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not come down'	type 1
/bɛsɛ/	'fish/angle for'	/bisi-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not fish/angle for'	type 2
/bɑhɑ/	'look'	/bɑhɑ-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not look'	type 3
/b**i**j**ɑ**/	'fight'	/bij**ɛ**-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not fight'	type 4
/dugu/	'see'	/dugu-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not see'	type 5
/sõ/	'open'	/sõ-ʟ-ĩ	mɛɪ/	'did not open'	type 6
/s**ɔ**g**ɔ**/	'plant'	/s**ɛ**g**ɛ**-ʟ-i	mɛɪ/	'did not plant'	type 7

Vowel harmony rules 6 and 7

VH RULES 6 and 7 are needed to explain the vowel changes taking place in type 4[7] and type 7 roots, when the TAM suffix is /-i/ 'NFUT' or /-l̪i mɛi/ 'IRR.NFUT NEG' (**past** tense).

VH RULE 6:

Type 4	/ti**ɑ**/	'sleep'	*tia*
	/tiɛ-i/	'is sleeping/slept'	*tiei*
	/tiɛ-l̪i mɛɪ/	'did not sleep'	*tieli mei* (sleep-IRR.NFUT NEG)
	/suw**ɑ**/	'paddle'	*suwa*
	/suwɛ-i/	'paddled'	*suwei*
	/suwɛ-l̪i mɛɪ/	'did not paddle'	*suweli mei* (paddle-IRR.NFUT NEG)

<u>VH RULE 6:</u>

$$\begin{matrix} CV(C)ɑ+ \\ [+high] \end{matrix} \quad \rightarrow \quad CV(C)ɛ \quad / \quad \_\_ \quad \begin{matrix} (l̪)i \\ [+TAM] \end{matrix}$$

In a verbal root ending in /ɑ/, if the vowel in the preceding syllable is [+high], the /ɑ/ will change to /ɛ/ if followed by the TAM suffix /-i/ 'NFUT' or /-l̪i mɛi/ 'IRR.NFUT NEG'.

VH RULE 7

Type 7	/s**ɔ**g**ɔ**/	'plant'	*sogo*
	/sɛgɛ-i/	'planted'	*segei*
	/sɛgɛ-l̪i mɛɪ/	'did not plant'	*segeli mei* (plant-IRR.NFUT NEG)

VH RULE 7 is not like any other vowel harmony rule in this language. How do you explain the form /sɛgɛɪ/, when the basic form is /sɔgɔ/? I propose VH RULES 7a and 7b.

<u>Vowel harmony rules 7a & 7b:</u>

7a)
$$\begin{matrix} (V)^n + \\ [-(mid)high] \\ [+back] \end{matrix} \quad \rightarrow \quad \begin{matrix} V \\ [-back] \end{matrix} \quad / \quad \_\_ \quad \begin{matrix} (l̪)V \\ [+TAM] \\ [\alpha back] \end{matrix}$$

If the last vowel in a verbal root is /ɔ/, it and any preceding /ɔ/ will change to /ɛ/, when followed by the TAM suffix -V 'NFUT' and /-l̪i mɛi/ 'IRR.NFUT NEG'. The non-future/NFUT suffix is as yet "undecided", as to which form it will take. VH RULE 7b then "makes that decision".

7b)
$$\begin{matrix} V \\ [+TAM] \end{matrix} \quad \rightarrow \quad i \quad / \quad ɛ+ \_\_$$

The non-future tense suffix becomes /-i/ when following on a front vowel in the root, which of course is a specification of VH RULE 1.

_____

Rule**s** 6 and 7 apply to all roots meeting the conditions.

---

[7] Type 4d, e.g. *t̪afala* 'stand' is irregular in that it is conjugated according to VH Rule 6, even though there is no high vowel in the root.

t̪afala	'stand'	-
t̪afala	'stands'	-
t̪efele-i	'**stood**'	-NFUT
t̪efele-l̪(-)i mei	'**did not stand**'	-IRR(-)NFUT#NEG
t̪afala-l̪-e	'will stand'	-IRR-FUT
t̪afala-l̪-i	'stand until'	-IRR-NFUT

MORPHOPHONEMIC RULES OF VOWEL HARMONY IN MEDIAL VERBS

As described in the main part of the paper, medial verb forms are not conjugated in quite the same ways as final verb forms, even though, as far as vowel harmony goes, there are far more similarities than differences.

The following table gives the general picture. The main difference, in general, is that in final verbs there is a three-way tense distinction: past, present and future; in medial verbs there is a **two-way relative** tense distinction: present and future[8] (see 4.1.5.2.2 FORMS OF THE TAM SUFFIX FOR MEDIAL VERBS). Medial present, as far as vowel harmony goes, is conjugated the same as final present. Medial future is conjugated the same as final future with one exception: most type 3 and type 4 verbs occur as bare roots.[9]

Medial verb conjugation is not as regular as its final counterpart, so for verb types 1, 2 and 5 there are two verbs in the table to show some of the variation, even though it does not relate to vowel harmony.[10]

BASIC FORM	PRESENT CLOSE/NFUT	FUTURE UNSPECIFIED/FUT	MEANING	TYPE OF VERB
	-i/-u	(-ɭ-)-ɑ/-ɛ/-ɔ/-o[11]		
/sa-gi/	/sa-gi/	/sa-gi-ɛ/	'put.inside-OF'	type 1
/migi/	/migi/	/migi-ɭ-ɛ/	'come down'	
/dɛgɛ/	/dɛgɛ-i/	/dɛgɛ/	'do'	type 2
/bɛsɛ/	/bɛsɛ-i/	/bɛsɛ-ɭ-ɛ/	'fish/angle'	
/bɑhɑ/	/bɔhɔ-u/	/bɑh**ɑ**/	'look'	type 3a
/tɑgɑ/	/ tɑgɑ-i/	/tɑgɑ-ɭ-ɛ/	'like'	type 3c[12]
/bijɑ/	/bijɔ-u/	/bij**ɑ**/	'fight'	type 4[13]
/dugu/	/dugu/	/dugu-ɔ/	'see'	type 5
/du/	/du/	/du-ɭ-ɔ/	'hear'	
/sõ/	/sõ/	/sõ-ɭ-õ/	'open'	type 6
/wɔ/	/wɔ-u/	/wɔ-ɭ-ɔ/	'attack'	type 7

As can be seen from the table, the main rule, VH RULE 1, applies: front vowels co-occur with front vowels and back vowels co-occur with back vowels. Verb types 3 and 4, the types where the last vowel is the phoneme /ɑ/, follow that pattern in relative present tense, as in this medial context /ɑ/ is mostly considered to be a back vowel. In relative future tense it is the root final /ɑ/ which signals that tense. As for changes in the root only type 3a and type 4 verbs show up with a change in present tense, as predicted by VH RULE 5.

VH RULE 1 and VH RULE 5 will be repeated here.

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 1: (applies to all, except type 3c)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{(ɭ)V} & \rightarrow & \text{(ɭ)V} & / & \text{V} + \_\_\_ \\ \text{[+TAM]} & & \text{[αback]} & & \text{[αback]} \end{array}$$

The vowel signalling tense in the TAM suffix /-(ɭ)V/ varies in backness in accordance with the last vowel of the verb root.

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 5: (applies to type 3a and type 4 verbs):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{(V)}^n + & \rightarrow & \text{V} & / & \_\_\_ \text{u}^{14} \\ \text{[+central]} & & \text{[+back]} & & \text{[+TAM]} \end{array}$$

If the last vowel in a verbal root is /ɑ/, it and any preceding /ɑ/ will change to /ɔ/ when followed by the TAM suffix /-u/ 'NFUT'.

---

[8] In addition, this relative tense distinction also signals different or same subject, respectively, in relation to the next clause.

[9] That is, in this context they are inherently relative future.

[10] See the main document for details: 4.1.5.1.2 EPISTEMIC MOOD IN MEDIAL VERBS.

[11] /-ɭ-/ 'IRR' /-ɑ/, /-ɛ/, /-ɔ/ 'FUT'
  /-i/, /-u/ 'NFUT' /-o/ 'NPST'

[12] Type 3c is not conjugated as other ɑ-verbs; see VH RULE 3a & 3b GENERALISED under **final** verbs in this appendix.

[13] Type 4d is excluded here. See footnote on previous page.

[14] Without the irrealis /-ɭ-/ preceding, which only occurs in final verbs.

A MORPHOPHONEMIC RULE OF VOWEL HARMONY TRIGGERED BY /ɑ/-SUFFIXES

A rule of vowel harmony is triggered by the suffix -*adi* 'prospective aspect', occurring in final verbs, and by the suffix -*a* 'purpose/subjunctive', occurring in medial verbs.

VOWEL HARMONY RULE 8

VH RULE 8 applies to all verb types and affects all [-high] vowels in the verb, when followed by a suffix beginning with /ɑ/.

Prospective aspect[15]

/i/	'go'	/i-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to go'	(go-IRR-PROS)	*iladi*	type 1
/ḍɛgɛ/	'do'	/ḍagɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to do'	(do-IRR-PROS)	*de**ge**ladi*	type 2
/bɑhɑ/	'look'	/bɑhɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to look'	(look-IRR-PROS)	*bahaladi*	type 3[16]
/ṭiɑ/	'sleep'	/ṭiɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to fall asleep'	(sleep-IRR-PROS)	*tialadi*	type 4
/ḍugu/	'see'	/ḍugu-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to see'	(see-IRR-PROS)	*duguladi*	type 5
/ṭobo/	'speak'	/ṭabɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to speak'	(speak-IRR-PROS)	*to**bôu**ladi*	type 6
/ṭɔgɔ/	'make'	/ṭagɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**ḍi/	'just about to make'	(make-IRR-PROS)	*tagaladi*	type 7

Purpose

/i/	'go'	/i-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo/	'planning to go'	(go-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*ilamôu*	type 1
/ḍɛgɛ/	'do'	/ḍagɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to do'	(do-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*de**ge**lamôu*	type 2
/bɑhɑ/	'look'	/bɑhɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to look'	(look-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*bahalamôu*	type 3
/ṭiɑ/	'sleep'	/ṭiɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to fall asleep'	(sleep-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*tialamôu*	type 4
/ḍugu/	'see'	/ḍugu-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to see'	(see-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*dugulamôu*	type 5
/ṭobo/	'speak'	/ṭabɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to speak'	(speak-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*to**bôu**lamôu*	type 6
/ṭɔgɔ/	'make'	/ṭagɑ-ɭ-**ɑ**-mo /	'planning to make'	(make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV)	*tagalamôu*	type 7

Vowel Harmony Rule 8:

$$(V)^n + \rightarrow \quad ɑ \quad / \quad \_\_ \quad ɑ$$
$$\text{[-high]} \qquad\qquad\qquad \text{[+PROS]}$$
$$\text{[+PURP]}$$

The prospective aspect suffix /-ɑḍi/ and the purpose/subjunctive suffix /-ɑ/will change all [-high] vowels in the root to /ɑ/.

Rule 8 applies absolutely, but the spelling of type 2 and type 6 verbs are not phonemically but morphologically based, as marked in red above. See also 2.8.5 VOWEL HARMONY – SPELLING OF A FEW EXCEPTIONS in the main document.

---

[15] Comrie 1976:64

[16] Type 3a and 3c are conjugated in the same way. Type 4a and 4d are also conjugated in the same way.

𝒜ppendix II

A PRONOUN OR QUESTION WORD AS HEAD OF A NOMINAL PHRASE

CO-OCCURRENCE WITH CASE

Case →	=*ha̲*	={*kôu*}	={*ye*}
head of simple NP ↓	'genitive'	'locative'	'instrumental'
personal pronouns	---	=*mokôu*	---
emphatic pronouns	---	=*makôu*	---
demonstrative pronouns	✓	=*kôu*	---
koyo 'who'	✓	=*kôu*	---
ke̲i 'what'	---	---	---

CO-OCCURRENCE WITH LIMITERS

Limiters →	=*nôu*	=*fe̲i*	=*ne*
head of simple NP ↓	'only'	'total'	'also'
personal pronouns	✓	---	✓
emphatic pronouns	✓	✓	✓
demonstrative pronouns	✓	✓	✓
koyo 'who'	---	---	---
ke̲i 'what'	---	---	---

CO-OCCURRENCE WITH =*do* 'intensifier', =*bôu* 'and', =*le* 'independent possessive'

intensifier ,'and', indp.poss. →	=*do*	=*bôu*	=*le*[17]
head of simple NP ↓	'intensifier'	'and'	'independent possessive'
personal pronouns	---	✓	---
emphatic pronouns	---	✓	---
demonstrative pronouns	---	✓	✓
koyo 'who'	✓	---	✓
ke̲i 'what'	---	---	---

[17] Following =*ha̲* 'genitive'.

Appendix III

Interlinearised texts with five lines:

vernacular surface form

underlying form

gloss

part of speech

free translation

The following texts are included:

Gina text

James text

Motousi text

Ronny text

Gina's feast story

Gina Folosie 1996, Sesenabi village
A written story, (narrative)

000

Yoti	***Ta̲***
yoti	ta̲
traditional.feast	talk
v1	v3a

'(A) story about (a) feast' (heading)

001

O	***ta***	***e̲***	***sasa̲i***	***dilie***	***wai***	***dia***	***delei.***
o	ta	e̲	sasa̲i	dilie	wai	dia	dala-i
man	INDF	3S	woman	3DU	pig	look.after	be/have-NFUT
N	ADJ	PRON	N	PRON	N	v4a	v4d-SF

'A certain man and his wife raised (a) pig.'

002

Wai	***dia***	***hiyedo***	***degei.***
wai	dia	hiye=do	dege-i
pig	look.after	big=INT	do-NFUT
N	v4a	ADJ=CLT	v2-SF

'(They) raised (the) pig and (it) became really big.' or '(The) pig was raised and it got really big.'

003

Kegemôu,	***dilie***	***moso̲***	***tegei.***
ke-ge-môu	dilie	moso̲	togo-i
that-VBR-PFV	3DU	house	build-NFUT
DEM-SF-SF	PRON	N	v7a-SF

'Having become like that, the two of them built a house.'

004

Moso̲	***tegei***	***mei***	***degemôu,***	***dilie***	***ôu***	***hai.***
moso̲	togo-i	mei	dege-môu	dilie	ôu	ha-i
house	build-NFUT	NEG	do-PFV	3DU	sago	cut-NFUT
N	v7a-SF	ADV	v2-SF	PRON	N	v3a-SF

'When (they) had finished building the house, the two of them cut down a sago palm.'

005

Sasa̲i	***e̲***	***ôu***	***gai.***
sasa̲i	e̲	ôu	ga-i
woman	3S	sago	gather-NFUT
N	PRON	N	v3a-SF

'(The) woman gathered sago.'

006

Ôu	***gai***	***mei***	***degemôu,***	***dilie***	***o***	***ta***	***ta̲***	***tobou,***
ôu	ga-i	mei	dege-môu	dilie	o	ta	ta̲	tobôu-u
sago	gather-NFUT	NEG	do-PFV	3DU	man	INDF	talk	say-NFUT
N	v3a	ADV	v2-SF	PRON	N	ADJ	v3a	v6a-SF

na̲	***yoti***	***tobolôu***	***sia,***	***sa***	***sa***	***olôufe̲ido.***
na̲	yoti	tobôu-l-ôu	sia	sa	sa	olôufe̲i=do
2S	feast	say-IRR-NPST	walk.around	land	land	all.total=INT
PRON	V1	v6a-SF-SF	v4b	N	N	ADJ.CLT=CLT

'When (she) had finished gathering sago, the two of them told another man, "Walk around and talk about the feast everywhere."'

007

O	*e̱*	*o*	*ka*	*i.*
o	e̱	o	ka	i
man	3S	man	find	go.NFUT
N	PRON	N	v3a	v1

'The man went to look for people.'

008

E̱	*o*	*ţa*	*tobou,*	*ni̱*	*olôufei*	*haguama.*
e̱	o	ţa	tobôu-u	ni̱	olôufei	hagua-ma
3S	man	talk	say-NFUT	2PL	all.total	come-DU/PL
PRON	N	v3a	v6a	PRON	ADJ.CLT	v4b-SF

'He said to (the) people, "All of you come."'

009

O	*su̱do*	*haguei.*
o	su̱=do	hagua-i
man	many=INT	come-NFUT
N	ADJ=CLT	V4b-SF

'Many people came.'

010

Dilie	*o*	*kedia̱mokôu*	*nale̱*	*hiyedo*	*ne̱i.*
dilie	o	ke̱+dia̱=mokôu	na̱-l-e	hiye=do	ne-i
3DU	man	that+3PL=LOC	eat-IRR-FUT	big=INT	give-NFUT
PRON	N	DEM+PRON=CLT	v3a-SF-SF	ADJ=CLT	v2-SF

'The two of them gave plenty of food to the people.'

011

Sabiyei	*ta*	*dia̱*	*wai*	*wei.*
sabiya-i	ta	dia̱	wai	wo-i
be.morning-NFUT	INDF	3PL	pig	attack-NFUT
v4a-SF	ADJ	PRON	N	v7a-SF

'One morning they killed (the) pig.'

012

Mei	*degemôu,*	*dia̱*	*wai*	*sou.*
mei	dege-môu	dia̱	wai	sôu-u
NEG	do-PFV	3PL	pig	cook.on.stones-NFUT
ADV	v2-SF	PRON	N	V6a-SF

'Having finished, they cooked (the) pig on hot stones.'

013

Wai	*sou*	*hiyamôu,*	*dia̱*	*wai*	*na̱i.*
wai	sôu-u	hiya-môu	dia̱	wai	na̱-i
pig	cook.on.stones-NFUT	be.cooked-PFV	3PL	pig	eat-NFUT
N	v6a-SF	v4a-SF	PRON	N	v3a-SF

'Having cooked (the) pig (until it) was done, they ate pig(meat).'

014

Sabiyei	*dia̱*	*wai*	*sama̱,*	*die*	*sabekôu*	*yai.*
sabiya-i	dia̱	wai	sa+ma̱	die	sabe=kôu	ya-i
be.morning-NFUT	3PL	pig	put.inside+put	3PL.POSS	home.ground=LOC	go.DU/PL-NFUT
v4a-SF	PRON	N	v3a+v3a	PRON	N=CLT	v3a-SF

'In the morning, they put pig (meat) into (their stringbags) and went home.'

015

M̲a̲ t̲a̲ ke̲nôûfe̲i.

ma̲	ta̲	ke̲ = nôû = fe̲i
1s.POSS	talk	that=only=total
PRON	v3a	DEM=CLT=CLT

'That is all of my talk.' (conclusion)

James' story about the importance of medicine

James Welema 2002, Dahamo village
A written story (descriptive)

000

Mola	***Tạ***
mola	*tạ*
medicine	talk
N	v3a

'(A) story about medicine' (heading)

001

Molabe	***bolofẹido,***	***ẹme***	***o***	***dogôugudi.***
mola=be	*bolọ=fei=do*	*ẹ=me*	*o*	*dogôugu-di*
medicine=TOP	good=total=INT	3S=TOP	man	help-HAB
N=CLT	ADJ=CLT=CLT	PRON=CLT	N	v5-SF

'Medicine is very good; it helps people.'

002

Kegemôu,	***o***	***olôufẹidobe***	***sawisiei***	***olôufẹi***
ke-ge-môu	*o*	*olôufẹi=do=be*	*sawisia-i*	*olôufẹi*
that-VBR-PFV	man	all.total=INT=TOP	be.day-NFUT	all.total
DEM-SF-SF	N	ADJ.CLT=CLT=CLT	v4a-SF	ADJ.CLT

mola	***ṭagalemôu***	***malạ***	***idi.***
mola	*ṭaga-l-e-môu*	*malạ*	*i-di*
medicine	like-IRR-FUT-PFV	get.IRR.FUT	go-HAB
N	v3C-SF-SF-SF	v6a.SF.SF	v1-SF

'Having become like that, all people, at all times, having liked medicine keep getting it.'

003

Molabe	***o***	***olôufẹi***	***do***	***degeimôube***	***ile,***
mola=be	*o*	*olôufẹi*	*do*	*dege-i-môu=be*	*i-l-e*
medicine=TOP	man	all.total	sickness	do-NFUT-PFV=TOP	go-IRR-FUT
N=CLT	N	ADJ.CLT	N	v2-SF-SF=CLT	v1-SF-SF

mola	***mosọkôu***	***fologa***	***duwomôu,***
mola	*mosọ=kôu*	*folo-ga*	*duwo-môu*
medicine	house=LOC	go.up-DU/PL.FUT	sit-PFV
N	N=CLT	v7a-SF	v7b-PFV

medigohạ	***mola***	***nẹimôu***	***nọumôube,***
medigo=hạ	*mola*	*nẹ-i-môu*	*nạ-u-môu=be*
medical.worker=GEN	medicine	give-NFUT-PFV	eat-NFUT-PFV=TOP
N=CLT	N	v2-SF-SF	v3a-SF-SF=CLT

o	***kẹme***	***do***	***bolọ***	***degedi.***
o	*kẹ=me*	*do*	*bolọ*	*dege-di*
man	that=TOP	sickness	good	do-HAB
N	DEM=CLT	N	ADJ	v2-HAB

'Concerning medicine, all people, when (they) are sick go, and they arrive at the clinic and sitting down, the medical worker gives medicine, (and) when (the sick person) eats (it), that person gets well (from his) sickness.'

004

Kegemôu,	*sa*	*sa*	*o*	*olôufeidobe*	*mola*	*e*
ke-ge-môu	*sa*	*sa*	*o*	*olôufei=do=be*	*mola*	*e*
that-VBR-PFV	land	land	man	all.total=INT=TOP	medicine	3S
DEM-VBR-PFV	N	N	N	ADJ.CLT=CLT=CLT	N	PRON

neleyenôu	*wolôu*	*daladi.*
nele=ye=nôu	*wôu-l-ôu*	*dala-di*
strength=INS=only	watch.over-IRR-NPST	have-HAB
N=CLT=CLT	v6a-SF-SF	v4d-SF

'Having become like that, by its the strength, medicine looks after people everywhere.'

005

Mola	*e*	*dabaibe*	*hiyedo*	*degele*	*idi.*
mola	*e*	*dabai=be*	*hiye=do*	*dege-l-e*	*i-di*
medicin	3S	work=TOP	big=INT	do-IRR-FUT	go-HAB
N	PRON	N=CLT	ADJ=CLT	v2-SF-SF	v1-SF

'Medicine is doing (a) great job everywhere.' or 'Medicine, its work is big and varied.' (*degele i*: plural verb form).

006

Do	*daga*	*daga*	*môuma*	*haguasiedi.*
do	*daga*	*daga*	*môu+ma*	*hagua-sie-di*
sickness	different	different	get+put	come-PL-HAB
N	ADJ	ADJ	v6a+v3a	v4b-SF-SF

'(People) keep coming with all kinds of sicknesses.'

007

Kegemôu,	*doktabôu*	*medigobôu*	*diame*
ke-ge-môu	*dokta=bôu*	*medigo=bôu*	*dia=me*
that-VBR-PFV	doctor=and	medical.worker=and	3PL=TOP
DEM-SF-SF	N=CLT	N=CLT	PRON=CLT

dabai	*hiyedo*	*degele*	*idi.*
dabai	*hiye=do*	*dege-l-e*	*i-di*
work	big=INT	do-IRR-FUT	go-HAB
N	ADJ=CLT	v2-SF-SF	v1-SF

'Having become like that, doctors and medical workers are always working very hard.'

Motousi's airstrip building story
Motousi Si 1996, Dahamo village
A written story (descriptive)

000

Fene	**gabu**	**milou**	**ta̲**
fene	*gabu*	*milôu-u*	*ta̲*
airplane	place	work-NFUT	talk
N	N	v6a-SF	v3a

'(A) story about working (on an) airstrip' (heading)

001

A̲	**afu**	**1981-82**	**Sepe̲**	**o̲**		**fene**	**gabu**	**milou**	**ta̲.**
a̲	*afu*	*1981-82*	*Sepe̲*	*o̲*		*fene*	*gabu*	*milôu-u*	*ta̲*
1s	earlier	1981-82	Smipen	mouth.of.river		airplane	place	work-NFUT	talk
PRON	ADV	ADV	N	N		N	N	v6a-SF	v3a

'Earlier (in) 1981-82, (at the) mouth of (the) river Smipen, I worked (on the) airstrip, (a) story (about that)' (introduction)

002

To̲	**e̲**	**hu̲be**	**Sepe̲**	**o̲.**
to̲	*e̲*	*hu̲=be*	*Sepe̲*	*o̲*
river	3s	name=TOP	Smipen	mouth.of.river
N	PRON	N=CLT	N	N

'The river, its name is (the) Mouth of the Smipen.'

003

Bôu	**e̲**	**hu̲be**	**Woodyard,**	**Vance**	**Woodyard,**
bôu	*e̲*	*hu̲=be*	*Woodyard*	*Vance*	*Woodyard*
white.man	3s	name=TOP	Woodyard	Vance	Woodyard
N	PRON	N=CLT	N	N	N

ebôu	**a̲bôu**	**Dipaibôu**	**fene**	**gabu**	**milolôu**	**i.**
e̲=bôu	*a̲=bôu*	*Dipai=bôu*	*fene*	*gabu*	*milôu-l-ôu*	*i*
3s=and	1s=and	Dipai=and	airplane	place	work-IRR-NPST	go.NFUT
PRON=CLT	PRON=CLT	N=CLT	N	N	v6a-SF-SF	v1

'The white man his name is Woodyard, Vance Woodyard, he and I and Dipai worked (on the) airstrip.'

004

Fene	**gabu**	**sabe**	**fofo̲u**	**hiyedo.**
fene	*gabu*	*sa=be*	*fofôu-u*	*hiye=do*
airplane	place	land=TOP	be.muddy-NFUT	big=INT
N	N	N=CLT	v6a-SF	ADJ=CLT

'The ground of (the) airstrip was really muddy.'

005

Habiya	**o**	**su̲do**	**milolôu**	**i.**
habiya	*o*	*su̲=do*	*milôu-l-ôu*	*i*
Aekyom	man	many=INT	work-IRR-NPST	go.NFUT
N	N	ADJ=CLT	v6a-SF-SF	v1

'Many Aekyom people worked (there).'

006

Medigo   ***o,***   ***e̲***   ***hu̲be***   ***Someke.***

medigo	*o*	*e̲*	*hu̲=be*	*Someke*
medical.worker	man	3S	name=TOP	Someke
N	N	PRON	N=CLT	N

'The medical orderly, his name was Someke.'

007

O   ***hu̲***   ***olôûfe̲i***   ***nala̲i.***

o	*hu̲*	*olôûfe̲i*	*nala̲-i*
man	name	all.total	write-NFUT
N	N	ADJ.CLT	v3a-SF

'(He) wrote (down) all (the) names of people (working there).'

008

E̲me   ***bose.***

e̲=me	*bose*
3S=TOP	boss
PRON=CLT	N

'He was (the) boss.'

009

Kege   ***milolôû***   ***ibe,***   ***gusubu***   ***8:00***   ***ilemôû***   ***12:00.***

ke-ge	*milôû-l-ôû*	*i=be*	*gusubu*	*8:00*	*i-l-e-môû*	*12:00*
that-VBR	work-IRR-NPST	go.NFUT=TOP	morning	8:00	go-IRR-FUT-PFV	12.00
DEM-SF	v6a-SF-SF	v1=TOP	ADV	ADV	v1-SF-SF-SF	ADV

'We worked like that from 8:00 o'clock in (the) morning until 12:00.'

010

Mesiholo   ***duwodi.***

mesiho-l-o	*duwo-di*
rest-IRR-FUT	sit-HAB
v7a-SF-SF	v7b-SF

'(We) habitually rested.'

011

1:00   ***bala***   ***wodi.***

1:00	*bala*	*wo-di*
1:00	bell	attack-HAB
ADV	N	v7a-SF

'(At) 1:00 o'clock (they) habitually hit (a) bell.'

012

O   ***olôûfe̲i***   ***dabai***   ***degedi***   ***ibe***   ***demôû,***   ***habi***   ***4:30***   ***fogôû***   ***idi.***

o	*olôûfe̲i*	*dabai*	*dege-di*	*i=be*	*de-môû*	*habi*	*4:30*	*fogôû*	*i-di*
man	all.total	work	do-HAB	go=TOP	PROV-PFV	afternoon	4:30	leave.for	go-HAB
N	ADJ.CLT	N	v2-SF	v1=CLT	v2-SF	ADV	ADV	v6a	v1-SF

'Everybody habitually worked until 4.30 in (the) afternoon, (when) leaving (they) habitually went.'

013

O   ***olôûfe̲i***   ***moso̲kôû***   ***idi.***

o	*olôûfe̲i*	*moso̲=kôû*	*i-di*
man	all.total	house=LOC	go-HAB
N	ADJ.CLT	N=CLT	v1-SF

'Everybody habitually went to (their) houses.'

014

Fene	*gabu*	*a̲*	*miloube,*	*hiya̲*	*olo̲ûfe̲i̲be*	*2*	*years.*
fene	*gabu*	*a̲*	*milo̲ûu-u=be*	*hiya̲*	*olo̲ûfe̲i̲=be*	*2*	*years*
airplane	place	1s	work-NFUT=TOP	year	all.total=TOP	2	years
N	N	PRON	v6a-SF=CLT	N	ADJ.CLT=CLT	ADJ	N

'The work I (did) of building (the) airstrip went on for all of two years.'

015

Mei	*degei,*	*fene*	*fiyei.*
mei	*dege-i*	*fene*	*fiya-i*
NEG	do-NFUT	airplane	fall-NFUT
ADV	v2-SF	N	v4a-SF

'(Then it) was finished; (a) plane landed.'

Ronny's trip to Kiunga

Ronny Guro 1997, Dahamo village
An oral and transcribed story (narrative; told in the village after returning from Kiunga)

001

A,	*testimony,*	*a*	*Kiungakôu*	*i.*
a	*testimony*	*a*	*Kiunga=kôu*	*i*
1s	testimony	1s	Kiunga=LOC	go.NFUT
PRON	N	PRON	N=CLT	v1

'I (have a) testimony (about when) I went to Kiunga.'

002

I,	*ile*	*iligi,*	*Kiungakôu.*
i	*i-l-e*	*i-l-i-gi*	*Kiunga=kôu*
go.NFUT	go-IRR-FUT	go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	Kiunga=LOC
v1	v1-SF-SF	v1-SF-SF-SF	N=CLT

'(I) went; (I) went and went until (arriving) at Kiunga.'

003

Sande	*kaha*	*felei,*	*Monday*	*kôumaha,*	*sele*	*170*	*kina*
Sande	*ka=ha*	*folo-i*	*Monday*	*kôu=ma=ha*	*sele*	*170*	*kina*
Sunday	that=GEN	go.up-NFUT	Monday	this=TOP=GEN	money	170	kina
ADV	DEM=CLT	v7a-SF	ADV	DEM=CLT=CLT	N	ADJ	N

tolôu	*i,*	*sitouwakôu*	*folomôu,*	*nale*	*mou.*
tôu-l-ôu	*i*	*sitouwa=kôu*	*folo-môu*	*na-l-e*	*môu-u*
hold-IRR-NPST	go.NFUT	store=LOC	go.up.FUT-PFV	eat-IRR-FUT	get-NFUT
v6a-SF-SF	v1	N=CLT	v7a-SF	v3a-SF-SF	v6a-SF

'(I) arrived last Sunday; this Monday, (I) held K170 and went; having arrived at the store, (I) bought food.'

004

Nale	*môulamôu*	*degei,*	*sele*	*huyafei*	*degei.*
na-l-e	*môu-l-a-môu*	*dege-i*	*sele*	*huyafei*	*dege-i*
eat-IRR-FUT	get-IRR-SUBJ-PFV	do-NFUT	money	little.total	do-NFUT
v3a-SF-SF	v6a-SF-SF-SF	v2-SF	N	ADJ.CLT	v2-SF

'(I) tried to buy food; (there) was (only) a little money.'

005

Kegemôu,	*a*	*ile,*	*gamani*	*o*	*ta*	*tobou,*	*gamani*
ke-ge-môu	*a*	*i-l-e*	*gamani*	*o*	*ta*	*tobôu-u*	*gamani*
that-VBR-PFV	1s	go-IRR-FUT	government	man	INDF	say-NFUT	government
DEM-SF-SF	PRON	v1-SF-SF	N	N	ADJ	v6a-SF	N

dia	*o*	*J.K.=ha*	*sele*	*a*	*60*	*kina*	*tele*	*nei.*
dia	*o*	*J.K.=ha*	*sele*	*a*	*60*	*kina*	*te-l-e*	*ne-i*
3PL	man	J.K.=GEN	money	1s	60	kina	remove-IRR-FUT	give-NFUT
PRON	N	N=CLT	N	PRON	ADJ	N	v2-SF-SF	v2-SF-SF

'Having become like that, I went and talked to a government official; one of their government officials, J.K. removed K60 and gave (it to) me).'

006

Kegemôu,	*a*	*mala*	*haguei.*
ke-ge-môu	*a*	*mala*	*hagua-i*
that-VBR-PFV	1s	get.IRR.FUT	come-NFUT
DEM-SF-SF	PRON	v6a.SF.SF	v4b-SF

'Having become like that, I took (it) and started to come (back in the direction of the village).'

007

Haguamôu,	*petolo*	*huei*	*mou.*
hagua-môu	*petolo*	*huei*	*môu-u*
come-PFV	petrol	water	get-NFUT
v4b-SF	N	N	v6a-SF

'Having come (to a place for buying it), (I) got petrol.'

008

Môulamôu,	*e*	*tobou,*	*20*	*kina*	*ne*	*nale*	*molôu.*
môu-l-a-môu	*e*	*tobôu-u*	*20*	*kina*	*ne*	*na-l-e*	*môu-l-ôu*
get-IRR-SUBJ-PFV	3s	say-NFUT	20	kina	2s.POSS	eat-IRR-FUT	get-IRR-NPST
v6a-SF-SF-SF	PRON	v6a-SF	ADJ	N	PRON	v2-SF-SF	v6a-SF-SF

'When (I) purposed to get it, he said, (you) will buy your food for 20 kina.' (The story-line goes back to following sentence 5.)

009

OK,	*40*	*kina*	*ne*	*petolo*	*huei*	*dôula*	*ma,*	*Dahamokôu*	*ile.*
OK	*40*	*kina*	*ne*	*petolo*	*huei*	*dôu-l-a*	*ma*	*Dahamo=kôu*	*i-l-e*
OK	40	kina	2s.POSS	petrol	water	draw.water-IRR-SUBJ	put.FUT	Dahamo=LOC	go-IRR-FUT
CONJ	ADJ	N	PRON	N	N	v6a-SF-SF	v3a	N-CLT	v1-SF-SF

'Then, (you) will fill up your petrol for 40 kina and go to Dahamo.'

010

E	*kege*	*tobou,*	*a*	*dôula*	*ma*	*haguei,*	*40*	*kina*	*huei*
e	*ke-ge*	*tobôu-u*	*a*	*dôu-l-a*	*ma*	*hagua-i*	*40*	*kina*	*huei*
3s	that-VBR	say-NFUT	1s	draw.water-IRR-SUBJ	put.FUT	come-NFUT	40	kina	water
PRON	DEM-SF	v6a-SF	PRON	v6a-SF-SF	v3a	v4b-SF	ADJ	N	N

dou,	*20*	*kina*	*ma*	*nale*	*mou.*
dôu-u	*20*	*kina*	*ma*	*na-l-e*	*môu-u*
draw.water-NFUT	20	kina	1s.POSS	eat-IRR-FUT	get-NFUT
v6a-SF	ADJ	N	PRON	v2-SF-SF	v6a-SF

'He said like that; I came to fill up; (I) filled up 40 kina (worth) of petrol; (I) got my food (for) 20 kina.'

011

Môuma	*mei*	*degeimôu,*	*folo*	*tiei,*
môu+ma	*mei*	*dege-i-môu*	*folo*	*tia-i*
get+put	NEG	do-NFUT-PFV	go.up	sleep-NFUT
v6a-SF	ADV	v2-SF-SF	v7a	v4a-SF

sawisiei	*gusubu,*	*Tuesday*	*kaha,*	*a*	*motaye*	*mala*	*hagulugi,*
sawisia-i	*gusubu*	*Tuesday*	*ka=ha*	*a*	*mota=ye*	*mala*	*hagua-l-u-gi*
be.day-NFUT	morning	Tuesday	that=GEN	1s	motor.canoe=INS	get.IRR.FUT	come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ
v4a-SF	ADV	ADV	DEM=CLT	PRON	N=CLT	v6a.SF.SF	v4b-SF-SF-SF

hagulugi,	*hagulugi*	*fele,*	*Yowou*	*okôu*	*tiei.*
hagua-l-u-gi	*hagua-l-u-gi*	*fele*	*Yowou*	*o=kôu*	*tia-i*
come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	come.up	Black.River	mouth.of.river-LOC	sleep-NFUT
v4b-SF-SF-SF	v4b-SF-SF-SF	v2	N	N=CLT	v4a-NFUT

'After finishing getting (the petrol and the food), (I) went up (direction: away from the village) and slept; next day (in the) morning, that Tuesday, I came travelling by motor canoe (back towards the village), until (I) arrived and slept at the mouth of the Black River.'

012

Yowou	*okou*		*tiei,*	*sawisiei*		*Wednesday*	*koumaha*
Yowou	o̱=kou̱		tia-i	sawisa-i		Wednesday	kou̱=ma=ha̱
Black.River	mouth.of.river=LOC		sleep-NFUT	be.day-NFUT		Wednesday	this=TOP=GEN
N	N=CLT		v4a-SF	v4a-SF		ADV	DEM=CLT=CLT

hagulugi,	*haguei,*	*haguei,*	*hagulugi*	*fele,*
hagua-l-u-gi	hagua-i	hagua-i	hagua-l-u-gi	fele̱
come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	come-NFUT	come-NFUT	come-IRR-NFUT-DSQ	come.up.FUT
v4b-SF-SF-SF	v4b-SF	v4b-SF	v4b-SF-SF-SF	v2

Kolou	*okou*		*fele*	*dugu,*	*sokoulou*	*sisigo*	*dia*	*dugu,*
Kolou̱	o̱=kou̱		fele̱	dugu	sokou̱lou̱	sisigo	dia̱	dugu
Koloun	mouth.of.river=LOC		come.up.FUT	see.NFUT	school	children	3PL	see.NFUT
N	N=CLT		v2	v5	N	N	PRON	v5

diabou	*abou+de*	*nale*	*mouma*	*haguei.*
dia=bou̱	a̱=bou̱+de	na̱-l-e	mou̱+ma̱	hagua-i
3PL=and	1S=and+PROV	eat-IRR-FUT	get+put	come-NFUT
PRON=CLT	PRON=CLT+v2	v3a-SF-SF	v6a+V3a	v4b-SF

'(I) slept at (the) mouth of the Black River; next day, this Wednesday, travelling (I) came (by canoe towards the village); (I) came; (I) came until (I) came up and arrived at (the) mouth of (the river) Koloun and saw; (I) saw (the) school children; they and I, got hold of all (the) food and came (by foot towards the village).'

013

Nale	*mouma*	*haguamou,*	*Dahamokou*	*felei.*
na̱-l-e	mou̱+ma̱	hagua-mou̱	Dahamo=kou̱	fele̱-i
eat-IRR-FUT	get+put	come-PFV	Dahamo=LOC	come.up-NFUT
v3a-SF-SF	v6a+v3a	v4b-SF	N-CLT	v2-SF

'Bringing (the) food, (we) arrived at Dahamo.'

014

Tiei,	*sawisiei*	*Thursday*	*kaha,*
tia-i	sawisia-i	Thursday	ka̱=ha̱
sleep-NFUT	be.day-NFUT	Thursday	that=GEN
v4a-SF	v4a-SF	ADV	DEM=CLT

ei	*Dahamo*	*Community*	*School*	*koumaha*	*duwo,*	*celebration*	*yale*	*i.*
ei	Dahamo	Community	School	kou̱=ma=ha̱	duwo	celebration	ya̱-l-e	i
1PL.EX	Dahamo	Community	School	this=TOP=GEN	sit	celebration	play-IRR-FUT	go.NFUT
PRON	N	N	N	DEM=CLT=CLT	v7b	N	v3c-SF-SF	v1

'(We) slept; next day, that Thursday, we were here at the Dahamo Community School and celebrated.'

015

Yale	*ima*	*dumulo*	*mei*	*degei.*
ya̱-l-e	i-ma	dumu̱-l-o	mei	dege-i
play-IRR-FUT	go-ISQ	finish-IRR-FUT	NEG	do-NFUT
v3c-SF-SF	v1-SF	v5-SF-SF	ADV	v2-SF

'After playing (it was) enough and (it) finished.'

016

Kegemôu,	***a***	***Kiungakôu***	***i,***
ke-ge-môu	*a*	*Kiunga=kôu*	*i*
that-VBR-PFV	1s	Kiunga=LOC	go.NFUT
DEM-SF-SF	PRON	N=CLT	v1

Godiha	***amokôu***	***midiho***	***bolofeido***	***amokôu***	***nei.***
Godi=ha	*a=mokôu*	*midiho*	*bolo=fei=do*	*a=mokôu*	*ne-i*
God=GEN	1s=LOC	face	good=total=INT	1s=LOC	give-NFUT
N=CLT	PRON=CLT	N	ADJ=CLT=CLT	PRON=CLT	v2-SF

'Having become like that, I went to Kiunga; God let something very good happen to me.'

017

Sele	***hiyefei***	***mei,***	***a***	***Godikôu***	***diho***	***baga***	***hiyedo***	***tobou,***	***Godiha***
sele	*hiye=fei*	*mei*	*a*	*Godi=kôu*	*diho*	*baga*	*hiye=do*	*tobôu-u*	*Godi=ha*
money	big=total	NEG	1s	God=LOC	eye	close.eye	big=INT	say-NFUT	God=GEN
N	ADJ=CLT	ADV	PRON	N=CLT	N	v3a	ADJ=CLT	v6a-SF	N=CLT

amokôu	***sele***	***60***	***kina***	***neimôu,***	***a***	***Godi=kôu***	***tenkyu***	***hiye=do***	***degei.***
a=mokôu	*sele*	*60*	*kina*	*ne-i-môu*	*a*	*Godi=kôu*	*tenkyu*	*hiye=do*	*dege-i*
1s=LOC	money	60	kina	give-NFUT-PFV	1s	God=LOC	thank.you	big=INT	do-NFUT
PRON=CLT	N	ADJ	N	v2-SF-SF	PRON	N=CLT	N	ADJ=CLT	v2-SF

'(I) did not have much money; I prayed a long time to God; as soon as God gave me K60, I (was) really grateful to God.'

018

Kegemôu,	***a***	***sele***	***ke***	***mou.***
ke-ge-môu	*a*	*sele*	*ke*	*môu-u*
that-VBR-PFV	1s	money	that	get-NFUT
DEM-SF-SF	PRON	N	DEM	v6a-SF

'Having become like that, I got the money.'

019

Kenôuha	***Godikôu***	***tenkyu***	***hiyedo.***
ke=nôu=ha	*Godi=kôu*	*tenkyu*	*hiye=do*
that=only=GEN	God=LOC	thank.you	big=INT
DEM=CLT=CLT	N=CLT	N	ADJ=CLT

'Because of that only, (I was) very grateful to God.'

020

Ke=nôu=fei.
ke=nôu=fei
that=only=total
DEM=CLT=CLT

'That is all.' (conclusion)

Appendix IV

Interlinearised texts with three lines:

vernacular surface form

gloss

free translation

The following texts are included:

A Big-Book story by Gilbert

Hobert's house building story

Michael's hunting story

Pepson's clan legend

A letter

Four very short letters

A Big Book Story by Gilbert
Gilbert Dabaga 2007, Dahamo village
A written story, (narrative)

001

Sawisie-i	*ta*	*a̱*	*i-l-e-môu*	*gôusi*	*dogogu.*
be.day-NFUT	INDF	1s	go-IRR-FUT-PFV	trap	put.NFUT

'One day I having gone, put (a) trap.'

002

Sabiyo-u-môu,	*i-l-e-môu*	*dugu=be*	*kueya*	*ṯo-u*	*dugu.*
be.morning-NFUT-PFV	go-IRR-FUT-PFV	see.NFUT-TOP	cassowary	hold-NFUT	see.NFUT

'Next morning, at dawn, (I) having gone, saw that a cassowary was caught.'

003

Ke-ge-môu,	*a̱*	*kueya*	*ke̱*	*wala*	*ṯabolôu*	*moso̱=kôu*	*i.*
that-VBR-PFV	1s	cassowary	that	attack.IRR.FUT	?	house=LOC	go.NFUT

'Having become like that, I killed the cassowary and ... and went home.'

004

Moso̱=kôu	*folo-môu,*	*kueya*	*so-l-ôu*	*na̱-i̱=be,*
house=LOC	go.up.FUT-PFV	cassowary	cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST	eat-NFUT=TOP

sebe=be	*hiye=do.*
good.taste=TOP	big=INT

'Having come up to the house, (I/we) cooked (it) on hot stones and eating, (it) was delicious.'

Hobert's house building story
Hobert Gisabo 1996, Sesenabi village
An oral and transcribed story (procedural)

000

Mosọ   ŧege-i   ŧa̱
house   make-NFUT   talk

'(A) story about building (a) house' (heading)

001

A̱   afu   1995   ka=ha̱   Bobaho   ele   mosọ   ŧogo-l-a-môu   hebe   mọ-u.
1s   earlier 1995   that=GEN Bobaho   1DU.EX   house   make-IRR-SUBJ-PFV   tree   get-NFUT

'I, before in 1995, Bobaho and I planning to build (a) house, got timber.'

002

Mou   diafigi.
post   cut.PL.NFUT

'(We) cut posts.'

003

Mou   diafigi+ma̱   mộu+ma̱   hague-i.
post   cut.PL+put   get+put   come-NFUT

'(We) cut (the) posts and brought them.'

004

Mosọ   ŧogo-l-o   sa   ko=kôu   ma̱-i̱.
house   make-IRR-FUT   land   that=LOC put-NFUT

'(We) put them where (we) were going to build (the) house.'

005

Hebe   gubugi   mộu+ma̱ hague-i   mei   dege-i,   ele   asôu   da-i.
tree   cut.PL   get+put come-NFUT NEG   do-NFUT   1DU.EX   ground dig-NFUT

'(We) finished bringing all the posts (we) had cut; the two of us dug holes.'

006

Asôu   da+ma,   hebe   ke̱   fo-fo-gu-e-i.
ground dig+put   tree   that   RED.PL-rise-OF-RED.PL-NFUT

'(We) dug holes and raised (the) posts.'

007

Hebe   fo-fo-gu-e-i   mei   dege-môu,   ele   hebe
tree   RED.PL-rise-OF-RED.PL-NFUT   NEG   do-PFV   1DU.EX   tree

ŧage+ŧôu   ma̱-i̱.
over+up   put-NFUT

'Having finished raising (the) posts, the two of us put cross beams on top.'

008

Ma̱-ma,   ikoke   ke-i.
put-ISQ   nail   hammer-NFUT

'After putting (them), (we) nailed (them) down.'

009

Mei   dege-môu,   sage   sa-i.
NEG   do-PFV   rafter   put.inside-NFUT

'Having finished, (we) put in rafters.'

010

Sage	*sa+ma̱*	*mei*	*dege-mȏu,*	*digo*	*ma̱-ma,*
rafter	put.inside+put	NEG	do-PFV	wild.pandana.strip	put-ISQ

ṭeme̱	*gobo-u.*
sago.leaf	break-NFUT

'Having finished putting on (the) rafters, after putting on wild pandana strips, (we) folded sago leaves (over the pandana strips).'

011

Teme̱	*gobo-u*	*mei*	*dege-mȏu,*	*awa*	*dio*	*fa̱-i̱.*
sago.leaf	break-NFUT	NEG	do-PFV	black.palm	bone	hit-NFUT

'Having finished folding (the) sago leaves, (we) put on flooring of black palm strips.'

012

Awa	*dio*	*fa̱-i̱*	*mei*	*dege-mȏu,*
black.palm	bone	*hit-NFUT*	NEG	do-PFV

moso̱	*du-le+du*	*ṭeme̱i*	*fa̱i.*
house	inside-ALOCR+inside	thin.black.palm.strip	hit-NFUT

'Having finished putting on (the) flooring of black palm strips, inside the house, (we) put on smaller black palm strips.'

013

Teme̱i	*fa̱-i̱*	*mei*	*dege-mȏu,*	*dou*	*moso̱*	*bologua̱-i*
thin.black.palm.strip	hit-NFUT	NEG	do-PFV	fire	house	good.do-NFUT

'Having finished putting on (the) smaller black palm strips, (we) fixed (a) fire place.'

014

Dou	*hebe+ma̱*	*ṭȏu-ma*	*kuhe*	*ṭia-di.*
fire	carry+put	light-ISQ	so	sleep-HAB

'(We) carried (in) firewood and after lighting (a fire), (we) now live (there).'

015

Ma̱	*ṭa̱*	*ke̱=nȏu=fe̱i.*
1s.POSS	talk	that=only=total

'That (is) all of my talk.' (conclusion)

Michael's hunting story

Michael Soti 2003, Dahamo village
An oral story, transcribed by the narrator (narrative)

001

Ei   Dulo   o̱   ko=kô̱u=ge
1PL.EX   Dulo   mouth.of.river   that=LOC=F.CNTR

James=bô̱u   Asele=bô̱u   ei   so   ti-l-e   igiya-i   sulugua-l-i
James=and   Asele=and   1PL.EX   dog   call-IRR-FUT   go.DU/PL-NFUT   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

du,   so   tigo-l-o   i-mô̱u   fo̱ukua igiya-i   folo-ga-mô̱u   dugu,
hear.NFUT dog   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   run   go.DU/PL-NFUT   go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV   see.NFUT

wai   oye   hiye=do   ke̱   tigo-l-o   i-mô̱u   dugu.
pig   male   big=INT   that   bark-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT

'We (excl.), at the mouth of the river Dulo, (i.e.) James, Asele and I called up the dogs and went; we walked around until (we) heard the dogs barking, (and) immediately we ran on; having arrived (we) saw that they were barking at that very big boar.'

002

Asele=ha̱   hebe   sugu̱+tô̱u   tafala-l-i   wai   kaha̱   so   sesele   hagua
Asele=GEN   tree   top+up   stand-IRR-NFUT   pig   that=GEN   dog follow-IRR-FUT   come

fogô̱u   i-mô̱u   taha̱-i̱=be,   mala   tuga̱-ma   fele̱-i.
leave.for   go.NFUT-PFV shoot-NFUT=TOP   arrow   bounce-ISQ   come.up-NFUT

'Asele was standing up in (a) tree top until the pig came and chased the dog(s) and (as they were) passing by (Asele) shot at (it); (the) arrow after bouncing came (back) towards him.'

003

Yô̱u=makô̱u fiyo-u-mô̱u   haba   ta=ge   taha̱-i̱=be   mala   tuga̱-ma
3S.REFL=LOC   fall-NFUT-PFV   but.PFV.IRR   INDF=F.CNTR   shoot-NFUT=TOP   arrow   bounce-ISQ

hebe-l-e   fele̱-i̱.
carry-IRR-FUT   come.up-NFUT

'While (it) fell (back) on himself, (and) when (he) shot again above (it), the arrow after bouncing came (back) towards (him).'

004

Yô̱u=makô̱u fiyo-u-mô̱u   dege-i,   haba   wai ka=ha̱   so   sese-l-e   hague-i.
3S.REFL=LOC fall-NFUT-PFV do-NFUT   but.PFV.IRR   pig   that=GEN   dog   follow-IRR-FUT   come-NFUT

'(Arrows) kept falling (back) on himself; again the pig came chasing the dog(s).'

005

A   tafala   ke-le   hagua   tafala-mô̱u dege-i,   a   taha̱-i̱
1s   stand   that-A.LOC   come   stand-PFV   do-NFUT   1s   shoot-NFUT

fefe̱   ke-le   fogo-u   do-l-ô̱u   i-ki-le
waist   that-A.LOCR   hit.target-NFUT   go.down.river-IRR-NPST   downriver-DEMR.N-A.LOCR

bi-l-o   fiyo-u-mô̱u   dege-i.
sit.up/down-IRR-FUT fall-NFUT-PFV   do-NFUT

'(It) came and kept trying to stand where I stood; I shot it; hit the waist; (it) went downriver and sat down there and was in the process of falling over.'

006

De = ha   ***taha-l-e̱ + ma̱-mô̱u***   ***baha***   ***tefele-gua-l-i***   ***du = be***
maternal.uncle=GEN   shot-IRR-FUT+put-PFV   look   stand-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT   hear.NFUT=TOP

kueya   ***dihi***   ***susa-l-e̱***   ***i-mô̱u,***   ***Asele*** ***ele***   ***ka***
cassowary   child   whistle.for-IRR-FUT   go.NFUT-PFV   Asele   1DU.EX   look.for

sulugua-l-i   ***dugu,***
walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT

kamadia ***fofogô̱u***   ***tefele-gua-mô̱u***   ***sese-ga***   ***sulugua-l-i***
three   close.together   stand-DU/PL-PFV   follow-DU/PL   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT

bolo̱u ***ke-ge***   ***to̱-l-ô̱u-mô̱u,***   ***ta***   ***so = ye***   ***sese-l-e***   ***i-l-e***   ***wala***
two   that-VBR   hold-IRR-NPST-PFV   INDF   dog=INS   follow-IRR-FUT   go-IRR-FUT   attack.IRR.FUT

no̱-u̱-mô̱u   ***dugu-o***   ***fogô̱u***   ***igiya-i.***
eat-NFUT-PFV   see-FUT   leave.for   go.DU/PL-NFUT

'Uncle having shot and killed (it), we stood (there) until (we) heard cassowary chickens whistle, (whereupon) Asele and I immediately went looking until (we) saw three (chickens) standing close together (and) we followed them around until (we) had got hold of two, and (we) saw one pursued and killed and eaten by (the) dog, and leaving we went.'

007

Wai ***gisiga***   ***tô̱u + ma̱*** ***igiya-i,***   ***ta̱-le = kô̱u***   ***dogogu-o*** ***fogô̱u,***   ***haba***
pig   drag.DU/PL   hold+put go.DU/PL-NFUT   river-A.LOCR=LOC   put-FUT   leave.for but.PFV.IRR

bi   ***hebe-se-i***   ***ka***   ***sulugua-l-i***   ***dugu-o-mô̱u,***   ***mô̱u + ma̱***
thing   carry-DU/PL-NFUT   look.for   walk.around.DU/PL-IRR-NFUT   see-FUT-PFV   get+put

hagua-sie-i   ***ta̱-le = kô̱u***   ***migi-ga-mô̱u***   ***dugu,***
come-DU/PL-NFUT   river-A.LOCR=LOC   come.down-DU/PL.FUT-PFV   see.NFUT

bei   ***ta***   ***to̱***   ***ko = kô̱u***   ***ke-le***   ***duwo-mô̱u*** ***taha̱-i,***
snake   INDF   river ko=LOC   that-A.LOCR   sit-PFV   shoot-NFUT

defe-ga   ***i-l-i-gi***   ***dege-i,***   ***ta̱-le = kô̱u***   ***fiye-i.***
miss.target-DU/PL.FUT   go-IRR-NFUT-DSQ   do-NFUT   river-A.LOCR=LOC   fall-NFUT

'Dragging and holding (the four legs of) the pig we went; putting and leaving (it) in the river, instead we walked around to look for (the) things (we had) thrown (aside) until having found/seen (them), we got (it) all and came; having come down to the river (we) saw a snake being there (and we) shot at (it); (we) continued to shoot a lot of (arrows) that kept missing until (the snake) fell into the river.'

008

Kama.fô̱u-mô̱u ***dugu-o***   ***fogô̱u-mô̱u***   ***dugu,***   ***haba***   ***bei***   ***ta***   ***hebe***
run.away-PFV   see-FUT   leave.for-PFV   see.NFUT   but.PFV.IRR   snake   INDF   tree

sugu̱   ***tô̱u-gu-li = do***   ***duwo-mô̱u*** ***dege-i*** ***a̱*** ***dege-i*** ***ta*** ***tiga-ma*** ***to-l-ô̱u***
top   up-DEMR.D-E.LOCR=INT   sit-PFV   do-NFUT   1s   do-NFUT bow   tie-ISQ   hold-IRR-NPST

fele-i.
go.up-NFUT

'(We) saw (it) escape and leaving (we) also saw another snake being far up, right up there in (a) tree top; after tying the bow I held (it) and went up.'

009

Taha̱ ***taha̱-ma***   ***hebe-l-e***   ***mu-gu***   ***fiyo-u-mô̱u,***
shoot shoot-ISQ   carry-IRR-FUT   go.down-OF   fall-NFUT-PFV

dia̱ ***wala + ma̱-mô̱u,***   ***ise***   ***a̱*** ***mu̱.***
3PL   attack.IRR.FUT+put-PFV   finally   1s   go.down.NFUT

'After shooting many times, throwing (the snake) down, when they had killed (it), I finally went down.'

010

Mihi̱=kô̱u	*mu-l-o̱*	*tô̱ufô̱ugô̱u*
earth=LOC	go.down-IRR-FUT	leave

ise	*to̱-ba*	*dô̱u-go-l-ô̱u-gi,*		*a̱*	*miye̱*	*soso-l-ô̱u-gi,*
finally	river-along	go.downriver-DU/PL-IRR-NPST-DSQ		1s	fish	dive.for-IRR-NPST-DSQ

gibe	*ta̱*	*taha-l-e̱*	*hebe-l-e*	*fila̱-mô̱u,*
fish.sp.	INDF	shoot-IRR-FUT	carry-IRR-FUT	throw.FUT-PFV

haba	*soso-l-ô̱u-gi*	*dege-i,*	*ma̱*	*abogô̱u*	*ke-le*	*ô̱u*	*aye̱=ye*
but.PFV.IRR	dive.for-IRR-NPST-DSQ	do-NFUT	1s.POSS	foot	that-A.LOCR	sago	thorn=INS

wo-mô̱u	*to̱to̱=nô̱u*	*fogô̱u*	*igiya-i.*
attack-PFV	quickly=only	leave.for	go.DU/PL-NFUT

'(I) went down on the ground and left and finally we went along down the river until I diving for fish until (I) had shot a "gibe" fish and carried (it) and having thrown (it up on the bank), (I) again continued diving; (a) sago thorn having got into my foot, leaving quickly we went.'

011

Dibi	*moso̱*	*ta̱*	*ko=kô̱u*	*folo-ga-mô̱u,*
forest	house	INDF	that=LOC	go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV

wai	*ka-gi+ma̱*	*sa+ma̱*	*kô̱u+ma̱*	*igiya-i.*
pig	cut-OF+put	put.inside+put	carry.on.head+put	go.DU/PL-NFUT

'Having gone up to (a) bush house, we cut up (the) pig and put (the pieces in our stringbags) and carried (those) on (our) heads and went.'

012

Moso̱=kô̱u	*folo-ga-mô̱u,*	*igi*	*si+ma̱-mô̱u*	*dege-i*
house=LOC	go.up-DU/PL.FUT-PFV	stone	cook+put-PFV	do-NFUT

wai	*so-l-ô̱u*	*na̱-ma*	*tie-i.*
pig	cook.on.stones-IRR-NPST	eat-ISQ	sleep-NFUT

'Having gone up to (the) house, having worked at heating stones, (we) cooked (the) pig on the stones and after eating (we) slept.'

013

Sabiya-mô̱u,	*Asele*	*dilie*	*e̱*	*sasai*	*Dasame*	*dilie*
be.morning-PFV	Asele	3DU	3s	woman	Dasame	3DU

Mali̱	*o̱=kô̱u*	*yo-u-mô̱u,*
Malin	mouth.of.river=LOC	go.DU/PL-NFUT-PFV

James=bô̱u	*e̱*	*sasa̱i*	*Dalai=bô̱u*	*a̱=bô̱u*	*ei*	*Dahamo=kô̱u*
James=and	3s	woman	Dalai=and	1s=and	1PL.EX	Dahamo=LOC

fogô̱u	*hagua-sie-i-mô̱u*	*de-i.*
leave.for	come-DU/PL-NFUT-PFV	PROV-NFUT

'Next morning, while Asele and his wife Dasame went to the mouth of (the) river Malin, James, his wife Dalai and I left for Dahamo and came (back).'

014

Ke̱=nô̱u=fe̱i.
that=only=total

'That is all.'

Pepson's clan legend

Pepson Uwoliti 2006, Dahamo village
A written story (legend)

000

Dibiye   Hiyạdibi   hụ+ti   ke+diạ   fuwa   felẹ-i   tạ
Thunder   Hiyandibi   name+call   that+3PL   break.open   come.up-NFUT   talk

'(The) story about (the) origin of the Thunder Hiyandibi clan' (heading)

001

Afu   afu=do   kôuguai   ke+diạ   dele-i.
earlier   earlier=INT   ancestor   that+3PL   be/have-NFUT

'A very long time ago, the ancestors lived.'

002

Dala-l-i,   ta   sabiye-i   habi   dege-i-môu,   huei=bôu, dibiye=bôu
be/have-IRR-NFUT INDF   be.morning-NFUT   afternoon do-NFUT-PFV   water=and thunder=and

hiye=do   dege-i.
big=INT   do-NFUT

'(They) lived until one day in the afternoon, there was a lot of rain and thunder.'

003

Dibiye   hiye=do fu-fuwo-u-môu,   diạ baha duwo-gua-l-i   dugu=be,
thunder   big=INT RED.PL-break.open-NFUT-PFV 3PL look sit-DU/PL-IRR-NFUT see.NFUT=TOP

hebe hiye=do sasa=do,   e   hụ=be   diogo   ka=hạ   sugụ+tôu=ge
tree big=INT   tall/long=INT 3S name=TOP tree.sp.   that=GEN   top+up-F.CNTR

fiye   sạ-i   sasa=do   ka=hạ   migi-môu   dugu.
thread twine-NFUT tall/long=INT   that=GEN come.down-PFV   see.NFUT

'While (the) thunder kept crashing, they sat (there) waiting until (they) saw that from the top of (a) very big, tall tree, its name is "diogo", that very long rope came down.'

004

Migi-môu   dugu=be,   fiye   sạ-i   kẹ=me   ye   dihi
come.down.NFUT-PFV see.NFUT=TOP thread twine-NFUT that=TOP stringbag   child

gomogu=bôu   migi-môu   dugu.
knot.NFUT=and   come.down.NFUT-PFV   see.NFUT

'While seeing it come down, (they) saw a small stringbag tied to the rope coming down with it.'

005

Ke-ge-môu, diạ ye   dihi   kẹ   tu-l-o-môu   dugu=be,
that-VBR-PFV 3PL   stringbag   child   that remove-IRR-FUT-PFV   see.NFUT=TOP

dihi   ta   sa-l-a-môu   dugu.
child   INDF   put.inside-IRR-SUBJ-PFV see.NFUT

'Having become like that, they, having removed the small stringbag, saw that a child must have been put inside.'

006

Ke-ge-môu,   diạ   dihi   kẹ   fo-fo-l-ôu   dala-l-i,   hiye dege-i.
that-VBR-PFV 3PL   child   that RED.PL-run-IRR-NPST be/have-IRR-NFUT big do-NFUT

'Having become like that, they raised the child until (he) was grown up.'

007

Hiye dege-môu, e   sasại   hu-l-o,   dihi   sụ=do   mọ-ụ.
big   do.FUT-PFV 3S   woman   marry-IRR-FUT child many=INT get-NFUT

'Having grown up, he married and had many children.'

008

Ke-ge-môu,   diạ   ẹ   hụ + ǂi = be   Dibiye   Hiyạdibi = yode-i.
that-VBR-PFV   3PL   3s   name+call=TOP   Thunder   Hiyandibi=IQV-NFUT

'Having become like that, they called his clan Thunder Hiyandibi.'

009

Dibiye   Hiyạdibi   hụ + ǂi   fuwa   felẹ-į   ǂạ   kẹ = nôu = fẹį.
Thunder   Hiyandibi   *name+call*   break.open   come.up-NFUT   talk   that=only=total

'That (is) all of the story of (the) Thunder Hiyandibi clan.' (conclusion)

A letter, 2011

001

M̲a̲ mogo, nele gusubu bolo=f̲e̲i̲=do.
1s.POSS   friend   2DU   morning good=total=INT

'My friends, good morning to you two.'

002

A̲=me ...
1S=TOP   a.name

'My name is …'

003

M̲a̲ mogo, nele gusubu bolo=f̲e̲i̲=do.
1s.POSS   friend   2DU   morning good=total=INT

'My friends, good morning to you two.'

004

A̲=me ... ...
1S=TOP   a.name   father's.name

'My name is … …'

005

A̲=me nele=mokôu m̲a̲ dabai ta ne-l-a̲-môu.
1S=TOP   2DU=LOC   1s.POSS work   INDF give-IRR-SUBJ-PFV

'I want to give a work of mine to you two.'

006

Dabai k̲e̲=me m̲a̲ kuguo taip dege-l-e.
work   that=TOP 1s.POSS book   type do-IRR-FUT

'That work is to type "what I have written".'

007

Nele toto=do m̲a̲ kuguo taip dege-ma-ba
2DU   quickly=INT 1s.POSS paper type do-ISQ-PFV.IRR

a̲=mokôu toto=do boho-l-ôu ne̲-ma.
1S=LOC   quickly=INT   turn-IRR-NPST give-DU/PL

'After you two have quickly typed "what I have written", send it quickly back to me.'

008

Yo=be fula ta ka=h̲a̲ Monday=be a̲=me ... Campany
base=TOP week INDF that=GEN Monday=TOP 1S=TOP a.name Company

ke+di̲a̲=mokôu i-l-e, m̲a̲ kuguo k̲e̲ kuhe ne-l-e̲ dege-môu.
that+3PL=LOC   go-IRR-FUT 1s paper that so   give-IRR-FUT do-PFV

'The reason is that next week Monday I plan to go to the … Company and give them "what you will have typed" for me.'

009

T̲a̲ ta=be nele sole=bôu, dou=bôu, 2011 kalada=bôu de
talk INDF=TOP 2DU salt=and   fire=and   2011 calendar=and   PROV

dala=be a̲=mokôu ta ne-l-e̲ bolo=f̲e̲i̲=do,
be/have=TOP   1S=LOC   INDF give-IRR-FUT good=total=INT

yo=be a̲=me mei=do dege-i-môu kuhe yodu-l-u.
reason=TOP 1S=TOP NEG=INT do-NFUT-PFV so ask-IRR-NFUT

'Another thing is that if you two have salt, matches and a 2011 calendar, (it) would be good (if you) give me one/some, because I have none (of these), so I ask.'

010

Thank.you   mogo,   ke̱=nô̱u=fe̱i=do.
thank.you   friend   that=only=total=INT

'Thank you my friends; that is all.'

011

Nele   mogo=do   ...=ha̱   nala̱-i̱.
1DU   friend=INT   a.name=GEN   write-NFUT

'Your (du.) special friend ... wrote (this).'

Four very short letters by a teacher, 2008

Letter 1

001

Mogo, nḁ dihi   kô̰u   ṭiga.
friend 2s child   this tie
'My friend, dress (the wound) of this child.'

002

...
a.name
'A signed name.'

Letter 2

001

Ifi=be   21 komḁ   oguo   2008.
today=TOP 21 third   moon   2008
'Today is (the) 21st of March, 2008.'

002

Mḁ   mogo,   gusugu   bolo=f̱ei.
1s.POSS friend   morning   good=total
'My friend, good morning.'

003

Ḇ   nḁ=mokôu   yodu-l-u,   nḁ soks=bôu   p̱esole=bôu   de   dala?
1s   2s=LOC   ask-IRR-NFUT   2s chalk=and   pencil=and   good be/have
'I am asking you; do you have (any) chalk and/or pencils?'

004

Dala-ba=be,   p̱esole 4ke-ge,   soks=bôu   de   ḁ   ne-l-ḛ.
be/have-PFV.IRR=TOP pencil 4that-VBR   chalk=and good 1s   give-IRR-FUT
'If (you) have, (you) may give me four pencils and (some) chalk.'

005

Tḁ   ke̱=nôu=f̱ei.
talk   that=only=total
'That (is) all (I have) to say.'

006

...hḁ   nalḁ-i
a.name=GEN   write-NFUT
'... wrote (this).'

007

...
a.name
'A signed name.'

Letter 3

001

Sawisie-i   28/04/2008
be.day-NFUT   28/04/2008
'(The) day of 28/04/2008.'

002

Ma̠ mogo gusugu bolo=f e̠i=do.
1s.POSS friend morning good=total-INT

'My friend, a very good morning.'

003

Na̠ pe̠sole de dala?
2s pencil good be/have

'Do you have (any) pencils?'

004

Dala-ba=be, na̠ a̠=mokôu 8 ke-ge ne̠.
be/have-PFV.IRR=TOP 2S 1S=LOC 8 that-VBR give

'If (you) have, give 8 to me.'

005

Ta̠ ke̠=nôu=f e̠i.
talk that=only=total

'That (is) all (I have) to say.'

006

...ha̠ nala̠-i̠
a.name=GEN write-NFUT
'... wrote (this).'

007

...
a.name
'A signed name.'

Letter 4

001
Date 28/04/08

002

Ma̠ mogo, gusugu bolo=f e̠i.
1s.POSS friend morning good=total

'My friend, good morning.'

003

Na̠ pe̠sole ta dala-ba, dihi kôu ne̠.
2s pencil INDF be/have=PFV.IRR child this give

'If you have a pencil, give (it to) this child.'

004

Ta̠ ke̠=nôu=f ei.
talk that=only=total
'That (is) all (I have) to say.'

005

...ha̠ nala̠-i̠
a.name=GEN write-NFUT
'... wrote (this).'

006

...
a.name
'A signed name.'